Sustainable Development and Biodiversity 16

Dinesh K. Maheshwari
K. Annapurna *Editors*

Endophytes: Crop Productivity and Protection

Volume 2

Springer

Sustainable Development and Biodiversity

Volume 16

Series editor

Kishan Gopal Ramawat
Botany Department, M.L. Sukhadia University, Udaipur, Rajasthan, India

This book series provides complete, comprehensive and broad subject based reviews about existing biodiversity of different habitats and conservation strategies in the framework of different technologies, ecosystem diversity, and genetic diversity. The ways by which these resources are used with sustainable management and replenishment are also dealt with. The topics of interest include but are not restricted only to sustainable development of various ecosystems and conservation of hotspots, traditional methods and role of local people, threatened and endangered species, global climate change and effect on biodiversity, invasive species, impact of various activities on biodiversity, biodiversity conservation in sustaining livelihoods and reducing poverty, and technologies available and required. The books in this series will be useful to botanists, environmentalists, marine biologists, policy makers, conservationists, and NGOs working for environment protection.

More information about this series at http://www.springer.com/series/11920

Dinesh K. Maheshwari · K. Annapurna
Editors

Endophytes: Crop Productivity and Protection

Volume 2

Springer

Editors
Dinesh K. Maheshwari
Department of Botany and Microbiology
Gurukul Kangri University
Haridwar
India

K. Annapurna
Division of Microbiology
Indian Agricultural Research
New Delhi
India

ISSN 2352-474X ISSN 2352-4758 (electronic)
Sustainable Development and Biodiversity
ISBN 978-3-319-66543-6 ISBN 978-3-319-66544-3 (eBook)
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-66544-3

Library of Congress Control Number: 2017950012

Printed on acid-free paper

This Springer imprint is published by Springer Nature
The registered company is Springer International Publishing AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

Preface

A better understanding of endophytic microorganisms may help to elucidate their functions and potential role in developing sustainable systems of crop production and their protection against abiotic and biotic stresses. Endophytes play a vital role in growth and health promotion of plant. Endophytic bacteria are of agrobiological interests because they create host–endophyte relationship having exciting prospects for newer biotechnological applications. Endophytes proved beneficial alternative for sustainable solutions for agrochemicals due to their role in biological control of pests and diseases. They reduce the burden of excess use of agrochemicals. On the other hand, endophytes are potential source of several secondary metabolites and several useful other metabolites such as alkaloids, enzymes, biosurfactants, biocontrol agents, and plant growth promoters. It is imperative that these products have industrial applications in the field of biotechnology, pharmacy, and agriculture.

The 'Endophytes: Vol. II Crop productivity and protection' is an endeavor to review the current developments in the understanding of microbial endophytes and their potential applications in the enhancement of productivity and disease protection. This book contains various chapters presenting state of knowledge on involvement of endophytes in crop productivity and soil health because of beneficial for agricultural and forest ecosystem. Endophytes contribute in nonnative crops, volatile organic compound production, and a remarkable source of biologically active secondary metabolites and enzymes, as lignin degrading fungi, in bioremediation, phosphate solubilization, agricultural productivity, and plant disease control. The chapters describe the strategies for crop improvement and production of useful metabolites and aromatic compounds, enzymes, and other metabolites. These chapters are described with advance information on endophytes for productivity and protection in sustainable plant ecosystem.

We are sure the book will be useful to botanists, microbiologists, biotechnologists, molecular biologists, environmentalists, and those working for the protection

of plant species of agricultural and medicinal importance. I am thankful to the contributors of these books for their cooperation and patience in the compilation of this task. I am also thankful to Springer team, particularly Drs. R. Valeria and Takeesha for their constant support in the publication of this work.

Haridwar, India — Dinesh K. Maheshwari
New Delhi, India — K. Annapurna

Contents

Contributors

Ahmed Al-Harrasi Chair of Oman's Medicinal Plants & Marine Natural Products, University of Nizwa, Nizwa, Sultanate of Oman

K. Annapurna Division of Microbiology, ICAR-Indian Agricultural Research Institute, New Delhi, India

M.F. Carvalho CIIMAR – Interdisciplinary Centre of Marine and Environmental Research, University of Porto, Terminal de Cruzeiros do Porto de Leixões, Matosinhos, Portugal

Dinesh Chandra Department of Biological Sciences, College of Basic Science and Humanities, G.B. Pant, University of Agriculture and Technology, Pantnagar, Uttarakhand, India

Chris P. Chanway Department of Forest and Conservation Sciences, The University of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC, Canada

Anjali Chauhan Department of Soil Science and Water Management, Dr. YSPUHF & F, Solan, Himachal Pradesh, India

Shrivardhan Dheeman Department of Botany and Microbiology, Gurukul Kangri University, Haridwar, India

María E. Eugenio Forestry Products Department, Cellulose and Paper Laboratories, INIA-CIFOR, Madrid, Spain

Úrsula Fillat Forestry Products Department, Cellulose and Paper Laboratories, INIA-CIFOR, Madrid, Spain

H. Freitas Centre for Functional Ecology, Department of Life Sciences, University of Coimbra, Coimbra, Portugal

Shiwani Guleria Department of Biotechnology, Lovely Professional University, Jalandhar, India

David Ibarra Forestry Products Department, Cellulose and Paper Laboratories, INIA-CIFOR, Madrid, Spain

Abdul Latif Khan Chair of Oman's Medicinal Plants & Marine Natural Products, University of Nizwa, Nizwa, Sultanate of Oman

Yelugere L. Krishnamurthy Department of P.G. Studies and Research in Applied Botany, Bioscience Complex, Kuvempu University, Shimoga, Karnataka, India

In-Jung Lee School of Applied Biosciences, Kyungpook National University, Daegu, Korea

Y. Ma Centre for Functional Ecology, Department of Life Sciences, University of Coimbra, Coimbra, Portugal

David Macaya-Sanz Department of Natural Systems and Resources, School of Forest Engineers, Technical University of Madrid, Madrid, Spain

Dinesh K. Maheshwari Department of Botany and Microbiology, Gurukul Kangri University, Haridwar, India

Vijay Laxminarayan Maheshwari School of Life Sciences, North Maharashtra University, Jalgaon, MS, India

Raquel Martín-Sampedro Forestry Products Department, Cellulose and Paper Laboratories, INIA-CIFOR, Madrid, Spain

Juan A. Martín Department of Natural Systems and Resources, School of Forest Engineers, Technical University of Madrid, Madrid, Spain

Preeti Mehta DBT-IOC Centre, R&D, Indian Oil Corporation Limited, Faridbad, Haryana, India

Shahid Iqbal Mohammed School of Life Sciences, North Maharashtra University, Jalgaon, MS, India

A. Muthukumar Department of Plant Pathology, Faculty of Agriculture, Annamalai University, Chidambaram, Tamil Nadu, India

B. Shankar Naik Department of Biology, Govt. Science College, Chikmagalur, Karnataka, India

R. Naveenkumar Department of Plant Pathology, Faculty of Agriculture, Annamalai University, Chidambaram, Tamil Nadu, India

R.S. Oliveira Centre for Functional Ecology, Department of Life Sciences, University of Coimbra, Coimbra, Portugal; Department of Environmental Health, Research Centre on Health and Environment, School of Allied Health Sciences, Polytechnic Institute of Porto, Porto, Portugal

Kiran Preet Padda Department of Forest and Conservation Sciences, The University of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC, Canada

Pallavi Department of Biological Sciences, College of Basic Science and Humanities, G.B. Pant, University of Agriculture and Technology, Pantnagar, Uttarakhand, India

Mohini Panditrao Patil Department of Microbiology and Biotechnology, R. C. Patel Arts, Commerce and Science College, Shirpur, MS, India

Ravindra Himmatrao Patil Department of Microbiology and Biotechnology, R. C. Patel Arts, Commerce and Science College, Shirpur, MS, India

Akshit Puri Department of Forest and Conservation Sciences, The University of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC, Canada

K.G. Ramawat Udaipur, India

Pamoda B. Ratnaweera Department of Science and Technology, Uva Wellassa University, Badulla, Sri Lanka

Raheem Shahzad School of Applied Biosciences, Kyungpook National University, Daegu, Korea

A.K. Sharma Department of Biological Sciences, College of Basic Science and Humanities, G.B. Pant, University of Agriculture and Technology, Pantnagar, Uttarakhand, India

R. Udhayakumar Department of Plant Pathology, Faculty of Agriculture, Annamalai University, Chidambaram, Tamil Nadu, India

Abhishek Walia Department of Microbiology, DAV University, Jalandhar, India

E. Dilip de Silva Department of Chemistry, University of Colombo, Colombo 03, Sri Lanka

Chapter 1
Endophytes as Contender of Plant Productivity and Protection: An Introduction

Dinesh K. Maheshwari, Shrivardhan Dheeman and K. Annapurna

Abstract Bacterial endophytes are versatile with impeccable mastery to occupy their niche in plant tissues, thus, experiences less competition than the other free-living rhizospheric inhabitants. These holds vast and extended scope of their utilization in plant health and growth promotion and contribution in sustainable agriculture as potent contender. This chapter introduces overview on the diverse role of endophytes for multidisciplinary benefits exclusively in plant productivity and protection.

Keywords Bioremediation · Bacterial metabolites · Invasive endophytes Native plants · Non-native plants · Forest ecosystem

1.1 Introduction

There is a great deal of interest in understanding the role of endophyte diversity in plants and their ecology, evolutionary biology and applied sciences research ranging from crop productivity to protection against abiotic and biotic stresses. During last decade, maximum numbers of papers on beneficial endophytes have been published from the USA followed by narrow difference between China and India. Top nine countries have published on different aspects. Whereas subject-wise

D.K. Maheshwari (✉) · S. Dheeman
Department of Botany and Microbiology, Gurukul Kangri University, Haridwar, India
e-mail: maheshwaridk@gmail.com

S. Dheeman
e-mail: svdheeman@gmail.com

K. Annapurna
Division of Microbiology, ICAR-Indian Agricultural Research Institute, New Delhi 110 012, India
e-mail: annapurna96@gmail.com

D.K. Maheshwari and K. Annapurna (eds.), *Endophytes: Crop Productivity and Protection*, Sustainable Development and Biodiversity 16,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-66544-3_1

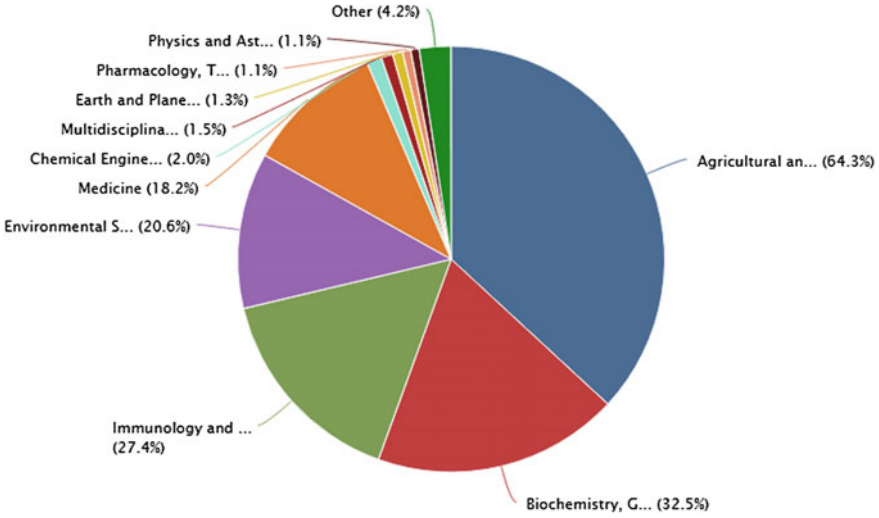


Fig. 1.1 Beneficial endophytes in different area (subject wise distribution). *Source* www.scopus.com/

maximum publications appeared on their beneficial role in both native and non-native crops and more particularly to that of agricultural benefits (Fig. 1.1).

With the growing need for increase food and bioenergy biomass but with a great understanding of the implications of conventional intensive agriculture, the time is right for a great emphasis on biological mechanisms for improvement of plant growth. Endophytes have an advantage since there would be less competition, when adding soil bacteria to the established rhizosphere communities. Endophytes with the ability to colonize internal host tissues has made them valuable microorganisms to improve crops performances as well as forest trees which are equally benefitted by using endophytes via seeds, seedlings, etc.

Almost whole plant, even the pollen and pistil are the sources of endophytic microorganisms but, present more in root than that of aerial plant tissues. Similarly, epiphyte microbial (leaf) populations (phyllosphere) are more numerous in comparison to that of endophytic populations (Beattie and Lindow 1999). It is interesting to note that fungal endophytes have bacteria and viruses make tritrophic endophytic interactions (Hoffman and Arnold 2010). Recently, Aeron et al. (2014) observed endophytic colonization of putative invasive non-rhizobia endophytes from *Clitoria ternatea* L. nodules; the bacteria that lack the ability to form nodules were also observed in the root nodules.

The majoring of reports deal with the culturable endophytes and for most of such nodule inhabiting bacteria, their endophytic nature is not yet proven. Since, they remain associated with plant adhering tissues, viz, nodules; these are now referred as putative endophytes. Various genera such as *Streptomyces*, *Agrobacterium*, *Bacillus*, *Paenibacillus*, *Pseudomonas*, *Enterobacter*, *Paracoccus*, *Lysinibacillus*,

Staphylococcus, *Starkeya* and others exist or co-exist with or without a tree symbiont inside nodules.

Plant tissues colonized with diverse genera of microbes those persist as epiphytes and endophytes and historically, endophytes inherited from endotroph introduces concerns in relation with endomycorrhizal association (Frank 1885) and later used to define ferns colonized with algae as described by Campbell (1908). Endophytes have both beneficial and harmful effect to the associated plants. But more often, the endophytic microbes reduce herbivory (Koh and Hik 2007), induce plant growth and development (Hardoim et al. 2008), increase mineral uptake (Malinowski and Belesky 2000), fix nitrogen (Doty et al. 2009), suppress phytopathogens and diseases (Melnick et al. 2008) and induce plant defence Kloepper et al. 2004). As a matter of fact, their colonization in an ecological niche is similar to plant pathogens which might favour them as a potential biocontrol agent (Ramamorthy et al. 2001). The close association with plant tissues make them amicable and often a unique opportunity for their role in biological control. The endophytic microbes in biocontrol received lot of interest and suitably described in the present book.

Endophytes proved as a novel source of enzymes, antibiotics including other secondary metabolites of agro-biological and ecological significance. In addition, endophytes are often used in rhizoremedation. Reports on their ability and applications to degrade pollutants have now been possible (Doty 2008; Segura et al. 2009).

Next generation sequencing such as pyrosequencing, ROCHE sequencing, High throughput sequencing etc. can lead to discovery of new groups of microbes bioremediation of pollutants. Bacterial community from aerial part of plant bears plant growth promoting attribute to control diseases. The leaves harbour endophytic culturable bacteria beneficial to plant which can be used as bioinoculants for plant growth promotion thus for increasing their productivity (Malfanova 2013).

1.2 How Endophytes Are Beneficial for Agriculture System?

Similar to other bacteria endophytes are potential inhabitant in a wide variety of native and cultured crop plants. Their presence inside the host tissues undoubtedly exhibiting with diverse morphologies that ranges unicellular to filamentous forms. Their presence in both terrestrial and aquatic ecosystem, including marine environmental plants holds beneficial impacts via offering nutrient accumulation, secondary metabolite production, etc. Other than, rhizospheric benefits, actinobacteria are also involved in recycling of nutrients, decomposition of organic matter, degradation of agricultural and urban wastes, environmental pollutants, such as petroleum, dyes and other recalcitrant compounds which in turn corroborate the soil ecology and agro-ecosystem as discussed in Chap. 2.

1.3 Endophytes: A Part of Forest Ecosystem

Forest trees are providing unique ecological reservoir for bacterial endophytes. Of course, forests are important component to sustain environment and play significant role to keep integrity and sustainability of nature. Forests cover one-third of entire land on Earth, providing vital organic infrastructure for some of the planet's thickest and most diverse collections of life. Bacterial endophytes associated with tree species are rather limited but their importance should not be underrated. By virtue of beneficial endophytes associated with forest tree, wide range benefits can be harnessed in term raising potential future for forest trees so as to restore the density and sustainable existence of forest to keep earth green as reviewed in Chap. 3.

1.4 Endophytes in Native and Non-native Crops

The increasing introduction of non-native plants particularly improved germ-plasm of crops is utmost necessary for adequacy of food to human beings and feed to animals. Microbial invasion in plants has a considerable role to play in facilitating their growth and productivity besides biological control of deleterious phytopathogens causing diseases in non-native plants. To apply for beneficial relationships, endophyte-plant host interactions are suitable strategies that facilitates agricultural productivity. Beneficial endophytes of non-native crop host can be utilized in native or indigenous crop as reviewed in Chap. 4.

1.5 Endophytes Increase Microbial Activity in Tissues

The outer epidermal walls of plant cells are covered with mucilage and cuticle. The cell also secretes polysaccharides and their biopolymers. The organic and inorganic compounds in the cells cytoplasm are diffused out. This occurs probably due to unfavourable conditions and sometimes indirectly affect the aerial surface accumulate directly. In case of underground region, beneath the soil is root and loss of organic and inorganic compounds from its surface is known as root exudates. Inside the tissue, endophytes colonize and constitute a good base which is utilized by microorganism and release various metabolites multifarious in nature.

1.6 Endophyte as a Source of Potential Metabolites

These are member of volatile organic compounds as well as diffusible substances produces by endophytes. The low molecular weight hydrocarbons, aldehydes alcohol, lectones, peptides inorganic volatiles such as HCN are produced during

primary and secondary metabolism of these endophytes. Some of these chemicals are the source of signalling that facilitates the activity of other microorganisms present is the ecological niche prove beneficial in both raising productivity and protecting plants. Even few of the endophytes act as agents triggering plant immunity and enhancing plant growth and health support. Thus, impact to understand the bioconversion of cellulosic domain into liquid fuel, role of volatile organic compounds in biocontrol, etc. cannot be ruled out. The characterization and elucidation of these compounds, with suitable strategy in agricultural practices has been elaborated in Chap. 5.

New discovery of molecule is a continuous process in pharmaceutical industry because of development of new races and genera of resistance in microorganisms. Various genera such as *Escherichia*, *Salmonella*, *Pseudomonas*, *Staphylococcus*, *Streptococcus*, *Micrococci,* etc. belong to multidrug resistance and some *Enterococcus* spp. proved vancomycin resistance. There is no proper drug available to combat infections cause by these genera. Suitable strategies still need to establish for isolating potent biomolecules both from microorganism as well as plants (Table 1.1). Endophytes are ubiquitous in nature associated with different genera and tissues of diversify nature cellulosic versus non-cellulosic, pectolytic versus

Table 1.1 Showing the similar product of both endophyte and plant origin

Name of the metabolite	Plant/plant part	Microorganisms	References
Azadirachtin A	*Azadirachta indica* A. Juss	*Eupenicillium parvum*by	Kusari et al. (2012)
Camptothecine (CPT)	*Miquelia dentata* Bedd.	Endophytic bacteria	Shweta et al. (2013a)
Rohitukine	*Dysoxylum binectariferum* Hook.f	*Fusarium proliferatum* (MTCC 9690)	Kumara et al. (2012)
Paclitaxel (taxol®)	*Taxus brevifolia*	*Taxomyces andreanae*	Stierle et al. (1993)
Plant-derived bioactive compounds	–	Endophytic fungi	Zhao et al. (2011)
CPT, 9-methoxy CPT (9-MeO-CPT) and 10-hydroxy CPT (10-OH-CPT)	*Miquelia dentata* (Icacinaceae)	*Fomitopsis* sp. P. *Karst* (MTCC 10177), *Alternaria alternata* (Fr.)	Shweta et al. (2013b)
		Keissl (MTCC 5477) and *Phomposis* sp. (Sacc.)	
Taxol	*Taxus brevifolia*	*Taxomyces andreanae*	Stierle et al. (1993)
Camptothecin	*Nothapodytes foetida*	*Entrophospora infrequens*	Puri et al. (2005)

(continued)

Table 1.1 (continued)

Name of the metabolite	Plant/plant part	Microorganisms	References
Camptothecin	*Apodytes dimidiate*	*Fusarium solani*	Shweta et al. (2010)
Podophyllotoxin	*Sinopodophyllum hexandrum*	*Alternaria* sp.	Trivedi et al. (1970)
Podophyllotoxin	*Sabina recurva*	*Fusarium oxysporum*	Kour et al. (2007)
Vinblastine	*Catharanthus roseus*	*Alternaria* sp.	Li et al. (2004)
Vincristine	*Catharanthus roseus*	*Fusarium oxysporum*	Wang et al. (2006)
Hypericin	*Hypericum perforatum*	*Chaetomium globosum*	Kusari et al. (2008)
Diosgenin	*Paris polyphylla var. yunnanensis*	*Cephalosporium* sp.	Jin et al. (2004)
Azadirachtin	*Azadirachta indica*	*Eupenicillium parvum*	Kusari et al. (2011)

non-pectolytic as well as in tissues having various deposits. Screening of endophytic microbes for biologically active metabolites with promising medicinal and agricultural application may provide a suitable outcome from endophytes association as discussed in present volume.

1.7 Are Endophytes Remediating Pollutants in Ecosystems?

Most studies of wood-decaying fungi are based on advanced stages of wood degradation. However, some endophytic fungi could be involved in triggering the development of early stages of wood decay. In nature, endophytes inhabit asymptomatic plant tissues, living in symbiosis with their hosts. Thus it becomes necessary to explore the role of wood-inhabiting fungi and study their ligninolytic mechanistic strategies so as to exploit as alternative for degrading lignin or other recalcitrant compounds hazardous to environment. Technological application of these fungi could improve current technological performance of bioconversion processes as reviewed in Chap. 7.

Although phyto-extraction process affect many advantage to remediate heavy metal contaminated soil but it has several demerits mainly the process is economically non-viable (Succuro et al. 2009). The addition of microorganisms in the

plant rhizosphere is an established route to make the process more efficient. The microbial inducer improvement in the accumulation of the heavy metals in plant biomass are always coincident with enhances net phytoextraction (Pajuelo et al. 2007). Microbes in general and fungi in particular clean up environment and proved potential source for biodegradation of organic pollutant. Various genera of endophytic fungi developed a variety of tolerant mechanism toward host metabolites in order to increase their adaptability in environment and interconnection between different organisms further augment bioremediation potential of endophyte fungi in the management of toxic pollutant has suitably given in Chap. 8.

1.8 Factors Affecting Endophytic Colonization

Endophytic microbial colonization affecting by mass factors such as (a) temporary chilling of plant increases the release of amino acid from roots in sand soil (b) exudation induce under high intensity of light (capture by endophyte plant) and temperature (c) secondary metabolites of certain bacteria cause increase and in the presence of competitive synergative rhizobia; polygalactouronase is released from the roots resulting increase in polypeptide antibiotics thus increase the substantial leakage of both organic and inorganic compounds (Swamy et al. 2016). Root exudates are, therefore, bears induction of chemotaxis in bacteria towards the roots and the simultaneous conditioning of bacterial cells for host cell attachment. Thus, it is hypothesized that the capability of bacteria to condition for (plant) host cell attachment during chemotaxis is one of the most important factors for pathogenicity or colonization efficiency.

1.9 Conclusion and Suggestions

Endophytes in plants play significant role in microbial ecology, evolutionary biology, applied life sciences ranging from bioprospecting for genes and molecules to lead productivity enhancement and biocontrol for wide array of crop fungal pathogens. They are expected to control both endophytic fungi and epibiotic to other microorganisms of endophytic species as tools to manage plants disease, reproductive biology of plants. Biocatalysis and other biotechnological processes, new technologies and new crops with endophytes still have many areas open for future research. After consideration of all the chapters included in the present volume, some of the points have been summarized with few more interesting aspects being highlighted. More research on endophytes, yet to be cultivated on artificial culture media are required. This will be possible when a better knowledge of endophyte ecology and molecular interactions is attained.

References

Aeron A, Chauhan PS, Dubey RC, Maheshwari DK, Bajpai VK (2014) Root nodule bacteria from *Clitoria ternatea* L. are putative invasive nonrhizobial endophytes. Can J Microbiol 61(2):131–142

Beattie GA, Lindow SE (1999) Bacterial colonization of leaves: a spectrum of strategies. Phytopathology 89(5):353–359

Campbell DH (1908) Symbiosis in fern prothallia. Am Natural 42(495):154–165

Doty SL (2008) Enhancing phytoremediation through the use of transgenics and endophytes. New Phytol 179(2):318–333

Doty SL, Oakley B, Xin G, Kang JW, Singleton G, Khan Z et al (2009) Diazotrophic endophytes of native black cottonwood and willow. Symbiosis 47(1):23–33

Frank B (1885) Ueber die auf Wurzelsymbiose beruhende Ernahrung gewisser Baume durch unterirdische. Pilze Ber dt Bot Ges 3:128–145

Hardoim PR, van Overbeek LS, van Elsas JD (2008) Properties of bacterial endophytes and their proposed role in plant growth. Trend Microbiol 16(10):463–471

Hoffman MT, Arnold AE (2010) Diverse bacteria inhabit living hyphae of phylogenetically diverse fungal endophytes. Appl Environ Microbiol 76(12):4063–4075

Jin JM, Zhang YJ, Li HZ, Yang CR (2004) Cytotoxic Steroidal Saponins from Polygonatum z anlanscianense. J Nat Prod 67(12):1992–1995. doi:10.1021/np049897u

Kloepper JW, Ryu CM, Zhang S (2004) Induced systemic resistance and promotion of plant growth by *Bacillus* spp. Phytopathology 94(11):1259–1266

Koh S, Hik DS (2007) Herbivory mediates grass–endophyte relationships. Ecology 88(11):2752–2757

Kour A, Shawl AS, Rehman S, Sultan P, Qazi PH, Suden P et al (2007) Isolation and identification of an endophytic strain of *Fusarium oxysporum* producing podophyllotoxin from Juniperus recurva. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 24(7):1115–1121. doi:10.1007/s11274-007-9582-5

Kumara PM, Zuehlke S, Priti V, Ramesha BT, Shweta S, Ravikanth G et al (2012) *Fusarium proliferatum*, an endophytic fungus from *Dysoxylum binectariferum* Hook. f, produces rohitukine, a chromane alkaloid possessing anti-cancer activity. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 101(2):323–329

Kusari S, Lamshöft M, Zühlke S, Spiteller M (2008) An endophytic fungus from *Hypericum perforatum* that produces Hypericin. J Nat Prod 71(2):159–162. doi:10.1021/np070669k

Kusari S, Verma VC, Lamshoeft M, Spiteller M (2011) An endophytic fungus from *Azadirachta indica* A. Juss. that produces azadirachtin. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 28(3):1287–1294. doi:10.1007/s11274-011-0876-2

Kusari S, Verma VC, Lamshoeft M, Spiteller M (2012) An endophytic fungus from *Azadirachta indica* A. *Juss.* that produces azadirachtin. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 28(3):1287–1294

Li L, Huan-guo Z, Wang Li-na (2004) An improved non-repudiation protocol and its security analysis. Wuhan Univer J Nat Sci 9(3):288–292. doi:10.1007/bf02907880

Malfanova NV (2013) Endophytic bacteria with plant growth promoting and biocontrol abilities. Doctoral Dissertation, Institute Biology of Leiden (IBL), Faculty of Science, Leiden University

Malinowski DP, Belesky DP (2000) Adaptations of endophyte-infected cool-season grasses to environmental stresses: mechanisms of drought and mineral stress tolerance. Crop Sci 40 (4):923–940

Melnick RL, Zidack NK, Bailey BA, Maximova SN, Guiltinan M, Backman PA (2008) Bacterial endophytes: *Bacillus* spp. from annual crops as potential biological control agents of black pod rot of cacao. Biol Cont 46(1):46–56

Pajuelo E, Carrasco JA, Romero LC, Chamber MA, Gotor C (2007) Evaluation of the metal phytoextraction potential of crop legumes. Regulation of the expression of O-acetylserine (thiol) lyase under metal stress. Plant Biol 9(05):672–681

Puri SC, Verma V, Amna T, Qazi GN, Spiteller M (2005) An Endophytic Fungus from *Nothapodytes foetida* that Produces Camptothecin. J Nat Prod 68(12):1717–1719. doi:10.1021/np0502802

Ramamoorthy V, Viswanathan R, Raguchander T, Prakasam V, Samiyappan R (2001) Induction of systemic resistance by plant growth promoting rhizobacteria in crop plants against pests and diseases. Crop Protec 20(1):1–11

Segura A, Rodríguez-Conde S, Ramos C, Ramos JL (2009) Bacterial responses and interactions with plants during rhizoremediation. Microb Biotechnol 2(4):452–464

Shweta S, Zuehlke S, Ramesha BT, Priti V, Mohana Kumar P, Ravikanth G et al (2010) Endophytic fungal strains of *Fusarium solani*, from *Apodytes dimidiata* E. Mey. ex Arn (Icacinaceae) produce camptothecin, 10-hydroxycamptothecin and 9-methoxycamptothecin. Phytochemistry 71(1):117–122. doi:10.1016/j.phytochem.2009.09.030

Shweta S, Gurumurthy BR, Ravikanth G, Ramanan US, Shivanna MB (2013a) Endophytic fungi from *Miquelia dentata* Bedd., produce the anti-cancer alkaloid, camptothecine. Phytomedicine 20(3):337–342

Shweta S, Bindu JH, Raghu J, Suma HK, Manjunatha BL, Kumara PM et al (2013b) Isolation of endophytic bacteria producing the anti-cancer alkaloid camptothecine from Miquelia dentata Bedd. (Icacinaceae). Phytomedicine 20(10):913–917

Stierle A, Strobel G, Stierle D (1993) Taxol and taxane production by Taxomyces andreanae, an endophytic fungus of Pacific yew. Science 260(5105):214–216. doi:10.1126/science.8097061

Succuro JS, McDonald SS, Lu CR (2009) Phytoremediation: the wave of the future. In: Kirakosyan A, Kaufman PB (eds) Recent advances in plant biotechnology. Springer, US, pp 119–135

Swamy MK, Akthar MS, Sinniah UR (2016) Root exudates and their molecular interactions with rhizospheric microbes. In: Hakeem KR et al (eds) Plant, soil and microbes. Springer International Publishing, pp 59–77

Trivedi PM (1970) Anhydrous aluminum bromide in organic solvents. Indus Eng Chem Prod Res Develop 9(3):419–422. doi:10.1021/i360035a028

Wang W, Guo Q, You Q, Zhang K, Yang Y, Yu J et al (2006) Involvement of bax/bcl-2 in wogonin-induced apoptosis of human hepatoma cell line SMMC-7721. Anticancer Drugs 17 (7):797–805. doi:10.1097/01.cad.0000217431.64118.3f

Zhao J, Shan T, Mou Y, Zhou L (2011) Plant-derived bioactive compounds produced by endophytic fungi. Mini Rev Med Chem 11(2):159–168

Chapter 2
Plant Growth Promotion by Endophytic Bacteria in Nonnative Crop Hosts

Akshit Puri, Kiran Preet Padda and Chris P. Chanway

Abstract Studies highlighting the colonization and plant growth-promoting ability of endophytic bacteria inoculated into nonnative plant hosts reviewed and presented in this chapter. Endophytic bacteria, especially those related to the genus *Bacillus*, *Burkholderia*, *Enterobacter*, *Gluconacetobacter*, *Herbaspirillum*, *Paenibacillus*, *Pseudomonas* have been reported to form endophytic colonies in roots and shoot of nonnative plant hosts. Marker genes like green fluorescent protein have also been used widely to view the sites of colonization in real time. Apart from colonizing a nonnative plant host, these endophytic bacteria are also involved in promoting host plant growth and acting as a biocontrol agent against pathogenic fungi. Such endophytes have a great potential in future for sustainable agriculture since they could be used in a range of environmental and biological conditions.

Keywords Endophytic bacteria · Nonnative crop hosts · Biological nitrogen fixation · Plant growth promoting bacteria · Diazotrophic endophytes

2.1 Introduction

When one considers both the expected worldwide population increase and the increasing environmental damage that is a result of ever-greater levels of industrialization, it is clear that in the next 10–20 years it will be a significant challenge to feed all of the world's people, a problem that will only increase with time. According to a report released by the United Nations in 2015, the world's population is set to rise to 9.7 billion by 2050 (United Nations 2015). Sadly, the threat of

A. Puri (✉) · K.P. Padda · C.P. Chanway
Department of Forest and Conservation Sciences, The University of British Columbia, Forest Sciences Centre 3041, 2424 Main Mall, Vancouver, BC V6T 1Z4, Canada
e-mail: akshit.puri@alumni.ubc.ca

K.P. Padda
e-mail: kiranpreet.padda@alumni.ubc.ca

C.P. Chanway
e-mail: chris.chanway@ubc.ca

D.K. Maheshwari and K. Annapurna (eds.), *Endophytes: Crop Productivity and Protection*, Sustainable Development and Biodiversity 16,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-66544-3_2

having inadequate food to feed all of the world's population in future is again in the news. At this point, our world is experiencing a variety of problems like climate change, food wastage, spoilage on an enormous scale, unequal distribution of food resources, and continuously growing population. There is certainly no time to lose and the world needs to act to feed this growing population. Although it is quite tempting to use chemical fertilizers to boost up the agricultural productivity, such a solution will have a detrimental effect on our environment. Agricultural scientists around the world are working round the clock to look for innovative ways to increase agricultural productivity sustainably, but it certainly represents a great challenge for them. The use of microorganisms with the objective of improving agricultural productivity is one of the most important sustainable practices (Freitas et al. 2007).

The soil is full of microscopic life including a diverse range of bacteria, fungi, protozoa, and algae. It is estimated that there are more than 94 million organisms in a single gram of soil, with most of them being bacteria (Glick 2015). The interaction between bacteria and plants could be beneficial, neutral, or detrimental to the plant. However, the effect that a particular bacterium has on a plant may change as the conditions change. For instance, a bacterium that facilitates plant growth by providing either fixed nitrogen (N) or phosphorus compounds that are often present in only limited amounts in many soils is unlikely to provide any benefit to plants when a significant amount of chemical fertilizer added to the soil (Glick 2012). This observed when a bacterial strain of *Paenibacillus polymyxa* (Bal et al. 2012) was inoculated into lodgepole pine (*Pinus contorta* var. *latifolia* Engelm. ex S. Watson). The bacterial strain fixed significant amounts of N directly from the atmosphere under N-limited conditions (Anand et al. 2013), but was unresponsive when sufficient amount of N was present in the soil (Yang et al. 2016, 2017).

2.2 Plant Growth-Promoting Bacteria (PGPB): Biofertilizers for Sustainable Agriculture

Bacteria that are able to provide a range of benefits to the plant also known as plant growth-promoting bacteria (PGPB). Bashan and Holguin (1998) proposed the term PGPB in the field of plant-microbe interactions. These bacteria are capable to affect plant growth via numerous independent or linked mechanisms for sustainable agriculture (Compant et al. 2010; Palacios et al. 2014). They counteract many stresses in plants (Kang et al. 2010; Kim et al. 2012), fighting against phytopathogens (Verhagen et al. 2004; Raaijmakers et al. 2009) and assisting in the recovery of damaged or degraded environments (Denton 2007; de Bashan et al. 2012). Nowadays, PGPBs are of great interest because of their applications in agriculture as biofertilizers, pesticides, and phytoremediation (Sturz et al. 2000; Berg 2009; Lugtenberg and Kamilova 2009; Weyens et al. 2009; Compant et al. 2010). Classification of PGPB based on their habitable niche presented in Fig. 2.1.

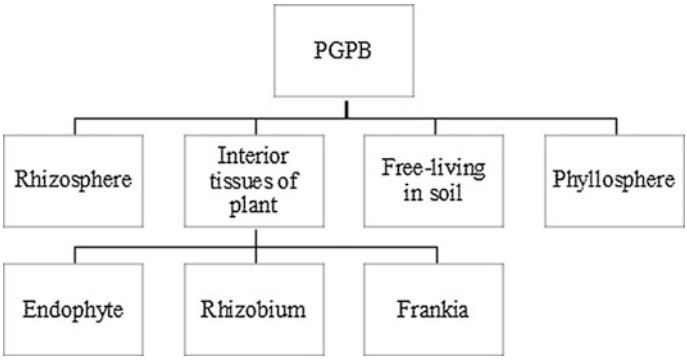


Fig. 2.1 Classification of plant growth-promoting bacteria (PGPB) based on their habitable niches

The rhizosphere is well explained and known to host a diversity of PGPB from more than 20 genera, including *Pseudomonas*, *Bacillus*, *Burkholderia*, *Enterobacter*, *Paenibacillus*, *Azospirillum*, *Agrobacterium*, and *Azotobacter*. Several bacteria deriving from the rhizosphere not only colonize the rhizoplane but can also enter plants and colonize internal tissues and many of them have shown plant growth-promoting effects (Hallmann 2001; Sessitsch et al. 2004; Compant et al. 2005, 2008, 2010; Hallmann and Berg 2006; Anand et al. 2013; Puri et al. 2015; Padda et al. 2016a, b). Often not considered as PGPB, cyanobacteria are also renowned for their ability to promote plant growth indirectly by fixing carbon through oxygen photosynthesis and N through biological nitrogen fixation. They can survive in diverse ecological niches including but not limited to phyllosphere (Fürnkranz et al. 2008; Hamisi et al. 2013), rhizosphere (Karthikeyan et al. 2009; Prasanna et al. 2009) and plant interior (Tyagi et al. 1980; Krings et al. 2009).

2.3 Endophytic Bacteria: Microbial Life Inside the Plant

About 150 years ago the term, "endophyte" was first coined by de Bary (1866) for pathogenic fungi entering inside leaves. Since then, many authors have been redefining this term, but taken literally, the word endophyte means "in the plant" (endon = within; phyton = plant). Galippe (1887) was the first scientist to postulate that various vegetable plants host microbes within their interior and these microbes are soil habitant. This was later confirmed by di Vestea (1888), but well-known scientists at that time such as Pasteur, Chamberland, Fernbach, Laurent, and others claimed that plants are normally free of microbes and they indeed demonstrated contradictory results to prove that Galippe's hypothesis is wrong (Compant et al. 2010). However, it is now well accepted that plants generally host a wide range of phylogenetically distinct endophytes in various organs (Bacon and White 2000),

and that almost all of these microbes are derived from the soil environment (Rosenblueth and Martínez-Romero 2006; Hardoim et al. 2008; Ryan et al. 2008; Compant et al. 2010).

Since this chapter has key focus on endophytic bacteria, the term needs to redefine before starting a new discussion. Numerous definitions of the term "Endophytic Bacteria" could be found in the literature (Kado 1992; Quispel 1992; Beattie and Lindow 1995; Hallmann et al. 1997), but each has its own restrictions. In this chapter, we use the term "Endophytic Bacteria" to describe "the bacteria that can be detected at a particular moment within the tissue of apparently healthy plant hosts without inducing disease or organogenesis" (Chanway et al. 2014). It is believed that via rhizosphere colonization, endophytic bacteria become colonize in various plant parts/tissues such as roots, stem, leaves, flowers, fruits, and seeds (James et al. 2002; Sessitsch et al. 2002; Berg et al. 2005; Compant et al. 2005, 2008, 2011; Okunishi et al. 2005; Bal et al. 2012; de Melo Pereira et al. 2012; Anand and Chanway 2013a; Trognitz et al. 2014; Puri et al. 2015, 2016a, b). Endophytic bacterial population is extremely variable in different plant organs and tissues shown to vary in from as low as hundreds to as high as 9×10^9 of bacteria per gram plant tissue (Jacobs et al. 1985; Misaghi and Donndelinger 1990; Sturz et al. 1997; Hallmann et al. 1997; Chi et al. 2005; Padda et al. 2016a, b). In contrast to free-living, rhizosphere or phyllosphere microorganisms, bacterial endophytes are better protected from abiotic stresses such as extreme variations in temperature, pH, nutrient, and water availability as well as biotic stresses such as competition (Loper et al. 1985; Cocking 2003; Rosenblueth and Martinez-Romero 2006). In addition, endophytic bacteria colonize niches that are more conducive to forming mutualistic relationships with plants (Richardson et al. 2009), for example providing fixed N to the plant and getting photosynthate in return (Hallman et al. 1997; Reinhold-Hurek and Hurek 1998a, b; Santi et al. 2013). Primary mechanisms by which endophytic bacteria promotes plant growth are highlighted in Fig. 2.2.

2.3.1 *Diazotrophic Endophytes: Biological N-Fixers Living Inside the Plant*

For plants, N is an essential mineral required to survive and grow. It is a primary constituent of nucleotides, proteins, and chlorophyll (Robertson and Vitousek 2009). The availability of fixed N (nitrate or ammonium converted from dinitrogen) is seen by many as the most yield-limiting factor related to crop production (Muthukumarasamy et al. 2002). Although N is found in high abundance in the atmosphere, biologically available N in terrestrial ecosystems is in short supply. Root-nodulating bacteria, such as well-known rhizobia form a symbiotic association and provide biologically fixed N directly to leguminous plants. However, nonleguminous plants, including economically important crop species belonging to Poaceae family like sugarcane (*Saccharum officinarum* L.), corn (*Zea mays* L.),

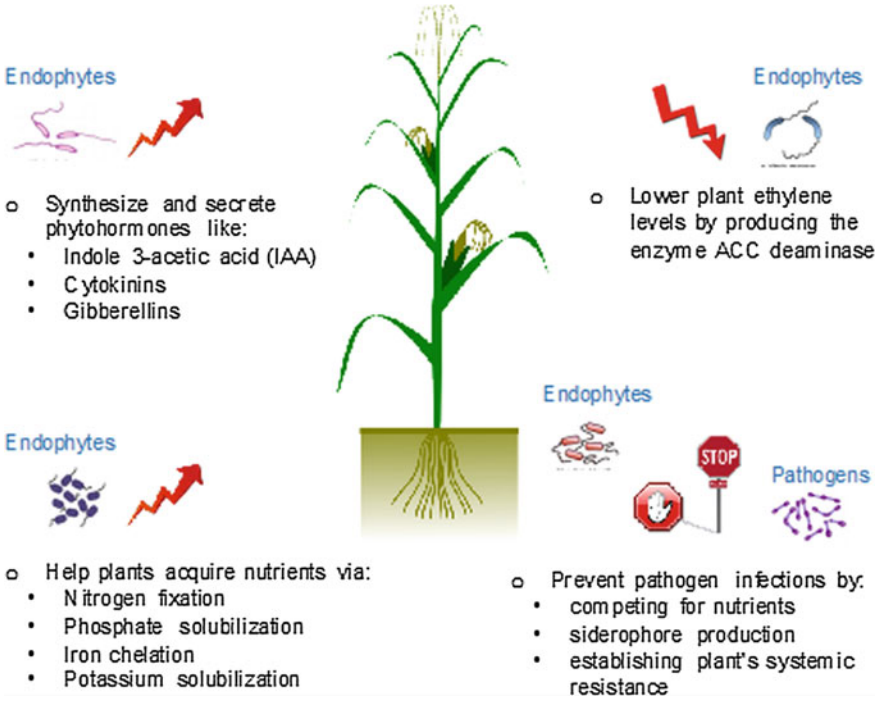


Fig. 2.2 Principal mechanisms of plant growth promotion exhibited by endophytic bacteria

wheat (*Triticum* spp.), and rice (*Oryza sativa*), do not have this type of symbiosis. Brazilian researchers were the first to report the presence of N-fixing bacteria (diazotrophs) in the rhizosphere and rhizoplane of a nonleguminous plant, sugarcane (Döbereiner and Alvahydo 1959; Döbereiner 1961). Initially, it was postulated that nitrogenase activity occurs in the rhizosphere soil but not in roots (Döbereiner et al. 1972; Ruschel 1981). In subsequent studies, various diazotrophs like *Azospirillum lipoferum*, *Azospirillum amazonense*, *Bacillus azotofixans*, *Enterobacter cloacae*, *Erwinia herbicola*, *Bacillus polymyxa* (Rennie et al. 1982; Magalhaes et al. 1983; Seldin et al. 1984; Baldani et al. 1986) were isolated from the rhizosphere of sugarcane. Later, it was determined that rhizospheric N-fixation does not occur at sufficient rates to facilitate high sugarcane yields. Cavalcante and Döbereiner (1988) reported the isolation of a diazotrophic bacterium from the stem and root tissues of sugarcane and postulated that this bacterium might be involved in fixing high amounts of N biologically. The isolated diazotroph was initially named as *Saccharobacter nitrocaptans* (Cavalcante and Döbereiner 1988) but was later changed to *Acetobacter diazotrophicus* (Gillis et al. 1989) and then renamed as *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus* (Yamada et al. 1997). This bacterium was able to form high endophytic populations and fix N at high sucrose concentrations (Boddey et al. 1991) and in low pH conditions (Boddey et al. 1991; Stephan et al.

1991) and these conditions are typically found in sugarcane tissues. This led to the suggestion that it can satisfy almost all of the sugarcane N requirements while living inside the sugarcane tissues. The term "endophytic diazotrophic bacteria" was then coined by Döbereiner (1992) to designate all diazotrophs able to colonize primarily the root interior of graminaceous plants, survive very poorly in soil and fix N in association with these plants (Baldani et al. 1998). Since the discovery of endophytic diazotrophic bacteria in sugarcane, other agronomically important crop species including rice (Baldani et al. 2000; Gyaneshwar et al. 2001; Hurek et al. 2002), corn (Olivares et al. 1996; Riggs et al. 2001; Roesch et al. 2008; Montañez et al. 2009; Puri et al. 2015, 2016b), canola (*Brassica napus* L.) (Germida and de Freitas 1998; Puri et al. 2016a; Padda et al. 2016a, b) and wheat (Sabry et al. 1997) have been postulated to receive significant amounts of fixed N in this way. Table 2.1 presents a brief list of prominent diazotrophic endophytes isolated from key agricultural crops.

Table 2.1 Prominent diazotrophic bacteria isolated from different crop species

Crop	Diazotrophic endophytes	References
Canola	*Bacillus polymyxa*	Germida and de Freitas (1998)
	Paenibacillus polymxa	Padda et al. (2016a, b), Puri et al. (2016a)
Corn	*Burkholderia tropica* sp.	Reis et al. (2004)
	Burkholderia silvatlantica sp.	Perin et al. (2006)
	Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus	Eskin (2012)
	Herbaspirillum spp.	Olivares et al. (1996), Roesch et al. (2008)
	Ideonella spp.	Roesch et al. (2008)
	Klebsiella pneumoniae	Palus et al. (1996), Chelius and Triplett (2000)
	Paenibacillus polymyxa	Puri et al. (2015, 2016b)
	Pseudomonas spp.	Montañez et al. (2009)
Rice	*Alcaligenes faecalis* [now known as *Pseudomonas stutzeri* (Vermeiren et al. 1999)]	You and Zhou (1989)
	Azoarcus spp.	Egener et al. (1999), Engelhard et al. (2000), Hurek et al. (2002)
	Burkholderia spp.	Baldani et al. (2000), Rangjaroen et al. (2015)
	Herbaspirillum spp.	Baldani et al. (2000), Elbeltagy et al. (2001)
	Klebsiella sp.	Rangjaroen et al. (2015)
	Serratia marcescens	Gyaneshwar et al. (2001)
Sugarcane	*Azoarcus* spp.	Reinhold-Hurek et al. (1993)
	Azospirillum brasilense	Carrizo de Bellone and Bellone (2006)
	Burkholderia tropica sp.	Reis et al. (2004)

(continued)

Table 2.1 (continued)

Crop	Diazotrophic endophytes	References
	Burkholderia silvatlantica sp.	Perin et al. (2006)
	Herbaspirillum spp.	Baldani et al. (1992, 1996, 2002), Cavalcante and Dobereiner (1988), Muthukumarsamy et al. (1999)
	Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus	Gillis et al. (1989), Boddey et al. (1991), Stephan et al. (1991), Cavalcante and Dobereiner (1988), Sevilla et al. (2001)
Wheat	*Azorhizobium caulinodans*	Sabry et al. (1997)
	Azospirillum brasilense	Schloter and Hartmann (1998), Rothballer et al. (2003)
	Klebsiella pneumoniae	Iniguez et al. (2004)
	Herbaspirillum hiltneri	Rothballer et al. (2006)

2.4 Foreign Associations: Endophytic Bacteria Promoting the Growth of Nonnative Crop Species

Plants are a complex micro-ecosystem which can only be colonized by foreign microbes having metabolic diversity. Foreign associations of endophytes are not unfamiliar to the scientific community and numerous studies have highlighted the ability of these microbes to associate with a diversity of hosts. Endophytic bacteria can colonize and provide benefits to a variety of foreign plant hosts ranging from monocots to dicots, gymnosperms to angiosperms and woody trees to herbaceous plants. Although the list of these endophytes is very long and include genera such as *Acetobacter, Arthrobacter*, *Azoarcus*, *Azospirillum*, *Bacillus*, *Bradyrhizobium*, *Burkholderia*, *Enterobacter*, *Flavobacterium*, *Frankia*, *Gluconacetobacter*, *Herbaspirillum*, *Paenibacillus*, *Pseudomonas*, *Rhizobacter*, *Rhizobium*, *Sinorhizobium*, *Streptomyces*, and *Xanthomonas*, only a few important ones have been discussed in this chapter. A brief informative list of key endophytes that have been reported to play an important role in growth promotion of nonnative hosts through direct or indirect mechanisms has been compiled in Table 2.2. In the sub-sections to follow, studies relating to endophytic colonization and plant growth promotion by six of the most important bacterial endophytes reported in foreign plant host species have been reviewed in detail.

2.4.1 Arthrobacter

In 1947, Conn and Dimmick established a new genus "*Arthrobacter*" in the world of Microbiology (Conn and Dimmick 1947). By far more than 70 species have been included in this genus (Fu et al. 2014). Bacterial species belonging to this genus are

Table 2.2 List of important endophytic bacteria reported to colonize and promote growth of nonnative plant hosts

Genus	Strain	Isolated from	Inoculated into	Benefits provided to the nonnative host
Arthrobacter	*A. humicola* YC6002	Korean turf grass (Chung et al. 2010)	Radish (Chung et al. 2010)	Weed management
Azoarcus	*A.* sp. BH72	Kallar grass (Reinhold-Hurek et al. 1993)	Rice (Hurek et al. 1994)	Increases biomass and total protein
Bacillus	*B. subtilis* EDR4	Wheat (Qiao et al. 2006)	Rapeseed (Chen et al. 2014)	Biocontrol against pathogenic fungus
	B. licheniformis CHM1	Rice (Wang et al. 2009a)	Cole (Wang et al. 2009a)	Increases fresh weight and chlorophyll content
	B. subtilis FL and *B. atrophaeus* NRRLNRS-213	Japanese honeysuckle (Zhao et al. 2015)	Wheat (Zhao et al. 2015)	Increases seedling biomass and length
	B. subtilis EPC8	Coconut (Rajendran et al. 2008)	Tomato (Prabhukarthikeyan et al. 2014)	Increases plant length and fruit yield
Burkholderia	*B. gladioli* 3A12	Corn (Shehata et al. 2016)	Creeping bentgrass (Shehata et al. 2016)	Biocontrol against common crop pathogens
	B. cenocepacia 869T2	Vetiver grass (Ho et al. 2015)	Banana (Ho et al. 2015)	Biocontrol against fungus that causes Panama disease of Banana
	B. phytofirmans PsJN	Onion (Frommel et al. 1991)	Potato (Frommel et al. 1991)	Enhances root growth and plant lignin content
			Potato (Frommel et al. 1993)	Enhances root growth and overall yields
			Grapevine (Compant et al. 2005, 2008)	Increases seedling length and fresh weight

(continued)

Table 2.2 (continued)

Genus	Strain	Isolated from	Inoculated into	Benefits provided to the nonnative host
Enterobacter	*E. asburiae* JM22	Cotton (McInroy and Kloepper 1995)	Cucumber and bean (Quadt-Hallmann and Kloepper 1996)	–
	E. sp. strain 35	Sugarcane (Tanaka et al. 2006)	Cultivated rice and wild rice (Zakria et al. 2008)	Nitrogen fixation
	E. cloacae 344	Cacao tree (Leite et al. 2013)	Cucumber, corn, common beans (Moreira et al. 2015)	–
Gluconacetobacter	*G. diazotrophicus* spp.	Sugarcane (Youssef et al. 2004)	Wheat (Youssef et al. 2004)	Nitrogen fixation
	G. diazotrophicus PAL5	Sugarcane (Bertalan et al. 2009)	Rice (Alquéres et al. 2013)	–
			Rice (Rouws et al. 2010)	–
			Arabidopsis thaliana (Rangel de Souza et al. 2016)	Increases photosynthetic rate and water-use efficiency
	Acetobacter diazotrophicus (now known as *G. diazotrophicus*) PA15	Sugarcane (Gillis et al. 1989)	Rice (Sevilla and Kennedy 2000)	Increases plant height in N-limited conditions
Herbaspirillum	*H. seropedicae* strains ZAE94 and ZAE67	Sorghum (Baldani et al. 1986)	Rice (Baldani et al. 2000)	Fixes nitrogen and increases biomass
	H. seropedicae strain LR15	Corn (Baldani et al. 1986)	Corn, sorghum, rice (Roncato-Maccari et al. 2003)	Nitrogen fixation
	H. frisingense strain GSF30^T	*Miscanthus sacchariflorus* (Kirchhof et al. 2001)	Barley (Rothballer et al. 2008)	IAA production and ACC utilization

(continued)

Table 2.2 (continued)

Genus	Strain	Isolated from	Inoculated into	Benefits provided to the nonnative host
Paenibacillus	*P. polymyxa* strains 1D6, 4G12 and 4G4	Wild maize (teosinte) (Johnston-Monje and Raizada 2011)	Modern maize (corn) hybrid (P35F40) (Mousa et al. 2015)	Reduce Gibberella ear rot disease severity
	P. polymyxa IAM 13419 and *P. ehimensis* IFO15659	Japanese honeysuckle (Zhao et al. 2015)	Wheat (Zhao et al. 2015)	Increase seedling length, biomass and chlorophyll content
	P. polymyxa P2b-2R	Lodgepole pine (Bal et al. 2012)	Corn (Puri et al. 2015, 2016b)	Fixes nitrogen and increases seedling length and biomass
			Canola (Puri et al. 2016a; Padda et al. 2016a, b)	
			Tomato (Padda et al. 2016a)	
Pseudomonas	*P.* sp. Ph6	Clover (Sun et al. 2014)	Ryegrass (Sun et al. 2014)	Degrades phenanthrene, a toxic metabolite that enters plant
	P. aeruginosa PM389	Pearl millet (Gupta et al. 2013)	Wheat (Gupta et al. 2013)	Increases root and shoot length and vigor index
	P. brassicacearum YC5480	*Artemisia* sp. (Chung et al. 2008)	Radish (Chung et al. 2008)	Counteracts inhibitory effect of a pathogenic fungus on seed germination and shoot growth
	P. aeruginosa PW09	Wheat (Pandey et al. 2012)	Cucumber (Pandey et al. 2012)	Increases seedling biomass under biotic and abiotic stresses

Gram-positive obligate aerobes commonly found in soils. They are rod-shaped during the stationary growth phase and cocci-shaped during stationary phase. Members of *Arthrobacter* genus can survive in a variety of environmental conditions, including but not limited to water, air, human skin, oil, sludge, tobacco leaves, soil (Ding et al. 2013; Fu et al. 2014). Studies have shown that members of this genus can be helpful in many ways in agriculture. For instance, they fix atmospheric N, solubilize sulfur and phosphorous in soil and degrade heavy metals in polluted sites (Singer et al. 2000; Jiang et al. 2004; Postma et al. 2010). One of the most important aspects of plant growth promotion is deriving N from the atmosphere. *Arthrobacter* sp. HS-G8 was isolated from compost in Japan's Okinawa prefecture that possessed N-fixing ability (Jiang et al. 2004). In another study, two endophytic strains, *Arthrobacter nitroguajacolicus* A18 and A34, originally isolated from corn leaves possess nitrogenase reductase gene *nif*H indicating that these strains could fix atmospheric N (Pisarska and Pietr 2012). These strains successfully colonized and fixed N in different cultivars of corn thereby promoting the growth of a nonnative host (Pisarska and Pietr 2012). An endophytic bacterial strain, *Arthrobacter humicola* YC6002, from surface-sterilized root tissues of Korean turf grass (*Zoysia japonica*) reported by Chung et al. (2010). This bacterial endophyte successfully colonized internal tissues of a nonnative host, radish (*Raphanus sativus*), and could be used in future for weed management due to its ability to produce phytotoxic compounds like 3-phenylpropionic acid (Chung et al. 2010).

2.4.2 *Bacillus*

The history of genus *Bacillus* dates back to 1835 when Christian Gottfried Ehrenberg isolated a bacterium (*Vibrio subtilis*, now known as *Bacillus subtilis*) belonging to this genus (Ehrenberg 1835). Later, in 1872, Ferdinand Cohn proposed a new genus "*Bacillus*" and renamed *Vibrio subtilis* to *Bacillus subtilis* (Cohn 1872). Bacteria of this genus are Gram-positive, endospore-forming and rod-shaped that could be either obligate aerobes or facultative anaerobes. Genus *Bacillus* is one of the most diverse group of bacteria that is well known for its many agricultural and industrial applications. In agriculture, bacteria of this genus are widely used as an effective biocontrol agent for numerous crop species. The commercial success of *Bacillus thuringiensis* exemplified as a biocontrol agent worldwide. Other bacterial isolates of this genus having biocontrol and plant growth-promoting (PGP) properties have also been widely studied and successfully used commercially in agriculture. Endophytic colonization in plant species by bacteria has also been reported (Wang et al. 2009b; Lee et al. 2012; Liu et al. 2014; Khalifa and Almalki 2015). Biocontrol of pathogens like *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum*, *Fusarium oxysporum*, *Rhizoctonia solani*, *Botrytis cinereapers*, *Gibberella zeae*, *Dothiorella gregaria*, *Colletotrichum gossypii*, *Phytophthora capsici*, *Pythium myriotylum*, *Athelia rolfsii*, *Magnaporthe oryzae*, *Ralstonia solanacearum, and*

Xanthomonas axonopodis pv. *punicae* by *Bacillus* in non-native plants has been reported over the years (Maheshwari 2013).

Stem rot disease of rapeseed (*Brassica napus* L.), caused by a pathogenic fungus *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum*, is a major problem faced worldwide by many countries. Chen et al. (2014) tested the ability of an endophyte, *B. subtilis* EDR4, to inhibit the growth of this pathogen in vitro and in vivo in rapeseed under greenhouse and field conditions. *B. subtilis* EDR4 was initially isolated from root tissues of wheat (Qiao et al. 2006) and subsequently reported to inhibit the growth of the fungal pathogen, *Gaeumannomyces graminis* var. *tritici*, of wheat (Liu et al. 2007). In the in vitro experiments, germination rate and hyphal growth of *S. sclerotiorum* were significantly inhibited by *B. subtilis* EDR4 and the results of in vivo experiment conducted under greenhouse and field conditions were no different. Scanning electron microscopy revealed that EDR4 causes leakage in the cytoplasm, shrinking of hyphae and irregular swelling of tips of the fungus. In another study related to *Brassica napus*, an endophytic strain *B. licheniformis* CHM1 was isolated from stem tissues of rice and tested for biocontrol activity and plant growth promotion in cole (*Brassica napus*) (Wang et al. 2009a). Strain CHM1 colonized stem/leaf tissues and significantly promoted the growth of cole seedlings (increasing the fresh weight of seedlings by 72% and chlorophyll content by 61%). This bacterial strain also inhibited the growth of common fungal pathogens like *F. oxysporum*, *R. solani*, *B. cinereapers*, *D. gregaria*, *G. zeae* and *C. gossypii* in in vitro experiments. In in vivo experiments, it provided 60% protection against *R. solani* in horse bean (*Vicia faba*) and 70% protection against *Bipolaris maydis* in corn. In a more recent study, wheat plant growth was significantly promoted by two endophytic strains (135 and 170) belonging to the genus *Bacillus*, isolated from stem and root tissues of a medicinal plant, *Lonicera japonica*, native to eastern China (Zhao et al. 2015). In in vitro experiments, it was found that these two strains possess many PGP traits that could increase wheat growth. Results of in vivo experiment were consistent with results of in vitro experiment since inoculation with these strains significantly increases fresh weight, dry weight and length of wheat seedlings along with the chlorophyll content. These strains also showed in vitro antifungal activity against common pathogenic fungi like *Magnaporthe grisea* (rice blast fungus), *F. oxysporum* (usually affects wheat and rice crops) and *Alternaria alternate* (causes leaf spot disease). Based on the results of physiological and biochemical tests, and the sequencing of 16S rRNA gene and phylogeny analysis, it was revealed that strains *Bacillus* spp. 135 and 170 are very closely related to *B. subtilis* FL and *B. atrophaeus* NRRLNRS-213^{T}, respectively. This study was also important in establishing the fact that strains belonging to genus *Bacillus* are potentially capable of colonizing and promoting the growth of a completely distinct host (wheat, a monocot) as compared to the host species from which it was isolated (*Lonicera japonica*, a eudicot).

In a completely different approach to combat with pathogens and increase plant yield, Prabhukarthikeyan et al. (2014) used a bioformulation containing a mixture of an entomopathogenic fungus, *Beauveria bassiana* B2, known for its ability to control a wide range of agriculturally important insect pests and an endophytic

strain of *B. subtilis* (EPC8) against *Fusarium* wilt (*F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici*) and fruit borer (*Helicoverpa armigera*) disease in tomato (*Solanum lycopersicum* Mill.). It should be noted that *B. subtilis* EPC8 was initially isolated from root tissues of coconut (*Cocos nucifera*) (Rajendran et al. 2008). Bioformulation of B2 and EPC8 suppressed these pathogens in in vitro experiments and under glasshouse and field conditions when tomato plants were treated with this mixture. The combination of B2 and EPC8 was better than the pesticide control (carbendazim + quinalphos) against both *Fusarium* wilt and fruit borer in glasshouse study and was equally good in field conditions. Interestingly, it was also observed that such bioformulation promotes tomato growth by increasing the plant height and fruit yield under both glasshouse and field conditions. Recently, Munjal et al. (2016) reported that an endophytic biocontrol agent, *Bacillus megaterium* BP17, initially isolated from root tissues of black pepper (*Piper nigrum*) (Aravind et al. 2009) can colonize ginger plant (*Zingiber officinale*). Ginger roots were successfully colonized by this bacterial strain with population size ranging from 2.5 to 2.8 $\log_{10}$ cfu/g. It was also reported that this bacterial strain is capable of releasing antimicrobial chemical compounds. In an interesting study, colonization pattern of three nonnative host species by an endophytic *Bacillus* strain under sterile and non-sterile conditions was reported by Moreira et al. (2015). *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* 629 was initially isolated from *Theobroma cacao* (Leite et al. 2013) and was inoculated into three distinct host species namely, cucumber (*Cucumis sativus* cv. Marketmore 76), corn (cv. BRS Caatingueiro) and common bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris* cv. BRS Notável). Strain 629 successfully colonized stem and leaf tissues of cucumber, root and stem tissues of common bean, and root, stem and leaf tissues of corn plant under both sterile and non-sterile conditions significantly. It is important to note that the population size of endophytic bacteria was 3 times lower under non-sterile conditions in all plant species as compared to the sterile conditions. It could be concluded that indigenous endophytic bacteria and fungi pose a competition to the nonindigenous endophytes. Thus, the foreign association and establishment of an endophyte within a nonnative host is a formidable task.

2.4.3 *Burkholderia*

The genus '*Burkholderia*' was first proposed by Yabuuchi et al. (1992) for the RNA homology group II of *Pseudomonas* genus. Seven species of this group were transferred to the new genus *Burkholderia* and renamed as *B. caryophylli*, *B. cepacia*, *B. gladioli*, *B. mallei*, *B. pickettii*, *B. pseudomallei,* and *B. solanacearum*. Currently, there are close to 100 species in this genus that are known to inhabit diverse ecological niches, ranging from contaminated soils to the respiratory tract of humans. *Burkholderia* species are renowned for their ability to promote plant growth through various mechanisms including, N-fixation (Gillis et al. 1995; Cruz et al. 2001; Estrada-De Los Santos et al. 2001) and biocontrol of pathogens (Hebbar et al. 1998; Heungens and Parke 2000; Parke and Gurian-Sherman 2001). The

majority of species are soil bacteria that are generally found in the rhizosphere or as free-living microbes in the soil but there are some species that can colonize internal tissues of plants and form beneficial interactions (Caballero-Mellado et al. 2004; Pandey et al. 2005; Park et al. 2005; Mendes et al. 2007; Ho et al. 2015). The interactions of some endophytic species of *Burkholderia* genus seem to be restricted to only one type of host, whereas other species have a diverse host range (Coenye and Vandamme 2003).

In a recent study, three strains belonging to the *B. gladioli* species were isolated from roots and seeds of ancient and wild maize plants (Shehata et al. 2016). In vitro studies revealed that these strains can inhibit fungal pathogen *Sclerotinia homoeocarpa* and their interaction was also visualized on microscope slides by staining with Evans blue. These strains were also successful in inhibiting the growth of other common crop pathogens. The ability of these strains to act as a biocontrol against *S. homoeocarpa* was also tested in vivo with creeping bentgrass (*Agrostis stolonifera*) in two greenhouse trials and the results were no different from the in vitro studies. The endophytic ability of one of the strains, *B. gladioli* 3A12, was also tested in a nonnative host, creeping bentgrass, by tagging the strain with green fluorescent protein (GFP) and examining under a confocal microscope. It was found that GFP-tagged 3A12 strain successfully colonized shoots of creeping bentgrass. The authors concluded that wild cultivars of agricultural crops might possess an unexplored reservoir of bacterial endophytes having biocontrol traits against a wide range of pathogens. In a study conducted a few years back, an endophyte, *B. cenocepacia* 869T2, was isolated from root tissues of vetiver grass (*Chrysopogon zizanioides*) (Ho et al. 2015). In vitro, strain 869T2 was able to inhibit the mycelial growth of *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *cubense* tropical race 4 (Foc TR4), a pathogenic fungus that causes Panama disease in banana (*Musa acuminata*), showing 44% antifungal efficiency. When this endophytic strain was inoculated into banana plantlets (Cavendish cv. Pei-Chiao), it developed stable endophytic population in pseudostem tissues, thus showing endophytism in a distinct host. The in-field experiment revealed that inoculation of banana plantlets with strain 869T2 not only reduces the disease symptoms of Foc TR4 but also promotes growth by increasing the plant height and pseudostem girth significantly. This strain of *B. cenocepacia* can be used as an effective biocontrol agent in susceptible banana cultivars. Species of *Burkholderia* MSSP inhabit root nodule of *Mimosa pudica* capable for N fixation along with antagonism against *Rhizoctonia solani,* and *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum* has been reported by Pandey et al. (2005).

A remarkable endophytic bacterial strain (PsJN) was isolated by Dr. Jerzy Nowak as a contaminant from surface-sterilized onion (*Allium cepa* L.) roots infected with fungal pathogen *Glomus vesiculiferum* (Frommel et al. 1991; Sessitsch et al. 2005). This strain has shown outstanding ability over the years to endophytically colonize a wide range of plant hosts. The strain PsJN was initially classified as a *Pseudomonas* sp. (Frommel et al. 1991), but was later reclassified as a *B. phytofirmans* sp. (Sessitsch et al. 2005). Endophytic colonization by PsJN in a nonnative host was first reported in potato (*Solanum tuberosum*) (Frommel et al. 1991). By using light and electron microscopy Frommel et al. also reported that

endophytic population of PsJN strain is present in the epidermal layers of root and in the xylem tissues of the stem. They also found that inoculation significantly promotes the growth of potato plantlets by increasing root dry weight, secondary root branching, root number, haulm dry weight, stem length, leaf hair formation, and total lignin content of the plant. They also laid out a preliminary hypothesis that growth promotion by the strain PsJN is due to the production of phytohormones. In a subsequent study (Frommel et al. 1993), the ability of this strain to colonize internal root tissues and promote plant growth in field conditions was reported with the same cultivar of potato as was used in Frommel et al. (1991). In-field, it stimulated plant emergence, root development, and overall yields of the potato plant. Another report about the endophytic colonization of a nonnative host by strain PsJN was published in 1997, in which the effect of inoculum density, temperature, and genotype on colonization and growth promotion of tomato (*Lycopersicon esculentum* L.) seedlings was evaluated (Pillay and Nowak 1997). In this study, the inoculum range that promoted shoot and root interior colonization also best-promoted plant growth of tomato cultivars. Endophytic colonization patterns of strain PsJN were reported for the first time by Compant et al. (2005) inside grapevine (*Vitis Vinifer* L.). The strain PsJN was tagged with GFP or *gusA* and visualized under the desired microscope to examine internal tissue colonization. Colonization of grapevine plantlet started with the bacterial strain gaining entry through the sites of the emergence of lateral root or through the root tips, then accumulating near the cell wall of the rhizodermis cells followed by intercellular colonization of cortical cells. PsJN bacterial cells moved up through the xylem vessels colonizing the fifth internode and leaf internal tissues. It was also observed that the strain PsJN secretes cell wall-degrading enzymes, endoglucanase, and endopolygalacturonase thus supporting the findings of microscopy studies. In a subsequent study with grapevine, GFP-tagged PsJN strain could also be visualized as an endophyte inside young berries (Compant et al. 2008) and was able to thrive inside and outside the plantlet even when grown under non-sterile conditions (with the presence of other microorganisms). Analysis of the complete genome of a microorganism can reveal a lot about its properties and behavior in diverse ecological niches. Although, the complete genome of *B. phytofirmans* PsJN was sequenced and reported earlier (Weilharter et al. 2011), the analysis of the genome was carried out by Mitter et al. (2013). As reported by Mitter et al. PsJN strain in many aspects is outstanding because it has a large genome which is well-equipped with genes that can degrade complex organic compounds (plant cell walls). It also possesses a high number of cell surface signaling and secretion systems and has a 3-OH-PAME quorum-sensing system that might be helping this bacterium to switch from free-living to symbiotic lifestyle. In another interesting study, the ability to fix N was successfully transferred from a known N-fixing bacterium, *B. phymatum* STM 815, to *B. phytofirmans* PsJN through horizontal gene transfer (Lowman et al. 2015). The new strain was named PsJN+, which outperformed the wild-type strain PsJN in terms of promoting the growth of switchgrass plant even under low N conditions. *B. phytofirmans* PsJN is a unique and completely outstanding endophyte that has been shown wide spectrum of endophytic lifestyles in

diverse host species ranging from monocots to dicots since its isolation from onion roots (Frommel et al. 1991, 1993; Liu et al. 1995; Pillay and Nowak 1997; Sharma and Nowak 1998; Nowak et al. 2004; Compant et al. 2005, 2008; Sun et al. 2009; Poupin et al. 2013; Naveed et al. 2014a, b) and could be used as an effective commercial biofertilizer in agriculture production.

2.4.4 *Gluconacetobacter*

The genus *Gluconacetobacter* was proposed by Yamada et al. (1997) in an attempt to reclassify and include the bacterial species *Acetobacter diazotrophicus* into a new genus. Although there are currently 24 species in this genus but the most widely studied species is *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus*. *G. diazotrophicus* is a renowned diazotrophic endophyte found frequently in tissues of sugarcane and other grasses, known for its ability to provide significant amounts of N to the plant directly from the atmosphere. Studies about this bacterial species, including earliest isolation, endophytism, and N-fixing trait have already been discussed in Sect. 2.3.1. The studies highlighting the association of this bacteria with diverse host species are discussed here. *A. diazotrophicus* (now known as *G. diazotrophicus*) strain PA15 isolated from sugarcane roots (Gillis et al. 1989) was tagged with three different reporter genes, *uidA*, GFP and *cobA* to evaluate the colonizing ability of this bacterial strain in three different crops namely wheat, corn and rice (Sevilla and Kennedy 2000). Strain PA15 heavily colonized corn kernels, primary root, and root hairs in just two days after inoculation. Rice seeds were not as heavily colonized as corn but lateral roots and root hairs of rice were colonized heavily. Colonization pattern in wheat was similar to rice. Plant growth promotion by strain PA15 was observed only in rice seedlings and was thought to be due to the bacteria's N-fixing ability since mutants of PA15 with *nif* gene removed were not able to promote rice growth. In another study, diazotrophic isolates belonging to the genus *Gluconacetobacter* were isolated from internal tissues of sugarcane growing in ancient agricultural fields of the Nile Delta (Giza) (Youssef et al. 2004). It was observed that these *Gluconacetobacter* spp. were able to form colonies in the stem (xylem vessels) and roots (cortex and vascular cylinder) of 21-day-old wheat seedlings when studied by using scanning electron microscopy. Apart from endophytically colonizing a diverse host species (wheat) these isolates were able to increase the stem and root dry weight significantly, thus increasing the overall plant biomass of wheat. Another study, *G. diazotrophicus* strain PAL5 (Bertalan et al. 2009) isolated from sugarcane was shown to colonize rice shoot and root endophytically with a population size of 10^4 cfu/gm fresh tissue. To visualize the endophytic colonies in rice, this strain was tagged with GFP and observed by using confocal laser microscopy. Microscopy experiment revealed that bacterial cells of PAL5 initially gather near the sites of lateral root emergence and at junctions between root cap and root axis in the vicinity of the apex and then enter the roots through these different openings (Rouws et al. 2010). In a subsequent study,

Alquéres et al. (2013) also indicated the endophytic colonization of rice roots by strain PAL5 through GFP-tagging. Secretion of reactive oxygen species (ROS) is a typical defense response activated by the plants in response to a pathogen attack. This study also established that strain PAL5 secrets ROS-scavenging enzymes that play a key role in the endophytic colonization of rice. Further, endophytic colonization pattern of strain PAL5 in *A. thaliana* root was studied by tagging it with a red-fluorescent protein (Rangel de Souza et al. 2016). Inoculation by this strain significantly promoted shoot and root fresh weight, shoot and root dry weight, total leaf area, the number of leaves. Whole canopy gas exchange was also evaluated in this study by using a portable photosynthesis system and the results revealed that inoculation by PAL5 significantly increases net photosynthetic rates, lowers transpiration rate and increases water-use efficiency in *A. thaliana*. These studies clearly establish the ability of *G. diazotrophicus* PAL5 to endophytically colonize a range of plant hosts and promote plant growth through different mechanisms. Although, *G. diazotrophicus* bacterium grows well in high sucrose environments like internal tissues of sugarcane and has been associated most of the time with sugarcane either as an endophyte or as a beneficial rhizospheric microbe, but this bacterium can also endophytically colonize a variety of plant species and promote their growth mainly through N-fixation.

2.4.5 *Paenibacillus*

The genus *Bacillus* was very heterogeneous containing phylogenetically diverse bacterial species. To reclassify some facultative anaerobes into a new genus (particularly *B. polymyxa* and some of its close relatives; rRNA group 3 of Ash et al. (1991, 1993) created the genus *Paenibacillus* (meaning: almost a *Bacillus*). Bacterial species belonging to this genus are low (mol% G + C contants) in DNA, Gram-positive, neutrophilic, peri-flagellated heterotrophic, endospore-forming facultative anaerobes. There are currently more than 180 species in this genus, most of them discovered within the last decade (http://www.bacterio.net/paenibacillus.html). The type species of this genus, *Paenibacillus polymyxa*, is well known for its ability to fix N (Guemouri-Athmani et al. 2000; Anand et al. 2013; Anand and Chanway 2013b; Bal and Chanway 2012a, b), promote plant growth (Timmusk et al. 1999; Puri et al. 2015; Puri et al. 2016a, b; Padda et al. 2016a, b) and suppress plant pathogens (Dijksterhuis et al. 1999; Ryu et al. 2006; Choi et al. 2007; Haggag and Timmusk 2008; Timmusk et al. 2009). *P. polymyxa* is known to colonize diverse ecological niches like soil, rhizosphere, intercellular and intracellular spaces of plant tissues, marine environments, fermented food products (Lal and Tabacchioni 2009). Endophytic colonization of plant tissues by this bacterial species has been reported time and again by various scientists (Bent and Chanway 1998; Shishido et al. 1999; Chanway et al. 2000; Bal et al. 2012; Pu et al. 2015; Yang et al. 2016; Tang et al. 2017).

An interesting study about the invasion of plant roots and endophytic colonization by *P. polymyxa* suggests that it form biofilms on the surface of the roots to gain entrance into the plant (Timmusk et al. 2009). Biofilms are communities of bacterial cells covered in a self-produced extracellular matrix, that are surface-attached and highly structured (Costerton 1995). GFP-tagging of *P. polymyxa* and visualization under confocal laser microscope has revealed that this bacterium can colonize both intercellular and intracellular spaces of stem and root tissues, which was significant in establishing its endophytic nature (Timmusk et al. 2009; Anand and Chanway 2013a). Zhao et al. (2015) isolated several endophytic strains from a medicinal plant, *Lonicera japonica*, generally grown in eastern china. Two of the isolated strains belonged to genus *Paenibacillus* (*P. polymyxa* and *P. ehimensis)* and possessed many plant growth-promoting characteristics including siderophore production, phosphate solubilization, IAA production, aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid (ACC) deaminase activity, and cellulase and pectinase activity. Apart from that, these strains were able to suppress the growth of common crop pathogens. These *Paenibacillus* strains endophytically colonized a nonnative host, wheat, and promoted its growth by significantly increasing shoot and root length, seedling fresh and dry weight, and chlorophyll content. In another recent study, several endophytic strains were isolated from wild maize (teosinte) believed to harbor beneficial endophytes that could provide resistance to common crop pathogens (Mousa et al. 2015). After initial in vitro screening against fungal pathogen, *Fusarium graminearum*, causative agent of Gibberella Ear Rot (GER) in modern corn, three antifungal endophytes identified as *P. polymyxa* were tested for their ability to suppress GER in modern corn seedlings. GFP-tagged *P. polymyxa* endophytic strains colonized internal tissues of modern corn plants and suppressed the growth of *F. graminearum* pathogen in vivo. It was concluded that wild relatives of modern crops might have a reservoir of endophytes that could be used as biocontrol against pathogens that lead to extensive crop loss.

Chris P Chanway and his group have been working with *P. polymyxa* since 1988 and have published significant reports about the role of this bacterium in promoting plant growth and health in both agricultural and forest ecosystems. In 2012, the group reported the existence of an endophytic diazotroph, *P. polymyxa* P2b-2R, living in stem tissues of a gymnosperm, lodgepole pine (*Pinus contorta*), naturally regenerating at a site located in Williams Lake, BC, Canada (Bal et al. 2012). P2b-2R was able to grow on N-free media, combined carbon medium (CCM; Rennie 1981), and consistently reduced significant amounts of acetylene in the acetylene reduction assay (ARA) (Bal et al. 2012). By using a more accurate method of determining the amount of N fixed (^{15}N foliar dilution assay), Anand et al. (2013) discovered this bacterial strain's remarkable ability to derive up to 79% of N from the atmospheric pool. In a subsequent report, it was observed that strain possesses *nif* genes, required to fix atmospheric N (Anand and Chanway 2013c). GFP-tagged P2b-2R strain was constructed to evaluate the endophytic colonization sites in lodgepole pine and it was reported to colonize both intercellular and intracellular spaces of lodgepole pine interior tissues (Anand and Chanway 2013a). First reports about P2b-2R's ability to colonize a nonnative host came out in 2012

and 2013 when this bacterial strain was found to colonize internal tissues of stem and root of another gymnosperm tree species, western red cedar (*Thuja plicata*) (Bal and Chanway 2012b; Anand and Chanway 2013b). P2b-2R significantly enhanced seedling length and biomass of western red cedar and also fixed considerable amounts of N from the atmosphere (Anand and Chanway 2013b). Subsequently, Puri et al. (2015) hypothesized that this bacterial strain could provide similar benefits to angiosperms, especially the crop species, by colonizing them endophytically. Their hypothesis was evidenced and P2b-2R colonized internal root tissues of corn seedlings with a population size of 10^5 cfu/g fresh tissue weight in just 10 days. P2b-2R also fixed up to 20% of N from the atmosphere, increased seedling length by 35% and biomass by 30% in 30-day long trials (Puri et al. 2015). P2b-2R's ability to colonize diverse host species was ascertained, when it successfully colonized interior tissues of an important oilseed crop species, canola (Puri et al. 2016a) and vegetable crop species, tomato (Padda et al. 2016a). Similar benefits were provided by P2b-2R to these crop species indicating that P2b-2R can symbiotically associate with a broad range of hosts (see Table 2.3). Padda et al. (2017) reported an astonishing discovery with the GFP-tagged P2b-2R (P2b-2R*gfp*) constructed by Anand and Chanway (2013a), where P2b-2R*gfp* inoculation significantly enhanced corn seedling growth (length and biomass) as compared to the wild-type P2b-2R inoculation. This was the first report in literature where GFP-tagging of a bacterial strain related to the *Bacillus* (and *Paenibacillus*) genus enhanced its growth-promoting abilities. A similar discovery about the enhancement of PGP abilities by GFP-tagging was reported in *Azospirillum brasilense* a

Table 2.3 Nitrogen fixation and plant growth promotion of important agricultural crops by *Paenibacillus polymyxa* P2b-2R

	Days after inoculation	Corn	Canola	Tomato
%Ndfa[a]	20	6.52	8.08	10.0
	30	10.9	12.9	12.3
	40	15.7	16.2	18.1
	90	30.2	27.1	–
% seedling length promotion[b]	20	28.4	17.8	40.6
	30	24.1	20.5	36.5
	40	24.7	28.4	24.9
	90	51.9	70.7	–
% seedling biomass promotion[c]	20	17.2	57.0	56.1
	30	34.1	53.7	69.0
	40	28.4	37.1	93.0
	90	52.7	100.9	–

[a]Percent nitrogen derived from the atmosphere (%Ndfa)
[b]Percent seedling length promoted by inoculation with *P. polymyxa* P2b-2R
[c]Percent seedling biomass promoted by inoculation with *P. polymyxa* P2b-2R. These parameters were calculated using the formulas described in Puri et al. (2016b). [Data provided in the table has been compiled from [Padda et al. (2016a, b, 2017); Puri et al. (2016b)]

decade ago (Rodriguez et al. 2006). The ability of P2b-2R*gfp* to perform better than the wild-type strain was also confirmed in canola and tomato (Padda et al. 2016a). Benefits of inoculating this PGP endophytic strain and its GFP-tagged counterpart in a long-term trial were also evaluated and the results were even better than the previous studies which were of shorter duration (Puri et al. 2016b; Padda et al. 2016b). Thus, it can be concluded that *P. polymyxa* strain P2b-2R is an ideal endophytic strain that is able to colonize a variety of host species that are completely different physiologically and botanically.

2.4.6 Pseudomonas

Pseudomonas genus was first identified and described in the late nineteenth century (Migula 1894). The history of this genus from the time when it was first discovered till now has been described in great detail by Palleroni (2010). It is a diverse genus containing more than 230 species (http://www.bacterio.net/pseudomonas.html). Most of these species have a wide range of metabolic and catabolic capabilities. Bacterial species can be found in diverse ecological niches and could be plant growth and health-promoting bacteria, plant pathogens, or disease-causing human and animal pathogens (Preston 2004; Miller et al. 2008). *Pseudomonas* spp. are known to promote plant growth through a variety of mechanisms like biocontrol of pathogens, stimulating induced systemic resistance, N-fixation, phosphorus solubilization, and secreting phytohormones like auxins and cytokinins (Miller et al. 2008). Many studies have reported the ability of *Pseudomonas* spp. to associate endophytically with a variety of plant hosts, such as Peanut (Gupta et al. 2006), Sesame (*Sesamum indicum* L.) (Kumar et al. 2009), Mustard (Aeron et al. 2011), potato (Andreote et al. 2009), olive (*Olea europaea*) (Prieto et al. 2009; Maldonado-González et al. 2013), poplar (*Populus deltoides*) (Weyens et al. 2010, 2012), and wheat and cucumber (Pandey et al. 2012). Due to the diversity of *Pseudomonas* spp., many scientists have reported about their ability to colonize a range of nonindigenous plant hosts.

A diazotrophic endophyte, *P. aeruginosa* PM389, was isolated from an important forage crop, pearl millet (*Pennisetum glaucum*), widely grown in the Indian subcontinent, South America, USA and Australia (Gupta et al. 2013). It was observed that PM 389 has the ability to fix N, solubilize mineral phosphate, produce siderophores, inhibit the growth of bacterial and fungal pathogens. Looking at its plant growth-promoting abilities, Gupta et al. (2013) inoculated this bacterial strain into wheat and observed that it successfully colonizes the wheat seedlings and significantly enhance root and shoot length, and vigor index. In another study, another strain of *P. aeruginosa* originally isolated from wheat stem successfully shielded cucumber seedlings from various biotic and abiotic stresses (Pandey et al. 2012). Biomass of *P. aeruginosa* PW09-inoculated cucumber seedlings increased significantly as compared to the controls when grown under biotic stress (treated with pathogenic fungus, *Sclerotium rolfsii*) and abiotic stress (NaCl treatment). In a

subsequent study, another strain PaBP35, belonging to this bacterial species, isolated from stem tissues of black pepper and tagged with GFP to visualize the endophytic colonization sites in a nonnative host, tomato (Kumar et al. 2013). GFP-tagged PaBP35 colonized interior tissues of the root, stem, and leaves of a 14-day-old tomato with high population densities, thus confirming its ability to form endophytic colonies in a nonnative host. Effective root colonization is a prerequisite attribute for the success of PGPR in plant growth and yield promotion. Colonization by fluoresent *Pseudomonas* in sesame rhizosphere promotes growth and proved effective as indigenous microflora over nonindigenous microflora (Aeron et al. 2010). Recently, a phenanthrene-degrading endophytic *Pseudomonas* strain was isolated from clover (*Trifolium pratense* L.) (Sun et al. 2014). Phenanthrene is a polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon, which is a toxic metabolite found in some soils and can be taken up by the plants through roots. It can enter the food chain and cause serious harm to human health. Sun et al. (2014) investigated the ability of *Pseudomonas* strain Ph6 to colonize ryegrass (*Lolium multiflorum* Lam.) and degrade phenanthrene. GFP-tagged Ph6 colonized root, stem, and leaf tissues internally when visualized under fluorescence microscope. Heavy colonization of root and shoot tissues by GFP-tagged Ph6 was observed with population density ranging from 10^3 to 10^5 cfu/g fresh tissue weight. Inoculation of ryegrass with Ph6 led to a significant decrease in the concentration of phenanthrene in shoot and roots. Along with that the overall accumulation of phenanthrene in roots and shoot was also significantly reduced with inoculation, possibly due to the degrading mechanism of Ph6 strain (Sun et al. 2014).

P. fluorescens and *P. putida* are the most commonly studied PGPB known to associate with many different plant host species and colonize them both internally and externally. In a study conducted on phosphate solubilizing *P. fluorescens* strains, L132 and L321, isolated from *Miscanthus giganteus* leaf tissues (Keogh 2009) were tested for their ability to promote pea (*Pisum sativum* L.) growth (Oteino et al. 2015). It was observed that inoculation with these endophytic strains significantly increased fresh weight as well as the dry weight of the pea seedlings possibly due to the phosphate solubilizing abilities of these endophytes since mean soluble phosphorous levels were also observed to be higher in inoculated plants as compared to the controls. Another endophyte related to *Pseudomonas* genus was isolated from internal root tissues of *Artemisia* sp. (Chung et al. 2008). The strain was identified as *P. brassicacearum* YC5480 and was observed to demonstrate antifungal activity against common pathogens like *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides*, *Fusarium oxysporum*, and *Phytophthora capsici*. When colonized into a different host, radish, treated with *C. gloeosporioides*, the bacterial strain YC5480 counteracted the inhibitory effects of this pathogenic fungus. Therefore, it can be concluded that *Pseudomonas* spp. have the ability to cross-infect plant species other than their native host and have a broad application as a PGP agent in the agricultural industry.

2.5 Conclusion

Since their discovery, endophytic bacteria have been considered to play a crucial role in survival and growth of plants. By living inside the plant they are better protected from various biotic and abiotic stresses as compared to the rhizobacteria and free-living bacteria in soil. They have been reported to occupy almost every part of the plant, including intracellular and intercellular spaces. Due to the unique metabolic diversity of selected endophytes, they have been reported to colonize many nonindigenous plant host species and promote growth through direct or indirect mechanisms. Special mentioning deserves the endophytic bacteria belonging to the genus *Burkholderia* and *Paenibacillus*. Species belonging to these two genera have been frequently reported to endophytically colonize a variety of important agricultural crops, promote their growth in greenhouse and field conditions, and inhibit the growth of common crop pathogens in vitro as well as in vivo. These endophytic bacteria could potentially be the future commercial biofertilizers and biocontrol agents that can be used with many different crops and in various growing conditions, thus promoting sustainable agriculture.

Acknowledgements Authors would like to dedicate this work to Late Mr. Darshan K. Puri (1956–2014). You were, are and always will be an inspirational figure for us.

References

Aeron A, Pandey P, Maheshwari DK (2010) Differential response of sesame under influence of indigenous and non-indigenous rhizosphere competent fluorescent pseudomonads. Curr Sci 99:166–168

Aeron A, Dubey RC, Maheshwari DK, Pandey P, Bajpai VK, Kang SC (2011) Multifarious activity of bioformulated *Pseudomonas fluorescens* PS1 and biocontrol of *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum* in Indian rapeseed (*Brassica campestris* L.). Eur J Plant Pathol 131:81–93. doi:10.1007/s10658-011-9789-z

Alquéres S, Meneses C, Rouws L, Rothballer M, Baldani I, Schmid M, Hartmann A (2013) The bacterial superoxide dismutase and glutathione reductase are crucial for endophytic colonization of rice roots by *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus* PAL5. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 26:937–945. doi:10.1094/MPMI-12-12-0286-R

Anand R, Chanway CP (2013a) Detection of GFP-labeled *Paenibacillus polymyxa* in auto fluorescing pine seedling tissues. Biol Fertil Soils 49:111–118. doi:10.1007/s00374-012-0727-9

Anand R, Chanway C (2013b) N_2-fixation and growth promotion in cedar colonized by an endophytic strain of *Paenibacillus polymyxa*. Biol Fertil Soils 49:235–239. doi:10.1007/s00374-012-0735-9

Anand R, Chanway CP (2013c) *nif* gene sequence and arrangement in the endophytic diazotroph *Paenibacillus polymyxa* strain P2b-2R. Biol Fertil Soils 49:965–970. doi:10.1007/s00374-013-0793-7

Anand R, Grayston S, Chanway CP (2013) N_2-fixation and seedling growth promotion of lodgepole pine by endophytic *Paenibacillus polymyxa*. Microb Ecol 66:369–374. doi:10.1007/s00248-013-0196-1

Andreote FD, de Araujo WL, de Azevedo JL, Van Elsas JD, da Rocha UN, Van Overbeek LS (2009) Endophytic colonization of potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.) by a novel competent bacterial endophyte, *Pseudomonas putida* strain P9, and its effect on associated bacterial communities. Appl Environ Microbiol 75:3396–3406. doi:10.1128/AEM.00491-09

Aravind R, Kumar A, Eapen SJ, Ramana KV (2009) Endophytic bacterial flora in root and stem tissues of black pepper (*Piper nigrum* L.) genotype: isolation, identification and evaluation against *Phytophthora capsici*. Lett Appl Microbiol 48:58–64. doi:10.1111/j.1472-765X.2008.02486.x

Ash C, Farrow JAE, Wallbanks S, Collins MD (1991) Phylogenetic heterogeneity of the genus *Bacillus* revealed by comparative analysis of small subunit- ribosomal RNA sequences. Lett Appl Microbiol 13:202–206. doi:10.1111/j.1472-765X.1991.tb00608.x

Ash C, Priest FG, Collins MD (1993) Molecular identification of rRNA group 3 *bacilli* (Ash, Farrow, Wallbanks and Collins) using a PCR probe test. A Van Leeuw J Microb 64:253–260. doi:10.1007/BF00873085

Bacon CW, White JF Jr (2000) Microbial endophytes. Marcel Dekker Inc., New York

Bal A, Chanway CP (2012a) Evidence of nitrogen fixation in lodgepole pine inoculated with diazotrophic *Paenibacillus polymyxa*. Botany 90:891–896. doi:10.1139/b2012-044

Bal A, Chanway CP (2012b) ^{15}N foliar dilution of western red cedar in response to seed inoculation with diazotrophic *Paenibacillus polymyxa*. Biol Fertil Soils 48:967–971. doi:10.1007/s00374-012-0699-9

Bal A, Anand R, Berge O, Chanway C (2012) Isolation and identification of diazotrophic bacteria from internal tissues of *Pinus contorta* and *Thuja plicata*. Can J For Res 42:807–813. doi:10.1139/x2012-023

Baldani JI, Baldani VLD, Seldin L, Döbereiner J (1986) Characterization of *Herbaspirillum seropedicae* gen. nov., sp. nov., a root associated nitrogen fixing bacterium. Int J Syst Bacteriol 36:86–93. doi:10.1099/00207713-36-1-86

Baldani VLD, Baldani JI, Olivares FL, Döbereiner J (1992) Identification and ecology of *Herbaspirillum seropedicae* and the closely related *Pseudomonas rubrisubalbicans*. Symbiosis 13:65–73

Baldani JI, Pot B, Kirchhof G, Falsen E, Baldani VL, Olivares FL, Hoste B, Kersters K, Hart-mann A, Gillis M, Döbereiner J (1996) Emended description of *Herbaspirillum*; inclusion of *Pseudomonas rubrisubalbicans*, a milk plant pathogen, as *Herbaspirillum rubrisubalbicans* comb. nov.; and classification of a group of clinical isolates (EF group 1) as *Herbaspirillum* species 3. Int J Syst Bacteriol 46:802–810. doi:10.1099/00207713-46-3-802

Baldani JI, Olivares FL, Hemerly AS, Reis Jr. FB, Oliveira ALM, Baldani VLD, Goi SR, Reis VM, Döbereiner J (1998) Nitrogen-fixing endophytes: recent advances in the association with graminaceous plants grown in the tropics. In: Elmerich EC (ed) Biological nitrogen fixation for the 21st century. Springer, Netherlands, pp 203–206. doi:10.1007/978-94-011-5159-7_90

Baldani VLD, Baldani JI, Döbereiner J (2000) Inoculation of rice plants with the endophytic diazotrophs *Herbaspirillum seropedicae* and *Burkholderia* spp. Biol Fertil Soils 30:485–491. doi:10.1007/s003740050027

Baldani JI, Reis VM, Baldani VLD, Döbereiner J (2002) A brief story of nitrogen fixation in sugarcane—reasons for success in Brazil. Func Plant Biol 29:417–423. doi:10.1071/PP01083

Bashan Y, Holguin G (1998) Proposal for the division of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria into two classifications: biocontrol-PGPB (plant growth-promoting bacteria) and PGPB. Soil Biol Biochem 30:1225–1228. doi:10.1016/S0038-0717(97)00187-9

Beattie GA, Lindow SE (1995) The secret life of foliar bacterial pathogens on leaves. Annu Rev Phytopathol 33:145–172. doi:10.1146/annurev.py.33.090195.001045

Bent E, Chanway CP (1998) The growth-promoting effects of a bacterial endophyte on lodgepole pine are partially inhibited by the presence of other rhizobacteria. Can J Microbiol 44:980–988. doi:10.1139/w98-097

Berg G (2009) Plant–microbe interactions promoting plant growth and health: perspectives for controlled use of microorganisms in agriculture. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 84:11–18. doi:10.1007/s00253-009-2092-7

Berg G, Krechel A, Ditz M, Sikora RA, Ulrich A, Hallmann J (2005) Endophytic and ectophytic potato-associated bacterial communities differ in structure and antagonistic function against plant pathogenic fungi. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 51:215–229. doi:10.1016/j.femsec.2004.08.006

Bertalan M, Albano R, de Pádua V, Rouws L, Rojas C, Hemerly A et al (2009) Complete genome sequence of the sugarcane nitrogen-fixing endophyte *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus* Pal5. BMC Genom 10:450. doi:10.1186/1471-2164-10-450

Boddey RM, Urquiaga S, Reis V, Döbereiner J (1991) Biological nitrogen fixation associated with sugar cane. Plant Soil 137:111–117

Caballero-Mellado J, Martínez-Aguilar L, Paredes-Valdez G, Estrada-De Los Santos P (2004) *Burkholderia unamae* sp. nov., an N_2-fixing rhizospheric and endophytic species. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 54:1165–1172. doi:10.1099/ijs.0.02951-0

Carrizo de Bellone S, Bellone CH (2006) Presence of endophytic diazotrophs in sugarcane juice. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 22:1065–1068. doi:10.1007/s11274-005-4562-0

Cavalcante VA, Döbereiner J (1988) A new acid tolerant nitrogen fixing bacterium associated with sugarcane. Plant Soil 108:23–31. doi:10.1007/BF02370096

Chanway CP, Shishido M, Nairn J, Jungwirth S, Markham J, Xiao G, Holl F (2000) Endophytic colonization and field responses of hybrid spruce seedlings after inoculation with plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. For Ecol Manag 133:81–88. doi:10.1016/S0378-1127(99)00300-X

Chanway CP, Anand R, Yang H (2014) Nitrogen fixation outside and inside plant tissues. In: Ohyama T (ed) Advances in biology and ecology of nitrogen fixation. InTech, pp 3–23. doi:10.5772/57532

Chelius MK, Triplett EW (2000) Immunolocalization of dinitrogenase reductase produced by *Klebsiella pneumoniae* in association with *Zea mays* L. Appl Environ Microbiol 66:783–787. doi:10.1128/AEM.66.2.783-787.2000

Chen Y, Gao X, Chen Y, Qin H, Huang L, Han Q (2014) Inhibitory efficacy of endophytic *Bacillus subtilis* EDR4 against *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum* on rapeseed. Biol Control 78:67–76. doi:10.1016/j.biocontrol.2014.07.012

Chi F, Shen S, Cheng H, Jing Y, Yanni YG, Dazzo FB (2005) Ascending migration of endophytic rhizobia, from roots to leaves, inside rice plants and assessment of benefits to rice growth physiology. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:7271–7278. doi:10.1128/AEM.71.11.7271-7278.2005

Choi SK, Park SY, Kim R, Lee CH, Kim JF, Park SH (2007) Identification and functional analysis of the fusaricidin biosynthetic gene of *Paenibacillus polymyxa* E681. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 365:89–95. doi:10.1016/j.bbrc.2007.10.147

Chung BS, Aslam Z, Kim SW, Kim GG, Kang HS, Ahn JW, Chung YR (2008) A bacterial endophyte, *Pseudomonas brassicacearum* YC5480, isolated from the root of *Artemisia* sp. producing antifungal and phytotoxic compounds. Plant Pathol J 24:461–468. doi:10.5423/PPJ.2008.24.4.461

Chung EJ, Park JH, Park TS, Ahn JW, Chung YR (2010) Production of a phytotoxic compound, 3-phenylpropionic acid by a bacterial endophyte, *Arthrobacter humicola* YC6002 isolated from the root of *Zoysia japonica*. Plant Pathol J 26:245–252. doi:10.5423/PPJ.2010.26.3.245

Cocking E (2003) Endophytic colonization of plant roots by N-fixing bacteria. Plant Soil 252:169–175. doi:10.1023/A:1024106605806

Coenye T, Vandamme P (2003) Diversity and significance of *Burkholderia* species occupying diverse ecological niches. Environ Microbiol 5:719–729. doi:10.1046/j.1462-2920.2003.00471.x

Cohn FE (1872) Untersuchungen uber Bakterien. Belir Bioi Pflanz 1:124–224

Compant S, Reiter B, Sessitsch A, Nowak J, Clément C, Ait Barka E (2005) Endophytic colonization of *Vitis vinifera* L. by plant growth-promoting bacterium *Burkholderia* sp. strain PsJN. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:1685–1693. doi:10.1128/AEM.71.4.1685-1693.2005

Compant S, Kaplan H, Sessitsch A, Nowak J, Ait Barka E, Clément C (2008) Endophytic colonization of *Vitis vinifera* L. by *Burkholderia phytofirmans* strain PsJN: from the rhizosphere to inflorescence tissues. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 63:84–93. doi:10.1111/j.1574-6941.2007.00410.x

Compant S, Clément C, Sessitsch A (2010) Plant growth-promoting bacteria in the rhizo- and endosphere of plants: their role, colonization, mechanisms involved and prospects for utilization. Soil Biol Biochem 42:669–678. doi:10.1016/j.soilbio.2009.11.024

Compant S, Mitter B, Colli-Mull JG, Gangl H, Sessitsch A (2011) Endophytes of grapevine flowers, berries, and seeds: identification of cultivable bacteria, comparison with other plant parts, and visualization of niches of colonization. Microb Ecol 62:188–197. doi:10.1007/s00248-011-9883-y

Conn HJ, Dimmick I (1947) Soil bacteria similar in morphology to *Mycobacterium* and *Corynebacterium*. J Bacteriol 54:291–303

Costerton JW (1995) Overview of microbial biofilms. J Ind Microbiol 15:137–140. doi:10.1007/BF01569816

Cruz LM, de Souza EM, Weber OB, Baldani JI, Döbereiner J, de Oliveira Pedrosa F (2001) 16S ribosomal DNA characterization of nitrogen-fixing bacteria isolated from banana (*Musa* spp.) and pineapple (*Ananas comosus* (L.) Merril). Appl Environ Microbiol 67:2375–2379. doi:10.1128/AEM.67.5.2375-2379.2001

de Bary A (1866) Morphologie und Physiologie Pilze, Flechten, und myxomyceten. Hofmeister's Handbook of Physiological Botany, vol 2. Leipzig: Verlag Von Wilhelm Engelmann. http://babel.hathitrust.org/cgi/pt?id=hvd.32044053007316. Accessed 16 July 2016

de Bashan LE, Hernandez JP, Bashan Y (2012) The potential contribution of plant growth-promoting bacteria to reduce environmental degradation- a comprehensive evaluation. Appl Soil Ecol 61:171–189. doi:10.1016/j.apsoil.2011.09.003

de Melo Pereira GV, Magalhaes KT, Lorenzetii ER, Souza TP, Schwan RF (2012) A multiphasic approach for the identification of endophytic bacterial in strawberry fruit and their potential for plant growth promotion. Microb Ecol 63:405–417. doi:10.1007/s00248-011-9919-3

Denton BP (2007) Advances in phytoremediation of heavy metals using plant growth promoting bacteria and fungi. MMG 445 Basic. Biotechnol 3:1–5

di Vestea A (1888) De l'absence des microbes dans les tissus végétaux. Annales de l'lnstitut Pasteur 670–671

Dijksterhuis J, Sanders M, Gorris LGM, Smid EJ (1999) Antibiosis plays a role in the context of direct interaction during antagonism of *Paenibacillus polymyxa* towards *Fusarium oxysporum*. J Appl Microbiol 86:13–21. doi:10.1046/j.1365-2672.1999.t01-1-00600.x

Ding LX, Taketo H, Akira Y (2013) Four novel *Arthrobacter* species isolated from filtration substrate. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 59:856–862. doi:10.1099/ijs.0.65301-0

Döbereiner J (1961) Nitrogen fixing bacteria of the genus *Beijerinckia* Drex. in the rhizosphere of sugarcane. Plant Soil 15:211–216. doi:10.1007/BF01400455

Döbereiner J (1992) Recent changes in concepts of plant bacteria interactions: endophytic N_2 fixing bacteria. Ciênc Cult 44:310–313

Döbereiner J, Alvahydo R (1959) Sóbre a influénciada canade-acucar na occoréncia de "*Beijerinckia*" no solo II. Influéncia das diversas partes do vegetal. Rev Bras Biol 19:401–412

Döbereiner J, Day JM, Dart PJ (1972) Nitrogenase activity in the rhizosphere of sugarcane and some other tropical grasses. Plant Soil 37:191–196. doi:10.1007/BF01578494

Egener T, Hurek T, Reinhold-Hurek B (1999) Endophytic expression of nif genes of *Azoarcus* sp. strain BH72 in rice roots. Mol Plant-Microbe Int 12:813–819. doi:10.1094/MPMI.1999.12.9.813

Ehrenberg RC (1835) Dritter Beitrag zur Erkenntniss grosser Organisation in der Richtung des kleinsten Raumes. Abh Preuss Aluu1 Wiss Phys Kl Baelin aus der Jahre 1833–1835:145–336

Elbeltagy A, Nishioka K, Sato T, Suzuki H, Ye B, Hamada T, Isawa T, Mitsui H, Minamisawa K (2001) Endophytic colonization and in planta nitrogen fixation by a *Herbaspirillum* sp. isolated from wild rice species. Appl Environ Microbiol 67:5285–5293. doi:10.1128/AEM.67.11.5285-5293.2001

Engelhard M, Hurek T, Reinhold-Hurek B (2000) Preferential occurrence of diazotrophic endophytes, *Azoarcus* spp., in wild rice species and land races of *Oryza sativa* in comparison with modern races. Environ Microbiol 2:131–141. doi:10.1046/j.1462-2920.2000.00078.x

Eskin N (2012) Colonization of *Zea mays* by the nitrogen fixing bacterium *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus*. Electronic Thesis and Dissertation Repository. Paper 562. http://ir.lib.uwo.ca/etd/562. Accessed 16 July 2016

Estrada-De Los Santos P, Bustillos-Cristales R, Caballero-Mellado J (2001) *Burkholderia*, a genus rich in plant-associated nitrogen fixers with wide environmental and geographic distribution. Appl Environ Microbiol 67:2790–2798. doi:10.1128/AEM.67.6.2790-2798.2001

Frommel MI, Nowak J, Lazarovits G (1991) Growth enhancement and developmental modifications of in vitro growth potato (*Solanum tuberosum* spp. *tuberosum*) as affected by a non-fluorescent *Pseudomonas* sp. Plant Physiol 96:928–936. doi:10.1104/pp.96.3.928

Frommel MI, Nowak J, Lazarovitis G (1993) Treatment of potato tubers with a growth promoting *Pseudomonas* sp.: plant growth responses and bacterium distribution in the rhizosphere. Plant Soil 150:51–60. doi:10.1007/BF00779175

Freitas ADS, Vieira CL, Santos CERS, Stamford NP, Lyra MCCP (2007) Caracterização de rizóbios isolados de Jacatupé cultivado em solo salino do estado de Pernambuco, Brasil. Bragantia 66:497–504. doi:10.1590/S0006-87052007000300017

Fu HL, Wei YF, Zou YY, Li MZ, Wang FY, Chen JR, Zhang LX, Liu ZH, Ding LX (2014) Research progress on the *Actinomyces arthrobacter*. Adv Microbiol 4:747–753. doi:10.4236/aim.2014.412081

Fürnkranz M, Wanek W, Richter A, Abell G, Rasche F, Sessitsch A (2008) Nitrogen fixation by phyllosphere bacteria associated with higher plants and their colonizing epiphytes of a tropical lowland rainforest of Costa Rica. ISME J 2:561–570. doi:10.1038/ismej.2008.14

Galippe V (1887) Note sur la présence de micro-organismes dans les tissus végétaux. C R Hebd Sci Mem Soc Biol 39:410–416

Germida J, de Freitas J (1998) Nitrogen fixing rhizobacteria as biofertilizers for canola. Saskatchewan Canola Development Commission (Project code: CARP 9513). http://www.saskcanola.com/research/agronomy.php?detail=86. Accessed 16 July 2016

Gillis M, Kersters K, Hoste B, Janssens D, Kroppenstedt RM, Stephen MP (1989) *Acetobacter diaztrophicus* sp. nov., a nitrogen fixing acetic acid bacterium associated with sugarcane. Int J Syst Bacteriol 39:361–364. doi:10.1099/00207713-39-3-361

Gillis M, Van Van T, Bardin R, Goor M, Hebbar P, Willems A, Segers P, Kersters K, Heulin T, Fernandez MP (1995) Polyphasic taxonomy in the genus *Burkholderia* leading to an emended description of the genus and proposition of *Burkholderia vietnamiensis* sp. nov. for N_2-fixing isolates from rice in Vietnam. Int J Syst Bacteriol 45:274–289. doi:10.1099/00207713-45-2-274

Glick BR (2012) Plant growth-promoting bacteria: mechanisms and applications. Scientifica 2012. doi:10.6064/2012/963401

Glick BR (2015) Introduction to plant growth-promoting bacteria. In: Glick BR (ed) Beneficial plant-bacterial interactions. Springer International Publishing, Switzerland, pp 1–28. doi:10.1007/978-3-319-13921-0_1

Guemouri-Athmani S, Berge O, Bourrain M, Mavingui P, Thiéry JM, Bhatnagar T, Heulin T (2000) Diversity of *Paenibacillus polymyxa* in the rhizosphere of wheat (*Triticum durum*) in Algerian soils. Eur J Soil Biol 36:149–159. doi:10.1016/S1164-5563(00)01056-6

Gupta CP, Kumar B, Dubey RC, Maheshwari DK (2006) Chitinase-mediated destructive antagonistic potential of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* GRC1 against *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum* causing stem rot of peanut. Biocontrol 51:821–835. doi:10.1007/s10526-006-9000-1

Gupta G, Panwar J, Jha PN (2013) Natural occurrence of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, a dominant cultivable diazotrophic endophytic bacterium colonizing *Pennisetum glaucum* (L.) R. Br. Appl Soil Ecol 64:252–261. doi:10.1016/j.apsoil.2012.12.016

Gyaneshwar P, James EK, Mathan N, Reddy PM, Reinhold-Hurek B, Ladha JK (2001) Endophytic colonization of rice by a diazotrophic strain of *Serratia marcescens*. J Bacteriol 183:2634–2645. doi:10.1128/JB.183.8.2634-2645.2001

Haggag WM, Timmusk S (2008) Colonization of peanut roots by biofilm-forming *Paenibacillus polymyxa* initiates biocontrol against crown rot disease. J Appl Microbiol 104:961–969. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2672.2007.03611.x

Hallmann J (2001) Plant interactions with endophytic bacteria. In: Jeger MJ, Spence NJ (eds) Biotic interaction in plant-pathogen associations. CAB International, New York, pp 87–120

Hallmann J, Berg G (2006) Spectrum and population dynamics of bacterial root endophytes. In: Schulz BJE, Boyle CJC, Sieber TN (eds) Microbial root endophytes, vol 6. Springer, Berlin, pp 15–31. doi:10.1007/3-540-33526-9_2

Hallmann J, Quadt-Hallmann A, Mahaffee WF, Kloepper JW (1997) Bacterial endophytes in agricultural crops. Can J Microbiol 43:895–914. doi:10.1139/m97-131

Hamisi M, Díez B, Lyimo T, Ininbergs K, Bergman B (2013) Epiphytic cyanobacteria of the seagrass *Cymodocea rotundata*: diversity, diel *nifH* expression and nitrogenase activity. Environ Microbiol Rep 5:367–376. doi:10.1111/1758-2229.12031

Hardoim PR, van Overbeek LS, van Elsas JD (2008) Properties of bacterial endophytes and their proposed role in plant growth. Trends Microbiol 16:463–471. doi:10.1016/j.tim.2008.07.008

Hebbar PK, Martel MH, Heulin T (1998) Suppression of pre- and postemergence damping-off in corn by *Burkholderia cepacia*. Eur J Plant Path 104:29–36. doi:10.1023/A:1008625511924

Heungens K, Parke JL (2000) Zoospore homing and infection events: effects of the biocontrol bacterium *Burkholderia cepacia* AMMDR1 on two oomycete pathogens of pea (*Pisum sativum* L.). Appl Env Microbiol 66:5192–5200. doi:10.1128/AEM.66.12.5192-5200.2000

Ho Y, Chiang H, Chao C, Su C, Hsu H, Guo C, Hsieh J, Huang C (2015) *In planta* biocontrol of soilborne *Fusarium wilt* of banana through a plant endophytic bacterium, *Burkholderia cenocepacia* 869T2. Plant Soil 387:295–306. doi:10.1007/s11104-014-2297-0

Hurek T, Reinholdhurek B, Vanmontagu M, Kellenberger E (1994) Root colonization and systemic spreading of *Azoarcus* sp. strain BH72 in grasses. J Bacteriol 176:1913–1923

Hurek T, Handley LL, Reinhold-Hurek B, Piche Y (2002) *Azoarcus* grass endophytes contribute fixed nitrogen to the plant in an unculturable state. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 15:233–242. doi:10.1094/MPMI.2002.15.3.233

Iniguez AL, Dong Y, Triplett EW (2004) Nitrogen fixation in wheat provided by *Klebsiella pneumoniae* 342. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 17:1078–1085. doi:10.1094/MPMI.2004.17.10.1078

Jacobs MJ, Bugbee WM, Gabrielson DA (1985) Enumeration, location, and characterization of endophytic bacteria within sugar beet roots. Can J Bot 63:1262–1265. doi:10.1139/b85-174

James EK, Gyaneshwar P, Mathan N, Barraquio WL, Reddy PM, Iannetta PPM, Olivares FL, Ladha JK (2002) Infection and colonization of rice seedlings by the plant growth-promoting bacterium *Herbaspirillum seropedicae* Z67. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 15:894–906. doi:10.1094/MPMI.2002.15.9.894

Jiang Y, Zhou JG, Zou YP (2004) Isolation and primary identification of a new nitrogen-fixation *Arthrobacter* strain. J Central China Normal Univ (Natur Sci) 38:210–214

Johnston-Monje D, Raizada MN (2011) Conservation and diversity of seed associated endophytes in *Zea* across boundaries of evolution, ethnography and ecology. PLoS ONE 6:e20396. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0020396

Kado CI (1992) Plant pathogenic bacteria. In: Balows A, Truper HG, Dworkin M, Harder W, Schleifer KH (eds) The prokaryotes. Springer, New York, pp 660–662

Kang BG, Kim WT, Yun HS, Chang SC (2010) Use of plant growthpromoting rhizobacteria to control stress responses of plant roots. Plant Biotechnol Rep 4:179–183. doi:10.1007/s11816-010-0136-1

Karthikeyan N, Prasanna R, Sood A, Jaiswal P, Nayak S, Kaushik BD (2009) Physiological characterization and electron microscopic investigation of cyanobacteria associated with wheat rhizosphere. Folia Microbiol 54:43–51. doi:10.1007/s12223-009-0007-8

Keogh E (2009) The isolation and characterisation of bacterial endophytes and their potential applications for improving phytoremediation. Ph.D. thesis, Institute of Technology, Carlow, Republic of Ireland

Khalifa AY, Almalki MA (2015) Isolation and characterization of an endophytic bacterium, *Bacillus megaterium* BMN1, associated with root-nodules of *Medicago sativa* L. growing in Al-Ahsaa region, Saudi Arabia. Ann Microbiol 65:1017–1026. doi:10.1007/s13213-014-0946-4

Kim YC, Glick BR, Bashan Y, Ryu CM (2012) Enhancement of plant drought tolerance by microbes. In: Aroca R (ed) Plant responses to drought stress: from morphological to molecular features. Springer, Heidelberg, pp 383–413. doi:10.1007/978-3-642-32653-0_15

Kirchhof G, Eckert B, Stoffels M, Baldani JI, Reis VM, Hartmann A (2001) *Herbaspirillum frisingense* sp. nov., a new nitrogen-fixing bacterial species that occurs in C4-fibre plants. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 51:157–168. doi:10.1099/00207713-51-1-157

Krings M, Hass H, Kerp H, Taylor TN, Agerer R, Dotzler N (2009) Endophytic cyanobacteria in a 400-million-yr-old land plant: A scenario for the origin of a symbiosis? Rev Palaeobot Palynol 153:62–69. doi:10.1016/j.revpalbo.2008.06.006

Kumar S, Pandey P, Maheshwari DK (2009) Reduction in dose of chemical fertilizers and growth enhancement of sesame (*Sesamum indicum* L.) with application of rhizospheric competent *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* LES4. Eur J Soil Biol 45:334–340. doi:10.1016/j.ejsobi.2009.04.002

Kumar A, Munder A, Aravind R, Eapen SJ, Tümmler B, Raaijmakers JM (2013) Friend or foe: genetic and functional characterization of plant endophytic *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Environ Microbiol 15:764–779. doi:10.1111/1462-2920.12031

Lal S, Tabacchioni S (2009) Ecology and biotechnological potential of *Paenibacillus polymyxa*: a minireview. Indian J Microbiol 49:2–10. doi:10.1007/s12088-009-0008-y

Lee JH, Seo MW, Kim HG (2012) Isolation and Characterization of an antagonistic endophytic bacterium *Bacillus velezensis* CB3 the control of citrus green mold pathogen *Penicillium digitatum*. Korean J Mycol 40:118–123. doi:10.4489/KJM.2012.40.2.118

Leite HAC, Silva AB, Gomes FP, Gramacho KP, Faria JC, De Souza JT, Loguercio LL (2013) *Bacillus subtilis* and *Enterobacter cloacae* endophytes from healthy *Theobroma cacao* L. trees can systemically colonize seedlings and promote growth. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 97:2639–2651. doi:10.1007/s00253-012-4574-2

Liu Z, Pillay V, Nowak J (1995) In vitro culture of watermelon and cantaloupe with and without beneficial bacterium. Acta Horticult 402:58–60. doi:10.17660/ActaHortic.1995.402.11

Liu B, Huang LL, Kang ZS, Qiao HP (2007) Efficiency and mechanism on endophytic bacteria strains against the take-all disease of wheat. Acta Phytophyl Sinica 34:221–222

Liu M, Luo K, Wang Y, Zeng A, Zhou X, Luo F, Bai L (2014) Isolation, identification and characteristics of an endophytic quinclorac degrading bacterium *Bacillus megaterium* Q3. PLoS ONE 9:e108012. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0108012

Loper JE, Haack C, Schroth MN (1985) Population dynamics of soil pseudomonads in the rhizosphere of potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.). Appl Environ Microbiol 49:416–422

Lowman S, Kim-Dura S, Mei C, Nowak J (2015) Strategies for enhancement of switchgrass (*Panicum virgatum* L.) performance under limited nitrogen supply based on utilization of N-fixing bacterial endophytes. Plant Soil doi:10.1007/s11104-015-2640-0

Lugtenberg B, Kamilova F (2009) Plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Annu Rev Microbiol 63:541–556. doi:10.1146/annurev.micro.62.081307.162918

Magalhaes FMM, Baldani JI, Souto SM, Kuykendal JR, Döbereiner J (1983) A new acid tolerant *Azospirillum* species. An Acad Bras Cien 55:417–430

Maheshwari DK (2013) Bacteria in agrobiology: disease management. Springer-Verlag, Berlin Heidelberg, Germany. doi:10.1007/978-3-642-33639-3

Maldonado-González MM, Prieto P, Ramos C, Mercado-Blanco J (2013) From the root to the stem: interaction between the biocontrol root endophyte *Pseudomonas fluorescens* PICF7 and the pathogen *Pseudomonas savastanoi* NCPPB 3335 in olive knots. Microb Biotechnol 6:275–287. doi:10.1111/1751-7915.12036

McInroy JA, Kloepper JW (1995) Survey of indigenous bacterial endophytes from cotton and sweet corn. Plant Soil 173:337–342. doi:10.1007/BF00011472

Mendes R, Pizzirani-Kleiner AA, Araujo WL, Raaijmakers JM (2007) Diversity of cultivated endophytic bacteria from sugarcane: genetic and biochemical characterization of *Burkholderia cepacia* complex isolates. Appl Environ Microbiol 73:7259–7267. doi:10.1128/AEM.01222-07

Migula W (1894) Über ein neues System der Bakterien. Arb Bakteriol Inst Karlsruhe 1:235–328

Miller SH, Mark GL, Franks A, O'Gara F (2008) *Pseudomonas*–plant interactions. In: Rehm BHA (ed) *Pseudomonas*: model organism, pathogen, cell factory. Wiley, Weinheim, pp 353–370. doi:10.1002/9783527622009.ch13

Misaghi IJ, Donndelinger CR (1990) Endophytic bacteria in symptom-free cotton plants. Phytopathology 80:808–811

Mitter B, Petric A, Shin MW, Chain PS, Hauberg-Lotte L, Reinhold- Hurek B, Nowak J, Sessitsch A (2013) Comparative genome analysis of *Burkholderia phytofirmans* PsJN reveals a wide spectrum of endophytic lifestyles based on interaction strategies with host plants. Front Plant Sci 4:120. doi:10.3389/fpls.2013.00120

Montañez A, Abreu C, Gill PR, Hardarson G, Sicardi M (2009) Biological nitrogen fixation in maize (*Zea mays* L.) by ^{15}N isotope-dilution and identification of associated culturable diazotrophs. Biol Fertil Soils 45:253–263. doi:10.1007/s00374-008-0322-2

Moreira ZM, Duarte EAA, Oliveira TAS, Monteiro FP, Loguercio LL, de Souza JT (2015) Host and tissue preferences of *Enterobacter cloacae* and *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* for endophytic colonization. Afr J Microbiol Res 9:1352–1356. doi:10.5897/AJMR2015.7475

Mousa WK, Shearer CR, Limay-Rios V, Zhou T, Raizada MN (2015) Bacterial endophytes from wild maize suppress *Fusarium graminearum* in modern maize and inhibit mycotoxin accumulation. Front Plant Sci 6:805. doi:10.3389/fpls.2015.00805

Munjal V, Nadakkakath AV, Sheoran N, Kundu A, Venugopal V, Subaharan K, Rajamma S, Eapen SJ, Kumar A (2016) Genotyping and identification of broad spectrum antimicrobial volatiles in black pepper root endophytic biocontrol agent, *Bacillus megaterium* BP17. Biol Control 92:66–76. doi:10.1016/j.biocontrol.2015.09.005

Muthukumarasamy R, Revathi G, Lakshminarasimhan C (1999) Influence of N fertilisation on the isolation of *Acetobacter diazotrophicus* and *Herbaspirillum* spp. from Indian sugarcane varieties. Biol Fertil Soils 29:157–164. doi:10.1007/s003740050539

Muthukumarasamy R, Revathi G, Seshadri S, Lakshminarasimhan C (2002) *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus* (syn. *Acetobacter diazotrophicus*), a promising diazotrophic endophyte in tropics. Curr Sci 83:137–145

Naveed M, Hussain MB, Zahir ZA, Mitter B, Sessitsch A (2014a) Drought stress amelioration in wheat through inoculation with *Burkholderia phytofirmans* strain PsJN. Plant Growth Regul 73:121–131. doi:10.1007/s10725-013-9874-8

Naveed M, Mitter B, Reichenauer TG, Wieczorek K, Sessitsch A (2014b) Increased drought stress resilience of maize through endophytic colonization by *Burkholderia phytofirmans* PsJN and *Enterobacter* sp. FD17. Environ Exp Bot 97:30–39. doi:10.1016/j.envexpbot.2013.09.014

Nowak J, Sharma VK, A'Hearn E (2004) Endophyte enhancement of transplant performance in tomato, cucumber and sweet pepper. Acta Horticult 631:253–263. doi:10.17660/ActaHortic.2004.631.32

Okunishi S, Sako K, Mano H, Imamura A, Morisaki H (2005) Bacterial flora of endophytes in the maturing seed of cultivated rice (*Oryza sativa*). Microbes Environ 20:168–177. doi:10.1264/jsme2.20.168

Olivares FL, Baldani VLD, Reis VM, Baldani JI, Döbereiner J (1996) Occurrence of the endophytic diazotrophs *Herbaspirillum* spp. in roots, stems, and leaves, predominantly of Gramineae. Biol Fertil Soils 21:197–200. doi:10.1007/BF00335935

Oteino N, Lally RD, Kiwanuka S, Lloyd A, Ryan D, Germaine KJ, Dowling DN (2015) Plant growth promotion induced by phosphate solubilizing endophytic *Pseudomonas* isolates. Front Microbiol. doi:10.3389/fmicb.2015.00745

Padda KP, Puri A, Chanway CP (2016a) Effect of GFP tagging of *Paenibacillus polymyxa* P2b-2R on its ability to promote growth of canola and tomato seedlings. Biol Fertil Soils 52:377–387. doi:10.1007/s00374-015-1083-3

Padda KP, Puri A, Chanway CP (2016b) Plant growth promotion and nitrogen fixation in canola by an endophytic strain of *Paenibacillus polymyxa* and its GFP-tagged derivative in a long-term study. Botany 94:1209–1217. doi:10.1139/cjb-2016-0075

Padda KP, Puri A, Zeng Q, Chanway CP, Wu X (2017) Effect of GFP-tagging on nitrogen fixation and plant growth promotion of an endophytic diazotrophic strain of *Paenibacillus polymyxa*. Botany 95:933–942. doi:10.1139/cjb-2017-0056

Palacios OA, Bashan Y, de-Bashan LE (2014) Proven and potential involvement of vitamins in interactions of plants with plant growth promoting bacteria—an overview. Biol Fertil Soils 50:415–432. doi:10.1007/s00374-013-0894-3

Palleroni NJ (2010) The *Pseudomonas* story. Environ Microbiol 12:1377–1383. doi:10.1111/j.1462-2920.2009.02041.x

Palus JA, Borneman J, Ludden PW, Triplett EW (1996) A diazotrophic bacterial endophyte isolated from stems of *Zea mays* L. and *Zea luxurians* Iltis and Doebley. Plant Soil 186:135–142. doi:10.1007/BF00035067

Pandey P, Kang SC, Maheshwari DK (2005) Isolation of endophytic plant growth promoting *Burkholderia* sp. MSSP from root nodules of *Mimosa pudica*. Curr Sci 89:170–180

Pandey PK, Yadav SK, Singh A, Sarma BK, Mishra A, Singh HB (2012) Cross-species alleviation of biotic and abiotic stresses by the endophyte *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* PW09. J Phytopathol 160:532–539. doi:10.1111/j.1439-0434.2012.01941.x

Park JH, Choi GJ, Lee SW, Jang KS, Lim HK, Chung YR, Cho KY, Kim JC (2005) Isolation and characterization of *Burkholderia cepacia* EB215, an endophytic bacterium showing a potent antifungal activity against *Colletotrichum* species. Microbiol Biotechnol Lett 33:16–23

Parke JL, Gurian-Sherman D (2001) Diversity of the *Burkholderia cepacia* complex and implications for risk assessment of biological control strains. Annu Rev Phytopathol 39:225–258. doi:10.1146/annurev.phyto.39.1.225

Perin L, Martinez-Aguilar L, Paredes-Valdez G, Baldani JI, Estrada-de Los Santos P, Reis VM, Caballero-Mellado J (2006) *Burkholderia silvatlantica* sp. nov., a diazotrophic bacterium associated with sugar cane and maize. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 56:1931–1937. doi:10.1099/ijs.0.64362-0

Pisarska K, Pietr SJ (2012) Isolation and partial characterization of culturable endophytic *Arthrobacter* spp. from Leaves of Maize (*Zea mays* L.). Comm Agr Appl Biol Sci 77:225–233

Postma J, Nijhuis EH, Someus E (2010) Selection of phosphorus solubilizing bacteria with biocontrol potential for growth in phosphorus rich animal bone charcoal. Appl Soil Ecol 46:464–469. doi:10.1016/j.apsoil.2010.08.016

Poupin MJ, Timmermann T, Vega A, Zuñiga A, González B (2013) Effects of the plant growth-promoting bacterium *Burkholderia phytofirmans* PsJN throughout the life cycle of *Arabidopsis thaliana*. PLoS ONE 8:e69435. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0069435

Prasanna R, Nain L, Ancha R, Srikrishna J, Joshi M, Kaushik BD (2009) Rhizosphere dynamics of inoculated cyanobacteria and their growth-promoting role in rice crop. Egyptian J Biol 11:26–36

Pillay VK, Nowak J (1997) Inoculum density, temperature, and genotype effects on in vitro growth promotion and epiphytic and endophytic colonization of tomato (*Lycopersicon esculentum* L) seedlings inoculated with a pseudomonad bacterium. Can J Microbiol 43:354–361. doi:10.1139/m97-049

Prabhukarthikeyan R, Saravanakumar D, Raguchander T (2014) Combination of endophytic *Bacillus* and *Beauveria* for the management of *Fusarium* wilt and fruit borer in tomato. Pest Manag Sci 70:1742–1750. doi:10.1002/ps.3719

Preston GM (2004) Plant perceptions of plant growth-promoting *Pseudomonas*. Philos T R Soc Lon B 359:907–918. doi:10.1098/rstb.2003.1384

Prieto P, Navarro-Raya C, Valverde-Corredor A, Amyotte SG, Dobinson KF, Mercado-Blanco J (2009) Colonization process of olive tissues by *Verticillium dahliae* and its *in planta* interaction with the biocontrol root endophyte *Pseudomonas fluorescens* PICF7. Microb Biotechnol 2:499–511. doi:10.1111/j.1751-7915.2009.00105.x

Pu X, Chen F, Yang Y, Qu X, Zhang G, Luo Y (2015) Isolation and characterization of *Paenibacillus polymyxa* LY214, a camptothecin-producing endophytic bacterium from *Camptotheca acuminata*. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 42:1197–1202. doi:10.1007/s10295-015-1643-4

Puri A, Padda KP, Chanway CP (2015) Can a diazotrophic endophyte originally isolated from lodgepole pine colonize an agricultural crop (corn) and promote its growth? Soil Biol Biochem 89:210–216. doi:10.1016/j.soilbio.2015.07.012

Puri A, Padda KP, Chanway CP (2016a) Evidence of nitrogen fixation and growth promotion in canola (*Brassica napus* L.) by an endophytic diazotroph *Paenibacillus polymyxa* P2b-2R. Biol Fertil Soils 52:119–125. doi:10.1007/s00374-015-1051-y

Puri A, Padda KP, Chanway CP (2016b) Seedling growth promotion and nitrogen fixation by a bacterial endophyte *Paenibacillus polymyxa* P2b-2R and its GFP derivative in corn in a long-term trial. Symbiosis 69:123–129. doi:10.1007/s13199-016-0385-z

Qiao HP, Huang LL, Kang ZS (2006) Endophytic bacteria isolated from wheat and their antifungal activities to soil-borne disease pathogens. Chin J Appl Ecol 17:690–694

Quadt-Hallmann A, Kloepper JW (1996) Immunological detection and localization of the cotton endophyte Enterobacter asburiae JM22 in different plant species. Can J Microbiol 42:1144–1154. doi:10.1139/m96-146

Quispel A (1992) A search of signal in endophytic microorganisms. In: Verma DPS (ed) Molecular Signals in Plant Microbe Communications. CRS Press, Boca Raton, pp 475–491

Raaijmakers J, Paulitz TC, Steinberg C, Alabouvette C, Moënne-Loccoz Y (2009) The rhizosphere: a playground and battlefield for soil borne pathogens and beneficial microorganisms. Plant Soil 321:341–361. doi:10.1007/s11104-008-9568-6

Rajendran L, KarthikeyanG Raguchander T, Samiyappan R (2008) Cloning and sequencing of novel endophytic *Bacillus subtilis* from coconut for the management of basal stem rot disease. Asian J Plant Pathol 2:1–14. doi:10.3923/ajppaj.2008.1.14

Rangel de Souza ALS, De Souza SA, De Oliveira MVV, Ferraz TM, Figueiredo FAMMA, Da Silva ND, Rangel PL, Panisset CRS, Olivares FL, Campostrini E, De Souza Filho GA (2016) Endophytic colonization of *Arabidopsis thaliana* by *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus* and its effect on plant growth promotion, plant physiology, and activation of plant defense. 399:257–270. doi:10.1007/s11104-015-2672-5

Rangjaroen C, Rerkasem B, Teaumroong N, Noisangiam R, Lumyong S (2015) Promoting plant growth in a commercial rice cultivar by endophytic diazotrophic bacteria isolated from rice landraces. Ann Microbiol 65:253–266. doi:10.1007/s13213-014-0857-4

Reinhold-Hurek B, Hurek T (1998a) Interactions of gramineous plants with *Azoarcus* spp. and other diazotrophs: identification, localization, and perspectives to study their function. Crc Cr Rev Plant Sci 17:29–54. doi:10.1080/07352689891304186

Reinhold-Hurek B, Hurek T (1998b) Life in grasses: diazotrophic endophytes. Trends Microbiol 6:139–144. doi:10.1016/S0966-842X(98)01229-3

Reinhold-Hurek B, Hurek T, Gillis M, Hoste B, Vancanneyt M, Kersters K, de Ley J (1993) *Azoarcus* gen. nov., nitrogen- fixing proteobacteria associated with roots of Kallar grass (*Leptochloa fusca* (L.) Kunth), and description of two species, *Azoarcus indigens* sp. nov. and *Azoarcus communis* sp. nov. Int J Syst Bacteriol 43:574–584. doi:10.1099/00207713-43-3-574

Reis VM, de los Santos PE, Tenorio-Salgado S, Vogel J, Stoffels M, Guyon S, Mavingui P, Baldani VLD, Schmid M, Baldani JI, Balandreau J, Hartmann A, Caballero-Mellado J (2004) *Burkholderia tropica* sp. nov., a novel nitrogen-fixing, plant-associated bacterium. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 54:2155–2162. doi:10.1099/ijs.0.02879-0

Rennie RJ (1981) A single medium for the isolation of acetylene-reducing (dinitrogen-fixing) bacteria from soils. Can J Microbiol 27:8–14. doi:10.1139/m81-002

Rennie RJ, de Freitas JR, Ruschel AP, Vose PB (1982) Isolation and identification of nitrogen fixing bacteria associated with sugarcane (*Saccharum* sp.). Can J Microbiol 28:462–467. doi:10.1139/m82-070

Richardson A, Barea J-M, McNeill A, Prigent-Combaret C (2009) Acquisition of phosphorus and nitrogen in the rhizosphere and plant growth promotion by microorganisms. Plant Soil 321:305–339. doi:10.1007/s11104-009-9895-2

Riggs PJ, Chelius MK, Iniguez AL, Kaeppler SM, Triplett EW (2001) Enhanced maize productivity by inoculation with diazotrophic bacteria. Aust J Plant Physiol 28:829–836. doi:10.1071/PP01045

Robertson GP, Vitousek PM (2009) Nitrogen in agriculture: Balancing the cost of an essential resource. Annu Rev Environ Resour 34:97–125. doi:10.1146/annurev.environ.032108.105046

Rodriguez H, Mendoza A, Antonia Cruz M, Holguin G, Glick BR, Bashan Y (2006) Pleiotropic physiological effects in the plant growth-promoting bacterium *Azospirillum brasilense* following chromosomal labeling in the clpX gene. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 57: 217–225. doi:10.1111/j.1574-6941.2006.00111.x

Roesch LFW, Camargo FAO, Bento FM, Triplett EW (2008) Biodiversity of diazotrophs within the soil, root and stem of field grown maize. Plant Soil 302:91–104. doi:10.1007/s11104-007-9458-3

Roncato-Maccari LD, Ramos HJ, Pedrosa FO, Alquini Y, Chubatsu LS, Yates MG, Rigo LU, Steffens MB, Souza EM (2003) Endophytic *Herbaspirillum seropedicae* expresses *nif* genes in gramineous plants. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 45:39–47. doi:10.1016/S0168-6496(03)00108-9

Rosenblueth M, Martínez-Romero E (2006) Bacterial endophytes and their interaction with hosts. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 19:827–837. doi:10.1094/MPMI-19-0827

Rothballer M, Schmid M, Hartmann A (2003) In situ localization and PGPR-effect of *Azospirillum brasilense* strains colonizing roots of different wheat varieties. Symbiosis 34:261–279

Rothballer M, Schmid M, Klein I, Gattinger A, Grundmann S, Hartmann A (2006) *Herbaspirillum hiltneri* sp. nov., isolated from surface-sterilized wheat roots. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 56:1341–1348. doi:10.1099/ijs.0.64031-0

Rothballer M, Eckert B, Schmid M, Fekete A, Schloter M, Lehner A, Pollmann S, Hartmann A (2008) Endophytic root colonization of gramineous plants by *Herbaspirillum frisingense*. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 66:85–95. doi:10.1111/j.1574-6941.2008.00582.x

Rouws LF, Meneses CH, Guedes HV, Vidal MS, Baldani JI, Schwab S (2010) Monitoring the colonization of sugarcane and rice plants by the endophytic diazotrophic bacterium *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus* marked with *gfp* and *gusA* reporter genes. Lett Appl Microbiol 51:325–330. doi:10.1111/j.1472-765X.2010.02899.x

Ruschel AP (1981) Associative N_2-fixation by sugar cane. In: Vose PB, Ruschel AP (eds) Associative N_2-fixation, vol 2. CRC, Boca Raton, pp 81–90

Ryan RP, Germaine K, Franks A, Ryan DJ, Dowling DN (2008) Bacterial endophytes: recent developments and applications. FEMS Microbiol Lett 278:1–9. doi:10.1111/j.1574-6968.2007.00918.x

Ryu CM, Kim J, Choi O, Kim SH, Park CS (2006) Improvement of biological control capacity of *Paenibacillus polymyxa* E681 by seed pelleting on sesame. Biol Control 39:282–289. doi:10.1016/j.biocontrol.2006.04.014

Sabry RS, Saleh SA, Batchelor CA, Jones J, Jotham J, Webster G, Kothari SL, Davey MR, Cocking EC (1997) Endophytic establishment of *Azorhizobium caulinodans* in wheat. Proc R Soc London: Biol Sci 264:341–346. doi:10.1098/rspb.1997.0049

Santi C, Bogusz D, Franche C (2013) Biological nitrogen fixation in non-legume plants. Ann Bot 111:743–767. doi:10.1093/aob/mct048

Schloter M, Hartmann A (1998) Endophytic and surface colonization of wheat roots (*Triticum aestivum*) by different *Azospirillum brasilense* strains studies with strain-specific monoclonal antibodies. Symbiosis 25:159–179

Seldin L, van Elsas JD, Penido EGC (1984) *Bacillus azotofixans* sp. nov., a nitrogen-fixing species from Brazilian soils and grass roots. Int J Syst Bacteriol 34:451–456. doi:10.1099/00207713-34-4-451

Sessitsch A, Reiter B, Pfeifer U, Wilhelm E (2002) Cultivation-independent population analysis of bacterial endophytes in three potato varieties based on eubacterial and *Actinomycetes*-specific PCR of 16S rRNA genes. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 39:23–32. doi:10.1111/j.1574-6941.2002.tb00903.x

Sessitsch A, Reiter B, Berg G (2004) Endophytic bacterial communities of field-grown potato plants and their plant-growth-promoting and antagonistic abilities. Can J Microbiol 50:239–249. doi:10.1139/w03-118

Sessitsch A, Coenye T, Sturz AV, Vandamme P, AitBarka E, Salles JF, van Elsas JD, Faure D, Reiter B, Glick BR, Wang-Pruski G, Nowak J (2005) *Burkholderia phytofirmans* sp. nov., a novel plant- associated bacterium with plant-beneficial properties. Int J Syst Evol Bacteriol 55:1187–1192. doi:10.1099/ijs.0.63149-0

Sevilla M, Kennedy C (2000) Colonization of rice and other cereals by *Acetobacter diazotrophicus*, an endophyte of sugarcane. In: Ladha JK, Reddy PM (eds) The quest for nitrogen fixation in rice. Proceedings of the third working group meeting on assessing opportunities for nitrogen fixation in rice, 9–12 Aug 1999, Los Baños, Laguna, Philippines. Makati City (Philippines): International Rice Research Institute, pp 151–165

Sevilla M, Burris RH, Gunapala N, Kennedy C (2001) Comparison of benefit to sugarcane plant growth and $^{15}N_2$ incorporation following inoculation of sterile plants with *Acetobacter diazotrophicus* wild-type and Nif^- mutant strains. Mol Plant-Microbe Int 14:358–366. doi:10.1094/MPMI.2001.14.3.358

Sharma V, Nowak J (1998) Enhancement of verticillium wilt resistance in tomato transplants by in vitro co-culture of seedlings with a plant growth promoting rhizobacterium (*Pseudomonas* sp. strain PsJN). Can J Microbiol 44:528–536. doi:10.1139/w98-017

Shehata HR, Lyons EM, Jordan KS, Raizada MN (2016) Bacterial endophytes from wild and ancient maize are able to suppress the fungal pathogen *Sclerotinia homoeocarpa*. J Appl Microbiol 120:756–769. doi:10.1111/jam.13050

Shishido M, Brevil C, Chanway CP (1999) Endophytic colonization of spruce by plant growth promoting rhizobacteria. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 29:191–196. doi:10.1111/j.1574-6941.1999.tb00610.x

Singer AC, Gilbert ES, Luepromchai E, Crowley DE (2000) Bioremediation of polychlorinated biphenyl-contaminated soil using carvone and surfactant-grown bacteria. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 54:838–843. doi:10.1007/s002530000472

Stephan MP, Oliveira M, Teixeira KRS, Martinez-Drets G, Döbereiner J (1991) Physiology and dinitrogen fixation of *Acetobacter diazotrophicus*. FEMS Microbiol Lett 77:67–72. doi:10.1111/j.1574-6968.1991.tb04323.x

Sturz AV, Christie BR, Matheson BG, Nowak J (1997) Biodiversity of endophytic bacteria which colonize red clover nodules, roots, stems and foliage and their influence on host growth. Biol Fertil Soils 25:13–19. doi:10.1007/s003740050273

Sturz AV, Christie BR, Nowak J (2000) Bacterial endophytes: potential role in developing sustainable systems of crop production. Crit Rev Plant Sci 19:1–30. doi:10.1080/07352680091139169

Sun Y, Cheng Z, Glick BR (2009) The presence of a 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate (ACC) deaminase deletion mutation alters the physiology of the endophytic plant growth-promoting bacterium *Burkholderia phytofirmans* PsJN. FEMS Microbiol Lett 296:131–136. doi:10.1111/j.1574-6968.2009.01625.x

Sun K, Liu J, Gao Y, Jin L, Gu Y, Wang W (2014) Isolation, plant colonization potential, and phenanthrene degradation performance of the endophytic bacterium *Pseudomonas* sp. Ph6-*gfp*. Sci Rep 4:5462. doi:10.1038/srep05462

Tanaka K, Shimizu T, Zakria M, Njoloma J, Saeki Y, Sakai M, Yamakawa T, Minamisawa K, Akao S (2006) Incorporation of a DNA sequence encoding green fluorescent protein (GFP) into endophytic diazotroph from sugarcane and sweet potato and the colonizing ability of these bacteria in *Brassica oleracea*. Microbes Environ 21:122–128. doi:10.1264/jsme2.21.122

Tang Q, Puri A, Padda KP, Chanway CP (2017) Biological nitrogen fixation and plant growth promotion of lodgepole pine by an endophytic diazotroph *Paenibacillus polymyxa* and its GFP-tagged derivative. Botany 95:611–619. doi:10.1139/cjb-2016-0300

Timmusk S, Nicander B, Granhall U, Tillberg E (1999) Cytokinin production by *Paenibacillus polymyxa*. Soil Biol Biochem 31:1847–1852. doi:10.1016/S0038-0717(99)00113-3

Timmusk S, van West P, Gow NAR, Paul Huffstutler R (2009) *Paenibacillus polymyxa* antagonizes oomycete plant pathogens *Phytophthora palmivora* and *Pythium aphanidermatum*. J Appl Microbiol 106:1473–1481. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2672.2009.04123.x

Trognitz F, Piller K, Nagel M, Borner A, Bacher C-F, Rechlik M, Mayrhofer H, Sessitsch A (2014) Isolation and characterization of endophytes isolated from seeds of different plants and the application to increase juvenile development. Tagung der Vereinigung der P anzenzüchter und Saatgutkau eute Österreichs 65:25–28. http://www.cabi.org/cabdirect/FullTextPDF/2016/20163005806.pdf. Accessed 16 July 2016

Tyagi VVS, Mayne BC, Peters GA (1980) Purification and initial characterization of phycobiliproteins from the endophytic cyanobacterium of *Azolla*. Arch Microbiol 128:41–44. doi:10.1007/BF00422303

United Nations, Department of Economic and Social Affairs, Population Division (2015) World Population Prospects: The 2015 Revision, Key Findings and Advance Tables. Working Paper No. ESA/P/WP.241. http://esa.un.org/unpd/wpp/Publications/Files/Key_Findings_WPP_2015.pdf. Accessed 16 July 2016

Verhagen BWM, Glazebrook J, Zhu T, Chang HS, van Loon LC, Pieterse CMJ (2004) The transcriptome of rhizobacteria-induced systemic resistance in Arabidopsis. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 17:895–908. doi:10.1094/MPMI.2004.17.8.895

Vermeiren H, Willems A, Schoofs G, de Mot R, Keijers V, Hai W, Vanderleyden J (1999) The rice inoculant strain *Alcaligenes faecalis* A15 is a nitrogen-fixing *Pseudomonas stutzeri*. Syst Appl Microbiol 22:215–224. doi:10.1016/S0723-2020(99)80068-X

Wang H, Wen K, Zhao X, Wang X, Li A, Hong H (2009a) The inhibitory activity of endophytic *Bacillus* sp. strain CHM1 against plant pathogenic fungi and its plant growth-promoting effect. Crop Prot 28:634–639. doi:10.1016/j.cropro.2009.03.017

Wang S, Hu T, Jiao Y, Wei J, Cao K (2009b) Isolation and characterization of *Bacillus subtilis* EB-28, an endophytic bacterium strain displaying biocontrol activity against *Botrytis cinerea* Pers. Front Agric China 3:247–252. doi:10.1007/s11703-009-0042-x

Weilharter A, Mitter B, Shin MV, Chain PSG, Nowak J, Sessitsch A (2011) Complete genome sequence of the plant growth-promoting endophyte *Burkholderia phytofirmans* strain PsJN. J Bacteriol 193:3383–3384. doi:10.1128/JB.05055-11

Weyens N, van der Lelie D, Taghavi S, Newman L, Vangronsveld J (2009) Exploiting plant–microbe partnerships to improve biomass production and remediation. Trends Biotechnol 27:591–598. doi:10.1016/j.tibtech.2009.07.006

Weyens N, Truyens S, Dupae J, Newman L, Taghavi S, van der Lelie D, Carleer R, Vangronsveld J (2010) Potential of the TCE-degrading endophyte *Pseudomonas putida* W619-TCE to improve plant growth and reduce TCE phytotoxicity and evapotranspiration in poplar cuttings. Environ Pollut 158:2915–2919. doi:10.1016/j.envpol.2010.06.004

Weyens N, Boulet J, Adriaensen D et al (2012) Contrasting colonization and plant growth promoting capacity between wild type and a gfp-derative of the endophyte *Pseudomonas putida* W619 in hybrid poplar. Plant Soil 356:217–230. doi:10.1007/s11104-011-0831-x

Yabuuchi E, Kosako Y, Oyaizu H, Yano I, Hotta H, Hashimoto Y, Ezaki T, Arakawa M (1992) Proposal of Burkholderia gen. nov. and transfer of seven species of the genus *Pseudomonas* homology group II to the new genus, with the type species *Burkholderia cepacia* (Palleroni and Holmes 1981) comb. nov. Microbiol Immunol 36:1251–1275. doi:10.1111/j.1348-0421.1992.tb02129.x

Yamada Y, Hoshino K, Ishkawa T (1997) The phylogeny of acetic acid bacteria based on the partial sequences of 16 S ribosomal RNA: the elevation of the subgenus *Gluconacetobacter* to the generic level. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 61:1244–1251. doi:10.1271/bbb.61.1244

Yang H, Puri A, Padda KP, Chanway CP (2016) Effects of *Paenibacillus polymyxa* inoculation and different soil nitrogen treatments on lodgepole pine seedling growth. Can J For Res 46:816–821. doi:10.1139/cjfr-2015-0456

Yang H, Puri A, Padda KP, Chanway CP (2017) Substrate utilization by endophytic *Paenibacillus polymyxa* that may facilitate bacterial entrance and survival inside various host plants. FACETS 2:120–130. doi:10.1139/facets-2016-0031

Youssef HH, Fayez M, Monib M, Hegazi N (2004) *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus*: a natural endophytic diazotroph of Nile Delta sugarcane capable of establishing an endophytic association with wheat. Biol Fertil Soils 39:391–397. doi:10.1007/s00374-004-0728-4

You CB, Zhou FY (1989) Non-nodular endorhizospheric nitrogen fixation in wetland rice. Can J Microbiol 35:403–408. doi:10.1139/m89-062

Zakria M, Udonishi K, Ogawa T, Yamamoto A, Saeki Y, Akao S (2008) Influence of inoculation technique on the endophytic colonization of rice by *Pantoea* sp. isolated from sweet potato and by *Enterobacter* sp. isolated from sugarcane. Soil Sci Plant Nutr 54:224–236. doi:10.1111/j.1747-0765.2007.00233.x

Zhao L, Xu Y, Lai XH, Shan C, Deng Z, Ji Y (2015) Screening and characterization of endophytic *Bacillus* and *Paenibacillus* strains from medicinal plant *Lonicera japonica* for use as potential plant growth promoters. Braz J Microbiol 46:977–989. doi:10.1590/S1517-838246420140024

Chapter 3
Endophytic Fungi Bioremediation

Yelugere L. Krishnamurthy and B. Shankar Naik

Abstract Fungal endophytes are isolated from almost every host plant studied so far. The relationship between endophytes and host plants involves both mutualism and antagonism. Plants have many mechanisms to limit the growth of endophytes which include producing a variety of toxic metabolites such as terpenoides. But over a long period of co-evolution, endophytes have gradually formed a variety of tolerant mechanisms towards host metabolites by producing exo enzymes and mycotoxins. These enzymes include pectinase, cellulase, lipoidase, proteinase, phenol oxidase and lignin catabolic enzymes. When host plants die the fungi utilize the carbon source, plant residues such as glucose, oligosaccharides, cellulose, hemicelluloses, lignin, keratin, pectin, lipids and proteins and decomposes effectively. These enzymes may also degrade macromolecule compounds into small molecules or convert more toxic substances into less toxic in order to increase their adaptability. The use of fungi to clean up environmental pollutants has gained momentum in the past few years. However, most studies have focussed on white rot fungi and use of endophytic fungi might be a novel and important source for degradation of toxic pollutants including hydrocarbons, polychlorinated biphenyl's (PCBs), polyaromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), radionuclides, and metals. Phytoremediation is another important bioremediation aspects of endophytic fungi in soils contaminated with hydrocarbons and heavy metals. Depolymerisations is one of the most efficient methods of plastic waste management by endophytic fungal enzymatic action. Complex polymers disintegrate into short chains of oligomers, dimers and monomers which can act as a source of carbon and energy. The enzymes produced by the microbes vary with the species even between strains of the same species. Enzymes are very specific in their action on substrates so that different enzymes help in the degradation of various types of enzymes.

Y.L. Krishnamurthy (✉)
Department of P.G. Studies and Research in Applied Botany, Bioscience Complex, Kuvempu University, Jnanasahyadri, 577 451 Shimoga, Karnataka, India
e-mail: murthy_ylk@yahoo.co.in

B.S. Naik
Department of Biology, Govt. Science College, 577 101 Chikmagalur, Karnataka, India
e-mail: shankar_sbn@yahoo.co.in

D.K. Maheshwari and K. Annapurna (eds.), *Endophytes: Crop Productivity and Protection*, Sustainable Development and Biodiversity 16,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-66544-3_3

Keywords Endophytes · Bioremediation · Nutrient cycling
Phytoremediation · Biodegradation

3.1 Introduction

Endophytes are bacterial or fungal microorganisms that colonize healthy plant tissues intercellular and/or intracellular without causing any apparent symptoms of disease (Wilson 1995). Almost every host plant studied so far is associated with some microorganism (Arnold et al. 2000; Shankar Naik et al. 2008). Symbioses between a fungus and a plant a wide spread phenomenon in nature and plays a major role in structuring plant communities by affecting colonization, competition, co-existence and soil nutrient dynamics (Clay and Holah 1999; Lemons et al. 2005; Krishnamurthy et al. 2009; Ghimire et al. 2010; Shankar Naik et al. 2014). The relationship is noted for balanced antagonism between endophytic virulence and plant defensive response (Schulz and Boyle 2005).

Plants have several mechanisms to limit the growth of endophytes including producing a variety of toxic metabolites (Muciarelli et al. 2007; Shankar Naik et al. 2006), but over a long period of co-evolution, the host endophyte may develop genetic systems allowing for the transfer of information themselves. Thus, endophytes have gradually formed a variety of tolerant mechanisms towards host metabolites by producing exo enzymes and mycotoxins (Costa et al. 2000; Schulz et al. 2002). Several workers have reviewed that endophytes produce diverse secondary metabolites related to terpenes, flavonoides, alkaloids, quinines, cyclohexanes and hydrocarbons. Many of these compounds showed antimicrobial, antioxidant, antineoplastic, anti-leishmanial and anti-proliferative activity, cytotoxicity and also fuel production (Shankar Naik et al. 2006; Wei et al. 2007; Chomcheon et al. 2009; Shankar Naik and Krishnamurthy 2010; Wang and Dai 2011) (Table 3.1). The enzymes produced by endophytic fungi may degrade macromolecule compounds into small molecules which could allow them to survive and reproduce despite plant defence mechanisms (Zikmundova et al. 2002). The extra cellular enzymes include pectinase, cellulase, lipoidase proteinase, phenol oxidase and lignin catabolic enzymes (Oses et al. 2006; Tan and Zou 2001; Bischoff et al. 2009). Generally fungal endophytes have the ability to utilize various organic compounds (carbon) which enables them in degradation of structural components such as glucose, oligosaccharides, cellulose, hemicelluloses, lignin, keratin, pectin, lipids and proteins (Lumyong et al. 2002; Urairaj et al. 2003; Tomita 2003; Kudanga and Mwanje 2005) present in leaf, litter and wood (Osono and Takeda 2001; Urairaj et al. 2003). In addition they have potential to decompose environmental pollutants and improve the soil micro environment (Wang and Dai 2011).

Few recent studies revealed that endophytes affect litter decomposition rates (Purahong and Hyde 2011) and stimulate soil carbon sequetraton and alter the flux of greenhouse gases (CO_2 and N_2O) from soil to the atmosphere (Iqbal et al. 2013; Saikkonen et al 2015). With the increasing industrialization of the global economy

Table 3.1 Therapeutic compounds from endophytes for various hosts

Natural product	Endophyte	Host plant	Activity	References
Taxol	*Taxomyces andreanae*	*Taxus brevifolia*	Anticancer	Stierle et al. (1993)
Cryptocandin	*Cryptosporiopsis quercina*	*Tvipterigeum wilfordii*	Antifungal	Strobel et al (1999)
Cryptocin	*Cryptosporiopsis quercina*	*Tvipterigeum wilfordii*	Antifungal	Li and Strobel (2001)
Pestaloside	*Pestalotiopsis microspore*	*Torreya taxifolia*	Antifungal	Lee et al. (1995)
Torreyanic acid	*Pestalotiopsis microspore*	*Torreya taxifolia*	Anticancer	Lee et al. (1996)
Subglutinols A&B	*Fusarium subglutinols*	*Taxus cuspidata*	Immunosuppressive	Kim et al (2004)
Campothecin	*Entrophospora infrequens*	*Nothapodytes foetida*	Antineoplastic	Puri et al. (2005)
Naptha-y-pyrone	*Aspergillus niger*	*Cynodon dactylon*	Antitumor	Song et al. (2007)
Vincristine	*Fusarium oxysporum*	*Cantharanthus roseus*	Anticancer	Kumar et al. (2013)
Peniprequinolone	*Penicillium janezewskii*	*Prumnopitys andina*	Nematicidal	Hirschmann et al. (2005)
Podophyllotoxin	*Alternaria* sp.	*Sabina vulgaris*	Antiviral	Eyberger et al. (2006)
Vinblastin	*Alternaria* sp.	*Catharanthus roseus*	Anticancer	Guo et al. (1998)
Volatile hydrocarbons	*Gliocladium roseum*	*Eucryphia cordifolia*	Mycodiesel	Stinson et al. (2003)
Volatile hydrocarbons	*Hypoxylon* sp.	*Persea indica*	Mycodiesel	Tomsheck et al. (2010)
Volatile hydrocarbons	*Muscodor albus*	*Ginkgo biloba*	Mycodiesel	Banerjee et al. (2010)

over the past century, a wide variety of pollutants such as (PHC, PAHs, halogenated hydrocarbons, pesticide solvents, salt and heavy metals have been introduced into the environment and cause environmental problems (Rajkumar et al. 2010; Ma et al. 2011).

New technology such as phytoremediation and bioremediation using microbes especially endophytes are gaining considerable momentum (Li et al. 2012; Weyens et al. 2009; Germaine et al. 2009). In this review, we attempted to discuss the role of endophytic fungi and their potential in bioremediation of natural and anthropogenic toxic pollutants.

3.2 Enzymes in Endophytic Fungal Remediation

Endophytic fungi produce enzymes such as amylases, lipases, proteases, etc., as part of their mechanism to overcome the defence of the host against microbial invasion and to obtain nutrients to their development (Sunitha et al. 2012; Torres et al. 2003). Naturally, endophytic fungi play an important role in global carbon and nitrogen cycling by promoting the bioconversion of organic matter through enzymatic and non-enzymatic systems. In forest region, the endophytes breakdown wood polysaccharides using a combination of enzymes which break glycosides linkages between B-D-xylopyranosyl and glucopyranosyl residues using cellulase system consists of three classes of enzymes, i.e. 1,4-β-D-glucan cellobiohydrolases, endo-1,4-β-D-glucanases and 1,4-β-D-glucosidase (Rodrigues et al. 2011).

Phenol oxidase enzymes which include peroxidases, laccases and tyrosinases degrade lignin which is a hydrophobic polymer that fills up the space between the cellulose micro fibrils and laccases are the copper containing oxidases that have the ability to oxidize substrates with high redox potential in the presence of synthetic mediators which allow the degradation of non-phenolic lignin. Lignin peroxidase and manganese peroxidases are described as true ligninases because of their high redox potential. Some researchers stated that on the role of Xylariaceous endophytic fungi simply waiting for their host to senesce to begin the decomposition of the host cell wall material (Petrini and Petrini 1985; Rodrigues et al. 2011). Several endophytic fungi are known to produce lignocellulolytic enzymes (Suryanarayanan et al. 2009). Lignin is a heterogenous and irregular arrangement of phenyl propanoid polymer protects cellulose from chemical or enzymatic degradation. Fungi produce extracellular enzymes to cleave the aryl –α-carbon bond or bond between the α- and β-carbons of the alkyl chain radical in lignin (Karsten 2008). Shi et al. (2004) demonstrated that adding endophytic fungi *Phomopsis* sp. to scantly decompose straw by degrading lignin. In another study, laccase and peroxide produced by endophytic fungi contribute directly to the decomposition of litter lignin (Dai et al. 2010).

Nutritional and environmental stress may induce fungal relative enzymatic gene express, and then change endophytic fungal metabolic pathway (Chen and Dai 2013). The synergetic metabolism of endophytic (Basidiomycetes) and soil fungi transform stable polymers to other simple compounds such as CO_2, humus substance and glycoproteins (Granit et al. 2007; Talbot et al. 2008).

Rodrigues et al. (2011) reported that a basidiomycete and a deuteromycete corresponding to mycelia sterile isolated from the Chilean native trees *Prumnopity sandina* and an unidentified basidiomycete and mycelia sterile from *Drimys winteri* had lingo-cellulolytic activity thus promoted the wood biodegradation. Researchers reported that the lignocellulosic materials were degraded by fungal enzymes on two systems (a) hydrolytic system consisting xylanases and cellulases and (b) unique oxidative ligninolytic system comprises laccases, ligninases and peroxidases (Correa et al. 2014).

On the other hand, amylases (α amylase, β-amylases and glucoamylases) which are the amylolytic enzymes convert starch into different sugar solutions also contained in endophytic fungi. Fungal amylases especially glucoamylases are widely used in industries. *Aspergillus* sp. and *Rhizopus* sp. are often used as sources for the production of glucoamylases (Pandey et al. 2000). In a study endophytic *Fusicoccum* sp. showed strong amylolytic activity under in vitro conditions (Champreda et al. 2007). Similarly, the endophytic *Cylindro cephalum* sp. isolated from medicinal plant *Alpinia calcarata* (Haw.) Roscoe found to produce amylase under 30 °C and at pH 7.0 in the presence of maltose and sodium nitrate sources (Sunitha et al. 2012). In another study, enzymes of endophytic strains belonged to *Gibberella pulicaris*, *Acremonium* sp., and *Nodulisporium* sp. hydrolysed raw sagostarch to produce solely glucose whereas amylases of *Synnematous* sp. produced glucose and maltose (Marlida et al. 2000).

Another import enzyme secreted by a group of endophytic fungi are lipases which are hydrolytic enzymes that in vivo break the ester bond of triacyl glycerol releasing free fatty acids and glycerol being then classified as a special class of esterases (Oliveira et al. 2012). They also catalyze interesterification, alcoholysis, acidolysis, esterification and aminolysis reactions under proper conditions (Damassoet al. 2008). Endophytic *Rhizopusoryzae* isolated from Mediterranean plants found to be producers of membrane bound lipases (Torres et al. 2003). Similarly, protees are enzymes which hydrolyse peptide bonds of proteins, they are also called proteolytic enzymes or proteinases. Few year back, a novel fibrinolytic enzyme was discovered from endophytic *Fusarium* sp. isolated from *Chrysanthemum* stems (Wu et al. 2009).

Fungi are the major decomposers of lignocelluloses in several ecosystems and play an essential role in cycling of carbon and other nutrients. The main hydrolytic enzymes involved in lignocelluloses degradation are exo and endoglucanases, β-glycosidase, exo and endoxylanases and β-xylosidases (Dyk and Pletschke 2012). Correa et al. (2014) reported that for complete degradation of lignocellulose materials, laccases, manganese peroxidise and lignin peroxidise (oxidative enzymes) and additional hemicelluloses (e.g., acetyl esterase, β-glucuronidase, endo-1, 4-β-mannanase, α-galactosidase) and oxidoreductases (aryl alcohol oxidase, glucose-1-oxidase, glyoxal oxidase, pyranose-2-oxidase) are also needed.

3.3 Endophytic Fungi and Nutrient Cycling

The importance of phyllospheric endophytic fungi to ecosystem functioning via soil processes has aroused increasing interest during the past decade. The endophytes may affect plant litter quality, organisms that control litter decomposition, and the availability of nutrients in plant communities. Endophytes are likely to affect the decomposition of plant litter and soil nutrient trans formations at least in three ways (i) by acting as saprophytes in abscised plant parts and aiding their decay (ii) by affecting the amount and/or quality of plant litter (iii) by affecting the abundance

richness and composition of decomposer organisms (Saikkonen et al. 2015). The non-systemic endophytes from grasses and other plants are also survive in decomposing plant litter as saprotrophs and endophytes, as they can play a role in leaf senescence (Purahong and Hyde 2011). Systemic grass endophytes can increase growth, reproduction and stress resistance of their host plant (Clay and Hollah 1999) and thereby increase the amount of litter produced by the host. They can affect the quality of plant litter by modulating the foliage quality of the host plant.

The endophyte plant symbiosis produces various alkaloids such as pyrolizidines (Lolines), ergot alkaloids, indolediterpenoides (including lolitrems), and the pyrrolopyrazine alkaloids (Peramine) (Saikkonen et al. 2010; Schardl 2010) and alter the concentration of sugars, water and modulates their oxidative balance, phytohormone signalling and other metabolic pathways (Liu et al. 2011; Saikkonen et al. 2013).

The host plants induce responses to invaders and attackers by two evolutionary conserved phytohormone signalling pathways, i.e., by the salicylic acid (SA) and jasmonic acid (JA) pathways (Pieterse and Dicke 2007). Plant defence responses to bio trophic pathogens are mediated by SA pathways (Thaler et al. 2012). Endophytes have both positive and negative effects of decomposer organisms (Lemons et al. 2005). Saikkonen et al. (2013) proposed that endophytes similar to that of the parasites likely induce SA pathway, thus suppressing the mutually antagonistic JA pathway, which is mainly involved in the defence system against pathogens and herbivores. Alternatively, the negative effects can arise prior to colonization of the leaf litter and competitive exclusion of the saprophytic fungi. The allelopathic chemicals produced by endophytes toxic to both microbial and invertebrate decomposers would also lead to negative effects (Saikkonen et al. 2015). Endophytic fungi occur in various plant organs and have a close relationship between hosts and soil (Sun et al. 2008; Chen and Dai 2013). Compounds released as a result of endophytic plant symbiosis could decompose organic matter or inhibit other microbial growth (Suberkropp and Weyers 1996). Endophytic fungi colonizing the host roots could affect soil productivity by promoting soil nutrition through decomposition and reduces soil heavy metal toxicity (Chen and Dai 2013). Endophytic fungi also play an important role in the degradation of plant debris. Oses et al. (2006) found that endophytic fungi belonged to basidiomycetes isolated from Chilean tree species *Drimys winteri* and *Prumnopitysandina* were able to degrade the wood similar to white rot fungi. Endophytes from spruce needles shown to pioneer decomposers in lab experiments (Muller et al. 2001). In a study lignocellulolytic activity was observed from *Alternaria, Phoma* and *Phomopsis* isolated from surface sterilized pods of *Colophospermum mopane* (Jordaan et al. 2006; Wang and Dai 2011). A strain of *Phomopsis* sp., isolated from the inner bark of *Bischofia polycarpa* was able to decompose pea nut straw (Shi et al. 2004). A number of strains belonged to endophytic fungi such as *Xylaria, Geniculosporium, Coccomyces, Monotospora* produced lignicellulolytic enzyme activity (Koide et al. 2005; Osono and Takeda 2001).

3.4 Endophytic Fungi in Phytoremediation

Phytoremediation is one of the approaches in which living green plants *in situ* are used for bioremediation. They have the ability to decrease and/or removing contaminants from soil, water, sediments and air. Numerous recent studies have demonstrated that endophytic microorganisms can accelerate these processes effectively by interacting closely with their host plants (Li et al. 2012). Endophytic *Neotyphodium coenophialum* and *Neotyphodium uncinatum* both were found to be successfully removed PAH and TPH from rhizosphere by two grass species *Festucaarun dinacea* Schreb and *F.pratensis* Hude (Soleimani et al. 2010). Espinosa et al. (2005) demonstrated that phytoremediation of hydrocarbon contaminated soil with *Cyperuslaxus* inoculated with endophytic fungi. Similarly, phytoremediation efficiency of wheat, mungbean and eggplant grown in hydrocarbon contaminated soil was reported by Rabie et al. (2005). Recently Cruz-Hernandez et al. (2013) demonstrated the removal of polyaromatic hydrocarbons by *Festuca aruninaceae* from both perlite and soil by endophytic *Lewia* sp. The inoculated plants exhibited higher phenanthrene degradation (100%) as compared to non-inoculated plants in perlite and soil.

Fungi are highly resistant to heavy metal pollution (Jordan and Lechevelier 1975) and play very important role in element cycling and mineral transformations (Gadd 2007). The mechanism of metal tolerance in fungi includes metal adsorption and immobilization, complexing and quanti-valence changing (Collin et al. 2003; Gadd 2007). Fungal cell wall contains various active groups such as hydrosulphide carboxyl hydroxyl which could respond to heavy metal ions and precipitate on the surface of the cell wall (Shen et al. 2006). It was found that dark septate endophytic fungi tolerant to environmental metal pollution and accumulates heavy metal in vitro (Zhang et al. 2008; Ruotsalainen et al. 2007). Generally, endophytes which live in host roots are similar to mycorrhizal fungi in many aspects (Brundett 2006).

The fungal endophytes have been shown to ameliorate metal toxicity for their plant hosts by restricting the uptake of toxic metals and improving the supply of essential elements (Likar et al. 2011) in red plant biomass despite higher Cu and Zn accumulation in plant roots through expression of certain genes together with increased free and conjugated polyamine levels (Cicatelli et al. 2010). Endophytic fungi may increase host tolerance towards biotic and abiotic stresses. The plants inoculated with endophytic fungi exhibited higher biomass production and higher potential to accumulate Cd in roots and shoots than fungi free plants (Soleimani et al. 2010).

In another study, endophytic *Trichoderma* sp. associated with *Acacia auriculoformis* produced more fresh weight than control plants and also increased the translocation factors and metal bio concentration on growth of mustard, (*Brassica juncea* L.) grown on Cd and Ni contaminated soils (Jiang et al. 2008). In a phytoremediation study, the endophytic *Mucor* sp. enhanced the phytoremediation potential of rape roots grown in soil contaminated with Pb and Cd. Deng et al. (2013) proposed an efficient method of phytoremediation by constructing mutant by

protoplasm fusion of endophyte *Mucor* sp. in rape roots contaminated the soil with Pb and Cd.

Although heavy metals are toxic to plants, it has been demonstrated that many plants are metal tolerant and some of them are metal hyper accumulators (Rosa et al. 2004; Li et al. 2012). Many metal resistant endophytes were isolated from hyperaccumulating plants. These fungi belonged to various taxa include *Microsphaeropsis*, *Mucor, Phoma, Alternaria, Pyronellaea, Steganosporium* and *Aspergillus*. Soleimani et al. (2010) demonstrated that endophytic fungi were helpful in phytoremediation of aged petroleum contaminated soil and that these fungi improved host plants roots and shoot biomass and created higher levels of water soluble phenols and dehydrogenase activity in the soilTCE, Naphthalene, BTEX, catechol and phenol could be degraded by endophytes which decreased the contaminant phytotoxicity and improved plant growth (Weyens et al. 2010; Ho et al. 2009; Li et al. 2012).

3.5 Endophytic Fungi in Bio Degradation of Pollutants

Fungi are known to utilize a wide range of organic compounds for nutrition and energy generation through extracellular enzymes. These organic compounds include cellulose, pectin, lignin, lignocelluloses, chitin and starch and anthropogenic substances such as hydrocarbons, pesticides and other xenobiotics. The white rot fungi like *Phaenerochate chrysosporium* can degrade several xenobiotics such as aromatic hydrocarbons, chlorinated organics, poly chlorinated biphenyls, nitrogen containing aromatics and many other pesticides, dyes and xenobiotics (Gadd 2007; Harvey and Thursten 2009).

The use of fungi to clean up environmental pollutants has gained the momentum in past few years, however most studies have focussed on white rot fungi (Marco-Urrea et al. 2008; Nikiforova et al. 2009) and the use of endophytic fungi might be a novel approach and important source for degradation of toxic pollutants which includes hydrocarbons, polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), polyaromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), radionuclides and metals.

Fungi are known to degrade PAHs in surface of soil. These fungi produce extracellular enzymes with lower substrate specify which enable degrade aromatic compounds including PAHs (Leonardi et al. 2007; Farnet et al. 2009). In a study, manganese peroxidase was found to be the dominant ligninolytic enzyme in the degradation PAH (Tian et al. 2007; Dai et al. 2007). Researchers found that endophytic fungi might be a novel and important resource for the degradation of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs). An endophyte fungal strain *Ceratobasidium stevensii* isolated from the plant of *Euphorbiaceae* was found to metabolize phenanthrene effectively (Dai et al. 2010). Tian et al. (2007) demonstrated the degradation of phenanthrene by endophytic *Phomopsis* sp., with rice plant. In a study, endophytic *Xylariaceae* strains isolated from healthy tropical native plants of Thailand found to be the producers of ligninolytic enzymes

(Urairaj et al. 2003). Russel et al. (2011) demonstrated that the ability of endophytic fungal degradation of synthetic polymer polyester polyurethane (PUR) by the production of serine hydrolases. The *Pestalotiopsis microspora* isolate was uniquely able to grow on PUR as the sole carbon source under both aerobic and anaerobic conditions. Recently endophytic *Fusarium* sp., isolated from the leaves of *Pterocarpus macrocarpus* Kurz.was able to degrade benzo(a)pyrene (BAP), a five ring polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon produced by the incomplete combustion of organic materials (Juhasz and Naidu 2000).

3.6 Conclusion

Fungal involvement in element cycling has important implications for living organisms and human health. Hence, better understanding of fungal activities, complexity of heterogeneous environment and interactions between different organisms helps to formulate further effective bio remedial strategies. In this review, we have reported the bioremediation potential of endophyticfungi and discussed the role of endophytic fungi in the management of toxic pollutants in future.

References

Arnold AE, Maynard Z, Gilbert GS, Coley PD, Kursar TA (2000) Are tropical fungal endophytes hyperdiverse? Ecol Lett 3:267e274

Banerjee DG, Strobel B, Geary J, Sears D, Ezra O, Liarzi J, Coombs (2010) *Muscodor albus* strain GBA, an endophytic fungus of *Ginkgo biloba* from United States of America, produces volatile antimicrobials. Mycology 1:179–186

Bischoff KM, Wicklow DT, Jordan DB, de Rezende ST, Liu S, Hughes SR, Rich JO (2009) Extracellular hemicellulolytic enzymes from the maize endophyte *Acremonium zeae*. Curr Microbiol 58:499–503

Borges W, Borges K, Bonato P, Said S, Pupo MT (2009) Endophytic fungi: natural products, enzymes and biotransformation reactions. Curr Org Chem 13:1137–1163

Brundett MC (2006) Understanding the roles of multifunctional mycorrhizal and endophytic fungi. In: Shulz B et al (ed) Soil biology, vol 9. Microbial root endophytes. pp 281

Champreda V, Kanokratana P, Sripang R, Tanapongpipat S, Eurwilaichitr L (2007) Purification, biochemical characterization, and gene cloning of a new extracellular thermotolerant and glucose tolerant maltooligosaccharide-forming amylase from anendophytic ascomycete *Fusicoccum* sp. BCC4124. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 71(8):2010–2020

Chen Y, Chuan-Chao D (2013) Recent advances on endophytic fungi optimising soil environment. Int J Environ Eng 5(4):387–404

Chomcheon P, Wiyakrutta S, Sriybolmos N, Nattaya N, Mahidol C, Ruchirawat S, kittakoop P (2009) Metabolites from the endophytic mitosporic *Dothideomycete* species. LRUB20 Phytochemistry 70(1):121–127

Cicatelli A, Lingua G, Todeschini V, Biondi S, Torrigiani P, Castiglione S (2010) Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi restore normal growth in a white poplar clone grown on heavy

metal-contaminated soil, and this is associated with upregulation of foliar metallothione in and polyamine biosynthetic gene expression. Annl Bot 106:791–802
Clay K, Holah J (1999) Fungal endophyte symbiosis and plant diversity in successional fields. Science 285:1742–1744
Collin HC, Andersen RA, Steinnes E (2003) Isolation and N-terminal sequencing of a novel cadmium-binding protein from *Boletus edulis*. J Phys IV France 107(1):311–314
Correa A, Pacheco S, Mechaly AE, Obal G, Béhar G, Mouratou B, Oppezzo P, Alzari PM, Pecorari F (2014) Potent and specific inhibition of glycosidases by small artificial binding proteins (Affitins). Plos One. http://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0097438
Costa LSR, Azevedo JL, Pereira JO, Carneiro ML, Labate CA (2000) Symptomless infection of banana and maize by endophytic fungi impairs photosynthetic efficiency. New Phytol 147:609–615
Cruz-Hernández A, Tomasini-Campocosio A, Pérez-Flores LJ, Fernández-Perrino FJ, Gutiiérrez-Rojas M (2013) Inoculation of seed-borne fungus in the rhizosphere of *Festuca arundinacea* promotes hydrocarbon removal and pyrene accumulation in roots. Plant Soil 362:261–270
Dai J, Krohn K, Elsasser B, Florke U, Draeger S, Schulz B, Pescitelli G, Salvadori P, Antus, S, Kurtan T (2007) Metabolic products of the endophytic fungus *Microsphaeropsis* sp. from *Larix decidua*. Eur J Org Chem 4845–4854
Dai CC, Tian LS, Zhao YT, Chen Y, Xie H (2010) Degradation of phenanthrene by the endophytic fungus *Ceratobasidum stevensii* found in *Bischofia polycarpa*. Biodegradation 21(2):245–255
Damasso MCT, Passionoto MA, Freitas SC, Freire DMG, Lago RCA, Couri S (2008) Utilization of agro industrial residues for lipase production by solid–state fermentation. Braz J Microb 39:676–681
Deng Z, Zhang R, Shi Y, Hu La, Tan H, Cao L (2013) Enhancement of phytoremediation of Cdand Pb-contaminated soils by self-fusion of protoplasts from endophytic fungus *Mucor* sp. CBRF59. Chemosphere 91(1):41–47
Dyk JS, Pletschke BI (2012) A review of lignocellulose bioconversion using enzymatic hydrolysis and synergistic cooperation between enzymes: factors affecting enzymes, conversion and synergy. Biotechnol Adv 30:1458–1480
Espinosa EE, Martínez GME, Favela-Torres E, Gutiérrez-Rojas M (2005) Improvement of the hydrocarbon phytoremediation rate by *Cyperus laxus* Lam. inoculated with a microbial consortium in a model system. Chemosphere 59:405–413
Eyberger AL, Rajeswari D, Porter JR (2006) Endophyte fungal isolates from *Podophyllum peltatum* produce Podophyllotoxin. J Nat Prod 69(8):1121–1124
Farnet AM, Gil G, Ruaudel F, Chevremont AC Ferre E (2009) Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon transformation with laccases of a white-rot fungus isolated from a *Mediterranean schlerophyllous* litter. Geoderma 134(3):267–271
Gadd GM (2007) Geomycology: biogeochemical transformations of rocks, minerals, metals and radionuclides by fungi, bioweathering and bioremediation. Mycol Res 111(3):3–49
Germaine KJ, Keogh E, Ryan D, Dowling (2009) Bacterial endophyte mediated naphthalene phytoprotection and phytoremediation. Microbial Lett 296(2):226–234
Ghimire SR, Nikki D, Bell JD, Krishnamurthy YL, Craven KD (2010) Biodiversity of fungal endophyte communities inhabiting switch grass (*Panicum virgatum* L) growing in the native tall grass prairie of northern Oklahoma. Fungal Divers 47(1):19–27
Granit T, Chen Y, Hadar Y (2007) Humic acid bleaching by white-rot fungi isolated from biosolids compost. Soil Biol Biochem 39(5):1040–1046
Harvey PJ, Thurston CF (2009) The biochemistry of Lignolytic fungi. Cambridge University Press, pp 24–51
Hirschmann GS, Hormazabal E, Astudillo L, Rodriguez J, Theoduloz (2005) Secondary metabolites from endophytic fungi isolated from the Chilean gymnosperm *Prumnopitys andina* (Lleuque). World J Microbiol Biotechnol 21:27–32
Iqbal HM, Kyazze G, Keshwaraj J (2013) Biotechnology application of biomass. Bio Resour 8 (2):3151–1356

Jiang M, Cao L, Zhang R (2008) Effects of Acacia (*Acacia auriculaeformis* A. Cunn)-associated fungi on mustard (*Brassica juncea* (L.) Coss. var. *Foliosa Bailey*) growth in Cd- and Ni-contaminated Soils. Lett Appl Microbiol 47(6):561–565

Jordaan A, Taylor JE, Rossenkhan R (2006) Occurrence and possible role of endophytic fungi associated with seed pods of *Colophospermum mopane* (Fabaceae) in Botswana. South Afr J Bot 72:245–255

Jordan MJ, Lechevalier MP (1975) Effects of zinc-smelter emissions on forest soil microflora. Can J Microbiol 21(11):1855–1865

Juhasz AL, Naidu R (2000) Bioremediation of high molecular weight polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons: a review of the microbial degradation of benzo [a] pyrene. Int Bioremediat Biodegradation 45:57–88

Karsten P (2008) Selenium induces manganese-dependent peroxidase production by the white-rot fungus *Bjerkandera adusta* (Willdenow). Biol Trace Elem Res 123(1–3):211–217

Khan Z, Dotty S (2011) Endophyte-assisted phytoremediation. Curr Top Plant Biol 12:97–105. doi:10.1007/978-94-007-1599-8.5

Kim S, Shin DS, Lee T, Oh KB (2004) Periconicins, two new *fusicoccane diterpenes* produced by an endophytic fungus *Periconia* sp. with antibacterial activity. J Nat Prod 67:448–450

Koide K, Osono T, Takeda H (2005) Colonization and lignin decomposition of *Camellia japonica* leaf litter by endophytic fungi. Mycoscience 46:280–286

Krishnamurthy YL, Shashikala J, Shankar Naik B (2009) Diversity and seasonal variation of endophytic fungal communities associated with some medicinal trees of Western Ghats. Southern India. Sydowia 61(2):255–266

Kudanga T, Mwenje E (2005) Extracellular cellulase production by tropical isolates of Aureobasidiumpullulans. Can J Microbiol 51:773–776

Kumar A, Patil D, Rajamohanan PR, Ahmad A (2013) Isolation, purification and characterization of vinblastine and vincristine from endophytic fungus *Fusarium oxysporum* Isolated from *Catharanthus roseus*. PLoS ONE 8(9):e71805

Lee JC, Lobokovsky NB, Pliam NB, Strobel GA, Clardy JC (1995) Subglutinol A and B: immunosuppressive compounds from the endophytic fungus *Fusarium subglutinans*. J Org Chem 60:7076–7077

Lee JC, Strobel GA, Lobkovsky E, Clardy J (1996) Torreyanic acid: a selectively cytotoxic quinone dimer from the endophytic fungus *Pestalotiopsis microspora*. J Org Chem 61:3232–3233

Lemons A, Clay K, Rudgers JA (2005) Connecting plant-microbial interactions above and belowground: a fungal endophyte affects decomposition. Oecologia 145:595–604

Leonardi V, Sasekb V, Petrucciolia M, Dannibalea A, Erbanováb P, Cajthamlb T (2007) Bioavailability modification and fungal biodegradation of PAHs in aged industrial soils. Int Biodeter Biodeg 60:165–170

Li JY, Strobel GA (2001) Jestorene and hydroxy Jestorene antioomycete cyclohexanone epoxides from the endophytic fungus *Pestalotiopsis jesteri*. Phytochemistry 57:261–265

Li HY, Wei DQ, Shen M, Zhou ZP (2012) Endophytes and their role in phytoremediation. Fungal Divers 54:11–18

Likar M (2011) Dark septate endophytes and mycorrhizal fungi of trees affected by pollution. In: Maria A, Frank AC (eds) Endophytes of forest trees. Springer, Netherlands, pp 189–201

Liu Q, Parson AJ, Xue H, Fraser K, Ryan GD, Newman JA, Rasmussen S (2011) Competition between foliar *Neotyphodium lolii* endophytes and mycorrhizal *Glomus* spp. fungi in *Lolium perenne* depends on resource supply and host carbohydrate content. Funct Ecol 25:910–920

Lumyong S, Lumyong P, McKenzie EHC, Hyde KD (2002) Enzymatic activity of endophytic fungi of six native seedling species from Doi Suthep-Pui National Park, Thailand. Can J Microbiol 48:1109–1112

Ma Y, Rajkumar M, Vicente JA, Freitas H (2011) Inoculation of endophytic bacteria on host and non-host plants-effects on plant growth and Ni uptake. J Hazard Mater 195:230–237

Marco-Urrea E, Gabarrell X, Caminal G (2008) Aerobic degradation by white-rot fungi of trichloroethylene (TCE) and mixtures of TCE and perchloroethylene (PCE). J Chem Technol Biotechnol 83:1190–1196

Marlida Y, Saari N, Hassan Z, Radu S (2000) Raw starch degrading enzyme from newly isolated strains of endophytic fungi. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 16:573–578

Mucciarelli M, Camusso W, Maffei M, Panicco P, Bicchi C (2007) Volatile terpenoids of endophyte free and infected peppermint (*Mentha piperita* L.): Chemical partitioning of a symbiosis. Microbial Ecol 54:685–696

Müller MM, Valjakka R, Suokko A, Hantula J (2001) Diversity of endophytic fungi of single Norway spruce needles and their role as pioneer decomposers. Mol Ecol 10(7):1801–1810

Nikiforova SV, Pozdnyakova NN, Turkovskaya OV (2009) Emulsifying agent production during PAHs degradation by the white rot fungus *Pleurotus Ostreatus* D1. Curr Microbiol 58(6):554–558

Oliveira ACD, Farion Watanabe FM, Vargas JVC, Rodrigues MLF, Mariano AB (2012) Production of methyl oleate with a lipase from an endophytic yeast isolated from castor leaves. Biocatal Agric Biotechnol 1:295–300

Oses R, Valenzuela S, Freer J, Baeza J, Rodríguez J (2006) Evaluation of fungal endophytes for lignocellulolytic enzyme production and wood biodegradation. Int Biodeterior Biodegrad 57:129–135

Osono T, Takeda H (2001) Effects of organic chemical quality and mineral nitrogen addition on lignin and holocellulose decomposition of beech leaf litter by *Xylaria* sp. Eur J Soil Biol 37:17–23

Pandey A, Nigam P, Soccol CR, Soccol VT, Singh D, Mohan R (2000) Advances in microbial amylases. Biotechnol Appl Biochem 31:135–152

Petrini O, Petrini LE (1985) Xylareaceaous fungi as endophytes. Sydowia 38:216–234

Pieterse CMJ, Dicke M (2007) Plant interactions with microbes and insects: from molecular mechanisms to ecology. Trends Plant Sci 12:564–569

Purahong W, Hyde KD (2011) Effects of fungal endophytes on grass and non-grass litter decomposition rates. Fungal Divers 47:1–7

Puri SC, Verma V, Amina T, Qazi GN, Spiteller M (2005) An endophytic fungus from Nothapodytes foetida that produces camptothecin. J Nat Prod 68(12):1717–1719

Rabie GH (2005) Role of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi in phytoremediation of soil rhizosphere spiked with poly aromatic hydrocarbons. Mycobiology 33:41–50

Rajkumar M, Ae N, Prasad MNV, Freitas (2010) Potential of Siderophore-producing bacteria for improving heavy metal phytoextraction. Trends Biotechnol 28:142–149

Rodriguez RJ, White JF, Arnold AE, Redman RS (2009) Fungal endophytes: diversity and nutritional role. New Phytol 182:314–330

Rosa G, Peralta-Videa JR, Montes M, Parsons JG, Cano-Aguilera I, Gardea-Torresdey JL (2004) Cadmium uptake and translocation in tumbleweed (*Salsola kali*), a potential Cd-hyper accumulator desert plant species: ICP/OES and XAS studies. Chemosphere 55:1159–1168

Ruotsalainen AL, Markkola A, Kozlov MV (2007) Root fungal colonization in *Deschampsiaflexuosa*: effects of pollution and neighboring trees. Environ Pollut 147(3):723–728

Russell JR, Huang J, Anand P, Kucera K, Sandoval AG, Dantzler KW, Hickman D, Jee J, Kimovec FM, Koppstein D, Marks DH, Mittrmiller PA, Nunez SJ, Santiago M, Townes MA, Vishnevetsky M, Williams NE, Vargas MPN, Boulanger LA, Slack CB, Strobel SA (2011) Biodegradation of polyester polyurethane by endophytic fungi. Appl Environ Microbiol 77:6076–6084

Saikkonen K, Saari S, Helander M (2010) Defensive mutualism between plants and endophytic fungi? Fungal Divers 41:101–113

Saikkonen K, Ruokolainen K, Huitu O, Gundel PE, Piltti T, Hamilton CE, Helander M (2013) Fungal endophytes help prevent weed invasions. Agric Ecosyst Environ 165:1–5

Saikkonen K, Mikola J, Helander M (2015) Endophytic phyllosphere fungi and nutrient cycling in terrestrial ecosystems. Curr Sci 109(1):121–126

Schardl CL (2010) The epichloae symbionts of the grass subfamily Poaideae. Ann Mo Bot Gard 97:646–665

Schulz B, Boyle C (2005) The endophytic continuum. Mycol Res 109:661–686

Schulz B, Boyle C, Draeger S, Römmert A, Krohn K (2002) Endophytic fungi: a source of novel biologically active secondary metabolites. Mycol Res 106:996–1004

Shankar Naik B, Krishnamurthy YL (2010) Endophytes: the real untapped high energy biofuel resource. Curr Sci 98:7(10):883

Shankar Naik B, Shashikala J, Krishnamurthy YL (2006) Study on the diversity of endophytic communities from rice (*Oryza sativa* L.) and their antagonistic activities in vitro. Microbiol Res 3:290–296

Shankar Naik B, Shashikala J, Krishnamurthy YL (2008) Diversity of endophytic fungal communities in shrubby medicinal plants of Western Ghat region, Southern India. Fungal Ecol 1:89–93

Shankar Naik B, Krishnappa M, Krishnamurthy YL (2014) Biodiversity endophytic fungi from seven herbaceous medicinal plants of Malnad region, Western Ghats, southern India. J Forestry Res 25(3):707–711

Shen L, Ye YH, Wang XT, Zhu HL, Xu C, Song YC, Li H, Tan RX (2006) Structure and total synthesis of aspernigerin: a novel cytotoxic endophyte metabolite. Chem Eur J 12:4393–4396

Shi Y, Dai CC, Wu YC, Yuan ZL (2004) Study on the degradation of wheat straw by endophytic fungi. Acta Sci Circum 24(1):144–149

Soleimani M, Hajabbasi MA, Afyuni M, Mirlohi A, Borggaard OK, Holm PE (2010) Effect of endophytic fungi on cadmium tolerance and bioaccumulation by *Festuca arundinacea* and *Festucapratensis*. Int J Phytoremed 12(6):535–549

Song S, Otkur M, Zhang Z, Tang Q (2007) Isolation and characterization of endophytic microorganisms in *Glaycyrrhiza inflat* from Xinjiang. Microbiology 5:867–870

Stępniewska Z, Kuźniar A (2013) Endophytic microorganisms—promising applications in bioremediation of greenhouse gases. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 97:9589–9596

Stierle A, Strobel G, Stierle D (1993) Taxol and taxane production by Taxomyces andreanae, an endophytic fungus of pacific yew. Science 260:214–216

Stinson M, Ezra D, Hess WM, Seras J, Strobel G (2003) An endophytic *Gliocladium* sp of *Euryphia cordifolia* producing selective volatile antimicrobial compounds. Plant Sci 165:913–922

Strobel GA, Miller RV, Miller C, Condron M, Teplow DB, Hess WM (1999) Cryptocandin, a potent antimycotic from the endophytic fungus *Cryptosporiopsis* cf. *quercina*. Microbiology 145:1919–1926

Suberkropp K, Weyers HS (1996) Application of fungal and bacterial production methodologies to decomposing leaves in streams. Appl Environ Microbiol 62(5):1610–1615

Sun JQ, Guo LD, Zang W, Ping WX, Chi DF (2008) Diversity and ecological distribution of endophytic fungi associated with medicinal plants. Sci China, Ser C Life Sci 51:751–759

Sunitha VH, Ramesha A, Savitha J, Srinivas C (2012) Amylase production by endophytic fungi *Cylindrocephalum* sp. isolated from medicinal plant *Alpinia calcarata* (Haw.) Roscoe. Braz J Microbiol 43:1213–1221

Suryanarayanan TS, Thirunavukkarasu N, Govindarajulu MB, Sasse F, Jansen R, Murali TS (2009) Fungal endophytes and bioprospecting. Fungal Biol Rev 23:9–19

Talbot JM, Allison SD, Treseder KK (2008) Decomposers in disguise: mycorrhizal fungi as regulators of soil C dynamics in ecosystems under global change. Func Ecol 22(6):955–963

Tan RX, Zou WX (2001) Endophytes: a rich source of functional metabolites. Nat Prod Rep 18:448–459

Thaler JS, Humphrey PT, Whiteman NK (2012) Evolution of jasmonate and salicylate signal crosstalk. Trend Plant Sci 17:260–270

Tian LS, Dai CC, Zhao YT, Zhao M, Yong YH, Wang XX (2007) The degradation of phenanthrene by endophytic fungi *Phomopsis* sp. single and co-cultured with rice. China. Environ Sci 27(6):757–762

Tomita F (2003) Endophytes in Southeast Asia and Japan: their taxonomic diversity and potential applications. Fungal Divers 14:187–204

Tomsheck A, Strobel GA, Booth E, Geary B, Spakowicz D, Knighton B, Floerchinger C, Sears J (2010) *Hypoxylon* sp. an endophyte of *Persea indica* producing 1,8-cineole and other bioactive volatile with fuel potential. Microb Ecol 60:903–914

Torres M, Dolcet MM, Sala N, Canela R (2003) Endophytic fungi associated with mediterranean plants as a source of mycelium-bound lipases. J Agric Food Chem 51:3328–3333

Urairaj C, Khanongnuch C, Lumyong S (2003) Ligninolytic enzymes from tropical endophyt-icxylariaceae. Fungal Divers 13:209–219

Wang Y, Dai CC (2011) Endophytes: a potential source for biosynthesis transformation and biodegradation. Ann Microbiol 61:207–215

Wei W, McCaster, Hyman RW, Jones T, Ning Y, Cao Z, Gu Z, Bruno D, Mirmda M, Ngayen M, Wilhelmg J, Komp C, Tomse R, Wang X, Jia P, Lendi P, Oefner PJ, David L, Dietrich F, LiY, Davi SR, Steinmetz LM (2007) Genome sequencing and comparative analysis of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* strain YJM 789. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 104(31):12825–12830

Weyens N, Lelie DV, Taghavi S, Newman L, Vangronsveld J (2009) Exploiting plant microbe partnership to improve Biomass production and remediation. Trends Biotechnol 27(10): 591–598

Weyens N, Croes S, Dupae J, Newman L, van der Lelie D, Carleer R, VangronsveldR (2010) Endophytic bacteria improve phytoremediation of Ni and TCE co-contamination. Environ Pollut 158:2422–2427. doi:10.1016/j.envpol.2010.04.004

Wilson D (1995) Endophyte—the evolution of a term, and clarification of its use and definition. Oikos 73:274–276

Wu B, Wu L, Ruan L, Ge M, Chen D (2009) Screening of endophytic fungi with antithrombotic activity and identification of a bioactive metabolite from the endophytic fungal strain CPCC 480097. Curr Microbiol 58:522–527

Zhang Y, Liu MJ, Shi XD, Zhao ZW (2008) Dark septate endophyte fungi isolated from metal polluted soils: their taxonomic position, tolerance, and accumulation of heavy metals in vitro. J Microbiol 46(6):624–632

Zhang CM, Jiang L, Zhang ZG, Tang L (2011) Effects of propionic and pH on ethanol fermentation by *saccharomyces* in Cassava. Appl Biochem Biotech 165(3–4):883–891

Zikmundova M, Drandarov K, Bigler L, Hesse A, Werner C (2002) Biotransformation of 2-Benzo-xazolinone and 2-Hydroxy-1, 4-Benzoxazin-3-one by endophytic fungi isolated from *Aphelandratetragona*. Appl Environ Microbiol 48(3):4863–4870

Chapter 4
Endophytic Bacteria: Role in Phosphate Solubilization

Abhishek Walia, Shiwani Guleria, Anjali Chauhan and Preeti Mehta

Abstract The worldwide need to increase agricultural and horticultural production from a consistently diminishing and degraded land resource has set remarkable strain in light of agro biological systems. The current methodology is to keep up and enhance agricultural and horticultural productivity only by means of the utilization of chemical fertilizers and pesticides. Despite the fact that the utilization of chemical fertilizers is credited with almost fifty percent of increase in agricultural production yet they are closely associated with environmental contamination and health problems in human beings and animals. Microbial assorted qualities in the soil are viewed as critical for keeping up for the manageability of agriculture and horticulture systems. Nonetheless, the connections between microbial differences and environmental processes are not surely known. Rhizosphere soil strongly affects a range of procedures influencing crop yield. Rhizobacteria that are present inside plant roots, framing more close associations, are known as endophytes. These endophytes are likewise called intracellular plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) microorganisms dwelling inside plant cells, producing nodules and being present inside these specific structures. These incorporate an extensive variety of soil microorganisms framing less formal relationship than the rhizobia-legume advantageous interaction called symbiosis, endophytes may empower plant development, directly or indirectly and incorporate the rhizobia. In this review, we essentially concentrate on the plant development by Phosphate solubilization furthermore by different means. Phosphorus is normally lacking in most characteristic soils since it is settled as

A. Walia
Department of Microbiology, DAV University, Jalandhar, India

S. Guleria
Department of Biotechnology, Lovely Professional University, Jalandhar, India

A. Chauhan
Department of Soil Science and Water Management, Dr. YSPUH & F, Solan, Himachal Pradesh, India

P. Mehta (✉)
DBT-IOC Centre, R&D, Indian Oil Corporation Limited, Sec-13, Faridbad, Haryana 121007, India
e-mail: microbiology2preeti94@gmail.com

D.K. Maheshwari and K. Annapurna (eds.), *Endophytes: Crop Productivity and Protection*, Sustainable Development and Biodiversity 16,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-66544-3_4

insoluble iron and aluminum phosphates in acidic soils or calcium phosphates in soluble soils. Phosphate-solubilizing bacteria (PSB) as inoculants have the ability to convert insoluble forms of phosphorus to an usable form for high plant yields. This chapter mainly focuses on endophytic P-solubilizing bacteria, mechanism of P-solubilization, genetic diversity of P-solubilizers, and mass production of inoculants inoculant production and response of the crop to P-solubilizers bioinoculants.

Keywords Endophytes · Phosphate solubilization · PGPR · Bioinoculants Genetic diversity

4.1 Introduction

Microbial diversity in soil is viewed as critical for keeping up for the manageability of horticulture/agriculture creation frameworks. Notwithstanding, the connections between microbial diversity and ecosystem processes is not surely understood (Stark et al. 2007; Jha et al. 2014). Rhizosphere soil strongly influences the range of processes impacting crop yield. Numerous microorganisms are pulled in by supplements oozed from plant roots and this "rhizosphere impact" was initially depicted by Hiltner (1904). He observed higher number and activity of microorganisms in the region of plant roots. These microbes gain profit by the nutrient exudates by the plant roots, which ultimately advantageously impact the development of plants.

As of late, the interest in soil microorganisms has expanded, as they are a key component in supplement cycling and the support of soil fertility. Phosphorus is one of the essential macronutrient for plant growth and development In average soils, the P-content is about 0.05% (w/w) but only 0.1% of the total P is available to plants (Scheffer and Schachtschasel 1992; Otieno et al. 2015), since it is fixed as insoluble iron and aluminum phosphates in acidic soils or calcium phosphates in alkaline soils. These precipitated forms cannot be absorbed by plants, this leads to excessive and repeated application of P fertilizer to cropland (Sharma et al. 2013).

The capacity of a few soil microorganisms to change over insoluble types of phosphorus (P) to an accessible form is an imperative attribute in plant growth-promoting bacteria (PGPR) also known as P-solubilizing microorganisms (PSM). The utilization of PSM as inoculants enhances the P uptake by plants thus increasing plant yields (Ahemad and Khan 2010; Jain and Khichi 2014). Because of the negative ecological effects of compound composts and their expanding costs, the utilization of PSM is considered as a supplementary method for reducing the utilization of chemicals in agribusiness/cultivation (Welbaum et al. 2004; Hameeda et al. 2006; Mehta et al. 2013c; Walia et al. 2013a).

4.2 PSB and Their Hosts: Endophytic Region

For P-solubilizing PGPR to have an impact on plant development by means of an increment of the nutrient status of their host, there evident should be an intimate relationship between the phosphate-solubilizing bacteria (PSBs) and the host plant.

In any case, the level of closeness between the PSBs and the host plant can differ contingent upon where and how the PSBs colonizes the host plant. Connections between PSBs and their hosts can be ordered into two levels of complexity (1) Rhizospheric (2) Endophytic.

4.2.1 Endophytic Region

Rhizobacteria that build up and spends the entire piece of its life cycle inside plant roots, exhibit no outside contamination or negative impact on their host and forming more intimate associations, are endophytes or intracellular PGPR-(iPGPR). Perotti (1926) was the first to portray the event of nonpathogenic organisms in root tissues. Endophytic microorganisms have been considered to originate from the outside environment and enter the plant through stomata, lenticels, wounds, emergence of lateral roots and germinating radicals (Gaiero et al. 2013). Endophytic microbes can effectively or inactively colonize plants locally or systemically and both intercellularly and intracellularly. The endophytic niche provides protection from the environment for the colonizing bacteria that establish *in planta.* Subsequently, to be biologically effective, endophytes that infect plants from soil must be able to root colonizers. Despite the fact that, it is, for the most part, accepted that numerous bacterial endophyte groups are the result of a colonizing process started in the root zone (Compant et al. 2010), they might likewise begin from other sources than the rhizosphere, for example, the phyllosphere, the anthosphere, or the spermosphere. Lytic proteins created by root colonizing bacteria may likewise add to more effective penetration and colonization. The deliverable of endophytes like cellulolytic and pectinolytic catalysts are being considered for certain types of infection process, cell wall degrading chemicals, endogluconase and polygalacturonase causes infection of *Vitis vinifera* by *Burkholderia* sp. (Hallmann et al. 1997; Compant et al. 2005).

Endophytic microorganisms inhabiting vast assorted qualities of plants was looked into by Sturz et al. (2000) and Posada and Vega (2005). Rhizosphere is considered as a hot spot for P-solubilizing bacteria suggesting that these bacteria proliferates both in rhizosphere soil and root endosphere (Hui et al. 2011). But apart from that, population of endophytic bacteria is at the lower site as compare to rhizospheric bacteria or any other bacterial pathogens (Feng et al. 2013). Although, many researchers have confirmed the occurrence of least amount of endophytes in rhizosphere but Mehta et al. (2015) had given a strong evidence in their study with perpetually higher P-solubilizing bacteria in apple rhizosphere than those in roots endosphere (Table 4.1). The most acceptable reason for a higher population of rhizospheric bacteria could be due to high level of carbon fluxes creating the'rhizosphere impact' used to sustain bacterial growth (Reyes et al. 2006; Mittal and Johri 2007).

The population of PSB is always higher around the rhizosphere and around roots as compare non-rhizosphere. The high concentration of PSB around the roots

Table 4.1 Comparative data on P-solubilizing bacterial population in rhizosphere soil and roots of apple trees at different sites

Location	Percent P-solubilizers	
	Rhizosphere soil bacterial population	Root endophytic bacterial population
Chamba	79.2	38.8
Kinnaur	35.2	15.6
Shimla	29.2	18.7
Kullu	48.3	11.3
	T = 2.06	

occurs because of the presence of high levels of nutrients exuded from the roots of most plants that can support bacterial growth and metabolism (Glick 2003; Sharma et al. 2007). Higher the population of P-solubilizers is of direct significance to the plants as it helps in mobilization of insoluble P near the root, especially in P-deficient soils (Chatli et al. 2008; Gulati et al. 2008; Aranda et al. 2011).

In plant tissue, in general, endophytic P-solubilizing bacterial populations have been reported between 10^2 and 10^4 viable bacteria per gram (Sobral et al. 2004; Piromyou et al. 2010; Patel et al. 2012; Kumar et al. 2013a, b; Saini et al. 2015). Mehta et al. (2015) isolated one hundred and four and 85 of total 200 soil and root samples of apple trees harbored P-solubilizing bacteria. They observed that the proportion of rhizosphere soil and root endophytic P-solubilizing bacteria among culturable one varied greatly with respect to sampling sites, ranging from 0–79.2% to 0–60.6%, which was in agreement with previous study that showed large variation from 3 to 67 $\times$ 10^6 cfug^{-1} (Kundu et al. 2009). A large variation within and amongst different sites in population of P-solubilizing bacteria indicated their wide distribution within the crop and place of sampling. The poor population of P-solubilizing bacteria could be attributed to their meager natural population as a result of environmental factors along with physiochemical properties of the soil. Variation in the population of P-solubilizing bacterial status of samples within the sites is possible due to the collection of samples from a different point and an uneven population of competitive P-solubilizing bacteria.

Endophytic bacteria in a single plant host are not restricted to a single species but comprise several genera and species (Ryan et al. 2008; Mehta et al. 2015). The variation in endophytes occurrence might be a function of the different maturation stages specific to each plant, sampling time and environment condition, which contribute higher impact on different types and amounts of root exudates (Vendan et al. 2012). The presence of large population of bacteria isolated from all the sites unequivocally suggests the hypothesis that natural plant genotypic variants of a single species have a special choice for selection of specific microbiota consortia as a result of their unique root exudates profile (Micallef et al. 2009; Aranda et al. 2011).

4.2.2 Role of Phosphorus Solubilizing Microorganisms

The term microorganisms broadly encompass bacteria and fungi including other mini-creature only observed by microscope. Among the microorganisms, bacteria and fungi are more versatile to facilitate phosphate solubilization.

4.2.2.1 Phosphorus Solubilizing Bacteria and Fungi

PSM consist predominantly the bacteria and fungi among ectorhizospheric strains, *Pseudomonas*, *Bacillus,* and endosymbiotic rhizobia have been served as effective phosphate solubilizers (Igual et al. 2001). The vast majority of fungi are non-Phosphate solubilizers except for species of *Aspergillus* and *Penicillium* (Sagervanshi et al. 2012; Sahoo and Gupta 2014). Villegas and Fortin (2002) identified microorganism viz., *Rhizobium*, *Klebsiella*, *Mesorhizobium*, *Acinetobacter*, *Erwinia*, *Achrobacter*, *Enterobacter*, *Micrococcus*, *Pseudomonas* and *Bacillus* isolated from different soils as efficient P solubilizing strains. Majority of Gram-positive soil bacilli almost 95% belong to the genus *Bacillus* (Garbeva et al. 2003) and are capable to form endospores and for this reason survive beneath detrimental conditions; some species are diazotrophs along with *Bacillus subtilis* (Timmusk et al. 1999), while others have specific PGPR capacities (Kokalis-Burelle et al. 2002; Barriuso and Solano 2008). From rhizobial strains, two species of nodulating chickpea, *Mesorhizobium mediterraneum* and *Mesorhizobium ciceri*, are known for their high phosphate-solubilizing efficiency (Rivas et al. 2006). But, it is recognized that each aspect of nodule formation is limited due to the supply of P. legumes like alfalfa and clover displaying a positive effect in response to P supplementation (Gyaneshwar et al. 2002), however most of the supplemented P become unavailable when its reacts with soil components. The extracellular oxidation of glucose to gluconic acid via the quinoprotein glucose dehydrogenase results in efficient phosphate-solubilizing phenotype in Gram-negative microorganism (Otieno et al. 2012). Numerous soil microorganisms have the ability to solubilize this unavailable P through their metabolic activities exudating organic acids, which directly dissolve the rock phosphate, or chelating calcium ions that release P to the solution.

4.2.3 Microbes in Biogeochemical Cycle of P in Soil

Microorganisms are fundamental to the biogeochemical cycle of phosphorus and as such play crucial role in mediating the availability of phosphorus to flora (Richardson et al. 2011; Jain and Khichi 2014). Biogeochemical cycling of phosphorus is essential for various reasons. Every living cell requires phosphorus for nucleic acids, lipids, and a few polysaccharides. In soil, phosphorus exists in both

inorganic and organic forms. Inorganic phosphorous complexes without problems with cations (includes iron, aluminum, and calcium) in the environment as it is negatively charged. These compounds are relatively insoluble, and their separation is pH dependent, being accessible to plants and microorganisms between pH 6 and 7. Under such conditions, these organisms rapidly convert phosphate to its organic form in order that it becomes available to animals. A significant percentage of culturable bacterial and fungal communities were being accounted for inorganic P solubilizing activity (Barraquio et al. 2000; Chen et al. 2008; Ashrafuzzaman et al. 2009). The form of phosphorus found in biomass and materials such as humus and organic compounds is known as organic phosphorus. This organic phosphorus is recycled by microbial activity that involves transformation of simple orthophosphate (PO_4^-), with +5 valence state into more complex forms. These include the polyphosphate seen in metachromatic granules in addition to greater acquainted macromolecules.

4.2.4 P-Solubilizer as Biofertilizers

Microbial inoculants have provided a worth biological alternative to compensate agro chemicals and to sustain environment-friendly crop production (Dobbelaere et al. 2003; Musarrat and khan 2014). Phosphorus solubilizing microorganisms proved as an effectual approach for imparting balanced nutrition (Martins et al. 2004) and have recently attracted the attention of agriculturalists as soil inoculums to enhance the plant growth and yield (Fasim et al. 2002; Otieno et al. 2015).

The inorganic phosphates solubilization in soil by microorganisms and making them available to plants is the well-known mechanism (Bhattacharya and Jain 2000; Chen et al. 2006) and organisms responsible for this are referred as phosphate solubilizers. Population count of phosphate-solubilizing microorganisms is at the concentrated form in the rhizosphere, and they are metabolically more active than other sources (Vazquez et al. 2000). It is well known that both groups of microorganisms including phosphate-solubilizing bacteria and fungi are equally important to enhance plant growth by using solubilization mechanism and their acquisition to plant production via synthesis of plant growth-promoting substance and organic acid (Yadav et al. 2011).

The improvement of soil health in terms of fertility is one of the most common ways to increase agricultural production for which biological nitrogen fixation is considered to be the most important. After biological nitrogen fixation, phosphate solubilization is equally essential, as phosphorus (P) is significant key macronutrients for biological growth and development. Microorganisms provide a biological rescue system that enables to solubilize the insoluble inorganic P of soil and make it available to the plants. The ability of a few microorganisms to convert insoluble phosphorus (P) to an available form, like orthophosphate, is a critical trait in a PGPB for improving soil fertility and plant yields. Thus, the rhizospheric

phosphate-solubilizing microorganism can be a promising source for plant growth-promoting agent in agriculture (Rodriguez et al. 2006).

Using phosphate-solubilizing microorganism as inoculants will increase the P uptake through plants (Chen et al. 2006). The production of bioinoculants on a commercial scale and their acceptance by farming communities are closely linked as it is not easy. Furthermore, environmental variables including salinity, pH, moisture, temperature and climatic conditions of the soil largely affect the establishment and performance in field cum demonstrations trials of these PSM inoculants developed under laboratory conditions. Hence, there is a great need for proper development of suitable technology for the isolation of effective inoculants of PSM based biofertilizers for their adoption under farmer's fields. Current approach and developments in our understanding of the functional diversity, rhizosphere colonizing ability, mode of actions and judicious application are likely to facilitate their use as reliable components in the management of sustainable agricultural systems (Zaidi et al. 2009a).

4.3 Mechanism of P-Solubilization

Organic acid production by soil microorganisms is predominant mechanism of phosphate solubilization. Organic acids result in a decrease in pH of microbial cell and its surroundings (Halder et al. 1990; Khan et al. 2014a) (Fig. 4.1). In soil, phosphorus is present in the organic and inorganic form. Soil microorganisms release phosphorus by organic and inorganic P solubilization. Organic P solubilization is mineralization process (Richardson and Simpson 2011). Numerous mechanisms are opted by soil microorganisms in order to perform P solubilization such as lowering of pH, organic acid production, chelation and exchange reactions (Gerke 1992). Microorganisms secrete different types of organic acids during solubilization and lower the pH of rhizosphere and consequently dissociate the bond form of phosphates like $Ca_3(PO_4)$ (Tri Calcium Phosphate) in calcareous soil. Furthermore, these microorganisms also serve as a sink for P in the vicinity of labile C. Soil microorganisms immediately immobilize it even in low P soils. Ecological changes, for example, freezing–thawing or drying–rewetting, can bring about flush-events, a sudden increment in accessible P because of high extent of microbial cell lysis (Butterly et al. 2009).

The major processes employed by microorganisms for soil P solubilization summarized here:

(1) Secretion of mineral dissolving compounds e.g. organic acid anions, protons, hydroxyl ions, CO, siderophores
(2) Biochemical P mineralization by release of extracellular enzymes and
(3) Biological P mineralization by liberation of P during substrate degradation

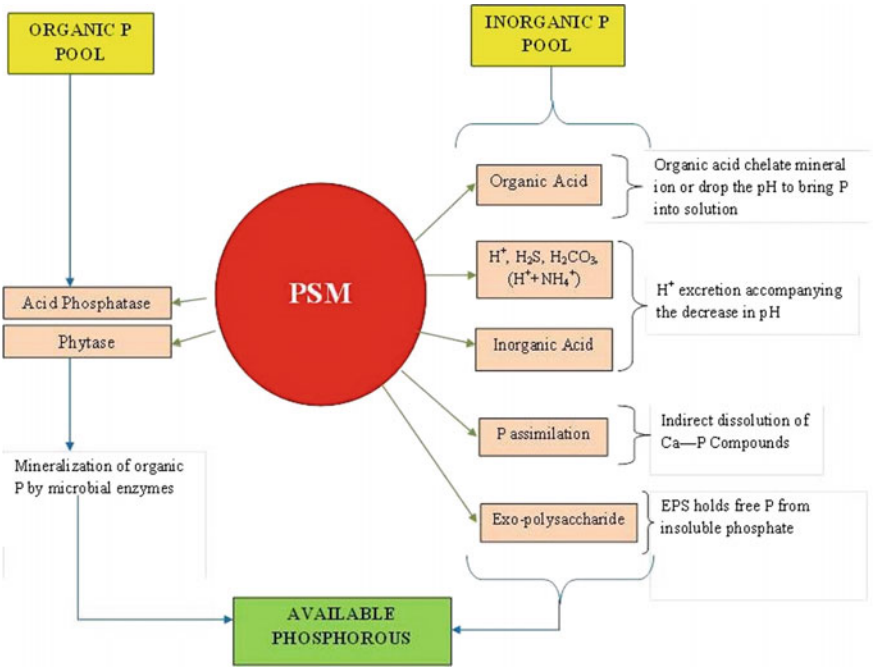


Fig. 4.1 Schematic representation of P solubilization/mineralization by various organic/inorganic substances produced by PSM

As described by Sims and Pierzynski (2005), the major processes of the soil P cycle that affect soil solution P concentrations are biologically mediated conversions of P between inorganic and organic forms, i.e., mineralization–immobilization; interactions between P in solution, and soil solid surfaces, i.e., sorption–desorption and dissolution–precipitation, i.e., mineral equilibria.

4.3.1 Different Microbial Mechanisms of P-Solubilization

Microorganisms are observed as proprietor of diverse mechanism to solubilize both organic and inorganic phosphate.

4.3.1.1 Organic P-Solubilization

Mineralization of organic phosphorus constituting 4–90% of the total soil P is referred as Organic P solubilization (Khan et al. 2009). Each organism can act in one or multiple ways to bring about the solubilization of insoluble P in soil. One of

which is use of enzyme, i.e., Non-specific acid phosphatases (NSAPs), phytases, C–P lyases, and Phosphonatases.

Non-specific acid phosphatases (NSAPs) have a capacity of dephosphorylate phosphoanhydride or phospho-ester bonds of organic matter. Among the different classes of phosphatase enzyme released by PSM, most studied and abundant class is Phosphomonoesterases (often called phosphatases) (Nannipieri et al. 2011). Depending upon the pH optima, phosphatases are further divided into acid and alkaline phosphomonoesterases (Jorquera et al. 2008). These enzymes (acid and alkaline phosphatases) are produced by plant roots as well as by PSM. Differentiation between phosphatases on the basis of their production source is very difficult (Richardson et al. 2009). However, plant roots can only produce large quantities of acid phosphatases. There are evidence proposing that phosphatases released from microbes have higher affinity for Po compounds as compared to phosphatases produced from plant roots (Chen et al. 2003), but still, there is not much understanding regarding the relationship between phosphatase activity of inoculated PSM and the subsequent mineralization of Po.

Phytases have a specific capacity of phytate degradation and cause P release. Phosphorous is stored in plant seeds and pollen in form of phytate. In the plant, it is primary inositol source. The key driver of regulation of phytate mineralization in soil is microorganisms. In spite of the fact that the capacity of plants to get P specifically from phytate is exceptionally restricted, but the vicinity of PSM inside of the rhizosphere provide an opportunity to plants to take up P directly from phytate (Richardson and Simpson 2011).

C–P lyases and phosphonatases are enzymes that act mainly in the breakdown of the C–P bond in organophosphonates (Rodriguez et al. 2006).

4.3.1.2 Inorganic P-Solubilization

Organic Acid Production

The major reason of inorganisc phosphorous solubilization is organic acid production by PSM. Primarily following organic acids are produced, i.e., acetic, citric, fumaric, glycolic, lactic, melonic, oxalic, propoionic, succinic acid, tartaric, etc. (Ahmad and Shahab 2011). Among all, the principal organic acid involved in inorganic P solubilization is gluconic acid. PSBs which produce abundant amount of gluconic acid are *Burkholderia cepacia*, *Erwinia herbicola, Pseudomonas* sp and *Pseudomonas cepacia* (Goldstein et al. 1994). However, sulphuric and nitric acids producing PBMs, i.e., *Thiobacillus* and *Nitrosomonas* species were also reported to solubilize phosphate compounds (Azam and Memon 1996).

HPLC (high-performance liquid chromatography) and enzymatic methods are mostly employed for the detection of organic acids produced by PSM (Whitelaw 2000). Mehta et al. (2013a) detected six different organic acids in culture filtrate of

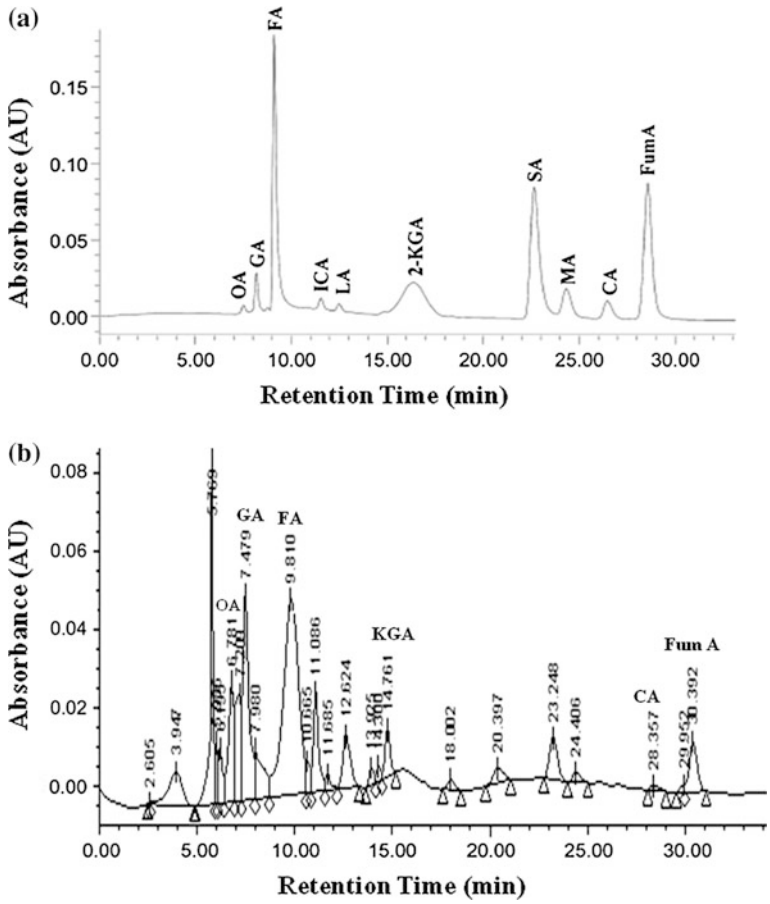


Fig. 4.2 HPLC chromatograms of authentic organic acids (**a**) and culture supernatant of *Bacillus subtilis* CB_8A grown for 3 days in PVK broth (**b**). Adopted from Mehta et al. (2013a). *OA* Oxalic acid; *GA* gluconic acid; *FA* formic acid; *ICA* isocitric acid; *LA* lactic acid; *2-KGA* 2-ketogluconic acid; *SA* succinic acid; *MA* maleic acid; *CA* citric acid; and *FumA* fumaric acid

Bacillus subtilis CB_8A by HPLC (Fig. 4.2). Six organic acids produced by *Bacillus subtilis* CB_8A are oxalic acid, gluconic acid, formic acid, 2-ketogluconic acid, citric acid, and fumaric acid. Out of these, major organic acids were gluconic acid (1.43%) and citric acid (0.67%) (Fig. 4.2). The reason of P solubilization by organic acid production may be: decrease in the pH; complex formation with metal ions of insoluble P (calcium phosphate, iron phosphate) and finally, P release; by competing with P for sites on the soil.

4.3.1.3 Important Facts of P-Solubilization by Organic Acid Production

i. Organic acids responsible for P-solubilization are the microbial metabolic product such as the product of fermentation of organic carbon sources (e.g., glucose) or oxidative respiration (Trolove et al. 2003).
ii. There is release of organic acids from the outer face of cytoplasmic membrane of P-solubilizing microorganisms which is the site of direct oxidation pathway. This organic acid release into the medium result in a decrease in pH (Zaidi et al. 2009b).
iii. PSM strains acidify the surrounding environment by synthesis and discharge of organic acid. Organic acids have the ability to chelate cations, i.e., Al, Ca, and Fe linked with P or they can result in exchange of acid anion with phosphate anion (Omar 1998).
iv. According to the abiotic study of Whitelaw et al. (1999), it was proved that HCl and gluconic acid can solubilize P. On the basis of above fact, solubilization of colloidal Al phosphate might be due to chelation of Al^{3+} by gluconic acid.
v. There is the presence of soluble inorganic phosphate i.e. H_2PO_4 at low pH. However, divalent and trivalent inorganic phosphate, i.e., HPO_4^{-2} and HPO_4^{-3} arise with the increase in soil pH.

However, acidification does not appear to be the main system of solubilization, as the capacity to decrease the pH at times did not associate with the ability to solubilize mineral P (Subba Rao 1982). The phosphate-solubilizing activity was ascribed both to reduction and to chelation processes.

4.3.1.4 Excretion of Proton

One of the major aspects responsible for P solubilization is pumping out of protons from cell (Krishnaraj et al. 1998). Some microorganisms release proton during NH^{4+} assimilation as the sole mechanism to promote P solubilization (Parks et al. 1990). Illmer and Schinner (1995) reported the absence of organic acids in culture solution by HPLC during P-solubilization by *Pseudomonas* sp. They also reported the probable reason of P-solubilization in culture solution, i.e., release of protons accompanying NH^{4+} assimilation or respiration. Participation of H^+ pump mechanism in P solubilization is also reported in *Penicillium rugulosum* (Reyes et al. 1999). Different mechanisms of proton release have been followed by different species. However, for P solubilization, only a few depends upon the presence of NH^{4+} ion (Carrillo et al. 2002).

4.3.1.5 Role of Siderophores and Exopolysaccharides in P-Solubilization

Siderophores are small, iron chelating molecules that bind with ferric ion and transport it to a cell. As, ligand exchange by organic acid anion is not a dominant P-solubilizing mechanism as compared to mineral dissolution. On the basis of this fact, the role of siderophores in enhancing P-solubilization is considered (Parker et al. 2005). There are various reports in the literature regarding the release of siderophores from PSM (Vassilev et al. 2006; Hamdali et al. 2008).

Microbial exopolysaccharides may play role in P-solubilization. Exopolysaccharides, secreted outside the cell by bacteria and fungi are mainly carbohydrate polymers. They are of different types, i.e., homo polysaccharides and heteropolysaccharides and may additionally contain a number of extraordinary organic and inorganic substituents. The role of microbial polysaccharides in P solubilization has been assessed by Yi et al. (2008). They reported significant production of EPS by highly efficient P-solubilizing bacteria, i.e., *Arthrobacter* sp. (ArHy-505), *Azotobacter* sp. (AzHy-510), *Enterobacter* sp. (EnHy-401), and *Enterobacter* sp. (EnHy-402).

4.3.1.6 Other Mechanisms

It has been suggested that processes such as sulphur oxidation, carbon monoxide, and nitrate production result in the formation of inorganic acids like sulphuric acid are a consequence of microbial phosphate solubilization (Swabyand Sperber 1958). The reaction between H_2S and ferric phosphate result in the formation of ferrous sulphate along with the simultaneous release of phosphate. So, production of H_2S can be one of the P-solubilization mechanisms.

4.3.1.7 Genetic Basis of Inorganic P-Solubilization

One of the major mechanism of P-solubilization is the production of organic acids, i.e., MPS. Therefore, understanding of the genetics behind MPS phenotype is necessary (Goldstein and Liu 1987). This assumption has been supported by cloning of PQQ gene responsible for gluconic acid production.

Pyrroloquinoline Quinone (PQQ) [(4,5-dihydro-4,5-dioxo-1H-pyrrolo-[2,3-] quinoline-2,7,9 tricarboxylic acid), aromatic, tricyclic ortho-quinone], belongs to the family of quinone cofactors. It serves as the redox cofactor for several bacterial dehydrogenases such as methanol dehydrogenase and glucose dehydrogenase (Fig. 4.3). PQQ-dependent glucose dehydrogenase (GDH) resides in the cytoplasmic membrane, can oxidize glucose to gluconate GDH, which needs PQQ for the holoenzyme. PQQ is derived from tyrosine and glutamic acid. It is characterized as a third class of redox cofactors following pyridine nucleotide and flavin-dependent cofactors (Houck et al. 1991).

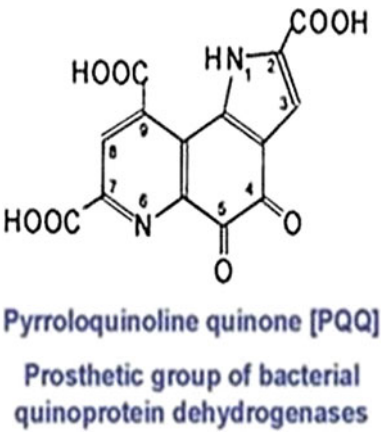


Fig. 4.3 Prosthetic group of bacterial quinoprotein dehydrogenases

Glucose dehydrogenase (GDH) Glucose dehydrogenase (GDH) is a quinoproteins which has the ability to oxidize glucose into gluconic acid. During catalytic reaction, GDH needs pyrroloquinoline quinone (PQQ) and metal ions such as Ca^{+2} or Mg^{+2} (in vitro). Membrane GDHs (m-GDHs) are monomeric proteins of 88 kDa with an N-terminal hydrophobic and large conserved PQQ-binding C-terminal domains. This C-terminal domain has catalytic activity (Yamada et al. 1994). However, N-terminal hydrophobic domain (residues 1–150) anchors the protein to the membrane. It consists of five trans-membrane segments which play a major role in anchoring the protein (Yamada et al. 1994). GDH plays a regulatory key in bioenergetic role in the bacteria. Uptake of exogenous compounds such as amino acids is due to trans-membrane proton motive force (PMF). Protons produced during oxidation participate directly in the generation of trans-membrane proton motive force (PMF). Therefore, this oxidative glucose pathway might be important for the survival of bacteria.

Very little is known regarding genetic or biochemical mechanisms involved in the synthesis of the GDH-PQQ halo enzyme. The possible inducers of halo enzyme are manitol, glucose, gluconate, and manitol (Van Schie et al. 1987). However, among several bacterial species, the difference in their constitutive and inducible phenotypes is observed (Goldstein 1994).

4.3.2 Genetic Diversity and Role of Genetic Engineering in P-Solubilization

4.3.2.1 Genetic Diversity of Phosphate-Solubilizing Microorganisms

Rhizosphere comprises of a huge microbial population of bacteria, fungi, protozoa, and algae. Bacteria are the most copious among them. The selection and

colonization of bacteria with in plant is based on their contribution to the fitness by releasing organic compounds through exudates (Lynch 1990), and therefore low diversity, selective environment is created (García et al. 2001). Since bacteria profusely colonize the rhizosphere and to the greater extent influence plants physiology, mainly taking into consideration of their competitiveness in root colonization (Antoun and Kloepper 2001).

The genotypic and phenotypic characteristic analysis of indigenous rhizobacteria can elucidate the mechanisms of interaction between them and plant roots. Studies on bacterial diversity are much more complex at taxonomic, functional and genetic levels in comparison to eukaryotes owing to the minute working scale and a large number of different bacterial species present in the environment.

Molecular basis behind phosphate solubilization by microorganisms is still limited and inconclusive (Rodriguez et al. 2006). Complete study of genes involved in P-solubilization and development of genetically engineered microbes is important not only for understanding their ecological role in the natural environment but also for their biotechnological application. As far as soil health is concerned exhaustive efforts are being made to explore indigenous soil microbial diversity with nutrient acquisition and mobilization potential with a special understanding of their distribution and behavior in soil habitats as well their influence on the quality of plant and soil health after introducing them as bioinoculants (Kumar et al. 2015).

A substantial number of phosphate-solubilizing culturable bacterial communities apart from genera *Pseudomonads* and *Bacilli*, there are some efficient P-solubilizing fungi that do not lose the P dissolving capacity even on repeated sub culturing under laboratory conditions as it occurs with most of the P-solubilizing bacteria (Kucey 1983). Generally, the release of organic acids by P-solubilizing fungi than bacteria consequently exhibit greater P-solubilizing activity. Among filamentous fungi that solubilize phosphate more efficiently belongs to genera *Aspergillus* and *Penicillium* (Reyes et al. 2002) although strains of *Trichoderma* and *Rhizoctonia solani* (Jacobs et al. 2002) have also been reported as good P solubilizers. Very few studies have been conducted in case of yeast to gauge their phosphate-solubilizing ability, these include *Yarrowiali polytica*, *Schizosaccharomyces pombe* and *Pichia fermentans* (Vassilev et al. 2001).

4.3.2.2 Genetic Engineering of PSM

High agricultural yield depends upon plant growth and nowadays it is achieved by employing high cost as well as environmentally hazardous phosphate fertilizers. To overcome this, an ecofriendly approach is to develop bacterial strains that can convert the form of phosphorus present in the soil to soluble forms which can be easily taken up by plants. Various attempts for developing such strains were made in past but failed due to incomplete knowledge of the phosphate-solubilizing genes, as well as the failure of the survival of bacterial strains under plant root environment. To deal with these challenges, this is desired to discover novel genes and pathways underlying solubilization of phosphorus sources which can be done by

the use of genome wise mutagenesis of phosphate-solubilizing bacteria. Validation of such novel genes and functions in *E. coli* is possible through advanced synthetic biological approaches which ultimately transfer novel phosphate-solubilizing capabilities associated with plant rhizosphere bacterium.

Several genes are isolated and characterized which are involved in mineral and organic phosphate solubilization. Cloning and expression of such genes in selected rhizobacterial strains through molecular biotechnology and genetic engineering have made a promising perception for obtaining recombinant strains with improved phosphate-solubilizing capability for agricultural purpose. Insertion of phosphate-solubilizing genes into microorganisms that lack P-solubilization trait may avoid the current need of using more than one strain of PGPR or consortia, when used as bioinoculants. The foremost success in cloning of a gene involved in mineral P solubilization in Gram-negative bacteria *Erwinia herbicola* was first time done by Goldstein and Liu (1987). The expression of this gene allowed the phosphate solubilization activity in *E. coli* HB101. *E. coli* can synthesize GDH, but not PQQ, thus it does not produce GA. This gene contributed in the synthesis of enzyme pyrrolo quinoline quinone (PQQ) synthase which was investigated through sequence analysis. For the synthesis of holoenzyme glucose dehydrogenase (GDH)-PQQ, PQQ is required which is a cofactor whose synthesis is directed by the enzyme pyrrolo quinoline quinone (PQQ) synthase. Formation of gluconic acid from glucose through direct oxidation pathway is catalyzed by glucose dehydrogenase (GDH)-PQQ. Sub cloning of the specific gene encoding mineral phosphate solubilization was done in a broad host range vector (pKT230). The recombinant plasmid expressed in *E. coli*, and further transferred to plant growth-promoting strains of *Burkholderia cepacia* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, using tri-parental conjugation.

4.3.2.3 Mineral Phosphate-Solubilizing Genes for Strain Improvement

Genetic background, presence of number of copies of plasmids as well as metabolic interaction of recipient strains could highly influence the expression of an MPS gene in a different host. Thus, genetic transfer of any isolated gene involved in MPS to stimulate phosphate-mobilizing aptitude in PGPB strains, is an attention-grabbing approach.

Kim et al. (1998) reported the expression of MPS genes isolated from *Ranella aquatilis* which when cloned in *E. coli* boost a high-level production of gluconic acid (GA) and hydroxyapatite dissolution as compared to donor strain. It was suggested that different genetic regulation of the MPS genes might occur in both species. In another case study, an increase in exudation of organic acids as well as phosphate availability to plants was observed by the expression of bacterial citrate synthase gene when expressed in tobacco roots. More yield of leaf and fruit biomass was observed in citrate overproducing plants when grown under phosphate limiting conditions along with low P-fertilizer doze which depicted the putative role of organic acid synthesis genes in P uptake in plants.

Table 4.2 Microorganisms encoding phosphatase genes for P-solubilization

Microorganisms	Gene or plasmid	Features	References
Serratia marcesence	pKG3791	Produce gluconic acid and solubilizes P	Krishnaraj and Goldstein (2001)
Rahnella aquatilis	pKIM10	Solubilize P and produce gluconic acid in *E. coli* DH5α	Kim et al. (1998)
Enterobacter agglomerans	pKKY	Solubilize P in *E. coli* 109, does not lower pH	Kim et al. (1997)
Pseudomonas cepacia	Gab Y	Solubilize P and produce gluconic acid in *E. coli* JM 109	Babu-Khan et al. (1995)
Erwinia herbicola	*Mps*	Solubilize P and produce gluconic acid in *E. coli* HB 101, probably involve in synthesis of PQQ	Goldstein and Liu (1987)
Bacillus subtilis CB_8A	*Gdh*	Solubilise P and produce gluconic acid	Mehta et al. (2013c)

Most of the bacterial phosphatase-encoding genes were isolated by means of expression cloning systems entirely based on histochemical based screening of genomic libraries (Table 4.2). These procedures not only allow quick recognition of clones harboring, but also the expression of enzymatic activity.

Riccio et al. (1997) developed a selection system based upon indicator medium consisted of phosphatase substrate phenolphthalein diphosphate (PDP) and methyl green (MG) stain, resulted in green putative colonies with phosphatase positive phenotype (pho1) whereas, phosphatase negative (pho2) clones were grown as unstained colonies. This system offers an imperative approach for the isolation of several bacterial phosphatase-encoding genes from different species, such as *Providencia sturatii, Providencia rettgeri* and *Morganella morganii*.

Another important system for the expression of cloning of bacterial phosphatase-encoding genes (*phoC*) used by Pond et al. (1989) consists of Luria Agar amended with 5-bromo-4-chloro-3-indolyl phosphate (BCIP) which was used for cloning of an acid phosphatase-encoding gene from *Zymomonas mobilis.* The transformant colonies were of dark blue which makes its easy direct selection on indicator plates.

Groisman et al. (1984) cloned the structural gene for the pH 2.5 acid phosphatase (*appA*) of *E. coli* for direct amplification of higher para-nitrophenyl-phosphate (pNPP) hydrolysis (phosphatase activity) responsible genes as a result acid phosphate colonies appeared yellow. Thaller et al. (1994) classified a non-specific phosphohydrolases into three different families: class A, class B, and class C phosphatases based on the cloning of phosphatase genes sequence analysis with other important parameters. Rossolini et al. (1998) studied the sequence level high homology in case of class A phosphatase genes from *M. morganii* and *P. stuartii*, which signifies that these genes are vertically derived from a common ancestor. A number of other phosphatase genes from *Escherichia coli* include: *ushA*, which encodes a 59-nucleotidase (Burns and Beacham 1986) *agp*, which encodes an acid

glucose-1-phosphatase (Pradel and Boquet 1988) and *cpdB*, encoding the 29–39 cyclic phosphodiesterase (Beacham and Garrett 1980).

Sharma et al. (2013) had suggested the application of genetically modified PSM as a potential candidate mover transgenic plants for improving plant performance: (1) with current technologies, a bacterium is much more easier to modify than complex higher organisms, (2) Multiple beneficial plant growth-promoting attributes can be introduced into a single organism, which could minimize the application of multi-strain bio-inoculant (3) Instead the engineering of crop by crop, a single, engineered inoculant can be used for several crops, especially when using a non-specific genus like *Azospirillum* (Rodriguez et al. 2006).

Gene recombination though an important conclusive approach but there are some barriers that needs be resolved first in order to achieve success, such as difference at the metabolic level and regulatory mechanisms between the donor and recipient strains. Despite many constraints and difficulties, significant and consistent progress are being done step by step in this field of molecular biology by genetically engineered microorganisms for sustainable and improved agriculture (Armarger 2002). On the whole, further advance studies on this aspect of PSM will provide key information in future for the better use of these PSM in diverse ecological conditions.

4.4 Phosphate-Solubilizing Bacteria as Plant Growth Promoters

P-solubilizers colonize plant roots and employ valuable effects on growth of plant and enhancement by a prevalent mechanism. To be an efficacious P-solubilizer, microorganisms need to set up itself in the rhizosphere at concentrations adequate to deliver the beneficial impacts. In this way, plant inoculation by P-solubilizer microorganism at a much higher rate than that regularly present in soil is important to exploit the property of phosphate solubilization for plant yield enhancement. There have been various reports on plant development and enhancement by microorganisms that can solubilize inorganic and/or natural P from soil after their inoculation in soil or plant seeds (Mehta et al. 2011; Kumar et al. 2015). The exact mechanism by which P-solubilizer stimulate plant growth is not clearly recognized, although several assumptions such as production of phytohormones, i.e., indoleacetic acid production, activation of P-solubilization, siderophore production, suppression of deleterious organisms, and promotion of the mineral nutrient uptake are usually accepted to be involved (Kumar et al. 2012; Walia et al. 2013b; Mehta et al. 2013a, b, c).

The P-solubilization capacity of the microorganisms is considered to be one of the most essential traits related with plant P-nutrition (Walia and Shirkot 2012). These PSMs render insoluble phosphate into available forms by the process of acidification, chelation, and exchange reaction (Pankaj and Sa 2008). This method

not only compensates the higher cost of industrial fertilizers but also mobilizes the fertilizers supplemented to the soil. In any case, at present, there is proof supporting the part of this component in plant development upgrade. For instance, a few soil microorganisms, including microbes, enhance the supply of P to plants as a result of their ability for inorganic or natural P solubilization (Lifshitz et al. 1987; Richardson 1994; Mehta et al. 2011). Considering that P accessibility is a restricting progress in plant sustenance, this confirmation proposes a basic assurance of phosphate-solubilizing microorganisms to plant nourishment and, consequently increase the performance of plant growth development. Mehta et al. (2013a, b) and Sharma et al. (2015) exhibited plant growth development of apple and tomato by a few microorganisms fit for mineral phosphate solubilization. There are so many strains indicating no indoleacetic acid production, however showing critical mineral phosphate solubilization and adequate movement of phosphatase has enhanced the yield of tomato, cauliflower, capsicum, apple, apricot, etc., among different cultivars, in field experiments.

Besides, a few illustrations of synchronous development and expansion in P uptake by plants as the consequence of phosphate-solubilizing microbial inoculations have been accounted for. Inoculation with two strains of P-solubilizers, i.e., *Rhizobium leguminosarum* has been showed to enhance root colonization and development advancement and to increase essentially the P application in tomato and apricot (Mehta et al. 2013c; Chauhan et al. 2014; Guleria et al. 2014a, b). Chabot et al. (1996) presumed that the P-solubilization impact of Rhizobia and other PSMs is by all accounts the most vital system of plant development advancement in reasonably rich and extremely fruitful soils. Then again, a strain of *Pseudomonas putida* too strengthened the development of roots and shoots and expanded 32P-named phosphate uptake in canola (Lifshitz et al. 1987). Inoculation of rice seeds with *Azospirillum lipoferum* strain 34H and tomato plants with *Bacillus subtilis* strain CKT1 expanded the phosphate particle content and brought about a huge change of root and shoot length and dry weights (Murty et al. 1988; Walia et al. 2013a). Concurrent expansions in P uptake and harvest yields have likewise been seen after inoculation with *Bacillus methylotrophicus* CKAM (Mehta et al. 2014), *Bacillus polymyxa* (Gaur and Ostwal 1972), *Bacillus subtilis* (Sharma et al. 2015), *Bacillus subtilis* CKT1 (Walia et al. 2013a) and *Bacillus circulans* (Mehta et al. 2013c), and others.

Another approach for the utilization of PSMs as microbial inoculants is the utilization of mixed or co-inoculation with different microbes. A few studies exhibit the useful impact of consolidated inoculation of P-solubilizing microbes and *Azotobacter* on yield, and in addition to nitrogen (N) and P accumulation in various crops (Kundu and Gaur 1984). Co-inoculation of *Pseudomonas striata* and *Bacillus polymyxa* strains demonstrating phosphate-solubilizing capacity, with a strain of *Azospirillum brasilense*, brought about a noteworthy change of grain and dry matter yields, with an increase in N and P uptake (Alagawadi and Gaur 1992). Likewise, phosphate-solubilizing *Agrobacterium radiobacte*r coinoculated with nitrogen fixer *Azospirillum lipoferum* showed enhanced grain yield as contrasted to single inoculations in pot and field tests (Belimov et al. 1995). These authors explained that

mixed inoculants gave more adjusted sustenance to the plants, and that the change in N and P uptake was the real mechanism involved. This proof focuses to the upside of the mixed inoculations of PGPR strains including PSMs.

Then again, it has been proposed that some PSMs act as mycorrhizal assistant microbes (Garbaye 1994). In such manner, a few studies have demonstrated that PSMs cooperate with vesicular arbuscular mycorrhizae (VAM) by discharging phosphate particles in the soil, which causes a synergistic connection that takes into consideration better use of ineffectively solvent P sources (Ray et al. 1981). It is likely that the phosphate solubilized by the microbes could be all the more effectively taken up by the plant through a mycorrhizae-intervened span in the middle of roots and encompassing soil that permits supplement translocation from soil to plants (Jeffries and Barea 1994). These authors concluded that the inoculated rhizobacteria could have released phosphate particles from insoluble rock phosphate and other P sources, and were then taken up by the outer VAM mycelium. Commercial biofertilizers affirming to experience phosphate solubilization utilizing mixed bacterial cultures have been produced. Extensive confirmation boosts the particular part of phosphate solubilization in the improvement of plant development by phosphate-solubilizing microorganisms. In any case, not all research center or field trials have offered positive results. For instance, an inoculant utilizing *Bacillus megaterium* var. phosphoricum, was used effectively in the previous Soviet Union and India, yet it did not demonstrate the same effectiveness in soils in the United States (Smith et al. 1962). Also, there are some deleterious species of bacteria present in the rhizosphere that have the potential to influence seed germination, plant growth, and crop yields significantly. These bacteria affect the plant growth through production of phytotoxins (Kumar et al. 2013a, b). Remarkably, in the study conducted by Walia et al. (2013a), a few isolates were found to significantly inhibit seed germination as demonstrated by a reduction in per cent of seed germination over uninoculated control, apparently by producing volatile metabolites. When studied, these deleterious bacterial isolates showed no HCN activity in vitro. Therefore, it is probable that some other gaseous metabolites produced by the bacteria under these conditions have repressed seed germination. This statement is supported by the increase in per cent seed germination by isolate N_{11} which otherwise produced HCN under in vitro conditions (Walia et al. 2013a, b; Alstrom and Burns 1989). Without a doubt, the productivity of the inoculation changes with the soil type, particular cultivar, and different parameters. The P substance of the soil is likely one of the critical elements in deciding the viability of the item.

4.4.1 Production of Phosphate-Solubilizing Microorganism Inoculants

Effective PSM cultures are mass-produced for supply to the agriculturists as microphos. The generation of microphos, i.e., a preparation containing

microorganisms with phosphate-solubilizing action, incorporates three stages: the main concerns choice and testing of phosphate-solubilizing strains; also, inoculant readiness, including determination and handling of the material carrier and mass culture of PSM; and thirdly, quality control methodology and dispersal. For microphos generation, peat, farmyard compost (FYM), soil and dairy animals waste cake powder have been recommended as suitable carriers (Kundu and Gaur 1981). For storage of cultures, these are packed in polybags for around three months at 30 ± 2 °C. In India, a microbial development termed Indian Agricultural Research Institute (IARI) microphos society (Gaur 1990; Khan et al. 2014b) was formed that contained two proficient phosphate-solubilizing microscopic organisms (*Pseudomonas striata* and *Bacillus polymyxa*) and three phosphate-solubilizing growths (*Aspergillus awamori*, *A. niger* and *Penicillium digitatum*).

4.4.2 Technology of Bioinoculants Production

Advancement of an effective inoculant includes a few basic components, for example, strain determination, choice of a carrier, mass duplication, detailing of the inoculant, and bundling and promoting. Stringent quality certification at different strides of generation guarantees the creation of reliably excellent inoculants. By and large, not long after the microbes are brought into the soil, the bacterial populace decays logically (Van Elsas et al. 1986; Bashan and Levanony 1988). This wonder might keep the development of an adequately vast microbial populace in the rhizosphere to acquire the expected plant reaction. The key snag is that the soil is a heterogeneous and flighty environment, even on the little scale (Van Elsas and Van Overbeek 1993). The inoculated microorganisms must contend with the frequently better adjusted local microflora. A noteworthy part of inoculant plan is to give a more suitable microenvironment to keep the fast decay of presented microorganisms in the soil. Although quite a bit of it is thought about the survival of microorganisms inside of the defensive environment of an inoculant transporter, little is thought about the burdens that microorganisms must persist upon exchange to the aggressive and regularly cruel soil environment (Rodriguez-Navarro et al. 1991; Heijnen et al. 1992). Inoculants must be intended to give a reliable wellspring of advantageous microorganisms that make due in the soil and get to be accessible to the plant. The assembling of bioinoculants requires four noteworthy steps (a) Selection of effective strain, (b) Mass culture, (c) Carrier materials and their handling and (d) Packaging, which are to be prepared after strictly ensure the quality of a production item.

4.4.2.1 Inoculant Formulation Technology for P-Solubilizers

Formulation is an urgent perspective for producing inoculants containing a compelling bacterial strain that can decide the achievement or disappointment of

organic workers. Formulation normally comprises of setting up the dynamic fixing, i.e., microorganism (s) in a suitable carrier together with added substances that guide in the adjustment and insurance of the microbial cells amid capacity and transport at the objective site. The formulation is difficult to protect after applying in the fields from destructive ecological components, and keep up or upgrade movement of the living beings in the field (Jones and Burges 1998). Another critical thought is the cost-viability of the plan.

To encourage the performance of high cell numbers and build survival of microorganisms in soil, diverse plans utilizing carrier materials have been utilized. The issue of value inoculant production relies on upon utilization of good carrier material in biofertilizer production unit. The carrier is the conveyance vehicle of live microorganisms from the production line to the field; nonetheless, no widespread carrier or plan is accessible for the arrival of microorganisms into the soil (Trevors et al. 1992). Carrier materials might act to improve survival of inocula by giving microorganisms a defensive domain keeping in mind the end goal to escape unfavorable conditions in the soil. The explanations behind a reduction in inoculum populace in the soil after some time incorporate inadequate supplements accessible for upkeep and replication, and imperfect ecological conditions, for example, pH, ionic quality, temperature and so forth (Van Elsas and Van Overbeek 1993). Predation by bacteriovorus microorganisms, for example, protozoa, and rivalry with indigenous microbes can likewise diminish inoculum application.

To be effective, a carrier material must upgrade survival of inocula amid capacity and after performance into the soil. The carrier must show two crucial properties, i.e., it must be backing the development of the objective produce and keep up a sought populace of inoculant over an adequate time period. To accomplish these objectives, a carrier should likewise show high water-holding limit and maintenance attributes, show compound and physical consistency and be nonlethal to inoculant strains and earth safe (Stephens and Rask 2000). Extra attributes for a decent inoculant should be as per the following:

1. The inoculants should be almost sterile or effectively cleaned, and as artificially and physically uniform as could be expected under the circumstances.
2. They must have steady quality, high water-holding limit (for wet transporters) and suitable for whatever number bacterial species and strains as could be allowed.
3. The inoculant must have an effectively movable pH, and be made of a sensibly valued crude material in satisfactory supply.
4. The inoculant must be nontoxic, biodegradable and nonpolluting, and have to minimize ecological dangers, for example, the dispersal of cells to the climate or to the ground water.
5. The inoculant must have an adequate time frame of realistic usability maybe a couple of years at room temperature.

Normally, no single carrier can have every one of these qualities, yet a decent one should have however many as could be expected under the circumstances.

4.4.2.2 Types of Carriers for P-Solubilizer Inoculants

The most useful carrier for inoculants are (i) Soils: peat, coal, soils, and inorganic soil (Smith 1995). (ii) Plant waste materials: fertilizers, barnyard compost, soybean and shelled nut oil, wheat grain, press-mud, spent mushroom manure. (iii) Inert materials: vermiculite, perlite, ground rock phosphate, calcium sulfate. These arrangements can later be fused into a strong carrier or utilized as they may be.

To produce an inoculant, the objective microorganism can be brought into a sterile carrier. From an absolutely microbiological perspective, the clean carrier has huge preferences yet from a commercial point of view, it is very costly to produce sterile carrier. In any case, sterile-originated inoculants have been effectively advertised even with their higher sticker price. But the less expensive non-sterile carriers, regardless of their potential burdens, have a much bigger market in the business sector (Olsen et al. 1994). The formulation is the key issue for inoculants containing a viable bacterial strain and can decide the achievement or failure of a biological agent.

Inoculants come in four essential dispersal frames. Powder form is utilized as a seed covering before planting. The little the molecule estimate, the better the inoculant will stick to the seeds. Standard sizes differ from 0.075 to 0.25 mm, and the measure of inoculant utilized is around 200–300 g/ha. These inoculants are the most well known both in developed and developing nations (Tang and Yang 1997). Slurries depend on powder-sort inoculants suspended in a fluid (typically water). The suspension is straightforwardly connected to the furrow or on the other hand, the seeds are plunged only preceding sowing. Granular form inoculants are connected straightforwardly to the furrow together with the seeds.

4.4.3 Applications of Endophytic P-Solubilizers in Agriculture and Response of Crops to Bioinoculants

High quality of planting material is a basic requirement for the achievement of any cultivation wander. To guarantee the nature of the planting materials, a successful production and assurance framework is of principal significance. Endophytic bacterial species can be conveyed stem or established cuttings of green plants. Such a conveyance system for endophytic microbes during ahead of schedule phase of its improvement would guarantee better establishing of the planting material. A few techniques for the conveyance of endophytic microorganisms are accounted for which incorporates seed treatment, bacterization of plant spread material, soil application and even foliar application. For vegetatively spread plant species, endophytic microorganisms can be specifically conveyed into the succulent plant framework before the planting in the soil (Panhwar et al. 2013). In these plants, shoots are amiable for bacterization by endophytic microorganisms. Endophytic

microbes from tomato, apricot, apple, seabuckthorn, and *Podophyllum hexandrum* (medicinal plant) illustrative of the overwhelmingly viewed genera *Bacillus, Pseudomonas*, *Enterobacter* and *Serratia* were tried for their abilities to enhance establishing of their host plant (Mehta et al. 2014; Kumar et al. 2015; Sharma et al. 2016). After endophytic inoculation and resulting development in soil, we saw that the root structures of inoculated apple cuttings were frequently denser with numerous fine attaches contrasted with those of the noninoculated control plants. Root arrangement was moderate for noninoculated plants. Interestingly, for cuttings that were permitted to establish in the vicinity of the chose endophytes, root development was started inside of 1 week, and shoot arrangement was more declared contrasted with that of the noninoculated plants.

The use of P-solubilizers is rapidly increasing in agriculture and horticulture and offers a finest way to replace chemical fertilizers and pesticides (Zaidi et al. 2014; Ahemad 2015). Earlier, Walia et al. (2013a) had isolated and characterized different P-solubilizers from the rhizosphere soils/roots of tomato having multiple plant growth-promoting traits (PGPTs). For the testing of effective P-solubilizers, a pot culture experiment was conducted where they reported a significant increase in shoot length, root length and dry matter production of shoot and root of tomato seedlings. Among seven P-solubilizers, strain CKT1 exhibited concomitant production of PGPTs, i.e., siderophore production, indoleacetic acid production, nitrogen fixation activity, and hydrogen cyanide production. Significant increase was observed in seed germination (36.08%), shoot length (5.22%), root length (21.12%), shoot dry weight (63.50%) and root dry weight (54.08%), nitrogen (18.75%), potassium (57.69%) and phosphorus (22.22%) as compared to uninoculated control. This study, therefore, suggests that the use of single strain inoculum of CKT1 with multiple PGPTs offers a new concept to address multiple modes of action.

In an another study by Mehta et al. (2013) endophytic P-solubilizing bacterial isolate *Bacillus circulans* CB7 isolated from apple rhizosphere soil of Himachal Pradesh, India exhibited PGPTs of auxin, nitrogenase activity, ACC deaminase activity, siderophore production, and antifungal activity against *Dematophora necatrix*. In vivostudies showed remarkable increase in seed germination (22.32%), shoot length (15.91%), root length (25.10%), shoot dry weight (52.92%) and root dry weight (31.4%). Also, the nutrient uptake by plants, i.e., nitrogen (18.75%), potassium (57.69%) and phosphorus (22.22%) was increased in shoot biomass. These results exhibited strongly that isolate CB7 has the favorable PGPR traits to be developed as a biofertilizer to boost soil fertility and enhance plant growth.

The synergistic effect of the combination of three PGPRs, *Bacillus licheniformis* CECT 5106, *Pseudomonas fluorescens* CECT 5398, and *Chryseobacterium balustinum* CECT 5399 with LS 213 on the growth promotion and biocontrol on tomato and pepper against *Fusarium* wilt and *Rhizoctonia* damping off was observed by Domenech et al. (2006). They concluded that when both rhizobacterium and strain LS213 were combined together to form an inoculum, the growth parameters were significantly higher than with individual rhizobacterium, in tomato and pepper, which revealed a synergistic and most effective effect on growth

promotion. Similarly, Pandey and Maheshwari (2006) studied the interaction for plant growth promoting comprising of two species i.e. *Burkholderia* sp. MSSP and *Sinorhizobium meliloti* PP3 which can produce IAA and solubilize inorganic phosphate. The consortium of two strains was tested on *Cajanus cajan* in sterile soil and their results revealed an increase in seedling length, yield and weight after inoculation with these species. A similar study was also conducted by Sharma et al. (2007) who isolated two phosphate-solubilizing strains namely *Pseudomonas fluorescens* and *Bacillus megaterium*. They coinoculated them into seeds of *Cicer arietinum* and observed that the consortium of two enhanced the seedling length, radical and plumule length.

Adesemoye et al. (2008) conducted a field study to test the effect of P-solubilizers microbial inoculants on corn plant growth, yield and nutrient uptake. The field results showed that inoculants promoted grain yields (kg/ha) 7717 for AMF (Arbuscular Mycorrhiza Fungi), 7260 for PGPR + AMF, 7313 for PGPR, 5725 for the control group and also enhanced nitrogen content per gram of grain tissues. Significantly higher amounts of N, P and K were taken up by microbes thus indicated the application of inoculants lead to a reduction in buildup of N, P, and K in agricultural soils which is measure of an integrated nutrient management system. Similarly, Yazdani et al. (2009) reported that use of PSM and PGPR in addition to conventional fertilizer applications (NPK) could improve root and shoot weight, and grain number per row and finally increased grain yield of *Zea mays* L. They concluded that application of PSM and PGPR together could reduce P application by 50% without any significant reduction of grain yield. PGPR can enhance plant growth by alleviating soil stresses experimentally observed by Mehta et al. (2013a). They hypothesized that the isolated strains of *Azospirillum* sp. and *Bacillus subtilis* CB_8A may alleviate the adverse effects of drought stress on wheat and apple growth.

4.5 Conclusion and Future Prospects

In intensive agricultural practices, the application of phosphatic fertilizer requires a greater input that cannot be afforded by the farmers furthermore due to impending impacts to the biological system. Keeping this in perspective, numerous researchers have occupied their examination in finding the shrouded treasure under the soil and thus, rhizosphere competent bacteria (RCB) or endophytic P-solubilizers came into light and gained interest as inoculants or economically efficient substitute for fertilization of crops by solubilization of phosphate from inadequately accessible sources in the soil. The characteristic state of plants is by all accounts in a nearby interaction with endophytes. In the endophyte–host communications, the base commitment of the plant to the endophyte is one of giving nutrition. Endophytic microorganisms are the rich wellspring of an extensive variety of bioactive mixes, bringing about the generation of each of the five classes plant development hormones (auxins, abscisins, ethylene, gibberellins, and kinetins). The accomplishment

of this microbiological approach, in any case, relies on upon identification, preparation and delivery of multifunctional endophytic phosphate solubilizers to farm practitioners. This would be amiable when a superior learning on endophyte environment and their molecular associations is achieved. Once recognized and physiologically portrayed, phosphate-solubilizing microorganisms are liable to give advantages to crops in sustainable agriculture. Further, keeping in mind the end goal to guarantee food security in developing nations, there is a dire requirement for the eco-friendly sustainable intensification of farming production systems. In this context, efficient indigenous or genetically modified region or crop specific endophytic PSM and advancements for their definitive exchange to the fields must be produced and delivered to farmers in a relatively brief time.

References

Adesemoye AO, Obini M, Ugoji EO (2008) Comparison of plant growth-promotion with Pseudomonas aeruginosa and Bacillus subtilis in three vegetables. Braz J Microbiol 39:423–426

Ahemad M (2015) Phosphate-solubilizing bacteria-assisted phytoremediation of metalliferous soils: a review. 3 Biotech 5(2):111–121

Ahemad M, Khan MS (2010) Phosphate-solubilizing and plant-growth-promoting *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* PS1 improves green gram performance in quizalafop-p-ethyl and clodinafop amended soil. Arch Environ Con Tox 58:361–372

Ahmad N, Shahab S (2011) Phosphate solubilization: their mechanism genetics and application. Int J Microbiol 9:4408–4412

Alagawadi AR, Gaur AC (1992) Inoculation of *Azospirillum brasilense* and phosphate-solubilizing bacteria on yield of sorghum [*Sorghum bicolor* (L.) Moench] in dry land. Trop Agric 69:347–350

Alstrom S, Burns RG (1989) Cyanide production by rhizobacteria as a possible mechanism of plant growth inhibition. Biol Fert Soils 7:232–238

Antoun H, Kloepper JW (2001) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR). In: Brenner S, Miller JH (eds) Encyclopedia of genetics. Academic Press, New York, pp 1477–1480

Aranda S, Montes MB, Rafael M, Díaz J, Landa Blanca B (2011) Microbial communities associated with the root system of wild olives (*Olea europaea* L. subsp. *europaea* var. *sylvestris*) are good reservoirs of bacteria with antagonistic potential against *Verticillium dahlia*. Plant Soil 343:329–345

Armarger N (2002) Genetically modified bacteria in agriculture. Biochimie 84:1061–1072

Ashrafuzzaman M, Hossen FA, Ismail MR, Hoque MA, Islam MZ, Shahidullah SM, Meon S (2009) Efficiency of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) for the enhancement of rice growth. Afr J Biotechnol 8:1247–1252

Azam F, Memon GH (1996) Soil organisms. In: Bashir E, Bantel R (eds) Soil science. National Book Foundation, Islamabad, pp 200–232

Babu-Khan S, Yeo CT, Martin WL, Duron MR, Rogers RD, Goldstein A (1995) Cloning of a mineral phosphate-solubilizing gene *Pseudomonas cepacia*. Appl Environ Microbiol 61:972–978

Barraquio WL, Segubre EM, Gonzalez MS, Verma SC, James EK, Ladha JK, Tripathi AK (2000) Diazotrophic enterobacteria: what is their role in the rhizosphere? In: Ladha JK, Reddy PM (eds) The quest for nitrogen fixation in rice. IRRI, Manila, pp 93–118

Barriuso J, Solano BR (2008) Ecology, genetic diversity and screening strategies of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR). J Plant Nutr 1–17

Bashan Y, Levanony H (1988) Adsorption of the rhizosphere bacterium *Azospirillum brasilense* Cd to soil, and and peat particles. J Gen Microbiol 134:1811–1820

Beacham IR, Garrett S (1980) Isolation of *Escherichia coli* mutants (*cpdB*) deficient in periplasmic 29:39-cyclic phosphodiesterase and genetic mapping of the *cpdB*locus. J Gen Microbiol 119:31–34

Belimov AA, Kojemiakov AP, Chuvarliyeva CV (1995) Interaction between barley and mixed cultures of nitrogen fixing and phosphate-solubilizing bacteria. Plant Soil 173:29–37

Bhattacharya P, Jain RK (2000) Phosphorus solubilizing biofertilizers in the whirlpool of rock phosphate challenges and opportunities. Fert News 45:45–49

Burns DM, Beacham IR (1986) Nucleotide sequence and transcriptional analysis of the *Escherichia coli UshA* gene, encoding periplasmic UDP-sugar hydrolase (59-nucleotidase): regulation of the *UshA* gene, and the signal sequence of its encoded protein product. Nucleic Acids Res 14:4325–4342

Butterly CR, Bunemann EK, McNeill AM, Baldock JA, Marschner P (2009) Carbon pulses but not phosphorus pulses are related to decrease in microbial biomass during repeated drying and rewetting of soils. Soil Biol Biochem 41:1406–1416

Carrillo AE, Li CY, Bashan Y (2002) Increased acidification in the rhizosphere of cactus seedlings induced by *Azospirillum brasilense*. Naturwissenschaften 89:428–432

Chabot R, Antoun H, Kloepper JW, Beauchamp CJ (1996) Root colonization of maize and lettuce by bioluminescent *Rhizobium leguminosarum* biovar. *phaseoli*. Appl Environ Microbiol 62:2767–2772

Chatli AS, Beri V, Sidhu BS (2008) Isolation and characterisation of phosphate solubilizing microorganisms from the cold desert habitat of *Salix alba* Linn. in trans Himalayan region of Himachal Pradesh. Indian J Microbiol 48:267–273

Chauhan A, Guleria S, Walia A, Mahajan R, Verma S, Shirkot CK (2014) Isolation and characterization of *Bacillus* sp. with their effect on growth of tomato seedlings. Indian J Agr Biochem 27(2):193–201

Chen CR, Condron LM, Davis MR, Sherlock RR (2003) Seasonal changes in soil phosphorus and associated microbial properties under adjacent grassland and forest in New Zealand. Forest Ecol Manag 117:539–557

Chen YP, Rekha PD, Arun AB, Shen FT, Lai WA, Young CC (2006a) Phosphate solubilizing bacteria from subtropical soil and their tricalcium phosphate solubilizing abilities. Appl Soil Ecol 34(1):33–41

Chen YP, Rekha PD, Arun AB, Shen FT, Lai WA, Young CC (2006b) Phosphate solubilizing bacteria from subtropical soil and their tricalcium phosphate solubilizing abilities. Appl Soil Ecol 34:33–41

Chen Z, Ma S, Liu L (2008) Studies on phosphorus solubilizing activity of a strain of phosphobacteria isolated from chestnut type soil in China. Bioresour Technol 99:6702–6707

Compant S, Duffy B, Nowak J, Clément C, Barka EA (2005) Use of plant growth-promoting bacteria for biocontrol of plant diseases: principles, mechanisms of action, and future prospects. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:4951–4959

Compant S, Clément C, Sessitsch A (2010) Plant growth-promoting bacteria in the rhizo- and endosphere of plants: their role, colonization, mechanisms involved and prospects for utilization. Soil Biol Biochem 42:669–678

Dobbelaere S, Vanderleyden Okon Y (2003) Plant growth-promoting effects of diazotrophs in the rhizosphere. Crit Rev Plant Sci 22:107–149

Domenech J, Reddy MS, Kloepper J, Ramos B, Gutierrez-Manero G (2006) Combined application of the biological product LS213 with Bacillus, Pseudomonas or Chryseobacterium for growth promotion and biological control of soil borne diseases in pepper and tomato. Biocontrol 51:245–248

Fasim F, Ahmed N, Parson R, Gadd GM (2002) Solubilization of zincsalts by a bacterium isolated from air environment of a tannery. FEMS Microbiol Lett 213:1–6

Feng H, Li Y, Liu Q (2013) Endophytic bacterial communities in tomato plants with differential resistance to *Ralstonia solanacearum*. Afr J Microbiol Res 7:1311–1318

Gaiero JR, McCall CA, Thompson KA, Day NJ, Best AS, Dunfield KE (2013) Inside the root microbiome: bacterial root endophytes and plant growth promotion. Am J Bot 100:1738–1750

Garbaye J (1994) Helper bacteria: a new dimension to the mycorrhizal symbiosis. New Phytol 128:197–210

Garbeva P, van Veen JA, van Elsas JD (2003) Predominant *Bacillus* spp. in agricultural soil under different management regimes detected via PCR-DGGE. Microbial Ecol 45(3):302–316

García JAL, Probanza A, Ramos B, Gutiérrez Mañero FJ (2001) Genetic variability of rhizobacteria from wild populations of four Lupinus species based on PCR-RAPDs. J Plant Nutr Soil Sci 164:1–7

Gaur AC (1990) Phosphate solubilizing microorganisms as biofertilizer. Omega Scientific Publishers, New Delhi, p 176

Gaur AC, Ostwal KP (1972) Influence of phosphate dissolving bacilli on yield and phosphate uptake of wheat crop. Indian J Exp Biol 10:393–394

Gerke J (1992) Phosphate, aluminium and iron in the soil solution of three different soils in relation to varying concentration of citric acid. Zeitschrift Pflanzenernhr Bodenkunde 155:339–343

Glick BR (2003) Phytoremediation: synergistic use of plants and bacteria to clean up the environment. Biotechnol Adv 21:383–393

Goldstein AH (1994) Involvement of the quinoprotein glucose dehydrogenase in the solubilization of exogenous phosphates by gram-negative bacteria. In: Gorini A, Torrini A, Yagil E, Silver S (eds) Phosphate in microorganisms: cellular and molecular biology. ASM Press, Washington, pp 197–203

Goldstein AH, Liu ST (1987) Molecular cloning and regulation of a mineral phosphate solubilizing gene from *Erwinia herbicola*. Biotechnol 5:72–74

Groisman EA, Castillo BA, Casadaban MJ (1984) In vivo DNA cloning and adjacent gene fusing with a mini-Mulac bacteriophage containing a plasmid replicon. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 81:1480–1483

Gulati A, Rahi P, Vyas P (2008) Characterization of phosphate-solubilizing fluorescent Pseudomonads from the rhizosphere of seabuckthorn growing in the cold deserts of Himalayas. Curr Microbiol 56:73–79

Guleria S, Sharma K, Walia A, Chauhan A, Shirkot CK (2014a) Population and functional diversity of phosphate solubilizing bacteria from Apricot (*Prunus Armeniaca*) of mid and high regions of Himachal Pradesh. Bioscan 9(2):1435–1443

Guleria S, Walia A, Chauhan A, Shirkot CK (2014b) Genotypic and phenotypic diversity analysis of alkalophilic proteolytic *Bacillus* sp. associated with rhizosphere of apple trees in trans Himalayan region of Himachal Pradesh. Proc Natl Acad Sci India Sec B: Biol Sci 86(2):331–41

Gyaneshwar P, Kumar GN, Parekh LJ, Poole PS (2002) Role of soil microorganisms in improving P nutrition of plants. Plant Soil 245:83–93

Halder AK, Mishra AK, Bhattacharya P, Chakrabarthy PK (1990) Solubilization of rock phosphate by *Rhizobium* and *Bradyrhizobium*. J Gen Appl Microbiol 36:81–92

Hallmann J, Quadt-Hallmann A, Mahaffee WF, Kloepper JW (1997) Bacterial endophytes in agricultural crops. Can J Microbiol 43:895–914

Hamdali H, Bouizgarne B, Hafidi M, Lebrihi A, Virolle MJ, Ouhdouch Y (2008) Screening for rock phosphate solubilizing Actinomycetes from Moroccan phosphate mines. Appl Soil Ecol 38:12–19

Hameeda B, Harish KRY, Rupela OP, Kumar GN, Reddy G (2006) Effect of carbon substrates on rock phosphate solubilization by bacteria from composts and macrofauna. Curr Microbiol 53:298–302

Heijnen CE, Hok-A-Hin CH, van Veen JA (1992) Improvements to the use of bentonite clay as a protective agent, increasing survival levels of bacteria introduced into soil. Soil Biol Biochem 24:533–538

Hiltner L (1904) Über neuere Ehrfahrungen und Problem auf dem Gebiet der Bodenbakteriologie unter besonderer Berücksichtigung der Grundüngung und Brache. Arb Dtsch Landwirt Ges 98:59–78

Houck DR, Hanners JL, Unkefer CJ (1991) Biosynthesis of pyrroloquinoline quinone. Biosynthetic assembly from glutamate and tyrosine. J Am Chem Soc 113:3162–3166

Hui L, Xiao-Qin W, Jia-Hong R, Jian-Ren Y (2011) Isolation and identification of phosphobacteria in poplar rhizosphere from different regions of china. Pedosphere 21:90–97

Igual JM, Valverde A, Cervantes E, Velazquez E (2001) Phosphate solubilizing Bacteria as inoculants for agriculture: use of updated molecular techniques in their study. Agronomie 21:561–568

Illmer PA, Schinner F (1995) Solubilization of inorganic calcium phosphates solubilization mechanisms. Soil Biol Biochem 27:257–263

Jacobs H, Boswell GP, Ritz K, Davidson FA, Gadd GM (2002) Solubilization of calcium phosphate as a consequence of carbon translocation by *Rhizoctoniasolani*. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 40:65–71

Jain P, Khichi DS (2014) Phosphate solubilizing microorganism (PSM): an eco-friendly biofertilizer and pollution manager. J Dynamics Agri Res 1(4):23–28

Jeffries P, Barea JM (1994) Bioeochemical cycling and arbuscular mycorrhizas in the sustainability of plant-soil system. In: Gianinazzi S, Schüepp H (eds) Impact of arbuscular mycorrhizas on sustainable agriculture and natural ecosystems. Birkhäuser Verlag, Basel, Switzerland, pp 101–115

Jha A, Jha S, Baidya D (2014) Ecological diversity, mechanism, and biotechnology of phosphate-solubilizing bacteria for enhanced crop production. In: Khan et al (eds) Phosphate solubilizing microorganisms. Springer International Publishing, Switzerland, pp 157–174

Jones KA, Burges HD (1998) Technology of formulation and application. In: Burges HD (ed) Formulation of microbial biopesticides: beneficial microorganisms, nematodes and seed treatments. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, The Netherlands, pp 7–30

Jorquera MA, Hernandez MT, Rengel Z, Marschner P, Mora MD (2008) Isolation of culturable phosphor bacteria with both phytate-mineralization and phosphate-solubilization activity from the rhizosphere of plants grown in a volcanic soil. Biol Fert Soils 44:1025–1034

Khan MS, Zaidi A, Wani PA (2009) Role of phosphate solubilizing microorganisms in sustainable agriculture. In: Lictfouse et al (eds) Sustainable agriculture. Springer International Publishing, p 552

Khan MS, Zaidi A, Ahmad E (2014a) Mechanism of phosphate solubilization and physiological functions of phosphate-solubilizing microorganisms. In: Khan et al (eds) Phosphate solubilizing microorganisms. Springer International Publishing, Switzerland, pp 31–62

Khan MS, Zaidi A, Musarrat J (2014b) Phosphate solubilizing microorganisms: principles and application of microphos technology. Springer International Publishing, Switzerland

Kim KY, McDonald GA, Jordan D (1997) Solubilization of hydroxyapatite by *Enterobacter agglomerans* and cloned *Escherichia coli* in culture medium. Biol Fert Soils 24:347–352

Kim KY, Jordan D, McDonald GA (1998a) *Enterobacter agglomerans*, phosphate solubilizing bacteria, and microbial activity in soil: effect of carbon sources. Soil Biol Biochem 30:995–1003

Kim KY, Jordan D, McDonald GA (1998b) Effect of phosphate-solubilizing bacteria and vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizeae on tomato growth and soil microbial activity. Biol Fert Soils 26:79–87

Kokalis-Burelle N, Vavrina CS, Roskopf EN, Shelby RA (2002) Plant bacteria interactions-strategies and techniques to promote plant growth. Plant Soil 238:257–266

Krishnaraj PU, Goldstein AH (2001) Cloning of a *Serratia marcescence* DNA fragment that induces quinoprotein glucose dehydrogenase mediated gluconic acid production *Escherichia coli* in the presence of stationary phase *Serratia marcescence*. FEMA Microbiol Lett 205 (2):215–220

Krishnaraj PU, Khanuja SPS, Sadashivam KV (1998) Mineral phosphate solubilization (MPS) and mps genes-components in eco-friendly P fertilization. Abstracts of Indo US Workshop on

Application of Biotechnology for Clean Environment and Energy, National Institute of Advanced Studies, Bangalore, p 27
Kucey RMN (1983) Phosphate solubilizing bacteria and fungi in various cultivated and virgin Alberta soils. Can J Soil Sci 63:671–678
Kumar P, Dubey RC, Maheshwari DK (2012) *Bacillus* strains isolated from rhizosphere showed plant growth promoting and antagonistic activity against phytopathogens. Microbiol Res 167:493–499
Kumar V, Pathak DV, Dudeja SS, Saini R, Narula S, Anand RC (2013a) Legume nodule endophytes more diverse than endophytes from roots of legumes or non-legumes in soils of Haryana. India. J Microbiol Biotechnol Res 3(3):83–92
Kumar D, Shivay YS, Dhar S, Kumar C, Prasad R (2013b) Rhizospheric flora and the influence of agronomic practices on them-a review. Proc Natl Acad Sci India Sect B: Biol Sci 83(1):1–14
Kumar A, Guleria S, Mehta P, Walia A, Chauhan A, Shirkot CK (2015) Plant growth promoting traits of Phosphate solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from sea buckthorn growing in cold desert region of trans-Himalayas and evaluating their potential on growth of tomato seedlings. Acta Physiol Plant 37(3):1–12
Kundu BS, Gaur AC (1981) Effect of single and composite cultures on rock phosphate solubilization. Haryana Agric Univ J Res 11:559–562
Kundu BS, Gaur AC (1984) Rice response to inoculation with N_2-fixing and P-solubilizing microorganisms. Plant Soil 79:227–234
Kundu BS, Nehra K, Yadav R, Tomar M (2009) Biodiversity of phosphate solubilizing bacteria in rhizosphere of chickpea, mustard and wheat grown in different regions of Haryana. Ind J Microbiol 49:120–127
Lifshitz R, Kloepper JW, Kozlowski M, Simonson C, Carlson J, Tipping EM, Zalesca I (1987) Growth promotion of canola (rapeseed) seedlings by a strain of *Psedomonas putida* under gnotobiotic conditions. Can J Microbiol 33:390–395
Lynch JM (1990) The Rhizosphere. John Wiley & Sons Ltd, Chichester, p 458
Martins A, Kimura O, Goi SR, Baldani JI (2004) Effect of coinoculation of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria and rhizobia on development of common bean plants (*Phaseolus vulgaris*, L.). Floresta e Ambiente 11:33–39
Mehta P, Walia A, Chauhan A, Shirkot CK (2011) Accelerated solubilization of inorganic phosphate and production of antifungal activity in soil by plant growth promoting rhizobacteria isolated from apple rhizosphere. J Mycol Plant Pathol 41(3):342–349
Mehta P, Walia A, Chauhan A, Kulshrestha S, Shirkot CK (2013a) Phosphate solubilization and plant growth promoting potential by stress tolerant *Bacillus* sp. isolated from rhizosphere of apple orchards in trans Himalayan region of Himachal Pradesh. Ann Appl Biol 163:430–443
Mehta P, Walia A, Chauhan A, Shirkot CK (2013b) Plant growth promoting traits of phosphate-solubilizing rhizobacteria isolated from apple trees in trans Himalayan region of Himachal Pradesh. Arch Microbiol 195:357–369
Mehta P, Walia A, Kulshrestha S, Chauhan A, Shirkot CK (2013c) Efficiency of plant growth-promoting P-solubilizing *Bacillus circulans* CB7 for enhancement of tomato growth under net house condition. J Basic Microbiol 53:1–12
Mehta P, Walia A, Kakkar N, Shirkot CK (2014) Tricalcium phosphate solubilisation by new endophyte *Bacillus methylotrophicus* CKAM isolated from apple root endosphere and its plant growth-promoting activities. Acta Physiol Plant 36:2033–2045
Mehta P, Walia A, Shirkot CK (2015) Functional diversity of phosphate solubilizing plant growth promoting rhizobacteria isolated from apple trees in the trans Himalayan region of Himachal Pradesh. India. Biol Agr Hort 31(4):265–288
Micallef SA, Shiaris MP, Colon-Carmona A (2009) Influence of *Arabidiopsis thaliana* accessions on rhizobacterial communities and natural variation in root exudates. J Experiment Botany 60:1729–1742
Mittal S, Johri Bhavdish N (2007) Assessment of rhizobacterial diversity of *Triticum aestivum* and *Eleusine coracana* from Northern region of India. Curr Sci 93:1530–1537

Murty MG, Ladha JK (1988) Influence of *Azospirillum* inoculation on the mineral uptake and growth of rice under hydroponic conditions. Plant Soil 108:281–285

Musarrat J, Khan MS (2014) Factors affecting phosphate-solubilizing activity of microbes: current status. In: Khan et al (eds) Phosphate solubilizing microorganisms. Springer International Publishing, pp 63–85

Nannipieri P, Giagnoni L, Landi L, Renella G (2011) Role of phosphatase enzymes in soil. In: Bunemann E, Oberson A, Frossard E (eds) Phosphorus in action: biological processes in soil phosphorus cycling, soil biology, vol 26. Springer, Heidelberg, pp 251–244

Olsen PE, Rice WA, Bordeleau LM, Biederbeck VO (1994) Analysis and regulation of legume inoculants in Canada: the need for an increase in standards. Plant Soil 161:127–134

Omar SA (1998) The role of rock phosphate solubilizing fungi and vesicular arbuscular mycorrhiza (VAM) in growth of wheat plants fertilized with rock phosphate. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 14:211–219

Otieno NA, Culhane J, Germaine K, Brazil D, Ryan D, Dowling D (2012) Phosphate solubilisation and gluconic acid production by endophytic bacterial strains and ability to promote plant growth in oil seed rape (*Brassica napus*). In: 28th New phytologists symposium: functions and ecology of the plant microbiome 2012. New Phytologist Organisation

Otieno NA, Lally RD, Kiwanuka S, Lloyd A, Ryan D, Germaine KJ, Dowling DN (2015) Plant growth promotion induced by phosphate solubilizing endophytic Pseudomonas isolates. Frontiers Microbiol 6:745

Pandey P, Maheshwari DK (2006) Two species microbial consortium for growth promotion of Cajanus cajan. Curr Sci 92(8): 1137–1142

Panhwar QA, Jusop S, Naher UA, Othman R, Razi MI (2013) Application of potential phosphate-solubilizing bacteria and organic acids on phosphate solubilization from phosphate rock in aerobic rice. The Scientific World J ID 272409. doi:10.1155/2013/272409

Pankaj T, Sa T (2008) *Pseudomonas corrugate* (NRRLB-30409) mutants increased phosphate solubilization, organic acid production, plant growth at lower temperature. Curr Micobiol 56:140–144

Parker DR, Reichmann SM, Crowley DE (2005) Metal chelation in the rhizosphere. In: Zobel RW (ed) Roots and soil management: interactions between roots and the soil. Agronomy Monograph, vol 48. American Society of Agronomy, Madison, pp 57–93

Parks EJ, Olson GJ, Brinckman FE, Baldi F (1990) Characterization by high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) of the solubilization of phosphorus in iron ore by a fungus. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 5:183–189

Patel HA, Patel RK, Khristi SM, Parikh K, Rajendran G (2012) Isolation and characterization of bacterial endophytes from *Lycopersicon esculentum* plant and their plant growth promoting characteristics. Nepal J Biotechnol 2(1):37–52

Perotti R (1926) On the limits of biological enquiry in soil science. Proc Int Soc Soil Sci 2:146–161

Piromyou P, Buranabanyat B, Tantasawat P, Tittabutr P, Boonkerd N, Teaumroong N (2010) Effect of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) inoculation on microbial community structure in rhizosphere of forage corn cultivated in Thailand. Eur J Soil Biol 47:44–54

Pond JL, Eddy CK, Mackenzie KF, Conway T, Borecky DJ, Ingram LO (1989) Cloning, sequencing and characterization of the principal acid phosphatase, *PhoC* product, from *Zymomonas mobilis*. J Bacteriol 171:767–774

Posada F, Vega FE (2005) Establishment of the fungal entomopathogen *Beauveria bassiana* (Ascomycota: Hypocreales) as an endophyte in cocoa seedlings (*Theobroma cacao*). Mycologia 97:1195–1200

Pradel E, Boquet PL (1988) Acid phosphatases of *Escherichia coli*: molecular cloning and analysis of *Agp*, the structural gene for a periplasmic acid glucose phosphatase. J Bacteriol 170:4916–4923

Ray J, Bagyaraj DJ, Manjunath A (1981) Influence of soil inoculation with versicular arbuscular mycorrhizal (VAM) and a phosphate dissolving bacteria on plant growth and ^{32}P uptake. Soil Biol Biochem 13:105–8

Reyes I, Bernier L, Simard RR, Antoun H (1999) Effect of nitrogen source on the solubilization of different inorganic phosphates by an isolate of *Penicillium rugulosum* and two UV-induced mutants. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 28:281–290

Reyes I, Bernier L, Antoun H (2002) Rock phosphate solubilization and colonization of maize rizosphere by wild and genetically modified strains of *Penicillium rugulosum*. Microb Ecol 44:39–48

Reyes I, Valery A, Valduz Z (2006) Phosphate-solubilizing micro-organisms isolated from rhizospheric and bulk soils of colonizer plants at an abandoned rock phosphate mine. Plant Soil 287:69–75

Riccio ML, Rossolini GM, Lombardi G, Chiesurin A, Satta G (1997) Expression cloning of different bacterial phosphatase-encoding genes by histochemical screening of genomic libraries onto an indicator medium containing phenolphthalein diphosphate and metyl green. J Appl Bacteriol 82:177–185

Richardson AE (1994) Soil microorganisms and phosphorus availability. In: Pankhurst CE, Doube BM, Grupta VVSR, Grace PR (eds) Soil biota: management in sustainable farming systems. CSIRO, Melbourne, Australia, pp 50–62

Richardson AE, Simpson RJ (2011) Soil microorganisms mediating phosphorus availability. Plant Physiol 156:989–996

Richardson AE, Hocking PJ, Simpson RJ, George TS (2009) Plant mechanisms to optimize access to soil phosphorus. Crop Pasture Sci 60:124–143

Rivas R, Peix A, Mateos PF, Trujillo ME, Martinez-Molina E, Velazqueze E (2006) Biodiversity of populations of phosphate solubilizing rhizobia that nodulates chickpea in different spanish soils. Plant Soil 287:23–33

Rodriguez H, Fraga R, Gonzalez T, Bashan Y (2006) Genetics of phosphate solubilization and its potential applications for improving plant-growth promoting bacteria. Plant Soil 287:15–21

Rodriguez-Navarro DN, Temprano F, Orive R (1991) Survival of *Rhizobium* sp. (*Hedysarum coronarium* L.) on peat-based inoculants and inoculated seeds. Soil Biol Biochem 23:375–379

Rossolini GM, Shippa S, Riccio ML, Berlutti F, Macaskie LE, Thaller MC (1998) Bacterial nonspecific acid phosphatases: physiology, evolution, and use as tools in microbial biotechnology. Cell Mol Life Sci 54:833–850

Ryan RP, Germaine K, Franks A, Ryan DJ (2008) Bacterial endophytes: recent developments and applications. FEMS Microbiol Lett 278:1–9

Sagervanshi A, Kumara P, Nagee A, Kumar A (2012) Isolation and characterization of phosphate solubilizing bacteria from anand agriculture soil. Int J life Sci Pharma Res 2:256–266

Sahoo HR, Gupta N (2014) Phosphate-solubilizing fungi: impact on growth and development of economically important plants. In: Khan et al (eds) Phosphate solubilizing microorganisms. Springer International Publishing, pp 87–111

Saini R, Kumar V, Dudeja SS, Pathak DV (2015) Beneficial effects of inoculation of endophytic bacterial isolates from roots and nodules in chickpea. Int J Curr Microbiol App Sci 4(10):207–221

Scheffer F, Schachtschasel P (1992) Lehrbuch der Bodenkunde. Ferdinand Enke Verlag, Stuttgart

Sharma K, Dak G, Agrawal A, Bhatnagar M, Sharma R (2007) Effect of phosphate solubilizing bacteria on the on the germination of *Cicer arietinum* seeds and seedling growth. J Herb Medi Toxicol 1:61–63

Sharma B, Seema SZ, Trivedi R, Mrugesh H, Thivakaran GA (2013) Phosphate solubilizing microbes: sustainable approach for managing phosphorus deficiency in agricultural soils. Springer Plus 2:587

Sharma R, Walia A, Chauhan A, Shirkot CK (2015) Multi-trait plant growth promoting rhizobacteria from tomato rhizosphere and evaluation of their potential as bioinoculants. Appl Biol Res 17(2):1–12

Sharma R, Sharma P, Chauhan A, Walia A, Shirkot CK (2016) Plant growth promoting activities of rhizobacteria isolated from *Podophyllum hexandrum* growing in North-West region of Himalayas. Proc Nat Acad Sci, India Sec B: Biol Sci 1–5. doi:10.1007/s40011-016-0722-2

Sims JT, Pierzynski GM (2005) Chemistry of phosphorus in soil. In: Tabatabai AM, Sparks DL (eds) Chemical processes in soil, SSSA book series 8. SSSA, Madison, pp 151–192

Smith RS (1995) Inoculant formulations and applications to meet changing needs. In: Tikhonovich IA, Provorov NA, Romanov VI, Newton WE (eds) Nitrogen fixation: fundamentals and applications. Kluwer Academic Publishers, The Netherlands, Dordrecht, pp 653–657

Smith JH, Allison FE, Soulides DA (1962) Phosphobacteria as a soil inoculant. Tech US Dept Agricult Bul 1:63–70

Sobral JK, Arauja WL, Mendes R, Geraldi IO, Kleiner AAP, Azevedo JL (2004) Isolation and characterization of soybean- associated bacteria and their potential for plant growth promotion. Environ Microbiol 6:1244–1251

Stark C, Condron LM, Stewart A, Di HJ, O'Callaghan M (2007) Influence of organic and mineral amendments on microbial soil properties and processes. Appl Soil Ecol 35:79–93

Stephens JHG, Rask HM (2000) Inoculant production and formulation. Field Crops Res. 65:249–258

Sturz AV, Christie BR, Nowak J (2000) Bacterial endophytes: potential role in developing sustainable systems of crop production. CRC Crit Rev Plant Sci 19:1–30

Subba Rao NS (1982) Advances in agricultural microbiology. Oxford and IBH Publications Company, India, pp 229–305

Swaby R, Sperber JI (1958) Phosphate dissolving microorganisms in the rhizosphere of legume, nutrition of legumes; Proc Univ Nottingham 5th Easter Sch Agril Sci (CSIRO Adelaide). Soils & Fert 22(286):289–294

Tang WH, Yang H (1997) Research and application of biocontrol of plant diseases and PGPR in China. In: Ogoshi A, Kobayashi K, Homma Y, Kodama F, Kondo N, Akino S (eds) Plant Growth-Promoting Rhizobacteria-present status and future prospects. Faculty of Agriculture, Hokkaido University, Sapporo, Japan, pp 4–9

Thaller MC, Berlutti F, Schippa S, Lombardi G, Rossolini GM (1994) Characterization and sequence of PhoC, the principal phosphate-irrepressible acid phosphatase of *Morganella morganii*. Microbiology 140:1341–1350

Timmusk S, Nicander B, Granhall U, Tillberg E (1999) Cytokinin production by *Paenibacilluspolymyxa*. Soil Biol Biochem 31(13):1847–1852

Trevors JT, Van Elsas JD, Lee H, Van Overbeek LS (1992) Use of alginate and other carriers for encapsulation of microbial cells for use in soil. Microb Releases 1:61–69

Trolove SN, Hedley MJ, Kirk GJD, Bolan NS, Loganathan P (2003) Progress in selected areas of rhizosphere research on P acquisition. Aust J Soil Res 41:471–499

Van Elsas JD, Van Overbeek LS (1993) Bacterial responses to soil stimuli. In: Kjelleberg S (ed) Starvation in bacteria. Plenum Press, New York, pp 55–79

Van Elsas JD, Kijkstra AR, Govaert JM, Van Veen JA (1986) Survival of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* and *Bacillus subtilis* introduced into two soils of different texture in field microplots. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 38:151–160

Van Schie BJ, De Mooy OH, Linton JD, Van Dijken JP, Kuenen JG (1987) PQQ-dependent production of gluconic acid by *Acinetobacter*, *Agrobacterium* and *Rhizobium* species. J Gen Microbiol 133:867–875

Vassilev N, Vassileva M, Azcon R, Medina A (2001) Preparation of gel-entrapped mycorrhizal inoculum in the presence or absence of *Yarrowia lypolytica*. Biotechnol Lett 23:907–909

Vassilev N, Vassileva M, Nikolaeva I (2006) Simultaneous P-solubilizing and biocontrol activity of microorganisms: potentials and future trends. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 71:137–144

Vazquez P, Holguin G, Puente ME, Lopez-Cortez A, Bashan Y (2000) Phosphate-solubilizing microorganisms associated with the rhizosphere of mangroves in a semiarid coastal lagoon. Biol Fert Soils 30:460–468

Villegas J, Fortin JA (2002) Phosphorus solubilization and pH changes as a result of the interactions between soil bacteria and arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi on a medium containing NO_3 as nitrogen source. Can J Bot 80:571–576

Vendan RT, Lee SH, Yu YJ, Rhee YH (2012) Analysis of bacterial community in the ginseng soil using denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis (DGGE). Ind Microbiol 52:286–288

Walia A, Shirkot CK (2012) Screening of PGPR to promote early growth of tomato seedlings. Lap Lambert Academic Publishing, Deutschland, Germany, pp 1–114

Walia A, Mehta P, Chauhan A, Shirkot CK (2013a) Antagonistic activity of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria isolated from tomato rhizosphere against soil borne fungal plant pathogens. Int J Agr Environ Biotechnol 6(4):587–595

Walia A, Mehta P, Chauhan A, Shirkot CK (2013b) Effect of *Bacillus* sp. strain CKT1 as inoculum on growth of tomato seedlings under net house conditions. Proc Natl Acad Sci, India Sect B: Biol Sci 84(1):144–155

Welbaum G, Sturz AV, Dong Z, Nowak J (2004) Fertilizing soil microorganisms to improve productivity of agroecosystems. Crit Rev Plant Sci 23:175–193

Whitelaw MA (2000) Growth promotion of plants inoculated with phosphate solubilizing fungi. Adv Agron 69:99–151

Whitelaw MA, Harden TJ, Helyar KR (1999) Phosphate solubilization in solution culture by the soil fungus *Penicillium radicum*. Soil Biol Biochem 32:655–665

Yadav BK, Tarafdar JC (2011) *Penicillium purpurogenum*, unique P mobilizers in arid agro-ecosystems. Arid Land Res Manag 25(1):87–99

Yamada M, Sumi K, Matsushita K, Adachi O, Yamada Y (1994) Topological analysis of quinoprotein glucose dehydrogenase in *Escherichia coli* and its ubiquinone-binding site. J Biol Chem 268:12812–12817

Yazdani M, Bahmanyar M Ali, Pirdashti H, Esmaili M Ali (2009) Effect of phosphate solubilization microorganisms (PSM) and plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) on yield and yield components of corn (Zea mays L.). World Acad Sci, Engin Technol 49:90–92

Yi Y, Huang W, Ge Y (2008) Exopolysaccharide: a novel important factor in the microbial dissolution of tricalcium phosphate. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 24:1059–1065

Zaidi A, Khan MS, Ahemad M, Oves M, Wani PA (2009a) Recent advances in plant growth promotion by phosphate-solubilizing microbes. In: Khan MS et al (eds) Microbial strategies for crop improvement. Springer-Verlag, Berlin Heidelberg, pp 23–50

Zaidi A, Khan MS, Ahemad M, Oves M (2009b) Plant growth promotion by phosphate solubilizing bacteria. Acta Microbiol Immunolog Hung 56(3):263–284

Zaidi A, Ahmad E, Khan MS (2014) Role of phosphate-solubilizing microbes in the management of plant diseases. In: Khan et al (eds) Phosphate solubilizing microorganisms. Springer International Publishing, Switzerland, pp 225–256

Chapter 5
Endophytic Microbes: A Resource for Producing Extracellular Enzymes

Abdul Latif Khan, Raheem Shahzad, Ahmed Al-Harrasi and In-Jung Lee

Abstract Endophytes (fungi and bacteria) have been known to live asymptomatically with plants throughout the different growth and developmental stages. Endophytic microbes provide an additional resource to the plant due to the presence of beneficial secondary metabolites, enzymes, and nutrients, which help the host to combat diverse arrays of stressful conditions of biotic and abiotic stresses. Extracellular enzymes are the product of microbial's cell growth and perform its function outside the cell in many biological or environmental processes. In fact, certain category of enzymes namely, xylanases, hemicellulases, phytases, proteases, asparaginase, cellulases, pectinases, tyrosinase, gelatinase, chitinase, amylases, etc., are some of the key enzymes produced by endophytic bacteria and fungi. Most of these enzymes have been reported from endophytes living within medicinal or crop plants, whereas they are detected through agar-based methods. The current chapter aims to identify the sources, kinds of enzymes, and the perspectives for further studies in their application in endophytic-based extracellular enzymes resources.

Keywords Extracellular enzymes · Endophytes · Bacteria · Fungi
Enzymes quantification

A.L. Khan (✉) · A. Al-Harrasi
Chair of Oman's Medicinal Plants & Marine Natural Products, University of Nizwa, Nizwa, Sultanate of Oman
e-mail: latifepm78@yahoo.co.uk

A. Al-Harrasi
e-mail: aharrasi@unizwa.edu.om

R. Shahzad · I.-J. Lee
School of Applied Biosciences, Kyungpook National University, Daegu, Korea
e-mail: raheemshehzad@ymail.com

I.-J. Lee
e-mail: ijlee@knu.ac.kr

D.K. Maheshwari and K. Annapurna (eds.), *Endophytes: Crop Productivity and Protection*, Sustainable Development and Biodiversity 16,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-66544-3_5

5.1 Introduction

Endophytic microorganisms (bacteria or fungi) are belonging to a key class of plant symbionts, living inside the plant tissues without causing any symptoms of disease to the host. These endophytic microorganisms are associated with the plant throughout their life history, starting from seed germination to fruit development. These can be distributed in rhizosphere (roots), phylloplane (in leaves), laimosphere caulosphere (in stems), carposphere (in fruits), spermosphere (in seeds), and anthosphere (in flowers) as suggested by Clay and Holah (1999). Various workers (Lindow and Brandl 2003; Saikkonen et al. 2004; Sessitsch et al. 2012) stated the role of endophytes, bacteria, and or fungi unique in their interactions with plants. They provide an alternative resource or facilitate the distribution or production of biologically active metabolites, such as enzymes, biofunctional chemicals, phytohormones, nutrient, and minerals (Schulz et al. 2002). On the other hand, the host plant provides a protective sanctuary to reproduce and nutrients to grow inside plant tissues without compromising its own growth resources (Khan et al. 2015).

Endophytic microorganisms have also been coined for their protective role to the host during biotic and abiotic stress conditions (Arachevaleta et al. 1989; Bacon 1993; White and Torres 2010; Leitão and Enguita 2016). These stresses include salinity, drought, temperature, heavy metal, and phytopathogenic infections. In most of the previous studies, this role of counteracting stress invasion to the plant cell has been revoked or reduced through the production of essential biochemical resources (Khan et al. 2015). Among these sources, phytohormones and extracellular enzymes are few which have been regarded the most important and significant for their association with plants. Though phytohormones are one of the recent phenomena that have been known from endophytes, however, extracellular enzymes or exozymes have mostly been emphasized due to their industrial importance in food, fermentation dye synthesis, and other biotechnological applications (Traving et al. 2015).

Fungi and bacteria produce various kinds of extracellular enzymes, which are hydrolases, lyasese, oxidoreductases, and transferases (Traving et al. 2015). These extracellular enzymes target various macromolecules such as carbohydrates, lignin, organic phosphate, proteins, and sugar-based polymers to breakdown into transportable product throughout the cells and to continue heterotopic metabolism (Sinsabaugh 1994; Boer et al. 2005; Strong and Claus 2011; Wingender et al. 2012). Hallmann et al. (1997) showed that endophyte-producing enzymes could help to initiate the host symbiosis process. Besides establishment of association with host, these also initiate action of extracellular hydrolyases to counteract plant pathogenic infection (Tan and Zou 2001; Leo et al. 2016). Since, the endophytic resources offer a new source of genes, enzymes, and secondary metabolites, therefore, we aimed to investigate in the current chapter broadening our understanding related to extracellular enzymes from endophytic origin.

5.2 Extracellular Enzymes Quantification

Extracellular enzymes have been qualitatively and quantitatively measured through various ways ranging from agar plate-based methods to sophisticated advanced spectrophotometric methods. The enzyme production ability of endophytic microbes has also been coined for their ability to grow and reproduce in a specific media. However, a detailed assessment of such abilities has been least known for endophytic microbes. Overall, the endophytic microbes are isolated from plants rigorous surface sterilization methods by using tween 80 weak acids, and sterilized distilled water. Alternatively, the bulk material of plant grown in a sterilized microbial media is used where endophytic microbes were isolated. Once the pure culture is maintained, the strains are identified through either 16S rRNA sequencing or internal transcribed spacer (ITS) region of bacteria and fungi, respectively, using PCR amplification, sanger sequencing, BLASTn, and finally a detailed phylogenetic analysis. The isolated endophytes are grown in specific growth media to detect the enzymes producing either on agar plate (initial screening) or detailed spectrophotometry methods (UV/VIS or fluorescence). Currently, the advances in fluorogenic substrate such as 4-methylumbelliferone (MUB) have also been used for this purpose largely for soil or marine enzyme analysis (Hoppe 1993; Wallenstein et al. 2008; Khan et al. 2016). However, more sensitive techniques have to be adopted not only to measure time course estimation and analysis quantification of these enzymes, but also such studies may be coupled with molecular and genomic work to validate the findings and processes (III and Allison 2015) (Fig. 5.1).

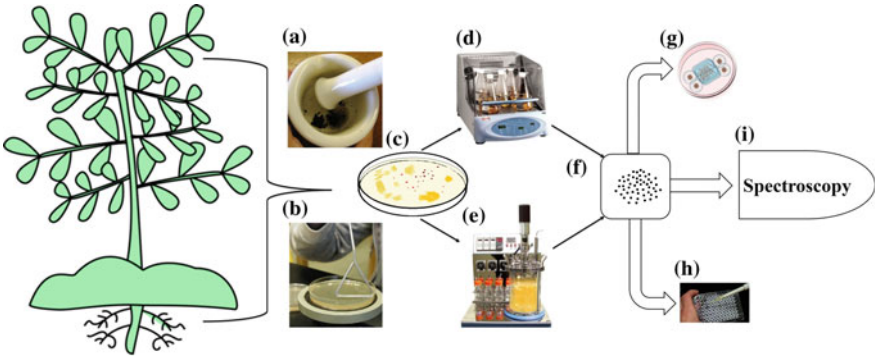


Fig. 5.1 Diagrammatic representation of the isolation, fermentation and quantification of extracellular enzymes. **a** Grinding plant, **b** isolating endophytes, **c**, **d** pure culture growth, **d** fermentation, **e**, **f**, **g**, **h** isolation of enzymes, and **i** quantification through advanced chromatographic techniques

5.3 Extracellular Enzymes from Endophytic Fungi

Endophytic fungi isolated from various plants sources have been reported for the production of various kinds of extracellular enzymes from last two decades or so (Khan et al. 2016; Esteves et al. 2014; Petrini et al. 1993). The categories of enzymes have been described in Table 5.1. Most of the endophytic fungi producing extracellular enzymes have been reported from medicinal plants (Chathurdevi et al. 2016). The endophytic fungi have been reported to be xylanase producers including *Alternaria alternate* (Wipusaree et al. 2011), *Hymenoscyphus ericae* (Burke and Cairney 1997), and *Aspergillus terreus* (Sorgatto et al. 2012). Similarly, Harnpicharnchai et al. (2009) showed that endophyte *Periconia* sp. produces β-glucosidase. De-Almeida et al. (2012) reported that endophytes of *Acremonium* species produce cellulases and hemicellulases. In another study, Suto et al. (2002) isolated and identified one hundred and fifty-five fungal strains showing their ability to produce xylanases. Silva et al. (2006) investigated the fungal strain isolated from *Annona* spp., while Luz et al. (2006) from *Passiflora edulis* to understand their potential for extracellular enzymes production.

Gazis and Chaverri (2010) isolated and identified various endophytic strains belonging to *Xylariaceae* and *Annulohypoxylon* sp. from a medicinal plant *Hevea brasiliensis*. Earlier, Wei et al. (1992) grown *A. stigyum* strain and found that this strain produces β-glucosidase with a very low level of cellulases. Some of the common endophytes such as *Alternaria* species have been isolated from eucalyptus plants such as *Eucalyptus globulus* (Lupo et al. 2001) and *Eucalyptus citriodora* (Kharwar et al. 2010). Strains of *A. alternata* are able to produce endopoly galactunorase (Isshiki et al. 1997) in the presence of pectin, and β-glucosidase in the presence of saccharose (Sáenz-de-Santamaria et al. 2016).

Among other common endophytic strains, *A. niger* was also found to produce extracellular enzymes, which is famous to produce an extensive range of extracellular glucohydrolases (β-glucosidase, pectinases, and xylanases; Ward et al. 2005). Such attributes are always helpful to fungus to colonize and propagate across different kinds of environments and plant hosts (Meijer et al. 2011). Chow and Ting (2015) reported that endophytic fungi belonging to *Colletrotrichum, Fusarium, Phoma,* and *Penicillium* species are producing l-Asparaginase in their pure culture isolated from anticancer medicinal plants.

A semiarid plant *Opuntia ficus-indica* was subjected to endophyte isolation, which resulted in the identification of 44 endophytic fungi (Bezerra et al. 2012). According to the screening assays for extracellular enzymes, *Aspergillus japonicus* and *Penicillium glandicola* have shown significant pectinolytic activity. In addition, the author showed that endophytes belonging to *Xylaria* sp. were showing significantly higher xylanase and cellulase activity. In a recent study by Khan et al. (2016), 18 different endophytic fungi isolated from the bark and leaf parts of the

Table 5.1 Enzyme production from different endophytic fungal species

Specie name	Enzyme produced	Detection method	References
Penicillium funiuclas, Trichoderma viride	Amylase, cellulose, protease, lipase	Agar plate base test	Chathurdevi et al. (2016)
Colletrotrichum, Fusarium, Phoma, Penicillium	l-Asparaginase	Pink zones on agar, Nesslerization	Chow and Ting (2015)
Aspergillus sp.,	Amylase	Agar medium	Jurynelliz et al. (2016)
Pochonia chlamydosporia	Protease	Spectrophotometer	Escudero et al. (2016)
Colletotrichum gloeosporioides	Protease, chitinase, amylase		Rabha et al. (2014)
Fusarium sp., *Chaetomium* sp., *Colletotrichum* sp., *Aspergillus flavus, Cylindrocephalum* sp., *Coniothyrium* sp., *Phoma* sp., *Aspegillus niger Colletotrichum* sp., *Mycelia sterilia* sp., *Aspergillus fumigatus Alternaria* sp., *Colletotrichum gleosporoides. Colletotrichum* sp., *Myrothecium* sp., *Fusaruim chlamydosporum. Xylaria* sp., *Fusicoccum* sp., *Mycelia sterilia* sp., *Aspergillus* sp., *Pestalotiopsis* sp., *Colletotrichum* sp., *Talaromyces emersonii, Pyllosticta* sp., *Pestalotiopsis* sp., *Discosia* sp., *Aspergillus* sp., *Mycelia streilia* sp., *Isaria* sp., *Xylaria* sp., *Phoma* sp., *Pestalotiopsis disseminate, Fusarium oxysporum, Paecilomyces variotii, Fusarium chlamydosporum, Acremonium implicatum, Nigrospora sphaerica*	Amylase, cellulase, laccase, lipase, pectinase, protease	Agar medium	Sunitha et al. (2013)

(continued)

Table 5.1 (continued)

Specie name	Enzyme produced	Detection method	References
Fusarium solani, Penicillium sp., *Mycelia sterilia* sp., *Phoma* sp., *Basidiomycetes* sp., *Colletotrichum falcatum, Phomopsis longicolla Fusarium oxysporum, Colletotrichum gleosporoides, Colletotrichum truncatum, Drechsclera* sp., *Cladosporium* sp., *Myrothecium* sp.			
Cladosporium sp., *Rhizoctonia* sp., *Aspergillus* sp., *Chaetomium* sp., *Biosporus* sp., *Fuzarium* sp., *Curvularia* sp., *Cladosporium* sp., *Colletotrichum* sp.	Amylase, protease, cellulose, lipase	Agar medium, spectrophotometer	Patil et al. (2015a, b)
Cladosporium cladosporioides, Curvularia brachyspira, C. verruciformis, Drechslera awaiiensis, Colletotrichum carssipes, Colletotrichum falcatum, Colletotrichum gloeosporioides, Lasiodiplodia theobromae, Nigrospora Sphaerica, Phyllosticta Sp. *Xylariales*	Amylase, cellulase, laccase, lipase, protease	Agar medium	Amirita et al. (2012)
Cladosporium cladosporioides, C. sphaerospermum, Acremonium terricola, Monodictys castaneae, Penicillium glandicola, Phoma tropica, Tetraploa aristata	Pectinases, cellulases, xylanases, proteases	Agar medium	Bezerra et al. (2012)
Amanita muscaria, A. muscaria, A. spissa, Boletus luridus, Cenococcum geophilum, Cortinarius glaucopus, C. purpurascens, Hydnum	Protease	Agae medium	Nygren et al. (2007)

(continued)

Table 5.1 (continued)

Specie name	Enzyme produced	Detection method	References
rufescens, Hymenoscyphus ericae, Laccaria cf., Lactarius acerrimus, L. auriolla, L.chrysorrheus, L. controversus, L. deliciosus, L. deterrimus, L. evosmus, L. pubescens, L. quieticolor, L. quietus, L. rufus, L. semisanguifluus, L. subdulcis, L. subumbonatus, L. zonarius, Piceirhiza bicolorata, Piloderma fallax, Piloderma byssinum, Russula chloroides, R. sanguinea, Suillus luteus, S. luteus, Tricholoma cf. equestre, S. variegatus, T. fulvum, T. scalpturatum			
Eurotiales, Chaelomiaceae, Incertae sadis, Aureobasiduaceae, Nectriaceae, Sporomiaceae	Celluloses, phosphatases, glucosidases	Spectrophotometer	Khan et al. (2016)
Colletotrichum sp., *Macrophomina phaseolina, Nigrospora sphaerica and Fusarium solani*	Cellulase, protease, amylase	Agar medium	Ayob and Simarani (2016)
Cochliobolus lunatus, C. australiensis, Gibberella baccata, Myrmecridium schulzeri, Penicillium commune, Phoma putaminum, Acremonium curvulum, Aspergillus niger, A. ochraceus, P. glabrum, C. lunatus, G. fujikuroi, Myrothecium verrucaria, Nodulisporium, Trichoderma piluliferum, A. chartarum, A. ochraceus, P. glabrum, Pithomyces atro-olivaceus	Cellulase, protease, xylanase, lipase	Agar medium	Bezerra et al. (2015)

(continued)

Table 5.1 (continued)

Specie name	Enzyme produced	Detection method	References
Penicillium chrysogenum, Alternaria alternate, Sterile hyphae	Amylase, pectinase, cellulase, gelatinase, xylanase and tyrosinase	Agar medium	Fouda et al. (2015)
Aspergillus terreus	l-asparaginase	Agar medium, spectrophotometer	Kalyanasundaram et al. (2015)
Phialocephala fortinii s.l. eliniomyces variabilis, Umbelopsis isabellina, Hebeloma incarnatulum, Laccaria bicolor	Protease		Mayerhofer et al. (2015)
Hormonema sp., *Pringsheimia smilacis, Ulocladium* sp., *Neofusicoccum luteum, Neofusicoccum australe*	Laccase	Agar medium, spectrophotometer	Fillat et al. (2016)
Acremonium sp., *Alternaria* sp., *Aspergillus* sp., *Fusarium* sp., *Pestalotiopsis* sp.,	Amylase, cellulase, lipase, protease	Agar medium	Maria et al. (2005)
Chaetomium sp., *Preussia* sp., *Penicillium citrinum, Thielavia arenaria, Phoma medicaginis, Aureobasidium* sp., *Preussia* sp., *Dothideomycetes* sp., *Aureobasidium pullulans, Phoma* sp., *Penicillium citrinum, Aureobasidium pullulans, Aureobasidium pullulans, Thielavia arenaria, Sordariomycetes* sp., *Fusarium proliferatum, Preussia* sp.	Glucosidase, phosphatases, cellulases	Fluorescence spectrophotometer	Khan et al. (2016)

desert wood land plant shown to produce new prospects for extracellular enzymes. The study revealed a new method of quantifying enzymes (glucosidase, phosphatases, cellulases) in outer environment of the microbial cell using fluorogenic substrates and standards.

5.4 Endophytic Bacterial Communities Producing Extracellular Enzymes

Endophytic bacterial communities are also considered an important source of extracellular enzymes. Endophytic bacterial strains have been isolated and identified from various plants such as pea (*P. sativum*), tomato (*Lycopersicum esculentum*), corn (*Zea mays*), wheat (*Triticum aesitivum*), oat (*Avena sativa*), canola (*Brassica napus*), barley (*Hordeum vulgare*), radish (*Raphanus sativus*) soybean (*Glycine max*), potato (*Solanum tuberosum*), lettuce (*Lactuca serriola*), and cucumber (*Cucumis sativa*). In addition, various bacterial strains have also been isolated from the economically important medicinal plants species. Some of the novel strains identified and characterized belong to the *Arthrobacter, Actinobacter*, *Aeromonas*, *Agrobacterium*, *Alcaligenes*, *Bacillus*, *Azospirillium, Enterobacter, Flavobacterium Pseudomonas, Acinetobacter, Azotobacter, Beijerinckia, Burkholderia, Enterobacter, Erwinia, Flavobacterium, Rhizobium,* and *Serratia* genuses (Gray and Smith 2005).

In addition, the bacterial endophytes have been reported for the production of ACC deaminase, cellulases, protease, amylase, pectinase, esterase, lipase, protease, asparaginase, phytase, etc. (Sturz et al. 2000; Carrim et al. 2006). There are a wide array of resource studies showing that production of these enzymes by endophytic bacteria is isolated from different parts of the plant (Table 5.2). In such exploratory studies based on agar plate detection methods, Pereira et al. (2016) examined that *Lavandula dentate* harbored more than 30 endophytic bacterial strains. These endophytic microbes produced cellulases, lipases, pectinases, and proteases besides improving the growth of the host plant. In phyllosphereic part of the *Lavandula dentate,* the endophytic microbes produced higher quantities of plant cell wall-degrading enzymes, as also evidenced by Verma et al. (2001) who have reported higher number of endophytic bacteria from diazotrophs plant and their growth regulation by producing cellulase and pectinase.

In species-specific bacterial strains, *Nocardiopsis* sp. (39.2 U ml^{-1}) identified to secrete higher quantities of the α-amylase as an extracellular enzyme during different growth stages (Stamford et al. 2001). Davis et al. (1980) showed similar prospects for *Bacillus stearothermophilus,* whereas Castro et al. (1993) for *B. amyloliquefaciens*. The authors revealed a strong association of enzymes production by bacteria during different growth stages. When α-amylase was produced by *Lactobacillus plantarum*, maximum enzyme synthesis occurred during stationary phase (Giraud et al. 1993). Vijayalakshmi et al. (2016) isolated endophytic bacteria from medicinally important plants, producing α-amylase, protease, and cellulase. In one of the recent reports, Leo et al. (2016) observed the recovery of endophytic bacteria (*Alcaligenes faecalis, Burkholderia cepacia*, and *Enterobacter hormaechei*) from perennial grasses that showed the hyper-enzymatic activity of α-amylase, protease, and cellulase.

Bacterial endophyte, *Pantoea* sp. Sd-1, isolated from paddy shows a higher ligninolytic activity (Xiong et al. 2013). Castro et al. (2014) suggested that

Table 5.2 Endophytic bacterial strains producing extracellular enzymes

Species	Enzyme produced	Detection method	References
Actinomyces pyogenes, Bacillus circulans, Bacillus coagulans, Bacillus licheniformis, Bacillus megaterium, Corynebacterium renale, Pseudomonas stutzeri, Staphylococcus sp., *Bacillus* sp.	Amylase, esterase, lipase, protease	Agar medium	Carrim et al. (2006)
Pseudomonas oryzihabitans	Asparaginase	Spectrophotometer	Bhagat et al. (2016)
Bacillus sp., *Bacillus clausii, Bacillus pumilus, Bacillus licheniformis*	Amylase, protease, cellulose, lipase	Agar medium	Kannan et al. (2015)
Pseudomonas sp.	Exo-β-agarase	Spectrophotometer, NMR	Gupta et al. (2013)
Bacillus sp.	L-asparaginase	Spectrophotometer	Ebrahiminezhad et al. (2011)
Bacillus amyloliquefaciens	Phytase	Spectrophotometer	Idriss et al. (2002)
Paenibacillus polymyxa	Fibrinolytic enzymes	Agar medium, SDS Page	Lu et al. (2007)
Rhizobium, *Massilia, Kosakonia, Pseudorhodoferax, Caulobacter, Pantoea, Sphingomonas, Burkholderia, Methylobacterium*, *Bacillus*, *Curtobacterium, Microbacterium, Mucilaginibacter, Chitinophaga*	ACC deaminase, Endoglucanase, Protease	Agar medium	Chimwamurombe et al. (2016)
Acinetobacter sp., *Bacillus* sp.	ACC deaminase, Cellulase, Protease, Amylase, Pectinase	Agar medium	Joe et al. (2016)
Bacillus licheniformis, Bacillus pseudomycoides, Paenibacillus senitriformus	L-asparaginase	M9 medium	Joshi and Kulkarni (2016)
Pseudomonas hibiscicola, Macrococcus	Cellulase, xylanase, amalyase, pectinase	Agar diffusion method	Akinsanya et al. (2016)

(continued)

Table 5.2 (continued)

Species	Enzyme produced	Detection method	References
caseolyticus, Enterobacter ludwigii, Bacillus anthracis, Bacillus tequilensis, Pseudomonas entomophila, Chryseobacterium indologenes, Bacillus aerophilus			
Bacillus thuringiensis	Anthracene	Spectrophotomete	Roy et al. (2016)
Bacillus amyloliquefaciens	Exopolysaccharides	Colorimetric method	Chen et al. (2013)
Bacillus subtilis	YbdN protein	SDS-PAGE, MALD-TOF-MS	Jamal and Mudarris (2010)
Serratia marcescens, Bacillus subtilis, Bacillus methylotrophicus, Bacillus siamensis	L-asparaginase	Spectrophotometer	Nongkhlaw and Joshi (2015)
Paenibacillus polymyxa, Bacillus sp.	Cellulase, xylanase, pectinase	Agar diffusion method	Cho et al. (2007)
Paenibacillus amylolyticus	Pectin lyase	Spectrophotometer	Sakiyama et al. (2001)
Alcaligenes faecalis, Burkholderia cepacia, Enterobacter hormaechei	Cellulosic, hemicellulosic, lignin	National renewable energy laboratory methods	Leo et al. (2016)

endophytic microbes produced production of ligninases derived from Brazilian mangrove ecosystem. Yang et al. (2011) explained that *Alcaligenes faecalis* produced cellulases and xylanases with higher ability to degrade cellulosic substrate in a coculture system.

5.5 Conclusion and Perspectives

The scientific community is familiar about endophytic microbes since last two and half decades with vibrant and potent roles in agriculture, ecology, biotechnology, and industry. There are still many overlooked and unexplored aspects of these ecologically unique microorganisms which require special attention on primary metabolite production in general and enzyme in particular. This consortium of endophytes (bacteria and fungi) can thrive and capable to live together with host plants and produced synergistically hydrolytic enzymes for counteracting emerging

issues. These can be utilized in enzymology-based enzyme fermentation industries, where endophytes derived from plants living in extreme environments possess higher ability to produce higher quantities of extracellular enzymes. In addition, endophytic microbes producing enzymes can help to counteract biotic stress; however, the role of such endophytes in abiotic stresses cannot be ruled out. The significances of enzymes producing endophytes with special attention on remediating environmental pollutants such as metals, polyaromatic hydrocarbons, and polychlorinated hydrocarbons have been understood very least. Most of the researches have been performed in monoculture, while on the coculture and other aspects such as quorum sensing signaling pathway of these endophytes in growth media are yet to be elaborated. Besides the enzymes quantification methods need a rigorous review as with the advancement of technology, new techniques with higher sensitivity are much needed. Methods such as fluorescence spectrophotometer, near-infra red (NIR), and FTIR-based methods further improve enzyme analysis. The endophytic biomasses are extremely significant in determining their viability and alternative to an important resource for biofuel production. The molecular and genomic bases of these endophytic resources for enzymes production also need cross-validation.

References

Akinsanya MA, Ting A, Goh JK, Lim SP (2016) Biodiversity, enzymatic and antimicrobial activities of bacterial endophytes in selected local medicinal plants. J Biomed Pharm Res 16:5(1)

Amirita A, Sindhu P, Swetha J, Vasanthi NS, Kannan KP (2012) Enumeration of endophytic fungi from medicinal plants and screening of extracellular enzymes. World J Sci Technol 2:13–19

Arachevaleta M, Bacon CW, Hoveland CS, Radcliffe DE (1989) Effect of the tall fescue endophyte on plant response to environmental stress. Agronom J 81:83–90

Ayob FW, Simarani K (2016) Endophytic filamentous fungi from a *Catharanthus roseus*: Identification and its hydrolytic enzymes. Saudi Pharm J 24:273–278

Bacon CW (1993) Abiotic stress tolerances (moisture, nutrients) and photosynthesis in endophyte-infected tall fescue. Agric Ecosys Environ 44:123–141

Bezerra JD, Santos MG, Svedese VM, Lima DM, Fernandes MJ, Paiva LM, Souza-Motta CM (2012) Richness of endophytic fungi isolated from Opuntia ficusindica Mill. (Cactaceae) and preliminary screening for enzyme production. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 28:1989–1995

Bezerra JD, Nascimento CC, Barbosa RD, da Silva DC, Svedese VM, Silva-Nogueira EB, Gomes BS, Paiva LM, Souza-Motta CM (2015) Endophytic fungi from medicinal plant Bauhinia forficata: diversity and biotechnological potential. Braz J Microbiol 46:49–57

Bhagat J, Kaur A, Chadha BS (2016) Single step purification of asparaginase from endophytic bacteria Pseudomonas oryzihabitans exhibiting high potential to reduce acrylamide in processed potato chips. Food Bioprod Process 99:222–230

Boer W, Folman LB, Summerbell RC, Boddy L (2005) Living in a fungal world: impact of fungi on soil bacterial niche development. FEMS Microbiol Rev 29:795–811

Burke RM, Cairney JWG (1997) Purification and characterization of a β-1,4-endoxylanase from the ericoid mycorrhizal fungus Hymenoscyphus ericae. New Phytol 35:345–352

Carrim AJ, Barbosa EC, Vieira JD (2006) Enzymatic activity of endophytic bacterial isolates of Jacaranda decurrens Cham (Carobinha-do-campo). Braz Arch Biol Technol 49:353–359

Castro, GR, Mendez BS, Sin∼eriz F (1993) Amylolytic enzymes produced by Bacillus amyloliquefaciens MIR-41 in bath and continuous culture. J Chem Technol 50:289–294

Castro RA, Quecine MC, Lacava PT, Batista BD, Luvizotto DM, Marcon J et al (2014) Isolation and enzyme bioprospection of endophytic bacteria associated with plants of Brazilian mangrove ecosystem. Springer Plus 3:382

Chathurdevi G, Gowrie SU (2016) Endophytic fungi isolated from medicinal plant—a source of potential bioactive metabolites. Int J Curr Pharm Res 8:50–56

Chen YT, Yuan Q, Shan LT, Lin MA, Cheng DQ, Li CY (2013) Antitumor activity of bacterial exopolysaccharides from the endophyte *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* sp. isolated from *Ophiopogon japonicus*. Oncol Lett 6:1787–1792

Chimwamurombe PM, Grönemeyer JL, Reinhold-Hurek B (2016) Isolation and characterization of culturable seed-associated bacterial endophytes from gnotobiotically grown Marama bean seedlings. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 1:92:fiw083

Chow Y, Ting AS (2015) Endophytic L-asparaginase producing fungi from plants associated with anticancer properties. JAR 6:869–876

Clay K, Holah J (1999) Fungal endophyte symbiosis and plant diversity in successional fields. Science 285(5434):1742–1744

Davis PE, Cohen DL, Whitaker A (1980) The production of α-amylase in batch and chemostat culture by Bacillus stearothermophilus. Antonie van Leeuwenhoek 46:391–398

De Almeida MN, Guimarães VM, Bischoff KM, Falkoski DL, Pereira OL, Gonçalves DS, de Rezende ST (2012) Cellulases and hemicellulases from endophytic acremonium species and its application on sugarcane bagasse hydrolysis. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 165:594–610

Ebrahiminezhad A, Rasoul-Amini S, Ghasemi Y (2011) L-asparaginase production by moderate halophilic bacteria isolated from Maharloo salt lake. Indian J Med Microbiol 51:307–311

Escudero N, Ferreira SR, Lopez-Moya F, Naranjo-Ortiz MA, Marin-Ortiz AI, Thornton CR, Lopez-Llorca LV (2016) Chitosan enhances parasitism of *Meloidogyne javanica* eggs by the nematophagous fungus *Pochonia chlamydosporia*. Fungal Biol 120:572–585

Esteves AC, Saraiva M, Correia A, Alves A (2014) *Botryo sphaeriales* fungi produce extracellular enzymes with biotechnological potential. Can J Microbiol 60:332–342

Fillat Ú, Martín-Sampedro R, Macaya-Sanz D, Martín JA, Ibarra D, Martínez MJ, Eugenio ME (2016) Screening of eucalyptus wood endophytes for laccase activity. Process Biochem 51:589–598

Fouda AH, Hassan SE, Eid AM, Ewais EE (2015) Biotechnological applications of fungal endophytes associated with medicinal plant *Asclepias sinaica* (Bioss.). Ann Agric Sci 60:95–104

Gazis R, Chaverri P (2010) Diversity of fungal endophytes in leaves and stems of wild rubber trees (Hevea brasiliensis) in Peru. Fungal Ecol 3:240–254

Giraud E, Gosselini L, Marin B, Parada JL, Raimbault M (1993) Purification and characterization of an extracellular amylase form *Lactobacillus plantarum*. J Appl Bacteriol 75:276–282

Gray EJ, Smith DL (2005) Intracellular and extracellular PGPR: commonalities and distinctions in the plant–bacterium signaling processes. Soil Biol Biochem 37:395–412

Gupta V, Trivedi N, Kumar M, Reddy CR, Jha B (2013) Purification and characterization of exo-β-agarase from an endophytic marine bacterium and its catalytic potential in bioconversion of red algal cell wall polysaccharides into galactans. Biomass Bioenergy 28:290–298

Hallmann J, Qualt-Hallmann A, Mahaffee WF, Kloepper JW (1997) Bacterial endophytes in agricultural crops. Can J Microbiol 43:895–914

Harnpicharnchai P, Champreda V, Sornlake W, Eurwilaichitr L (2009) A thermotolerant beta-glucosidase isolated from an endophytic fungi, *Periconia* sp., with a possible use for biomass conversion to sugars. Protein Exp Purific 67:61–69

Hoppe HG (1993) Use of fluorogenic model substrates for extracellular enzyme activity (EEA) measurement of bacteria. Handb Met Aquatic Microb Ecol 28:423–431

Idriss EE, Makarewicz O, Farouk A, Rosner K, Greiner R, Bochow H, Richter T, Borriss R (2002) Extracellular phytase activity of *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* FZB45 contributes to its plant-growth-promoting effect. Microbiol 148:2097–2109

III HJ, Allison SD (2015) Cooperation, competition, and coalitions in enzyme-producing microbes: social evolution and nutrient depolymerization rates. The causes and consequences of microbial community structure 22:49

Isshiki A, Akimitsu K, Nishio K, Tsukamoto M, Yamamoto H (1997) Purification and characterization of an endopolygalacturonase from the rough lemon pathotype of Alternaria alternata, the cause of citrus brown spot disease. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 51:155–167

Jamal MT, Mudarris MS (2010) Separation of YbdN bioactive protein from *Bacillus subtilis* isolated from the red sea algae *Sargassum* sp. with bioactivity against antibiotic resistant bacterial pathogens. Marine Sci 21:1

Joe MM, Devaraj S, Benson A, Sa T (2016) Isolation of phosphate solubilizing endophytic bacteria from *Phyllanthus amarus* Schum & Thonn: evaluation of plant growth promotion and antioxidant activity under salt stress. JARMAP 3:71–77

Joshi RD, Kulkarni NS (2016) Optimization studies on L-asparaginase production from endophytic bacteria. IJAR 2:624–629

Jurynelliz R-V, David P, Gloria O, Carlos R, Jesus-Bonilla D, Walleska (2016) Enzymatic and bacterial activity of fungal strains isolated from *Alpinia zerumbet*. Abstracts of Papers, 251st ACS National Meeting & Exposition, San Diego, CA, United States, March 13–17, CHED-1130

Kalyanasundaram I, Nagamuthu J, Srinivasan B, Pachayappan A, Muthukumarasamy S (2015) Production, purification and characterization of extracellular L-asparaginase from salt marsh fungal endophytes. World J Pharm Pharmaceut Sci 4:663–677

Kannan R, Damodaran T, Umamaheswari S (2015) Sodicity tolerant polyembryonic mango root stock plants: a putative role of endophytic bacteria. Afr J Biotechnol 14:350–359

Khan AL, Hussain J, Al-Harrasi A, Al-Rawahi A, Lee IJ (2015) Endophytic fungi: resource for gibberellins and crop abiotic stress resistance. Crit Rev Biotechnol 35:62–74

Khan AL, Al-Harrasi A, Al-Rawahi A, Al-Farsi Z, Al-Mamari A, Waqas M, Asaf S, Elyassi A, Mabood F, Shin JH, Lee IJ (2016) Endophytic fungi from frankincense tree improves host growth and produces extracellular enzymes and indole acetic acid. PLoS ONE 11:e0158207

Kharwar RNG, Surendra KKA, Mishra A (2010) A comparative study of endophytic and epiphytic fungal association with leaf of *Eucalyptus citriodora* Hook., and their antimicrobial activity. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 26:1941–1948

Leitão AL, Enguita FJ (2016) Gibberellins in Penicillium strains: Challenges for endophyte-plant host interactions under salinity stress. Microbiol Res 183:8–18

Leo VV, Passari AK, Joshi JB, Mishra VK, Uthandi S, Ramesh N, Gupta VK, Saikia R, Sonawane VC, Singh BP (2016) A novel triculture system (CC3) for simultaneous enzyme production and hydrolysis of common grasses through submerged fermentation. Front Microbiol 7. doi:10.3389/fmicb.2016.00447

Lindow SE, Brandl MT (2003) Microbiology of the phyllosphere. Appl Environ Microbiol 69:1875–1883

Lu F, Sun L, Lu Z, Bie X, Fang Y, Liu S (2007) Isolation and identification of an endophytic strain EJS-3 producing novel fibrinolytic enzymes. Curr Microbiol 54:435–439

Lupo S, Tiscornia S, Bettucci L (2001) Endophytic fungi from flowers, capsules and seeds of Eucalyptus globules. Rev Iberoam Micol 18:38–41

Luz JS, Silva RLO, Silveira EB, Cavalcante UMT (2006) Atividade enzimática de fungos endofíticos e efeito na promoção do crescimento de mudas de maracujazeiro-amarelo. Caatinga 19:128–134

Maria GL, Sridhar KR, Raviraja NS (2005) Antimicrobial and enzyme activity of mangrove endophytic fungi of southwest coast of India. J Agric Technol 1:67–80

Mayerhofer MS, Fraser E, Kernaghan G (2015) Acid protease production in fungal root endophytes. Mycologia 107:1

Meijer M, Houbraken JAMP, Dalhuijsen S, Samson RA, Vries RP (2011) Growth and hydrolase profiles can be used as characteristics to distinguish *Aspergillus Niger* and other black aspergilla. Stud Mycol 69:19–30

Nongkhlaw FM, Joshi SR (2015) L-Asparaginase and antioxidant activity of endophytic bacteria associated with ethnomedicinal plants. Indian J Biotechnol 14:59–64

Nygren CM, Edqvist J, Elfstrand M, Heller G, Taylor AF (2007) Detection of extracellular protease activity in different species and genera of ectomycorrhizal fungi. Mycorrhiza 3:241–248

Patil MG, Pagare J, Patil SN, Sidhu AK (2015a) Extracellular enzymatic activities of endophytic fungi isolated from various medicinal plants. Int J Curr Microbiol App Sci 4:1035–1042

Patil MP, Patil RH, Maheshwari VL (2015b) Biological activities and identification of bioactive metabolite from endophytic *Aspergillus flavus* L7 isolated from *Aegle marmelos*. Curr Microbiol 71:39–48

Pereira SIA, Monteiro C, Vega AL, Castro PML (2016) Endophytic culturable bacteria colonizing *Lavandula dentate* L. plants: isolation, characterization and evaluation of their plant growth-promoting activities. Ecol Eng 87:91–96

Petrini O, Sieber TN, Toti L, Viret O (1993) Ecology, metabolite production, and substrate utilization in endophytic fungi. J Nat Toxins 1:185–196

Rabha AJ, Naglot A, Sharma GD, Gogoi HK, Veer V (2014) In vitro evaluation of antagonism of endophytic *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides* against potent fungal pathogens of *Camellia sinensis*. Indian J Microbiol 54:302–309

Roy S, Yasmin S, Ghosh S, Bhattacharya S, Banerjee D (2016) Anti-infective metabolites of a newly isolated *Bacillus thuringiensis* KL1 associated with kalmegh (*Andrographis paniculata* Nees.), a traditional medicinal herb. Microbiol Insigh 2016:1–7

Sáenz-de-Santamaría M, Guisantes JA, Martínez J (2016) Enzymatic activities of Alternaria alternata allergenic extracts and its major allergen (Alt a 1). Mycoses 49:288–292

Saikkonen K, Wäli P, Helander M, Faeth SH (2004) Evolution of endophyte–plant symbioses. Trends Plant Sci 9:275–280

Sakiyama CC, Paula EM, Pereira PC, Borges AC, Silva DO (2001) Characterization of pectin lyase produced by an endophytic strain isolated from coffee cherries. Lett Appl Microbiol 33:117–121

Schulz B, Boyle C, Draeger S, Römmert AK, Krohn K (2002) Endophytic fungi: a source of novel biologically active secondary metabolites. Mycol Res 106:996–1004

Sessitsch A, Hardoim P, Döring J, Weilharter A, Krause A, Woyke T, Mitter B, Hauberg-Lotte L, Friedrich F, Rahalkar M, Hurek T (2012) Functional characteristics of an endophyte community colonizing rice roots as revealed by metagenomic analysis. Mol Plant Microb Interac 25:28–36

Silva RLO, Luz JS, Silveira EB, Cavalcante UMT (2006) Fungos endofíticos em annona spp.: isolamento, caracterização enzimática e promoção do crescimento em mudas de pinha (annona squamosa L.). Acta Bot Bras 20:649–655

Sinsabaugh RS (1994) Enzymic analysis of microbial pattern and process. Biol Fertil Soils 17:69–74

Sorgatto M, Guimarães NCA, Zanoelo FF, Marques MR, Peixoto-Nogueira SC, Giannesi GG (2012) Purification and characterization of an extracellular xylanase produced by the endophytic fungus, *Aspergillus terreus*, grown in submerged fermentation. Afr J Biotechnol 11:8076–8084

Stamford TLM, Stamford NP, Coelho LCBB, Araujo JM (2001) Production and characterization of a thermostable α-amylase from *Nocardiopsis* sp. endophyte of yam bean. Bioresour Technol 76:137–141

Strong P J, Claus H (2011) Laccase: a review of its past and its future in bioremediation. Crit Rev Env Sci Tec 41(4)

Sturz AV, Christie BR, Nowak J (2000) Bacterial endophytes: potential role in developing sustainable systems of crop production. CRC Crit Rev Plant Sci 19:1–30

Sunitha VH, Devi DN, Srinivas C (2013) Extracellular enzymatic activity of endophytic fungal strains isolated from medicinal plants. WJAS 9:1–9

Suto M, Takebayashi M, Saito K, Tanaka M, Yokota A, Tomita F (2002) Endophytes as producers of xylanase. J Biosci Bioeng 93:88–90

Tan RX, Zou WX (2001) Endophytes: a rich source of functional metabolites. Nat Prod Rep 18:448–449

Traving SJ, Thygesen UH, Riemann L, Stedmon CA (2015) A model of extracellular enzymes in free-living microbes: which strategy pays off? Appl Environ Microbiol 81:7385–7393

Verma SC, Ladha JK, Tripathi AK (2001) Evaluation of plant growth promoting and colonization ability of endophytic diazotrophs from deep-water rice. J Biotechnol 91:127–141

Vijayalakshmi R, Kairunnisa K, Sivvaswamy SN, Dharan SS, Natarajan S (2016) Enzyme production and antimicrobial activity of endophytic bacteria isolated from medicinal plants. Indian J Sci Technol 9(14)

Wallenstein MD, Weintraub MN (2008) Emerging tools for measuring and modeling the in situ activity of soil extracellular enzymes. Soil Biol Biochem 40:2098–2106

Ward OP, Qin WM, Dhanjoon J, Ye J, Singh A (2005) Physiology and biotechnology of Aspergillus. Adv Appl Microbial 58:1–75

Wei DL, Chang SC, Wei YH, Lin YW, Chuang CL, Jong SC (1992) Production of cellulolytic enzymes from the *Xylaria* and *Hypoxylon* species of xylariaceae. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 8:141–146

White JF, Torres MS (2010) Is plant endophyte-mediated defensive mutualism the result of oxidative stress protection? Physiol Plant 138:440–446

Wingender J, Neu TR, Flemming HC (2012) Microbial extracellular polymeric substances: characterization, structure and function. Springer Science & Business Media

Wipusaree N, Sihanonth P, Piapukiew J, Sangvanich P, Karnchanatat A (2011) Purification and characterization of a xylanase from the endophytic fungus *Alternaria alternata* isolated from the Thai medicinal plant, *Croton oblongifolius* roxb. Afr J Microbiol 5:5697–5712

Xiong XQ, Liao HD, Ma JS, Liu XM, Zhang LY, Shi XW (2013) Isolation of a rice endophytic bacterium, *Pantoea* sp. Sd-1, with ligninolytic activity and characterization of its rice straw degradation ability. Lett Appl Microbiol 58:123–129

Yang H, Wu H, Wang X, Cui Z, Li Y (2011) Selection and characteristics of a switchgrass-colonizing microbial community to produce extracellular cellulases and xylanases. Bioresour Technol 102:3546–3550

Chapter 6
Beneficial Effects of Bacterial Endophytes on Forest Tree Species

Akshit Puri, Kiran Preet Padda and Chris P. Chanway

Abstract Since their discovery, beneficial bacteria living inside the plant tissues (known as bacterial endophytes) have been studied widely in agricultural crop species. But their ecology and effects on tree species in a forest ecosystem could be very different yet intriguing. In this chapter, studies highlighting the isolation of bacterial endophytes, re-inoculation and detection of the endophytic population in the host tree, and benefits provided to the host tree through direct and indirect mechanisms have been reviewed. Important tree species including those belonging to the genus *Pinus*, *Populus*, and *Picea* have been reported widely to harbor bacterial endophytes belonging to the genus *Bacillus*, *Paenibacillus*, and *Pseudomonas* and possibly obtain benefits like nitrogen fixation and increased biomass production from them. Nitrogen-fixing bacterial endophytes are the most commonly studied beneficial microbes of forest tree species, and thus have been reviewed in detail in this chapter.

Keywords Endophytes · Diazotrophic bacteria · *Pinus* · *Populus* · *Picea*

6.1 Introduction

Plants are a complex micro-ecosystem that harbors a range of microbes both in their internal tissues as well as on their external surfaces. Although the importance of microbes for plant health and growth promotion has been known for a long time, internal tissues colonization was largely perceived as being related to the spread of

A. Puri (✉) · K.P. Padda · C.P. Chanway
Department of Forest and Conservation Sciences, The University of British Columbia, Forest Sciences Centre 3041, 2424 Main Mall, Vancouver, BC V6T 1Z4, Canada
e-mail: akshit.puri@alumni.ubc.ca

K.P. Padda
e-mail: kiranpreet.padda@alumni.ubc.ca

C.P. Chanway
e-mail: chris.chanway@ubc.ca

D.K. Maheshwari and K. Annapurna (eds.), *Endophytes: Crop Productivity and Protection*, Sustainable Development and Biodiversity 16,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-66544-3_6

disease. Even the first microorganism reported to colonize internal tissue of plant leaves was a pathogenic fungus (de Bary 1866). But now, it is widely known that microorganisms can colonize internal tissues of plants and establish beneficial symbiotic interaction with the host plant. Such microbes are known as endophytes. Literally taken, endophyte means "within plant" (Chanway 1996). Although many authors have defined the term endophyte, but in this chapter, we will use the term defined by Chanway et al. (2014). According to Chanway et al. (2014), bacterial endophytes are "bacteria that can be detected at a particular moment within the tissue of apparently healthy plant hosts without inducing disease or organogenesis." The occurrence of bacterial endophytes was first reported in internal tissues of healthy potato plant (Trevet and Hollis 1948). Since then, most studies have been focused on isolating and evaluating the benefits of bacterial endophytes in agricultural plants (reviewed by Hallmann et al. 1997; Kobayashi and Palumbo 2000; Sturz et al. 2000; Suman et al. 2016). Although there is huge literature about endophytic fungi in forest ecosystem (reviewed by Doty 2011), studies of bacterial endophytes in forest tree species are rather limited but their importance should not be underrated.

6.2 Bacterial Endophytes in Forest Tree Species

Forest trees can provide unique ecological conditions for bacterial endophytes since they have larger biomass and exist for a longer period in terrestrial ecosystems as compared to agricultural plants (Izumi 2011). Bacterial endophytes have only been reported in very limited host tree species including pine, spruce, poplar, oak, cedar, and willow. The most common bacterial endophytes isolated from forest trees belong to the genus *Acinetobacter*, *Burkholderia*, *Bacillus*, *Enterobacter*, *Methylobacterium*, *Microbacterium*, *Pseudomonas*, *Paenibacillus*, *Rahnella*, *Sphingomonas*, and *Xanthomonas* (Izumi 2011; Pirttilä 2011). The diversity of bacterial endophytes found in forest ecosystem has been reviewed by Izumi (2011). Endophytes enhance the growth of forest tree species by various direct and indirect mechanisms. Direct mechanisms involve production of phytohormones like cytokinins (Pirttilä 2011), auxins (Taghavi et al. 2005; Madmony et al. 2005), gibberellins (Bottini et al. 2004), and nitrogen (N) fixation (Bal and Chanway 2012a, b; Anand and Chanway 2013b; Anand et al. 2013; Tang et al. 2017). Indirect mechanisms involve suppression of pathogens and improvement of the mutualistic relationship of a mycorrhizae and plant host (Anand et al. 2006). It is believed that most interactions between plants and beneficial bacteria occur in roots of host plant but shoots represent a unique ecological niche where endophytes can carry out major plant-beneficial activities. Generally, bacterial endophytes in forest trees have been isolated from shoot tips, flowers, pollens or seeds, and seedlings (Pirttilä 2011). Although shoot endophytes provide similar benefits as provided by root endophytes, they have also been reported to induce plant growth through other mechanisms like the production of adenine derivatives and vitamin B_{12} (Pirttilä

2011). Endophytic bacterial colonization sites in tree shoots and their potential growth-promoting effects have been reviewed in detail by Pirttilä (2011).

6.2.1 *Diazotrophic Bacterial Endophytes in Forest Tree Species*

N-fixing bacteria also known as "diazotrophic bacteria" are well known for their ability to fix N biologically. Apart from root nodule-forming diazotrophs living in association with leguminous plants, there are bacterial species that can fix N in association with non-leguminous plant species. The presence of diazotrophic bacteria in non-leguminous plants was first detected by Brazilian researchers in the rhizosphere of sugarcane (Döbereiner and Alvahydo 1959; Döbereiner 1961). In subsequent studies, it was determined that diazotrophic bacteria in rhizosphere contributed only small amounts of N to the sugarcane plants and diazotrophic bacteria living in internal tissues of stem and roots fix significant amounts of N from the atmosphere (Cavalcante and Döbereiner 1988; Boddey et al. 1991; Stephan et al. 1991). Cavalcante and Döbereiner (1988) isolated a diazotrophic bacteria, *Saccharobacter nitrocaptans* (renamed to *Acetobacter diazotrophicus* (Gillis et al. 1989), and then to *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus* (Yamada et al. 1997)), from internal tissues of sugarcane. Such diazotrophs were designated as diazotrophic bacterial endophytes (Döbereiner 1992) and were detected in many other agricultural crops like corn (Padda et al. 2017; Puri et al. 2015, 2016b), rice (Baldani et al. 2000), wheat (Sabry et al. 1997), and canola (Padda et al. 2016a, b; Puri et al. 2016a). Diazotrophic bacterial endophytes have been detected in stem tissues of forest trees like poplar (*Populus trichocarpa*) (Ulrich et al. 2008a; Scherling et al. 2009; Doty et al. 2009; Xin et al. 2009; Knoth et al. 2014), willow (*Salix sitchensis*) (Doty et al. 2009), lodgepole pine (*Pinus contorta*) (Bal et al. 2012; Bal and Chanway 2012a; Anand et al. 2013; Tang et al. 2017; Yang et al. 2016), and western red cedar (*Thuja Plicata*) (Bal and Chanway 2012b; Anand and Chanway 2013b). Diazotrophic bacterial endophytes have fixed significant amounts of N from the atmosphere (in some cases up to 79%) after establishing a symbiotic relationship with these tree species.

6.3 Plant Growth Promotion by Bacterial Endophytes in Forest Tree Species

In this section, studies highlighting the beneficial effects of bacterial endophytes in forest trees have been reviewed. We have compiled an elaborative list of bacterial endophytes that have been isolated from forest trees and have shown plant

Table 6.1 List of bacterial endophytes isolated from prominent forest tree species and their beneficial effects on host trees

Host plant	Bacterial endophytes	Benefits to host	References
Australian native pine (*Callitris preissii*)	*Nocardia callitridis* sp. nov. strain CAP 290^T	–	Kaewkla and Franco (2010)
Black cottonwood (*Populus trichocarpa*)	*Burkholderia vietnamiensis* WPB	Nitrogenase activity, production of indole-3-acetic acid (IAA)	Doty et al. (2009), Knoth et al. (2014), Xin et al. (2009)
Willow (*Salix sitchensis*)	*Herbaspirillum* sp. WW2 and *Pseudomonas* sp. H9zhy (WW6)	Nitrogen fixation	Doty et al. (2009)
Douglas-fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii*)	*Rhodotorula graminis* WP1, *Rahnella* sp. WP5, *Burkholderia* sp. WP9, *Acinetobacter calcoaceticus* WP19, *Rhizobium tropici* bv *populus* PTD1, *Sphingomonas yanoikuyae* WW5, *Pseudomonas putida* WW6, *Sphingomonas* sp. WW7	Increases biomass, root length and shoot height	Khan et al. (2015)
Hybrid spruce (*Picea glauca* x *P. engelmannii*)	*Bacillus polymyxa* strain Pw-2R and *Pseudomonas fluorescens* strains Sm3-RN and Ss2-RN	Boosts seedling biomass and height	Chanway et al. (2000), Shishido et al. (1996a, b, 1999), Shishido and Chanway (1999, 2000)
Limber pine (*Pinus flexilis*)	Acetic Acid Bacteria (AAB)	Nitrogen fixation	Moyes et al. (2016)
Live oaks (*Quercus fusiformis*)	*Pseudomonas denitrificans* 1-15, *Pseudomonas putida* 5-48	In vitro inhibition of the pathogen, *Ceratocystis fagacearum*, reduces crown loss	Brooks et al. (1994)
Lodgepole pine (*Pinus contorta* var. *latifolia* (Dougl.) Engelm.)	*Bacillus polymyxa* strain Pw-2 (or Pw-2R)	Enhances seedling biomass, produces phytohormones (IAA and cytokinin)	Bent et al. (2001), Shishido et al. (1995, 1996a)

(continued)

Table 6.1 (continued)

Host plant	Bacterial endophytes	Benefits to host	References
Lodgepole pine (*Pinus contorta* var. *latifolia* (Dougl.) Engelm.) and western red cedar (*Thuja plicata* Donn ex D. Don)	*Paenibacillus polymyxa* P2b-2R	Nitrogen fixation, growth promotion (biomass and length)	Bal and Chanway (2012a, b), Bal et al. (2012), Anand and Chanway (2013a, b), Anand et al. (2013), Tang et al. (2017), Yang et al. (2016)
Norway spruce (*Picea abies*) seeds	*Pseudomonas* spp. and *Rahnella* spp.	–	Cankar et al. (2005)
Poplar (*Populus deltoides* x *P. nigra* DN-34)	*Enterobacter* sp. strain 638	Synthesizes plant growth-promoting compound acetoin, increases seedling biomass	Taghavi et al. (2005, 2009)
Poplar (*Populus deltoides* x (*trichocarpa* x *deltoides*))	*Pseudomonas putida* W619	Improves plant health and growth, decreases activities of anti-oxidative defense-related enzymes, reduces stomatal resistance, and degrades TCE	Taghavi et al. (2005, 2009), Weyens et al. (2009, 2010, 2012)
Poplar (*Populus trichocarpa* x *deltoides cv. Hoogvorst)*	*Pseudomonas* sp. PopHV4, PopHV6 and PopHV9	–	Germaine et al. (2004)
Poplar (*Populus trichocarpa* x *P. deltoides hybrids*)	*Rhizobium tropici* CIAT899	–	Doty et al. (2005)
Scots pine (*Pinus sylvestris L.*)	*Methylobacterium extorquens* DSM13060	Increases root and shoot dry weight, increases root and shoot potassium content	Pirttilä et al. (2000), Pohjanen et al. (2014)

growth-promoting (PGP) properties (see Table 6.1). Most studies about bacterial endophytes have been reported in tree species belonging to genera *Pinus*, *Picea*, and *Populus*.

6.3.1 *Pinus*

The genus *Pinus* is one of the largest and most important among the coniferous genera. Pines are widely distributed and mostly found in the Northern Hemisphere. They range from Alaska to Nicaragua, from Scandinavia to North Africa, and from Siberia to Sumatra (Krugman and Jenkinson 1974). The most common *Pinus* sp. found in western North America is lodgepole pine. It is a commercially important gymnosperm species that grows throughout the Rocky Mountain and Pacific Coast regions. It extends from Yukon Territory, Canada in the north to Baja California, Mexico in the south and from the Pacific Ocean in the west to South Dakota, USA in the east (Lotan and Critchfield 1990). The first evidence of endophytic colonization by plant growth-promoting bacteria in lodgepole pine was detected by Shishido et al. (1995). They isolated a bacterial endophyte (strain Pw-2) from root tissues of lodgepole pine seedlings (<3 years old) naturally regenerating at a site near Williams Lake, BC, Canada (52°N, 122°W). Preliminary characterization revealed that strain Pw-2 belongs to *Bacillus polymyxa* (now known as *Paenibacillus polymyxa*). The beneficial effects of *B. polymyxa* Pw-2 were assessed by re-inoculating it into lodgepole pine and growing in a greenhouse for 9 weeks. Inoculation with Pw-2 significantly increased shoot height, shoot dry mass, and root dry mass of lodgepole pine seedlings as compared to the uninoculated controls. A rifamycin-resistant strain, Pw-2R, was derived from Pw-2 so as to check internal root colonization of lodgepole pine after re-inoculation (Shishido et al. 1995). Pw-2R endophytically colonized the internal root tissues of lodgepole pine with a population size in the range of 10^5 cfu/g fresh tissue, 4 weeks after inoculation. In a subsequent study, Shishido et al. (1996a) ruled out the theory about the involvement of mycorrhizal fungi in growth promotion observed in Pw-2 (or Pw-2R) inoculated lodgepole pine seedlings. According to their findings, Pw-2R enhanced lodgepole pine seedling biomass significantly (up to 18%) through a mechanism that is unrelated to mycorrhizal fungi. It was also reported that strain Pw-2 is involved in elevating the levels of PGP hormones like indole-3-acetic acid (IAA) and dihydrozeatin riboside (DHZR; a form of cytokinin) produced in lodgepole pine roots (Bent et al. 2001).

In an effort to look for diazotrophic bacterial endophytes in stem and needle tissues of lodgepole pine trees (>20 years old) and seedlings (2–4 years old) growing in nutrient-poor (N-limited) forest sites of British Columbia, Canada; Bal et al. (2012) isolated an endophytic strain P2b-2R that was capable of growing on N-free medium (combined carbon medium; Rennie 1981) and consistently reduced significant amounts of acetylene in acetylene reduction assay (ARA) used for measuring N-fixing activity. Strain P2b-2R (GU132543) was identified as belonging to *P. polymyxa* (Bal et al. 2012). Since ARA is an indirect method of measuring the amount of N fixed, Bal and Chanway (2012a) used a more accurate method, ^{15}N isotope dilution method (Danso 1995), to assess the amount of N fixed. In two separate growth trials, P2b-2R inoculated lodgepole pine seedlings were able to derive 30 and 66% of N directly from the atmosphere 27 and 35 weeks

Table 6.2 Percent N derived from the atmosphere (%Ndfa) by a diazotrophic bacterial endophyte, *Paenibacillus polymyxa* P2b-2R, when inoculated into two different host trees and determined in several studies at different time periods

Host tree	Time after inoculation	%Ndfa	References
Lodgepole pine	27 weeks	30	Bal and Chanway (2012a)
	35 weeks	66	Bal and Chanway (2012a)
	12 months	40	Tang et al. (2017)
	13 months	79	Anand et al. (2013)
Western red cedar	27 weeks	23	Bal and Chanway (2012b)
	35 weeks	56	Bal and Chanway (2012b)
	13 months	36	Anand and Chanway (2013b)

after inoculation, respectively (Table 6.2). In a subsequent study, Anand et al. (2013) reported that lodgepole pine seedlings inoculated with P2b-2R were able to derive 79% of N directly from the atmosphere, 13 months after inoculation (Table 6.2). Along with fixing high amounts of N, P2b-2R inoculation also enhanced lodgepole pine shoot height by 33%, shoot dry weight by 78%, and root dry weight by 165%. They postulated that plant growth promotion was directly related to the amount of N fixed by P2b-2R. Since seedlings were grown in an N-limited environment and N fertilizer was provided only once at the onset of the experiment, so after sometime, soil N depletion would eventually restrict the growth rate of control seedlings to a point where P2b-2R inoculated (N-fixing) seedlings would outperform them. When lodgepole pine seedlings were grown in sufficient N conditions (N fertilizer provided regularly in a yearlong growth experiment), P2b-2R inoculation had no effect on the growth of lodgepole pine and the inoculated seedlings were not able to fix atmospheric N (Yang et al. 2016, 2017), thus confirming the hypothesis proposed by Bal and Chanway (2012a) that P2b-2R triggers N fixation mechanism under N-limited conditions. Full sequencing of nitrogenase reductase protein (*nif*H) of P2b-2R was also conducted by amplifying a 388-bp internal *nif*H gene fragment and performing a Southern blot analysis of total genomic DNA digested with Pst I/HindIII (Anand and Chanway 2013c). The Southern blot profile showed just one positive signal at 1.8 kb of the Pst I digest and 9 kb of the HindIII digest (Fig. 6.1), indicating that there is only one copy of *nif*H in P2b-2R. Anand et al. (2013) evidenced that P2b-2R strain can form a significant amount of endophytic colonies in the root, shoot, and needle tissues, thus indicating that perceived growth promotion and N fixation was bacteria driven. But in this study, a culture-based technique was used to assess the bacterial colonies in each part of the plant. Endospore-forming bacteria like *P. polymyxa* P2b-2R are susceptible to misidentification when such technique is used (Bent and Chanway 2002). Anand and Chanway (2013a) then applied a more precise technique to prove that P2b-2R can colonize lodgepole pine endophytically. Green fluorescent protein (GFP) tagging in conjunction with confocal laser scanning microscopy (CLSM) was used to view the sites of endophytic colonization in real time. A plasmid-borne GFP (pBSGV104) was used to tag P2b-2R and the transformed strain was named

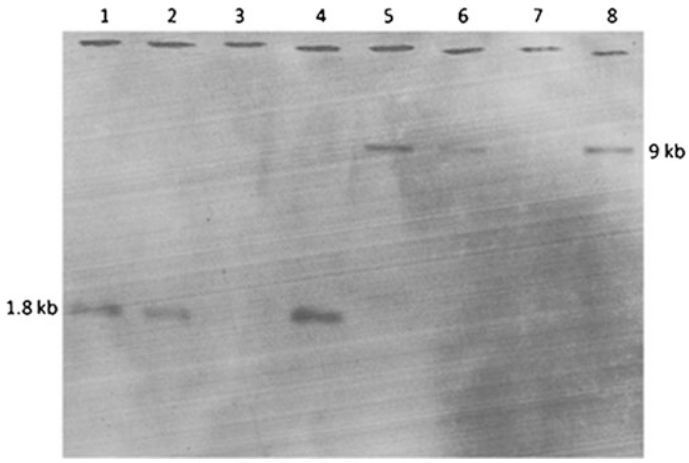


Fig. 6.1 Southern blot profile of *P. polymyxa* P2b-2R total DNA digested with Pst I (*Lanes 1*, *2*, and *4*) or HindIII (*Lanes 5*, *6*, and *8*) and probed with the *nif*H fragment (from Anand and Chanway 2013c)

P2b-2R*gfp*. With the help of CLSM, it was observed that P2b-2R*gfp* had completely engulfed the root surface of lodgepole pine, similar to what was reported by Timmusk et al. (2005). P2b-2R*gfp* effectively colonized stem cortical cell of 2–14-week-old lodgepole pine seedlings intracellularly (Figs. 6.2 and 6.3) but was not observed in vascular tissues. Thus, Anand and Chanway (2013a) provided a strong evidence that P2b-2R can effectively colonize stem tissues endophytically from as early as 2 weeks after inoculation. However, Padda et al. (2016a) reported that GFP-tagging might affect the performance of P2b-2R to promote plant growth and fix N. After some successful initial reports about colonization and plant growth promotion of agricultural crops, viz., corn, canola, and tomato by P2b-2R. Puri et al. (2015, 2016a), Padda et al. (2016a, 2017) reported that GFP-tagging could positively affect the plant growth-promoting and N-fixing capability of P2b-2R in agricultural crops like corn and canola. Recently, Puri et al. (2016b) concluded that this effect is temporary in corn and diminishes as the plant develops. However, Padda et al. (2016b) further reported that the positive effect of GFP-tagging is not temporary in canola and could be seen throughout the life cycle of the plant. Tang et al. (2017), in an effort to evaluate the positive effect of GFP-tagging of P2b-2R in its original host lodgepole pine, found that P2b-2R*gfp* outperforms the wild-type strain in the initial stages of plant development only (till 4 months after sowing) and the positive effect diminishes as the pine plant grows. It has been discovered that GFP-tagging leads to overexpression of *nif*H, *nif*D, and *nif*K genes. Therefore, the effect of reporter gene GFP on physiological activities of host–microbe cell should be taken into account in using it as a cytological marker (Unpublished data).

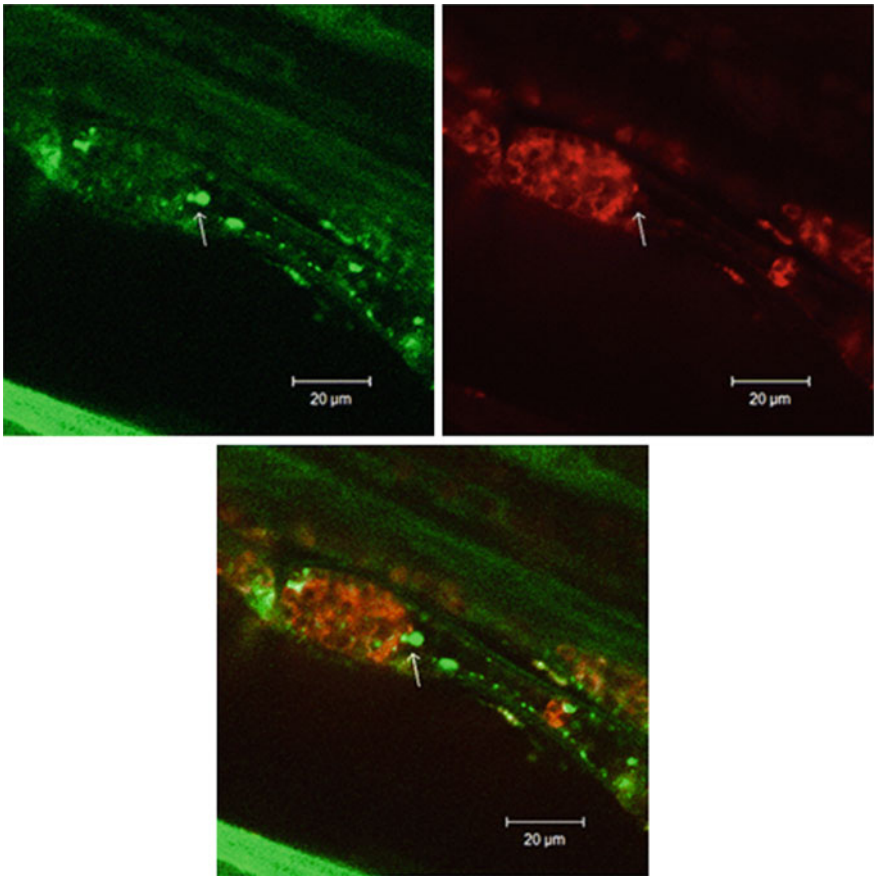


Fig. 6.2 Longitudinal section of the stem showing intracellular colonization by *P. polymyxa* P2b-2R*gfp* viewed under *green* (*top left panel*), *red* (*top right panel*), and a combination of both *green* and *red lights* (*bottom*). *Arrow* points to a bright green P2b-2R*gfp* cell that appears to contain a terminal endospore located to the right of the *red-orange* chloroplasts (Anand and Chanway 2013a)

In studies with other pine species, a novel endophytic actinobacterium strain, CAP 290^T (=DSM 45353^T = ACM 5287^T), was isolated from root tissues of a pine tree native to Australia (*Callitris preissii*) (Kaewkla and Franco 2010). Phylogenetic analysis and physiological and biochemical tests conducted on strain CAP 290^T revealed that it is a novel endophytic actinobacterium belonging to the *Nocardiaceae* family and the name *Nocardia callitridis* sp. nov. was proposed. It should be noted that beneficial effects of this endophytic strain were not evaluated in this study. In another study with Scots pine (*Pinus sylvestris* L.), a pine species

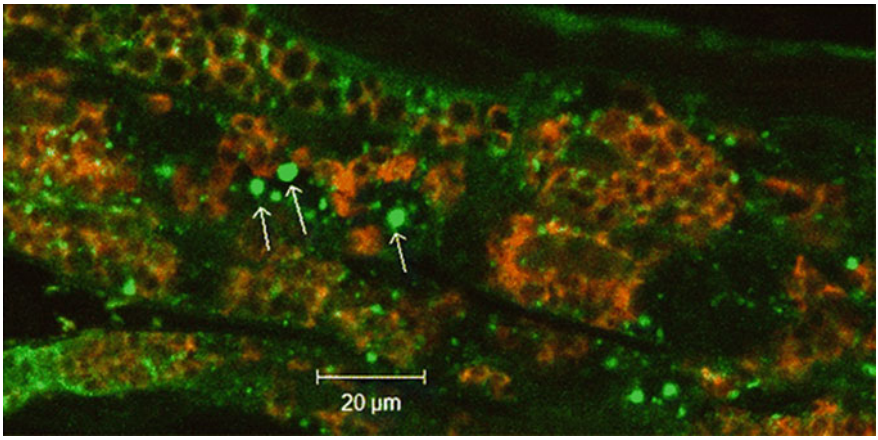


Fig. 6.3 Intracellular colonization of a 4-week-old lodgepole pine stem cortex cell by *P. polymyxa* P2b-2R*gfp*. *Arrows* point to P2b-2R*gfp* near the *red-orange* chloroplasts (Anand and Chanway 2013a)

native to Eurasia, Pirttilä et al. (2000) isolated bacterial endophytes from buds of mature, healthy Scots pine trees growing on a natural stand in northern Finland. One of the bacterial endophytic strains (isolate F) was identified as *Methylobacterium extorquens* (DSM 13060). In a subsequent study, it was reported that this bacterial endophyte produced adenine derivatives like adenine ribosides, which could be used as precursors in cytokinin biosynthesis (Pirttilä et al. 2004). In an effort to detect the endophytic colonization sites of *M. extorquens* DSM 13060 in Scots pine, Pohjanen et al. (2014) tagged DSM 13060 with GFP and viewed endophytic colonies by using CLSM. GFP-tagged DSM 13060 was observed in root epidermis and root parenchymatic and xylem tissues. Also, *M. extorquens* DSM 13060 significantly increased shoot and root dry weight of Scots pine seedlings. In addition, this bacterial endophyte in association with ectomycorrhizal (ECM) fungi (*Suillus variegatus* and/or *Pisolithus tinctorius*) was able to enhance the growth of Scots pine seedlings even more than the only ECM fungi inoculation. In a recent study with limber pine (*Pinus flexilis*), Moyes et al. (2016) found evidence of diazotrophic bacterial endophytes in foliar parts of the plant. These bacteria can provide 6.8–13.6 µg of N per square meters to limber pine stands per day or approximately 1–2 mg of N per square meters in one year (Moyes et al. 2016). In another study, Carrell and Frank (2014) found that limber pine and another conifer tree species, Engelmann spruce (*Picea engelmannii*), growing in a sub-alpine, N-limited environment are colonized by bacterial endophytes of the same phylotype. This phylotype was related to *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus* and other N-fixing acetic acid bacterial endophytes.

6.3.2 *Populus*

Populus is a genus of deciduous flowering plants mostly native to the northern hemisphere. It includes commercially important species like poplar, cottonwood, and aspen. The first tree species whose full genome was sequenced belong to this genus (Black cottonwood). The genome of black cottonwood (*Populus trichocarpa*) is four times larger than the genome of the first plant sequenced, *Arabidopsis thaliana* (Tuskan et al. 2006). Apart from traditional varieties of poplar and cottonwood trees, many hybrid varieties have been developed. *Populus* spp. are known for rapid growth, deep root network, and ability to grow in nutrient-poor sites (Stettler et al. 1996). They are economically important and are grown in short-rotation plantations for the production of pulp and paper, lumber, and fuel (Doty et al. 2009). The first discovery about the presence of a diazotrophic bacterial endophyte in a *Populus* sp. was reported by Doty et al. (2005). In this study, clones of hybrid cottonwood (*Populus trichocarpa* × *P. deltoides*) were evaluated for the presence of bacterial endophytes in stem tissues. *Rhizobium tropici* was the most common bacterial endophyte found in all clones of hybrid cottonwood. Although this bacterial species is well known for its nodule-forming ability and diazotrophic trait in legumes (Perret et al. 2000), this study reported its endophytic nature in a non-legume host. *Populus* spp. are also known for their phytoremediation capabilities. Endophytic bacteria belonging to genus *Pseudomonas* were isolated from xylem sap of hybrid poplar trees growing on a phytoremediation site near a motor factory in Genk, Belgium (Germaine et al. 2004). Isolated strains were tested for their ability to solubilize phosphorus, produce IAA, act as biocontrol agents, and resist heavy metal. Selected strains were tagged with GFP to visualize endophytic colonization sites. GFP-tagged strains were found to colonize inner cortex and xylem tracheid cells in the root and intercellular spaces of root xylem cells when visualized with CLSM. Although stem and leaf colonization was not observed with CLSM but through culture-based technique, it was determined that these *Pseudomonas* strains colonize root, stem/sap, and leaf tissues with population density ranging from 10^3 to 10^6.

Poplar trees harbor diverse bacterial endophytes in different parts and each bacterial community plays its own role in enhancing the growth and protecting the tree against pathogens. The diversity of endophytic bacterial communities residing inside field-grown poplar trees was evaluated by Ulrich et al. (2008b). Aerial parts (leaves and branch sections) of four hybrid poplar clones were evaluated for the presence of endophytic bacteria. Bacterial endophytes belonging to 53 different genera were isolated including *Curtobacterium*, *Plantibacter*, *Pseudomonas*, *Xanthomonas*, *Sphingomonas*, *Methylobacterium*, *Pedobacter*, and *Paenibacillus* and the most abundant genera among all clones of hybrid poplar were *Curtobacterium* and *Pseudomonas*. Several bacterial endophytes were also isolated from young poplar seedlings (black cottonwood) growing in Three Forks Park alongside the Snoqualmie River in Western Washington state, USA (Doty et al. 2009). Isolates belonging to the genus *Burkholderia*, *Rahnella*, and *Acinetobacter*

possessed *nif*H gene and were able to reduce significant amounts of acetylene in ARA. One of the strains WPB (*Burkholderia vietnamiensis*) was able to produce ethylene (concentration = 68.4 ppm) enormously higher than other strains when exposed to acetylene for 72 h. Phylogenetic analysis of *recA* gene and *nifHDK* gene cluster of WPB strain was performed in a subsequent study (Xin et al. 2009). In this study, it was also determined that WPB strain can produce 5.7 mg IAA/g dry cell after 7-day incubation with 0.1% L-tryptophan but does not produce IAA when L-tryptophan was not applied. Tryptophan generally acts as a precursor for the release of IAA (Omay et al. 1993; Hung et al. 2007; Taghavi et al. 2009), but some microbes lack the ability to synthesize tryptophan, essential for protein synthesis, and must obtain it from the plant (Radwanski and Last 1995). Thus, it can be inferred that a mutually advantageous plant–microbe interaction occurs in this case, where the plant provides tryptophan for WPB and WPB, in return, converts extra tryptophan to IAA for promoting the plant growth. Strain WPB and other diazotrophic strains isolated by Doty et al. (2005, 2009) were used in a glasshouse and a field experiment on black cottonwood and hybrid cottonwood (Knoth et al. 2014). They tested each strain individually as well as collectively by making consortiums. Diazotrophic bacterial endophytes significantly increased the biomass of black cottonwood and cottonwood hybrid in both glasshouse and field experiments and inoculation with microbial consortia made of many strains was more successful than single-strain inoculation. Inoculated cottonwood seedlings fixed up to 65% of N directly from the atmosphere in this study, clearly exhibiting the role of diazotrophic bacterial endophytes in promoting poplar tree growth by providing substantial N nutrition.

Pseudomonas spp. are one of the most common bacterial endophytes found in *Populus* trees (Ulrich et al. 2008b; Doty et al. 2009; Gottel et al. 2011; Izumi 2011). Taghavi et al. (2005, 2009) isolated several endophytes from the root and shoot tissues of hybrid poplar and used three representative strains, *Serratia proteamaculans* 568, *Enterobacter* sp. strain 638, and *Pseudomonas putida* W619, for further evaluation of their endophytic and growth-promoting properties. GFP-tagged strains colonized root surface and interior of hybrid poplar and one of the strains, *Enterobacter* sp. strain 638, significantly increased shoot biomass in greenhouse experiment (Taghavi et al. 2009). In a subsequent study, *P. putida* W619 was used to construct a trichloroethene (TCE)-degrading strain W619-TCE (Taghavi et al. 2005; Weyens et al. 2009, 2010). *P. putida* W619-TCE inoculation of hybrid polar trees reduced TCE evapotranspiration significantly and promoted plant growth (Weyens et al. 2010). In field conditions (TCE contaminated sites), TCE evapotranspiration from hybrid poplar was reduced by 90% by inoculation with this strain (Weyens et al. 2009), thus clearly establishing its phytoremediation characteristics. Weyens et al. (2012) used the GFP-tagged derivative of strain W619 (Taghavi et al. 2009) to compare the colonization ability of wild-type and GFP-tagged strain W619 along with investigating the morphological, physiological, and biochemical parameters so as to compare the PGP ability of the two strains. Although wild-type W619 was able to promote plant growth by producing IAA and cytokinins, increasing root and shoot mass, reducing stomatal resistance, decreasing

the activities of anti-oxidative defense-related enzymes like glutathione reductase and superoxide dismutase in hybrid poplar seedlings (Weyens et al. 2012), GFP-tagging of W619 had negative effects on plant growth and health since the W619 + *gfp* strain significantly lagged in the before-mentioned parameters. They also found that GFP-tagging effects the endophytic colonization ability of W619. These results are contradictory to what was observed when *Azospirillum brasilense* 8-I (Rodriguez et al. 2006) and *Paenibacillus polymyxa* P2b-2R were tagged with GFP (discussed in Sect. 6.3.1), thus casting doubts on this phenomenon of reduced microbial efficiency after GFP-tagging. In a recent study, a novel endophytic bacterium, *Pseudomonas populi* sp. nov. (KBL-4-9^T), was isolated from stem tissues of *Populus euphratica* trees (Anwar et al. 2016). The plant growth-promoting traits of this bacterial endophyte have not been fully determined yet. Since the complete genome cottonwood was sequenced (Tuskan et al. 2006), there has been an increased interest in elucidating the interaction of bacterial endophytic and rhizospheric communities with *Populus* trees at the molecular and genetic level (Schaefer et al. 2013, 2016), which will obviously help in understanding their interaction with other tree species.

6.3.3 *Picea*

Picea genus is most closely related to *Pinus* since they belong to the same family, Pinaceae. Tree species belonging to *Picea* are usually found in northern temperate and boreal regions and are commonly known as spruce trees. Commercially important species like black spruce (*Picea mariana*), engelmann spruce (*P. engelmannii*), sitka spruce (*P. sitchensis*), white spruce (*P. glauca*), Norway or alpine spruce (*P. alpestris* and *P. abies*), and Siberian spruce (*P. obovata* and *P. omorika*) are generally found in northern hemisphere (North America, North Europe, and Eurasia) (Parish and Thomson 1994). Evidence of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) in spruce (hybrid spruce) was reported by O'neill et al. (1992) and Chanway and Holl (1993a, b). But the first reported spruce endophyte, *Pseudomonas* sp. Ss2, was isolated from roots of hybrid spruce (*Picea glauca* (Moench) Voss x *Picea engelmannii* Parry) seedlings naturally regenerating near Salmon Arm, BC, Canada (51°04′N, 119°26′W, 1250 m elevation) (Shishido and Chanway 1999). Rifamycin-resistant derivative of Ss2 was generated and the resulting strain was designated as Ss2-RN. Shishido et al. (1996b) inoculated Ss2-RN into hybrid spruce (*Picea glauca* x *P. engelmannii*) seedlings and grew them in the greenhouse for 15 weeks. Inoculate hybrid spruce seedlings increased root weight by 19%, shoot weight by 10%, and seedling height by 6% in comparison to the non-treated (control) seedlings. In this study, it was also observed that bacterial inoculation had no effect on the mycorrhizal status of seedlings and growth promotion achieved by bacterial inoculation was similar in mycorrhizal and non-mycorrhizal spruce seedlings. It was also reported that strain Ss2-RN performs better when inoculated into spruce ecotype that originated from the same

geographical area as the bacteria (Shishido and Chanway 1999). In an interesting study, Shishido and Chanway (2000) used a combination of greenhouse and field trial to assess the growth-promoting effects of Ss2-RN. Hybrid spruce seedlings were first grown in greenhouse for 4 months and were then outplanted in field sites. Some seedlings were harvested after greenhouse trial to assess the growth promotion due to inoculation of Ss2-RN in the first 4 months. As expected, Ss2-RN inoculated seedlings had significantly higher root and shoot biomass than controls. Relative growth rate (RGR) of outplanted seedlings was determined 4 months after outplanting in the field. Root and shoot RGR of inoculated seedlings were 10–234% higher than controls, thus establishing the fact that bacterial endophyte Ss2-RN can perform exceptionally in field conditions. Surprisingly, Ss2-RN was not able to colonize spruce seedlings endophytically as observed in two different studies (Shishido and Chanway 2000; Chanway et al. 2000), thus indicating that this strain promotes spruce tree growth by colonizing the rhizosphere.

Shishido and Chanway (1999) had also isolated a PGPR, *Pseudomonas* Sm3, from rhizosphere of 1–3-year-old hybrid spruce seedlings naturally regenerating near Mackenzie, BC, Canada (55°11′N, 122°58′W, 780 m elevation). Sm3-RN, a rifamycin-resistant derivative of Sm3, was found to colonize rhizosphere of spruce seedlings with a population density of 10^4–10^5 cfu/g rhizosphere soil and significantly enhance root and shoot weight and seedling height (Shishido et al. 1996b). Although Sm3-RN was isolated from rhizosphere, it was able to colonize root interior of hybrid spruce seedlings grown in both greenhouse and field conditions with a population size of 10^2–10^4 cfu/g root tissue and significantly promote root and shoot RGR when grown at a field site (Shishido and Chanway 2000). Internal root tissue colonization and growth promotion of spruce seedlings by Sm3-RN in field conditions was also confirmed by Chanway et al. (2000). Apart from culture-based studies, Shishido et al. (1999) also evidenced the endophytic colonization by Sm3-RN of spruce seedlings by using immunofluorescent antibody staining (IFAS) technique. Sm3-RN strain was detected in root hairs, cortical cells, and stem vascular tissues of spruce after 4 months of inoculation. It can be concluded that Sm3-RN, a PGPR, enters the spruce seedling likely through the root openings and form detectable endophytic colonies in root and stem tissues.

A lodgepole pine endophyte, *Paenibacillus polymyxa* Pw-2R (Shishido et al. 1995), was also tested for its ability to endophytically colonize hybrid spruce and promote its growth. Strain Pw-2R was able to colonize internal root and stem tissues of hybrid spruce (*Picea glauca* x *engelmannii*) with population size of 10^4–10^5 cfu/g root tissue in controlled environment experiment 5 months after inoculation and promoted seedling biomass by 57% in field trials 17 months after inoculation (Chanway et al. 2000). Effects of Pw-2R inoculation on spruce seedlings were also assessed by Shishido et al. (1996a). Endophytic colonization of hybrid spruce by culture-based technique was also evaluated by Shishido and Chanway (2000) and it was observed that this endophyte can colonize internal root tissues with a population size of 10^2–10^4 4 months after inoculation and increase shoot RGR by up to 82%. Internal tissues colonization of spruce by Pw-2R was also evaluated by IFAS technique to have a more precise evidence since culture-based

techniques could be imprecise in detecting endophytic population (Bent and Chanway 2002). Pw-2R colonized both stem vesicular tissues and root cortical tissues in a 4-month-old spruce seedling, thus establishing its endophytic nature in spruce (Shishido et al. 1999). Earlier studies have confirmed the presence of bacterial endophytes in hybrid spruce growing in regions of BC, Canada, and their role in growth promotion of spruce seedlings both in greenhouse and field conditions. Most bacterial endophytes are isolated from either root or stem tissues of plants but Cankar et al. (2005) reported the presence of bacterial endophytes in Norway spruce (*Picea abies* L. Karst) seeds. In a previous study, this group confirmed the presence of PGPR bacteria in the rhizosphere of Norway spruce trees and characterized their beneficial effects (Geric et al. 2000). Fresh seeds from four different trees of Norway spruce growing in different locations within a 36 km^2 area in Pokljuka, Slovenia (1200–1400 m elevation) revealed the presence of bacterial endophytes in seed coat, endosperm, and embryonic tissue. Most endophytes belonged to genera *Pseudomonas* and *Rahnella*, which are well known for their plant growth-promoting and N-fixing properties (Cankar et al. 2005).

6.3.4 *Pseudotsuga, Quercus, Salix, and Thuja*

The presence of bacterial endophytes has also been reported in other coniferous trees like Douglas-fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii*) and western red cedar (*Thuja Plicata*) and deciduous trees like oak (*Quercus* L.) and willow (*Salix* L.). Bal et al. (2012) reported the isolation of endophytic bacteria from stem and needles tissues of western red cedar seedlings (2–4 years old) and trees (>20 years old) growing at a site near Boston Bar, BC, Canada (49°50′N, 121°31′W, elevation 600 m; moist warm Interior Douglas-fir zone (IDFmw)). Endophytic bacterial strains were identified as belonging to the genera *Arthrobacter*, *Bacillus*, *Burkholderia*, *Paenibacillus*, and *Pseudomonas*. One of the strains *Paenibacillus amylolyticus* C3b was found to produce 241 pmols C_2H_4 mL^{-1} h^{-1} of ethylene in the acetylene reduction assay and was able to grow on N-free growth medium, thereby establishing its diazotrophic ability (Bal et al. 2012). Lodgepole pine bacterial endophyte, *P. polymyxa* P2b-2R (Bal et al. 2012), was also tested for its ability to colonize and promote the growth of western red cedar seedlings. Bal and Chanway (2012b) reported that P2b-2R can colonize rhizosphere of cedar with a population size of 10^5 cfu/g root but cannot colonize the internal tissues. They also reported that P2b-2R inoculation increased the foliar N content by 33% as compared to the controls 27 weeks after inoculation. Cedar seedlings inoculated with P2b-2R derived 56% and 23% of N directly from the atmosphere 27 and 35 weeks after inoculation, respectively (Table 6.2). These results were later confirmed by Anand and Chanway (2013b). Apart from deriving significant amounts of N from the atmosphere, western red cedar seedlings accumulated 45% greater shoot biomass than control seedlings 13 months after inoculation (Anand and Chanway 2013b). Another aim of this study was to investigate the endophytic colonization of cedar

seedlings. P2b-2R endophytically colonized stem and root of cedar seedlings with a population size of 10^4–10^6 cfu/g fresh tissue and needles with 10^1–10^2 cfu/g fresh tissue.

Young willow (*Salix sitchensis*) trees growing in Three Forks Park alongside the Snoqualmie river in Western Washington state, USA were also evaluated for the presence of diazotrophic bacterial endophytes by Doty et al. (2009). Ten endophytic strains capable of growing on the N-free medium were isolated and were identified as belonging to the genera *Acinetobacter*, *Herbaspirillum*, *Pseudomonas*, *Sphingomonas*, and *Stenotrophomonas*. Two of the willow isolates, *Herbaspirillum* sp. WW2 and *Pseudomonas* sp. H9zhy (WW6), reduced acetylene to ethylene in acetylene reduction assay and it was also observed that *Pseudomonas* sp. H9zhy (WW6) possess *nif* genes necessary to encode nitrogenase enzymes (Doty et al. 2009). These willow isolates along with some cottonwood isolates (Doty et al. 2005, 2009) were tested for their ability to promote the growth of a distinct host, Douglas-fir. Khan et al. (2015) prepared an endophytic consortium by mixing these endophytic isolates. Endophytic consortium was inoculated into Douglas-fir and grown in a greenhouse environment for 15 months. Inoculated seedlings had 48% greater biomass and 13% greater root length and were 16% taller than control seedlings. Two endophytic isolates, *Acinetobacter calcoaceticus* WP19 and *Rahnella* sp. WP5, were tagged with GFP to visualize endophytic colonization sites in Douglas-fir (Khan et al. 2015). Intercellular colonization of Douglas-fir root tissues by WP19 and needle tissues by WP5 was observed 3 weeks after inoculation. These results indicate that willow and cottonwood bacterial endophytes not only colonize the internal tissues of a distinct host (Douglas-fir) but also promote its growth significantly in a greenhouse environment. Such studies increase our understanding about the bacterial endophytes that could be valuable for increasing production of seedlings in forest nurseries.

More than two decades ago, Brooks et al. (1994) evaluated the role of endophytic bacteria in suppressing oak wilt of live oaks (*Quercus fusiformis*). Mature live oaks (50–70 years old) growing in sites located near Round Rock, La Grange, and Kerrville State Park areas of central Texas, USA were sampled for bacterial endophytes. After obtaining 889 endophytic isolates from the sapwood of live oaks, bacteria were screened for in vitro inhibition of *Ceratocystis fagacearum* fungus. C. *fagacearum* causes vascular disease of oaks, commonly known as oak wilt. The traditional method of eradicating oak wilt is to remove diseased trees from the site and break the connections between the healthy and diseased tree (Gibbs and French 1980; MacDonald and Hindal 1981) or injecting a fungicide into the intravascular tissues of the oak plant (Appel and Kurdyla 1992). Brooks et al. (1994) hypothesized that biological control through endophyte inoculation could be a possible and sustainable way of controlling oak wilt. Six endophytic isolates belonging to genera *Bacillus* and *Pseudomonas* were screened after in vitro evaluation of their ability to suppress C. *fagacearum*. When injected into the stem, *Pseudomonas* spp. extensively colonized live oaks. The ability of *Pseudomonas* strains to control the oak wilt pathogen in vivo was evaluated in two growth trials. Inoculation decreased the number of trees diseased by 50% and reduced the crown loss by 17%. This study

indicates that there is potential for using bacterial endophytes to suppress deleterious pathogens in tree species.

6.4 Conclusion

In a thought-provoking commentary titled "Endophytes: they're not just fungi!", in fact, research on the existence and positive effects of bacterial endophytes on tree species has lagged far behind the amount of advanced research being conducted on endophytic fungi. But there are still many unanswered questions regarding the tree endophytes and their interactions with the host. As mycorrhizal fungi are well known for their role in the forest ecosystem, in a similar manner, bacterial endophytes can provide a range of benefits to the trees and could be the future biofertilizers of forest trees as emphasized by a report published in the Science journal.

Acknowledgements Authors would like to dedicate this work to Late Mr. Darshan K. Puri (1956–2014). You were, are, and always will be an inspirational figure for us.

References

Anand R, Chanway C (2013a) N_2-fixation and growth promotion in cedar colonized by an endophytic strain of *Paenibacillus polymyxa*. Biol Fertil Soils 49:235–239. doi:10.1007/s00374-012-0735-9

Anand R, Chanway CP (2013b) Detection of GFP-labeled *Paenibacillus polymyxa* in auto fluorescing pine seedling tissues. Biol Fertil Soils 49:111–118. doi:10.1007/s00374-012-0727-9

Anand R, Chanway CP (2013c) *nif* gene sequence and arrangement in the endophytic diazotroph *Paenibacillus polymyxa* strain P2b-2R. Biol Fertil Soils 49:965–970. doi:10.1007/s00374-013-0793-7

Anand R, Grayston S, Chanway CP (2013) N_2-fixation and seedling growth promotion of lodgepole pine by endophytic *Paenibacillus polymyxa*. Microb Ecol 66:369–374. doi:10.1007/s00248-013-0196-1

Anand R, Paul L, Chanway C (2006) Research on endophytic bacteria: recent advances with forest trees. In: Schulz B, Boyle C, Sieber TN (eds) Microbial root endophytes, Part 1. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, Heidelberg, pp 89–106. doi:10.1007/3-540-33526-9_6

Anwar N, Abaydulla G, Zayadan B, Abdurahman M, Hamood B, Erkin R, Ismayil N, Rozahon M, Mamtimin H, Rahman E (2016) *Pseudomonas populi* sp. nov., an endophytic bacterium isolated from *Populus euphratica*. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 66:1419–1425. doi:10.1099/ijsem.0.000896

Appel DM, Kurdyla T (1992) Intravascular injection with propiconazole in live oak for oak wilt control. Plant Dis 76:1120–1124

Bal A, Chanway CP (2012a) Evidence of nitrogen fixation in lodgepole pine inoculated with diazotrophic *Paenibacillus polymyxa*. Botany 90:891–896. doi:10.1139/b2012-044

Bal A, Chanway CP (2012b) ^{15}N foliar dilution of western red cedar in response to seed inoculation with diazotrophic *Paenibacillus polymyxa*. Biol Fertil Soils 48:967–971. doi:10.1007/s00374-012-0699-9

Bal A, Anand R, Berge O, Chanway C (2012) Isolation and identification of diazotrophic bacteria from internal tissues of *Pinus contorta* and *Thuja plicata*. Can J For Res 42:807–813. doi:10.1139/x2012-023

Baldani VLD, Baldani JI, Döbereiner J (2000) Inoculation of rice plants with the endophytic diazotrophs *Herbaspirillum seropedicae* and *Burkholderia* spp. Biol Fertil Soils 30:485–491. doi:10.1007/s003740050027

Bent E, Chanway CP (2002) Potential for misidentification of a spore-forming *Paenibacillus polymyxa* isolate as an endophyte by using culture-based methods. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:4650–4652. doi:10.1128/AEM.68.9.4650-4652.2002

Bent E, Tuzun S, Chanway CP, Enebak SA (2001) Alterations in plant growth and in root hormone levels of lodgepole pines inoculated with rhizobacteria. Can J Microbiol 47:793–800. doi:10.1139/w01-080

Boddey RM, Urquiaga S, Reis V, Döbereiner J (1991) Biological nitrogen fixation associated with sugar cane. Plant Soil 137:111–117. doi:10.1007/BF02187441

Bottini R, Cassán F, Piccoli P (2004) Gibberellin production by bacteria and its involvement in plant growth promotion and yield increase. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 65:497–503. doi:10.1007/s00253-004-1696-1

Brooks DS, Gonzalez CF, Appel DN, Filer T (1994) Evaluation of endophytic bacteria as potential biological-control agents for Oak Wilt. Biol Control 4:373–381. doi:10.1006/bcon.1994.1047

Cankar K, Kraigher H, Ravnikar M, Rupnik M (2005) Bacterial endophytes from seeds of Norway spruce (*Picea abies* L. Karst). FEMS Microbiol Lett 244:341–345. doi:10.1016/j.femsle.2005.02.008

Carrell AA, Frank AC (2014) *Pinus flexilis* and *Picea engelmannii* share a simple and consistent needle endophyte microbiota with a potential role in nitrogen fixation. Front Microbiol 5:333. doi:10.3389/fmicb.2014.00333

Cavalcante VA, Döbereiner J (1988) A new acid tolerant nitrogen fixing bacterium associated with sugarcane. Plant Soil 108:23–31. doi:10.1007/BF02370096

Chanway CP (1996) Endophytes: they're not just fungi. Can J Bot 74:321–322. doi:10.1139/b96-040

Chanway CP, Holl FB (1993a) Ecotypic specificity of spruce emergence-stimulating *Pseudomonas putida*. For Sci 39:520–527

Chanway CP, Holl FB (1993b) First year field performance of spruce seedlings inoculated with plant growth promoting rhizobacteria. Can J Microbiol 39:1084–1088. doi:10.1139/m93-164

Chanway CP, Shishido M, Nairn J, Jungwirth S, Markham J, Xiao G, Holl F (2000) Endophytic colonization and field responses of hybrid spruce seedlings after inoculation with plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. For Ecol Manag 133:81–88. doi:10.1016/S0378-1127(99)00300-X

Chanway CP, Anand R, Yang H (2014) Nitrogen fixation outside and inside plant tissues. In: Ohyama T (ed) Advances in biology and ecology of nitrogen fixation. InTech, pp 3–23. doi:10.5772/57532

Danso SKA (1995) Assessment of biological nitrogen fixation. Fert Res 42:33–41. doi:10.1007/BF00750498

de Bary A (1866) Morphologie und Physiologie Pilze, Flechten, und myxomyceten. Hofmeister's Handbook of Physiological Botany, vol 2. Leipzig: Verlag Von Wilhelm Engelmann. http://babel.hathitrust.org/cgi/pt?id=hvd.32044053007316. Accessed 27 July 2016

Döbereiner J (1961) Nitrogen fixing bacteria of the genus *Beijerinckia* Drex. in the rhizosphere of sugarcane. Plant Soil 15:211–216. doi:10.1007/BF01400455

Döbereiner J (1992) Recent changes in concepts of plant bacteria interactions: endophytic N_2 fixing bacteria. Ciênc Cult 44:310–313

Döbereiner J, Alvahydo R (1959) Sóbre a influénciada canade-acucar na occoréncia de "*Beijerinckia*" no solo II. Influéncia das diversas partes do vegetal. Rev Bras Biol 19:401–412

Doty SL (2011) Growth-promoting endophytic fungi of forest trees. In: Pirttilä AM, Frank AC (eds) Endophytes of forest trees: biology and applications, forestry sciences series. Springer, Netherlands, pp 151–156. doi:10.1007/978-94-007-1599-8_9

Doty SL, Dosher MR, Singleton GL, Moore AL, Van Aken B, Stettler RF, Strand SE, Gordon MP (2005) Identification of an endophytic *Rhizobium* in stems of *Populus*. Symbiosis 39:27–35. https://depts.washington.edu/envaplab/papers/RhizobiumTropiciPopulus.pdf. Accessed 3 Aug 2016

Doty SL, Oakley B, Xin G, Kang JW, Singleton G, Khan Z, Vajzovic A, Staley JT (2009) Diazotrophic endophytes of native black cottonwood and willow. Symbiosis 47:23–33. doi:10.1007/BF03179967

Geric B, Rupnik M, Kraigher H (2000) Isolation and identification of mycorrhization helper bacteria in Norway spruce, *Picea abies* (L.) Karst. Phyton 40:65–70

Germaine K, Keogh E, Garcia-Cabellos G et al (2004) Colonisation of poplar trees by *gfp* expressing bacterial endophytes. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 48:109–118. doi:10.1016/j.femsec.2003.12.009

Gibbs JN, French DW (1980) The transmission of oak wilt. Research Paper NC-185. US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, North Central Forest Experiment Station, St. Paul, USA. http://www.nrs.fs.fed.us/pubs/rp/rp_nc185.pdf. Accessed 7 Aug 2016

Gillis M, Kersters K, Hoste B, Janssens D, Kroppenstedt RM, Stephen MP (1989) *Acetobacter diaztrophicus* sp. nov., a nitrogen fixing acetic acid bacterium associated with sugarcane. Int J Syst Bacteriol 39:361–364. doi:10.1099/00207713-39-3-361

Gottel NR, Castro HF, Kerley M et al (2011) Distinct microbial communities within the endosphere and rhizosphere of *Populus deltoides* roots across contrasting soil types. Appl Environ Microbiol 77:5934–5944. doi:10.1128/AEM.05255-11

Hallmann J, Quadt-Hallmann A, Mahaffee WF, Kloepper JW (1997) Bacterial endophytes in agricultural crops. Can J Microbiol 43:895–914. doi:10.1139/m97-131

Hung PQ, Kumar SM, Govindsamy V, Annapurna K (2007) Isolation and characterization of endophytic bacteria from wild and cultivated soybean varieties. Biol Fertil Soils 44:155–162. doi:10.1007/s00374-007-0189-7

Izumi H (2011) Diversity of endophytic bacteria in forest trees. In: Pirttilä AM, Frank AC (eds) Endophytes of forest trees, biology and applications: forestry sciences series, vol 80. Springer Heidelberg, Germany, pp 95–105. doi:10.1007/978-94-007-1599-8_6

Kaewkla O, Franco CMM (2010) *Nocardia callitridis* sp. nov., an endophytic actinobacterium isolated from a surface-sterilized root of an Australian native pine tree. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 60:1532–1536. doi:10.1099/ijs.0.016337-0

Khan Z, Kandel S, Ramos D, Ettl GJ, Kim S-H, Doty SL (2015) Increased biomass of nursery-grown Douglas-fir seedlings upon inoculation with diazotrophic endophytic consortia. Forests 6:3582–3593. doi:10.3390/f6103582

Knoth JL, Kim SH, Ettl GJ, Doty SL (2014) Biological nitrogen fixation and biomass accumulation within poplar clones as a result of inoculations with diazotrophic endophyte consortia. New Phytol 201:599–609. doi:10.1111/nph.12536

Kobayashi D, Palumbo J (2000) Bacterial endophytes and their effects on plants and uses in agriculture. In: Bacon CW, White JF (eds) Microbial endophytes. Marcel Dekker, New York, pp 199–233

Krugman SL, Jenkinson JL (1974) *Pinus* L. Pine. In: Schopmeyer CS (tech coord) Seeds of woody plants in the United States. Agriculture handbook 450, US Department of Agriculture, Washington, DC, pp 598–638. http://www.treesearch.fs.fed.us/pubs/32852. Accessed 1 Aug 2016

Lotan JE, Critchfield WB (1990) Lodgepole pine (*Pinus contorta*). In: Burns RM, Honkala BH (tech coords) Silvics of North America, vol 1: Conifers. Agriculture Handbook 654, US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Washington, DC, pp 302–312. https://www.na.fs.fed.us/spfo/pubs/silvics_manual/Volume_1/pinus/contorta.htm. Accessed 1 Aug 2016

MacDonald W, Hindal D (1981) Life cycle and epidemiology of *Ceratocystis*. In: Mace ME, Bell AA, Beckman CH (eds) Wilt disease of plants. Academic Press, New York, USA, pp 113–144

Madmony A, Chernin L, Pleban S, Peleg E, Riov J (2005) *Enterobacter cloacae*, an obligatory endophyte of pollen grains of Mediterranean pines. Folia Microbiol 50:209–216. doi:10.1007/BF02931568

Moyes AB, Kueppers LM, Pett-Ridge J, Carper DL, Vandehey N, O'Neil J, Frank AC (2016) Evidence for foliar endophytic nitrogen fixation in a widely distributed subalpine conifer. New Phytol 210:657–668. doi:10.1111/nph.13850

O'Neill GA, Chanway CP, Axelrood PE, Radley RA, Holl FB (1992) Growth response specificity of spruce inoculated with coexistent rhizosphere bacteria. Can J Bot 70:2347–2353. doi:10.1139/b92-294

Omay SH, Schmidt WA, Martin P, Bangerth F (1993) Indoleacetic-acid production by the rhizosphere bacterium *Azospirillum brasilense* Cd under *in vitro* conditions. Can J Microbiol 39:187–192. doi:10.1139/m93-026

Padda KP, Puri A, Chanway CP (2016a) Effect of GFP tagging of *Paenibacillus polymyxa* P2b-2R on its ability to promote growth of canola and tomato seedlings. Biol Fertil Soils 52:377–387. doi:10.1007/s00374-015-1083-3

Padda KP, Puri A, Chanway, CP (2016b) Plant growth promotion and nitrogen fixation in canola by an endophytic strain of Paenibacillus polymyxa and its GFP-tagged derivative in a long-term study. Botany 94:1209–1217. doi:10.1139/cjb-2016-0075

Padda KP, Puri A, Zeng Q, Chanway CP, Wu X (2017) Effect of GFP-tagging on nitrogen fixation and plant growth promotion of an endophytic diazotrophic strain of *Paenibacillus polymyxa*. Botany 95:933–942. doi:10.1139/cjb-2017-0056

Parish R, Thomson S (1994) Tree book: learning to recognize trees of British Columbia. Canadian Forest Service, Victoria, Canada. https://www.for.gov.bc.ca/hfd/library/documents/treebook/TreeBook.pdf. Accessed 4 Aug 2016

Perret X, Staehelin C, Broughton WJ (2000) Molecular basis of symbiotic promiscuity. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 64:180–201. doi:10.1128/MMBR.64.1.180-201.2000

Pirttilä AM (2011) Endophytic bacteria in tree shoot tissues and their effects on host. In: Pirttilä AM, Frank AC (eds) Endophytes of forest trees, biology and applications: forestry sciences series, vol 80. Springer, Heidelberg, Germany, pp 139–150. doi:10.1007/978-94-007-1599-8_8

Pirttilä AM, Laukkanen H, Pospiech H, Myllylä R, Hohtola A (2000) Detection of intracellular bacteria in the buds of Scotch pine (*Pinus sylvestris* L.) by in situ hybridization. Appl Environ Microbiol 66:3073–3077. doi:10.1128/AEM.66.7.3073-3077.2000

Pirttilä AM, Joensuu P, Pospiech H, Jalonen J, Hohtola A, Pirttilä A, Joensuu P, Pospiech H, Jalonen J, Hohtola A (2004) Bud endophytes of scots pine produce adenine derivatives and other compounds that affect morphology and mitigate browning of callus cultures. Physiol Plant 121:305–312. doi:10.1111/j.0031-9317.2004.00330.x

Pohjanen J, Koskimäki JJ, Sutela S, Ardanov P, Suorsa M, Niemi K, Sarjala T, Häggman H, Pirttilä AM (2014) Interaction with ectomycorrhizal fungi and endophytic *Methylobacterium* affects nutrient uptake and growth of pine seedlings in vitro. Tree Physiol 34:993–1005. doi:10.1093/treephys/tpu062

Puri A, Padda KP, Chanway CP (2015) Can a diazotrophic endophyte originally isolated from lodgepole pine colonize an agricultural crop (corn) and promote its growth? Soil Biol Biochem 89:210–216. doi:10.1016/j.soilbio.2015.07.012

Puri A, Padda KP, Chanway CP (2016a) Evidence of nitrogen fixation and growth promotion in canola (*Brassica napus* L.) by an endophytic diazotroph *Paenibacillus polymyxa* P2b-2R. Biol Fertil Soils 52:119–125. doi:10.1007/s00374-015-1051-y

Puri A, Padda KP, Chanway CP (2016b) Seedling growth promotion and nitrogen fixation by a bacterial endophyte *Paenibacillus polymyxa* P2b-2R and its GFP derivative in corn in a long-term trial. Symbiosis 69:123–129. doi:10.1007/s13199-016-0385-z

Radwanski ER, Last RL (1995) Tryptophan biosynthesis and metabolism—biochemical and molecular-genetics. Plant Cell 7:921–934. doi:10.1105/tpc.7.7.921

Rennie RJ (1981) A single medium for the isolation of acetylene-reducing (dinitrogen-fixing) bacteria from soils. Can J Microbiol 27:8–14. doi:10.1139/m81-002

Rodriguez H, Mendoza A, Antonia Cruz M, Holguin G, Glick BR, Bashan Y (2006) Pleiotropic physiological effects in the plant growth-promoting bacterium *Azospirillum brasilense* following chromosomal labeling in the clpX gene. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 57:217–225. doi:10.1111/j.1574-6941.2006.00111.x

Sabry RS, Saleh SA, Batchelor CA, Jones J, Jotham J, Webster G, Kothari SL, Davey MR, Cocking EC (1997) Endophytic establishment of *Azorhizobium caulinodans* in wheat. Proc R Soc London: Biol Sci 264:341–346. doi:10.1098/rspb.1997.0049

Schaefer AL, Lappala CR, Morlen RP, Pelletier DA, Lu TYS, Lankford PK, Harwood CS, Greenberg EP (2013) LuxR- and LuxI-type quorum-sensing circuits are prevalent in members of the *Populus deltoides* microbiome. Appl Environ Microbiol 79:5745–5752. doi:10.1128/AEM.01417-13

Schaefer AL, Oda Y, Coutinho BG, Pelletier D, Weiburg J, Venturi V, Greenberg EP, Harwood CS (2016) A LuxR homolog in a cottonwood tree endophyte that activates gene expression in response to a plant signal or specific peptides. mBio 7:e01101–16. doi:10.1128/mBio.01101-16

Scherling C, Ulrich K, Ewald D, Weckwerth W (2009) Metabolic signature of the beneficial interaction of the endophyte *Paenibacillus* sp. isolate and in vitro–grown poplar plants revealed by metabolomics. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 22:1032–1037. doi:10.1094/MPMI-22-8-1032

Shishido M, Chanway CP (1999) Spruce growth response specificity after treatment with plant growth-promoting Pseudomonads. Can J Bot 77:22–31. doi:10.1139/b98-197

Shishido M, Chanway CP (2000) Colonization and growth of outplanted spruce seedlings pre-inoculated with plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria in the greenhouse. Can J For Res 30:848–854. doi:10.1139/x00-010

Shishido M, Loeb BM, Chanway CP (1995) External and internal root colonization of lodgepole pine seedlings by two growth-promoting *Bacillus* strains originated from different root microsites. Can J Microbiol 41:707–713. doi:10.1139/m95-097

Shishido M, Massicotte HB, Chanway CP (1996a) Effect of plant growth promoting *Bacillus* strains on pine and spruce seedling growth and mycorrhizal infection. Ann Bot 77:433–441. doi:10.1006/anbo.1996.0053

Shishido M, Petersen DJ, Massicotte HB, Chanway CP (1996b) Pine and spruce seedling growth and mycorrhizal infection after inoculation with plant growth promoting *Pseudomonas* strains. FEMS Microbiol EcoI 21:109–119. doi:10.1111/j.1574-6941.1996.tb00338.x

Shishido M, Brevil C, Chanway CP (1999) Endophyic colonization of spruce by plant growth promoting rhizobacteria. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 29:191–196. doi:10.1111/j.1574-6941.1999.tb00610.x

Stephan MP, Oliveira M, Teixeira KRS, Martinez-Drets G, Döbereiner J (1991) Physiology and dinitrogen fixation of *Acetobacter diazotrophicus*. FEMS Microbiol Lett 77:67–72. doi:10.1111/j.1574-6968.1991.tb04323.x

Stettler RF, Bradshaw HD, Heilman PE, Hinckley TM (1996) Biology of *Populus* and its implications for management and conservation. NRC Research Press, Ottawa, Canada

Sturz AV, Christie BR, Nowak J (2000) Bacterial endophytes: potential role in developing sustainable systems of crop production. Crit Rev Plant Sci 19:1–30. doi:10.1080/07352680091139169

Suman A, Yadav AN, Verma P (2016) Endophytic microbes in crops: Diversity and beneficial impact for sustainable agriculture. In: Singh DP, Abhilash PC, Prabha R (eds) Microbial inoculants in sustainable agricultural productivity, vol 1: Research perspectives. Springer, India, pp 117–143. doi:10.1007/978-81-322-2647-5_7

Taghavi S, Barac T, Greenberg B, Borremans B, Vangronsveld J, van der Lelie D (2005) Horizontal gene transfer to endogenous endophytic bacteria from Poplar improves phytoremediation of toluene. Appl Environ Microb 71:8500–8505. doi:10.1128/AEM.71.12.8500-8505.2005

Taghavi A, Garafola C, Monchy S, Newman L, Hoffman A, Weyens N, Barac T, Vangronsveld J, van der Lelie D (2009) Genome survey and characterization of endophytic bacteria exhibiting a

beneficial effect on growth and development of poplar trees. Appl Environ Microbiol 75:748–757. doi:10.1128/AEM.02239-08

Tang Q, Puri A, Padda KP, Chanway CP (2017) Biological nitrogen fixation and plant growth promotion of lodgepole pine by an endophytic diazotroph Paenibacillus polymyxa and its GFP-tagged derivative. Botany 95:611–619. doi:10.1139/cjb-2016-0300

Timmusk S, Grantcharova N, Wagner EGH (2005) *Paenibacillus polymyxa* invades plant roots and forms biofilms. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:7292–7300. doi:10.1128/AEM.71.11.7292-7300.2005

Trevet IW, Hollis JP (1948) Bacteria in storage organs of healthy plants. Phytopathology 38:960–967

Tuskan GA, Difazio S, Jansson S et al (2006) The genome of black cottonwood, *Populus trichocarpa*. Science 313:1596–15604. doi:10.1126/science.1128691

Ulrich K, Stauber T, Ewald D (2008a) *Paenibacillus*—a predominant endophytic bacterium colonising tissue cultures of woody plants. Plant Cell Tiss Org 93:347–351. doi:10.1007/s11240-008-9367-z

Ulrich K, Ulrich A, Ewald D (2008b) Diversity of endophytic bacterial communities in poplar grown under field conditions. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 63:169–180. doi:10.1111/j.1574-6941.2007.00419.x

Weyens N, van der Lelie D, Artois T, Smeets K, Taghavi S, Newman L, Carleer R, Vangronsveld J (2009) Bioaugmentation with engineered endophytic bacteria improves contaminant fate in phytoremediation. Environ Sci Technol 43:9413–9418. doi:10.1021/es901997z

Weyens N, Truyens S, Dupae J, Newman L, van der Lelie D, Carleer R, Vangronsveld J (2010) Potential of *Pseudomonas putida* W619-TCE to reduce TCE phytotoxicity and evapotranspiration in poplar cuttings. Environ Pollut 158:2915–2919. doi:10.1016/j.envpol.2010.06.004

Weyens N, Boulet J, Adriaensen D et al (2012) Contrasting colonization and plant growth promoting capacity between wild type and a *gfp*-derative of the endophyte *Pseudomonas putida* W619 in hybrid poplar. Plant Soil 356:217–230. doi:10.1007/s11104-011-0831-x

Xin G, Zhang GY, Kang JW, Staley JT, Doty SL (2009) A diazotrophic, indole-3-acetic acid-producing endophyte from wild cottonwood. Biol Fertil Soils 45:669–674. doi:10.1007/s00374-009-0377-8

Yamada Y, Hoshino K, Ishkawa T (1997) The phylogeny of acetic acid bacteria based on the partial sequences of 16 S ribosomal RNA: the elevation of the subgenus *Gluconacetobacter* to the generic level. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 61:1244–1251. doi:10.1271/bbb.61.1244

Yang H, Puri A, Padda KP, Chanway CP (2016) Effects of *Paenibacillus polymyxa* inoculation and different soil nitrogen treatments on lodgepole pine seedling growth. Can J For Res 46:816–821. doi:10.1139/cjfr-2015-0456

Yang H, Puri A, Padda KP, Chanway CP (2017) Substrate utilization by endophytic *Paenibacillus polymyxa* that may facilitate bacterial entrance and survival inside various host plants. *FACETS* 2:120–130. doi:10.1139/facets-2016-0031

Chapter 7
Role of Bacterial Endophytes in Plant Disease Control

A. Muthukumar, R. Udhayakumar and R. Naveenkumar

Abstract Most of the plant diseases are generated by microorganisms dominated by fungi followed by bacteria and virus. Presently, the major method for controlling plant diseases is the application of agrochemicals. Nevertheless, this method causes toxic effect to the human beings and animals. An alternative for chemicals is the application of biology which includes application of bacterial endophytes in bio-control of wide array of plant pathogens. Endophytic bacteria belongs to the class of endosymbiotic microorganisms, ubiquitous among plants that establish in between and within the spaces of all plant parts and not causing any plant disease. They create array of relationship include mutalism, cannibalistic, commensalistic and trophobiotic in nature. Most endophytes derive from soil around the plant roots or surface of the cuticle covering the leaf epidermis; although some may be obtained from the seed. Endophytic bacteria may play a major role in developing plant growth enhancement, phytoremediation, phosphate solubilization, nitrogen fixation, modulation of plant metabolism and phytohormone signalling that lead to adaptation of environmental biotic/abiotic stress. There is an increased interest in the use of endophytes for their agricultural applications that promote plant growth under cold, drought or contaminated soil structure conditions or induce disease resistance in plants.

Keywords Endophytic bacteria · Occurrence · Colonization
Mode of action · Plant growth promotion

A. Muthukumar (✉) · R. Udhayakumar · R. Naveenkumar
Department of Plant Pathology, Faculty of Agriculture, Annamalai University, Chidambaram 608002, Tamil Nadu, India
e-mail: muthu78ap@yahoo.co.in

R. Udhayakumar
e-mail: udhayaplantpathology@yahoo.co.in

R. Naveenkumar
e-mail: pathonaveen92@yahoo.com

D.K. Maheshwari and K. Annapurna (eds.), *Endophytes: Crop Productivity and Protection*, Sustainable Development and Biodiversity 16,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-66544-3_7

7.1 Introduction

Agricultural augmentation in the twentieth century has been greatly attained through the use of farm machineries, high-yielding varieties, vigorous tillage, irrigation, fertilizers and pesticides (Foley et al. 2005). This is well illustrated by the global use of fertilizers that increased from approx. 27 to 170 million of nutrient tonnes over the past 50 years before 2010 (Bumb and Baanante 1996; Heffer 2013). However, continuous use of fertilizers over a long period leads to deleterious effects on the soil. Accordingly, environmentally safe approaches have to be implemented to maintain sustainable agricultural production to overcome threats that lead to yield loss, including unfavourable environmental conditions to plant stress, as well as biotic stress induced by plant pathogens and pests. Hence, it is necessary for using endophytic bacteria for the biocontrol of plant disease and their management (Jha et al. 2013).

Bacterial endophytes have been explained as bacteria isolated from internal plant parts remain colonized in the internal tissues, not having any harmful effects to the host (Holiday 1989; Schulz and Boyle 2006). Almost 3,00,000 plant species existed on the earth. Among these, endophytes consist of a very few (Strobel et al. 2004). Of these, complete endophytic biology was studies for only few plants. Therefore, the prospects to upbring beneficial endophyties from the diverse genera inhabit in different ecosystems.

Bacteria may live as in soils or attached to the root surface or phyllosphere, and may establish symbiotic relations with plants (Smith and Goodman 1999). Unlike phytopathogens, endophytic bacteria do not cause any symptoms on host plants, and their occurrence is not related to the morphological changes that appear in plant tissues such as formation of root-nodule by symbionts. Endophytes colonize all plant parts (inbetween the spaces of the cell walls and vascular bundles of plant roots, stems and leaves, tissues or flowers, fruits and seeds) (Compant et al. 2011; de Melo Pereira et al. 2012; Trognitz 2014). Population dynamics of endophyte bacteria may vary from 100 to 9×10^9 bacteria/g of plant tissue (Misaghi and Donnedelinger 1990; Chi et al. 2005). Generally, the highest endophytic populations is found in below ground parts when compared to above ground tissues, the apoplastic movement of endophytic bacteria from roots to rice leaves has been showed (Reinhold-Hurek and Hurek 2011). Further, roots are considered as point of invasion of the potential endophytes from soil to the host plant.

Strong union amid host plant and endophytes is mediated through the action of secondary metabolites produced by the microorganisms and the host cells (Reinhold-Hurek and Hurek 2011; Brader et al. 2014). The perusal of literature revealed the varying consequences of endophytic bacteria on plant growth. Bacterial endophytes colonize plant tissue same as that of plant pathogens, which can act as biocontrol agents (Berg et al. 2005). On the other hand, innumerable reports exhibit the endophytic bacteria have the capability to manage several phytopathogens (Sturz and Matheson 1996; Duijff 1997; Krishnamurthy and Gnanamanickam 1997), insects (Azevedo et al. 2000) and nematodes (Hallmann

et al. 1997, 1998). The major mechanism of endophytic bacteria in plant disease control is—(i) to assist nutrient availability and uptake (ii) to enhance stress tolerance and (iii) to provide disease resistance (Ryan et al. 2008; Hamilton et al. 2012).

Endophytic bacteria are correlated with the enhanced plant growth by the production of hormones that increase accessibility of nutrients, such as nitrogen, potassium and phosphorus (Glick 2012). While induced disease resistance activities are allied with the abilities to produce secondary metabolites, such as antibiotics or chitinase enzyme, which can inhibit growth of plant pathogens. Hence they act as biocontrol agents (Christina et al. 2013; Wang et al. 2014). Endophytic bacteria can also induce seedling emergence and stimulate plant growth (Chanway 1997) under stress conditions (Bent and Chanway 1998). Further, endophytic bacteria have the capacity to cope with phytopathogenic fungi with induced systemic resistance (ISR) (Pieterse et al. 2014). Due to their beneficial function such as plant growth promotion and disease control, endophytes can be used in the form of bio-formulations (seed treatment, soil application and seedling dip) in agriculture.

7.2 Nature and Occurrence

Various groups of endophytic bacteria signify their role in ecosystems and plant physiology. These bacteria colonize all plant compartments, generally the intercellular and intracellular spaces of inner tissues. Initial studies on diversity of endophytic bacteria were mostly based on characterization of isolates obtained from the plants either from rhizosphere/phyllosphere region after surface disinfection. Lodewyckx et al. (2002) characterized methods for the isolation and he found that 81 bacterial species which form endophytic associations with plants. The endophytic bacteria and plant association include a vast diversity of bacterial taxa and host plant. The early studies on composition of endophytic communities revealed that different plant hosts harbour similar community of bacterial endophytes (Mundt and Hinkle 1976). The genera of *Bacillus* and *Pseudomonas* are identified as frequently occurring bacteria in agricultural crops (Seghers et al. 2006; Souza et al. 2013). The presence of different endophytic species depends mostly on plants biotic and abiotic environmental factors. A single host plant species comprises several genera and species of endophytes but the tissue type of plant or season of isolation may determine the extent of the endophytic population (Kuklinsky-Sobral et al. 2004; Rosenblueth and Martinez-Romero 2006). An extensive research work conducted on bacterial endopyte communities revealed that although endophytic bacteria colonize entire plant, the roots usually contain higher number of species. Endophytic species mostly belong to the α, β, and γ-proteobacteria subgroups and are closely related to epiphytic species (Kuklinsky-Sobral et al. 2004). Interestingly, the γ-proteo bacteria group is the most diverse and dominant. It has been reported that most of Gram-negative endophytes act as agents of biological control (Kobayashi and Palumbo 2000), while among the Gram-positive bacteria, the

dominant endophytic species are *Bacillus* species (Gupta et al. 2002; Bacon and Hinton 2007).

Most culturable endophytic species belongs to the phylum Proteobacteria, class Firmicutes, Gram-negative and also Bacteroides are less common (Reinhold-Hurek and Hurek 2011). This suggests that 50% of endophytic bacterial communities could be identified and others are over represented based on their capability to grow on synthetic medium. To obtain clear picture of the diversity of endophytic microorganisms, recently a number of studies have been concentrated on identification of unculturable endophytes using novel metagenomic analysis approaches (Akinsanya et al. 2015). To this, direct amplification of microbial DNA from plant tissue samples and application of modern bioinformatics tools allow analysis of a bacterial community composition and its phylogenetic structure inside plant organs or tissues (Chun et al. 2007; Manter et al. 2010; Sessitsch et al. 2012) examined the structure and functions of genes of bacterial endophytes colonizing rice roots in vivo. The results showed the population was superior by members of γ-proteobacteria, comprising mostly of enterobacter-related endophytes. Whereas (Tsurumaru et al. 2015) studied that endophytic colonization on tap root of sugar beet (*Beta vulgari* L.) is a metagenome, who observed that alphaproteobacteria are dominant, followed by the actinobacteria and the betaproteobacteria. Maropola et al. (2015) analysed metagenomic study of the sorghum root and stem microbiome and revealed that both were dominated by bacterial pathogens such as *Agrobacterium, Erwinia*, *Herbaspirillum*, *Microbacterium*, *Pseudomonas, Sphingobacterium* and *Stenotrophomonas* species.

7.3 Plant Colonization with Endophytes

The apical root zone having thin-walled surface of root cells includes cell elongation and the root hair zone (zone of active penetration), and the basal root zone with small cracks are the preferable sites of bacterial attachment and subsequent entry caused by the emergence of lateral roots (zone of passive penetration) (Fig. 7.1). For active invasion, endophytic bacteria must bear the abilities of production of cellulolytic enzymes to hydrolyze exodermal cell walls of plants.

As earlier, the density of bacteria in the rhizosphere and rhizoplane is always higher than in the soil which lacks substances secreted from the roots of plants (Rosenblueth and Martinez-Romero 2006) for example, with seed germination, amount of carbon and nitrogen compounds are excreted into the surrounding environment that invites a large population of microorganisms (Okon and Labandera-Gonzales 1994). The root exudates contain that colonize different bacterial genera and they differ normally according to plant species (Bisseling et al. 2009).

Root colonization or rhizospheric beneficial microorganisms are familiar biocontrol agents and plant growth promoters. They have indirect positive effects on plants with their mechanistic behaviour that mainly includes antagonism against

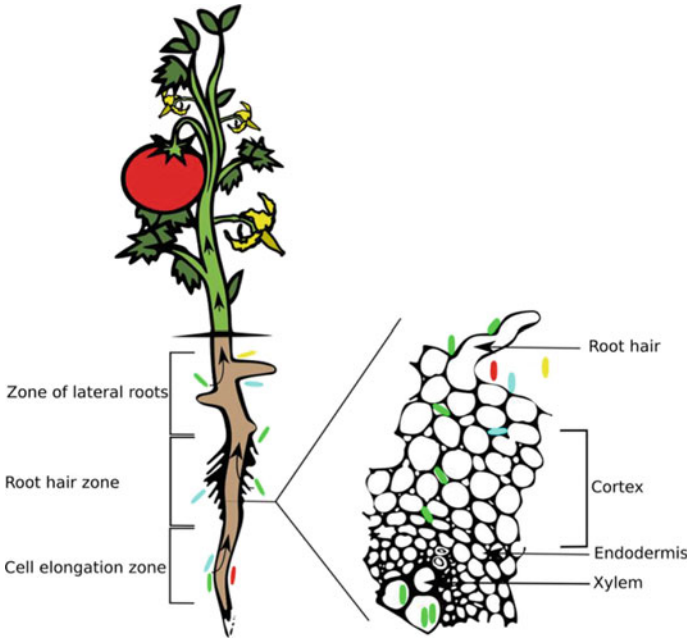


Fig. 7.1 Endophytic bacterial colonization in plants. Bacteria can enter a plant at several root zones as indicated above. Endophytes can either remain at the site of entry (indicated in *blue*) or move deeper inside or occupy the intercellular space of the cortex and xylem vessels (indicated in *green*). *Red* and *yellow* represent rhizospheric bacteria which are unable to colonize inner plant tissues

phytopathogens. Endophytic microorganisms often produce diversity of antimicrobial bioactive compound comprising extracellular chitin or lytic enzymes (glucanase and chitinase). The direct positive effects are production of phytohormones such as IAA, GA, etc. non-symbiotic nitrogen fixation, and biofortification of phosphorous and other essential nutrients include the trace elements to plants for phytostimulation and to the soil for increasing fertilization power of soil (Burdman et al. 2000). Innumerable compounds such as hydrocyanic acids (HCN), DAPG, phenazines, pyrrolnitrin, enzymes and phytohormones to protect plant from toxic effect of fungal pathogens are considered as the significant products to help endophytes to be colonized in rhizosphere (Castro-Sowinski et al. 2007; Ramette et al. 2011; Jousset et al. 2011). Besides, under iron-stress conditions in the soil and on the surface plant, endophytes produce iron-chelator molecule called siderophores used to transport iron in a competitive way and deprived for the pathogenic fungi as essential bioavailable element (Pedraza et al. 2007).

Many rhizosphere microorganisms can activate plant defence mechanisms and induce a systemic response in plants. Bacteria are able to trigger signalling pathways to produce extracellular metabolites with higher toxicity for other microorganism lead to destruction of higher pathogen, called induced systemic resistance

(ISR). Myriad of bacteria has been documented for beneficial effects, alleviation of several abiotic and biotic stresses. *Pseudomonas* and *Bacillus* sp., have been studied as potential candidate to provide ISR to plants (Chakraborty et al. 2006)

In earlier days, autofluorescent protein marker (AFP) were studied using standard microbiological enumeration associated with plant surfaces and in planta protein (AFP) (Tombolini et al. 1997; Tombolini and Jansson 1998). The colonization mechanisms of endophyte colonization have also been investigated to be utilized as β-glucuronidase (GUS) reporter system. James et al. (2002) used this technique in which *Herbaspirillum seropedicae* Z67 was inoculated on to rice seedlings via GUS stain where it acted as most severe oncoleoptiles. It was incultated that the endophytes have entered in the roots via small lesions or cracks in the root tissues at the point from where the lateral root emerged and subsequent to this become colonized in the intercellular spaces of root tissues, paerenchyma and cortical cells, and further disaminated towards xylem vessels of stems and leaves. In the exampled study, it was concluded that a compatible host plant is necessarily needed for successful colonization. An endophyte *Azoarcus* sp. strain BH72 expressed *Nif* genes in rice roots evaluated using proteomic approaches and jasmonic acid treatment to dissect rice roots responsed for colonization (which induces plant defence proteins). The strategies of adaption have been used to decipher the expression vivo expression technology (IVET) and recombination in vivo expression of bacterial gene in the rhizosphere and phyllosphere (Leveau and Lindow 2001; Preston et al. 2001; Zhang et al. 2006) The insights of these studies may provide importance of genes required by bacteria to enter, compete and be colonized in the plant and suppress phytopathogens (Table 7.1).

Table 7.1 List of endophytic bacteria isolated from major agricultural crops

Plant origin	Phylum	Endophytic bacteria	References
Black pepper	Firmicutes	*Bacillus* sp.	Aravind et al. (2009)
	Gamma proteo bacteria	*Pseudomonas* sp.	
Citrus	Firmicutes	*Bacillus cereus*, *B. lentus, B. Pumilis, B. subtilis, B. megaterium*	Araujo et al. (2001)
Cotton	Gamma proteo bacteria	*Enterobacter* sp.	Musson et al. (1995)
Canola	Firmicutes	*Bacillus* sp.	Germida et al. (1998)
	Actinobacteria	*Micrococcus* sp.	
Grapes	β-protobacteria	*Comamonas* sp.	Bell et al. (1995)
	Gamma proteo bacteria	*Pseudomonas cichori*, *Xanthomonas* sp. *Moraxella bovis*, *Enterobacter* sp.	West et al. (2010)
Kallar grass	β-protobacteria	*Azoarcus* sp.	Krause et al. (2006)
Maize	Gamma proteo bacteria	*Kilebsiella pneumoniae*	Fouts et al. (2008)

(continued)

Table 7.1 (continued)

Plant origin	Phylum	Endophytic bacteria	References
Onion	β-protobacteria	*Burkholderia phytofirmans*	Weilharter et al. (2011)
Poplar	Gamma proteo bacteria	*Serratia proteamaculans*	Taghavi et al. (2009)
Potato	β-protobacteria	*Variovorax paradoxus*	Han et al. (2011)
Rough lemon	Gamma proteo bacteria	*Pseudomonas* sp.	Gardner et al. (1982)
	Firmicutes	*Bacillus* sp.	
	Gamma proteo bacteria	*Enterobater* sp.	
Rice	Gamma proteo bacteria	*Pseudomonas* sp.	Stoltzfus et al. (1997)
	Firmicutes	*Bacillus* sp.	
Sugar beet	α-protoeobacteria	*Azospirillium* sp.	Kaneko et al. (2010)
	Actinobacteria	*Corynebacterium* sp.	
Straw berry	α-protoeobacteria	*Pseudomonas fluorescens, P. corrugate, P. tolaasii, Xanthomonas* sp.	Tanprasert and Reed (1997)
Sorghum	β-protobacteria	*Herbaspirillium seropedicae*	Pedrosa et al. (2011)
Tomato	Firmicutes	*Brebacillus brevis*	Patel et al. (2012)
	Gamma proteo bacteria	*Pseudomonas* sp. *P. syringae, P. aeruginosa*	Yang et al. (2011)
Wheat	α-protoeobacteria	*Azorhizobium* sp.	Webster et al. (1997)
	Firmicutes	*B. polymyxa*	Zinniel et al. (2002)
	Actinobacteria	*Mycobacterium* sp.	Iniguez et al. (2004)
Avacado and black grapes	Firmicutes	*Bacillus* sp.	Prasad and Dagar (2014)
Alfalfa	Firmicutes	*B. megaterium*	Ashraf et al. (2015)
Turmeric	Firmicutes	*Bacillus* sp., *B. pumilis*, *B. turingiensis*	Kumar et al. (2016)
	Gamma proteo bacteria	*P. putida*	
	Actinobacteria	*Clavibacter michiganensis*	
Switchgrass	Firmicutes	*B. subtilis, B. pumilus*	Gagne-Bourgue et al. (2013)
	Gamma proteo bacteria	*P. fluorescens*	
	Gamma proteo bacteria	*Serratia* sp.	

(continued)

Table 7.1 (continued)

Plant origin	Phylum	Endophytic bacteria	References
Cloud forest	Gamma proteo bacteria	*P. fluorescens*	Guzmán-Trampe et al. (2015)
Potato	Gamma proteo bacteria	*P. fluorescens*	Rado et al. (2015)
Devil's trumpet	Gamma proteo bacteria	*Pseudomonas* spp.	Abdallah et al. (2016)
Indian fig tree	Gamma proteo bacteria	*P. viridiflava*	Abdallah et al. (2016)
	Actinobacteria	*Streptomyces* sp.	
	Gamma proteo bacteria	*Serratia marcescens*	
Soyabean	Firmicutes	*B. megaterium*	Smita and Dipak (2015)
Tomato	Firmicutes	*Bacillus* sp.	Abbamondi et al. (2016)
	Gamma proteo bacteria	*Pseudomonas* sp.	
	α-proteobacteria	*Rhizobium* sp.	
	Proteobacteria	*Agrobacterium* sp.	
Fenugreek	Firmicutes	*Bacillus* sp.	Jasim et al. (2015)
Khejri tree	Firmicutes	*B. subtilis*	Rekha et al. (2015)
Sugarcane	Gamma proteo bacteria	*Enterobacter*	Rodrigues et al. (2016)
	Firmicutes	*Bacillus* sp.	Anjum and Chandra (2015)
Japanese honeysuckle	Firmicutes	*Bacillus* and *Paenibacillus*	Zhao et al. (2015)
Apple	Proteobacteria	*Micrococcus luteus*	Miliute et al. (2016)
	Firmicutes	*B. subtilis*	
	Gamma proteo bacteria	*P. aeruginosa*	
Sugarcane	Gamma proteo bacteria	*P. fluorescens*	Marcos et al. (2016)

7.4 Endophytic Bacterial Genomics

Till now, very few bacterial endophytes have been sequenced to know their genomic map. There are several bacterial endophytes such as *Enterobacter* sp. 638, *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* R551-3, *Pseudomonas putida* W619, *Serratia proteamaculans* 568 and *Methylobacterium populi* BJ001 still under investigation to assess their genomic sequences (http://www.jgi.doe.gov/). *Azoarcus* sp. strain

BH72 has been studied for nitrogen fixation abilities at genomic level and complete genome was matched with related soil- and plant-associated bacteria (Hurek and Reinhold-Hurek 2003; Krause et al. 2006). Many plant-associated bacteria and pathogens contain N-acyl homoserine lactone-(AHL) for quorum-sensing system (Preston et al. 2001; Buttner and Bonas 2006). Nevertheless, (Krause et al. 2006) another factor for plant microbe interaction has been identified encoded by BH72 genome. It includes Tpe I and II protein secretion system with Type IV surface polysaccharides on pili, and flagella so as to produce chemotaxis proteins and ferric siderophore uptake systems. The valuable biological insight was provided by BH72 genome. In this perspective, it is clear that as much genome sequences of endophyte will be available, much exploration of the mechanisms involved in successful endophyte colonization.

7.5 Post Genomic View of Bacterial EndophyteS

Metagenomics analysis of endophytic bacteria associated with rice plant confirmed few traits that also exist in endophytes. Therefore, these traits evaluated through genomic analysis become potentially important for their interactions with plants. These include entire set of highly specialized bacterial secretion system, except type III due to its non-conserved nature among endophytes that are associated with rice plants. On the other hand, production of cellulolytic and pectinolytic enzymes are of major concerns along with the production of glagellins. Majority of other enzyme also involved in these interactions in terms of degradation of reactive oxygen species (ROS). Further, receptors and transporters for iron uptake also play significant role in intracellular microbial interaction with plant through quorum-sensing systems (QS). Several degradative pathways of plant metabolites and various plant growth-promoting and biocontrol traits such as ACC-deaminase activity, biological nitrogen fixation (BNF) and production of phytohormones and volatile and non-volatile antimicrobial compounds.

Applying postgenomic approaches, such as metaproteomisa, metaproteogenomics and metatranscriptomics, can link genomic potential with plant–endophyte interactions. Recently, a metaproteogenomic approach was used to study the microbial communities in the phyllosphere and rhizosphere of rice (Knief et al. 2011).

7.6 Plant Growth-Promoting Endophytes

Some of the endophytes act as biocontrol agents while others increase plant growth through the production of nutrients and minerals such as nitrogen, phosphate and other nutrients. Infact, quite a few endophytic bacterial genera such as

Pseudomonas, Bacillus, Xanthomonas and *Erwinia* are growth promontory as well as inhibit various diseases causing phytopathogen in plants. Endophytes also promote plant growth by enhance phosphate solubilisation (Verma et al. 2001; Wakelin et al. 2004) IAA production (Lee et al. 2004) siderophore production (Costa and Loper 1994) and facilitating vitamins to plants (Pirttila et al. 2004). The other physiological adjustments include osmotic, stamal regulation and morphological modifications such as alteration in root morphology enhanced immobilization of minerals nutrients along with nitrogen accumulation and its metabolism (Compant et al. 2005a, b).

Free-living and endophytic bacteria use similar mechanism to enhance plant growth and development beside, being different in their efficiency for their beneficial effect. Plant Growth-Promoting Rhizobacteria (PGPR) are able to colonize in the root vicinity thereby promoting plant growth and increase yield. Phytohormones such as IAA contributes for root abundance and hence, provide enhanced minerals and nutrient uptake to the plant. Production of diffusible and non-diffusable antifungal metabolites assists in the biocontrol soil-borne fungi. The detailed mechanism of action of endophytic bacteria is given below (Fig. 7.2).

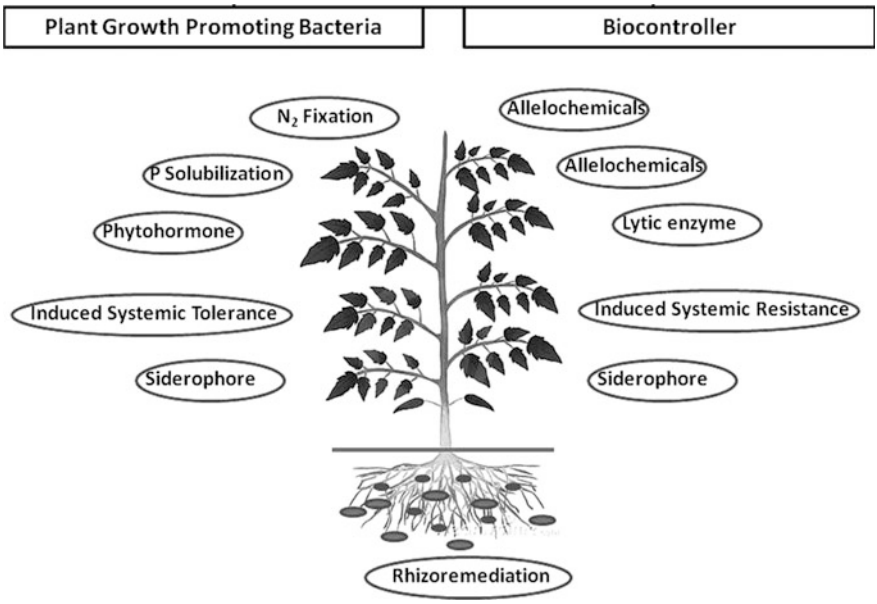


Fig. 7.2 Mechanism of action of endophytic bacteria

7.7 Bacterial Endophytes as Biocontrol Agents for Wilt

Endophytic bacteria isolated from live oak stem showed in vitro antagonism against *Colletotrichum fagacearum* causing Oak wilt (Brooks et al.1994). The endophytic bacterium *Burkholteria cepacia*, isolated from *Asparagus* exhibited antagonistic activity against banana wilt (Pan et al. 1997). Tomato seedlings treated with endophytic *P. fluorescens* as seedling dip increased resistance to wilt disease (M'Piga et al. 1997). Endophytic bacteria isolated from potato tubers showed better antagonistic activity against *F. avenaciarum, F. sambucinum* and *F. oxysporum* causing wilt of many tuber and commercial crops (Sturz et al. 1999).

Endophytic bacteria isolated from mustard and tomato plants, completely inhibited the mycelail growth of *V. dahliae* and *F. oxysporum* f.sp. *lycopersici* in vitro and in vivo, it reduces the disease incidence and also increases the plant growth parameters (more than 75% and increased the plant height and shoot dry weight) (Nejed and Johnson 2000). Endophytic *Pseudomonas* sp. (PDBCEN 8) exhibited maximum mycelia growth inhibition of *Fusarium udum* on PDA. They also recorded that endophytic *Pseudomonas* sp. (PDBCEN 7) exhibited maximum inhibition of *R. solani* on PDA. The same trend was followed in the endophytic *Pseudomonas* sp. (PDBCEN 3) against tomato *Fusarium* wilt (Rangeshwaran et al. 2002). Bhowmik et al. (2002) isolated endophytic bacteria from root and stem region of cotton seedlings and tested for its antagonistic activity against two fungal and one bacterial disease in cotton. Among these, five pseudomonads were highly antagonistic to *R. solani, S. rolfsii* and *X. axonopodis* pv. *malvacearum* (O'Sullivan and O'Gara 1992). Nagarajkumar et al. (2004) also reported that the production of siderophores, secondary metabolites and cell wall degrading enzymes by *Pseudomonas* strains may be responsible for the effective control of plant pathogens including *F. oxysporum* and *R. solani*. Ziedan (2006) revealed that peanut seeds were soaked with endophytic bacterial suspensions before sowing reduced the infection by *Aspergillus niger* and *F. oxysporum* colonization over peanut seed at 30 days after harvesting.

The PGPR strains of Pf1 and TRC 54 were effective in reducing the mycelial growth of *F. oxysporum* f.sp. *cubense* in vitro. The mycelia growth inhibition might be due to the production of enzymes and antibiotics by PGPR strains (Akila et al. 2011). Nandhini et al. (2012) who reported that entophytic bacteria were isolated from root, stem, leaves and fruits and tested for its antagonistic activity against *Fusarium* wilt disease in tomato. All the isolates belonging to four bacterial genera viz., *Bacillus, Pseudomonas, Klebsiella* and *Citrobacter*. The results revealed that only 50% of the isolates exhibited strong antagonistic activity against tomato wilt pathogen. Sundaramoorthy et al. (2012) who reported that the consortium of rhizospheric and phyllospheric bacterial strains (*P. fluorescens* (Pf1) and *B. subtilis* (EPCO16 and EPC5) strains) reduced *Fusarium* wilt incidence in chilli by 17–30% compared to control plants.

Seventy one bacterial endophytes were isolated from root and corm tissues of banana plants. Among these, six endophytic and four rhizospheric bacterial isolates effectively reduced the incidence of *Fusarium* wilt of banana. Later, combinations of these potential bacteria were evaluated for biocontrol abilities. These combination resulted complete suppression of *Fusarium* wilt thereby increased plant growth than that of control (Thangavelu and Muthukathan 2015).

7.7.1 Rots and Damping-Off

One seventy endophytic bacterial strains isolated from cotton and tested against *Rhizoctonia solani* (damping-off in cotton). Among these, 40 strains protected cotton plants from *R. solani* infection (Chen et al. 1995). Benhamou et al. (1998) revealed seed bacterization (*Serratia plymuthica*) with cucumber protected the seedlings from infection by damping-off. Cucumber seeds treated with endophytic bacterium *S. plymuthica* reduce the incidence of damping-off (Benhamou et al. 2000). Bhowmik et al. (2002) reported that seed treatment with endophytic bacterium (PR 8) reduced the incidence of damping-off disease of cotton. On the other hand, Anith et al. (2003) isolated a strain PN-026 from underground shoot portions of rooted cuttings of black pepper and tested against foot rot of pepper. The results revealed that strain PN-026 showed more efficient in reducing *Phytophthora capsici*, which causes severe infestation of foot rot disease. Kishore et al. (2005) reported that *P. aeruginosa* from groundnut rhizosphere (GRE 175) was highly inhibitory to the growth of *S. rolfisii*. Muthukumar (2008) tested nine endophytic bacterial isolates obtained from chilli plants, some of them (isolated from stem and root) exhibited higher inhibition of *P. aphanidermatum* (51.4, 41.7 and 40.0%) causing chilli damping-off. The maximum inhibition on the mycelia growth of *R. bataticola* was in chickpea by *P. fluorescens* strains PFBC-25 and 26 (Khan and Gangopadhyay 2008). Bacterial endophytes (46 strains) obtained from amaranthus and tested against *R. solani* by dual culture technique. Among these, six bacteria exhibited highest mycelia growth inhibition of *R. solani* (Uppala et al. 2009).

About 67 bacterial endophytes were isolated from cassava; they were subjected to 16S rRNA sequencing and FAME analysis. The bacterial profile revealed that 25% of all endophytic isolates belonged to the genus *Bacillus*. Among these, the isolate *B. pumilus* MAIIIM4a showed a strong inhibitory activity against *R. solani*, *P. aphanidermatum* and *S. rolfsii* (Pereira de Melo et al. 2009).

Overall 40 antagonistic bacteria obtained from rhizosphere soil (CRB-1 to CRB-20) and roots (CREB-1 to CREB-20) of chickpea plants. Among these, the isolate CRB-13 and CREB-13 showed maximum inhibition on the mycelial growth of *R. bataticola* (Veena et al. 2014).

7.7.2 Blights and Leaf Spot

Foliar application with *Pseudomonas* spp. induced disease resistance in rice against sheath blight pathogen. In spite of the absence of this bacterium on plant surfaces, its presence in the internal stem led to suppression of disease (Krishnamurthy and Gnanamanickam 1997). Endobacteria bacterium *B. subtilis*, isolated from xylem fluid of chestnuts, suppressed the growth of chestnut blight pathogen, *Cryphonectria parasitica* in vitro. The same bacteria reduced the lesion areas on stems, when applied 3 days prior to challenge inoculation (Wilhelm et al. 1998).

The endophytes, viz., *Bacillus circulance* and *Serratia marcescense* supplemented with chitin inhibited the conidial germination of early and late tikka leaf spot in groundnut (Kishore et al. 2005). Four endophytic bacteria (OS-9, OS-10, OS-11 and OS-12) were isolated from healthy leaves of *Ocimum sanctum* and tested against five plant pathogens namely *R. solani, S. rolfsii, F. solani, A. solani* and *C. lindemuthianum*. Of these, the bacterial strain OS-9 was highly inhibitory to the growth of *R. solani, A. solani, F. solani* and *C. lindemuthianum* while OS-11 alone was found antagonistic tot *A. solani* (Kalraa et al. 2010). The culture filtrate of endophytic bacteria CE-6 exhibited the highest inhibition on the mycelia growth of (61.3%) of *Cercospora* in vitro (Hima et al. 2013).

7.7.3 Powdery Mildew

The endophytic *B. subtilis* strain E1R-j exhibited high antifungal activity against wheat take all disease both in glasshouse and field conditions (Liu et al. 2009). Recently (Gao et al. 2015), who isolated 14 endophytic bacterial strains from wheat leaves and tested against *Blumeria graminis* f.sp. *tritici* causing wheat powdery mildew disease. The results revealed that *B. subtilis* strain (E1R-j) significantly reduced per cent disease index by 90.97% in pot culture under greenhouse conditions.

7.7.4 Rust

The endophytic bacteria was isolated from leaves and branches of *Coffea arabica* and *Coffea robusta* and were tested against leaf rust pathogen *Hemileia vastatrix* by detached leaf and leaf disc method. Of these, the bacterial isolates TG4-Ia (*Bacillus lentimorbus* Dutky) and TF9-Ia (*Bacillus cereus* Frank & Frank) exhibited highest growth inhibition against coffee rust pathogen (Shiomi et al. 2006). An endophytic bacteria E1R-j was isolated from wheat leaves showed strong inhibitory effect on wheat stripe rust in both greenhouse and field conditions (Li et al. 2013).

7.7.5 Downy Mildew

Sixty different endophytic bacterial isolates belonging to different genera were isolated from root and stem tissues of five medicinal plants (*Cymbopogon citratus, Azadirachta indica, Phyllanthus emblica, Boerhaavia diffusa* and *Boerhaavia repens*) and two agricultural crops (*Pisum sativum* and *Sorghum bicolor*) and one weed plant (*Parthenium hysterophorus*) and were tested against pearl millet downy mildew disease. The peral millet seeds were treated with endophytic bacteria; *P. fluorescens* ISR 34 and *Bacillus* sp. ISR 37 recorded greater control of downy mildew disease, by 68 and 63%, respectively. From the above results it is concluded that the endophytic bacterial strains not only reduces the disease incidence but also increased the plant growth by way of induced systemic resistance (Chandrashekhara et al. 2007). Endophytic bacterial isolates obtained from cucumber leaves and tested against *Pseudoperonospora cubensis* causing downy mildew disease. The results revealed that the strain CE8 recorded high level of inhibition against *P. cubensis.* In the field test, the same strain showed high level of control efficacy (42.1%) and disease reduction in cucumber. Further, the phylogenetic analysis based on 16S rDNA identified the strains as *Bacillus* sp. (Sun et al. 2013).

7.7.6 Basal Stem Rot/Ganoderma Wilt/Thanjavur Wilt

An endophytic bacterium *Pseudomonas cepacia* (B3) and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (P3) isolated from root tissues of oil palm exhibited strong inhibition on the growth of *G. boninense* causing ganoderma wilt (Dikin et al. 2003). Histological studies revealed that bacteria endophytes confined to the vascular bundles of the roots taken from symptomless palms (Zaiton et al. 2006). Total of 581 endophytic bacteria were isolated from root tissues of oil palm and tested against *Ganoderma lucidum* cause of wilt pathogen. Among these, three endophytic bacteria namely *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* GanoEB1, *Burkholderia cepacia* GanoEB2, and *Pseudomonas syringae* GanoEB3 were highly effective in inhibiting the mycelia growth of test pathogen. All the three isolates were under field condition. The results revealed that the only isolate *P. aeruginosa* GanoEB1 was highly effective in controlling disease incidence of 13.3–26.7% compared to control (60%) (Ramli et al. 2016).

7.7.7 Post Harvest Fungal Diseases

Finite efforts were made by using endophytic bacteria for the control of storage diseases. Endophytic bacteria were tested to control stone fruit rot pathogens *Monilinia laxa* and *Rhizopus stolonifer* (Pratella et al. 1993). One hundred and

twenty two bacterial strains isolated from different fruits including red pepper, tomato, white plum, egg plant and zucchini. Of these, 20 strains were able to control *M. laxa* in apricot and plum fruits. *R. stolonifer* was less susceptible to antagonistic bacteria than *M. laxa* and only one strain effectively controlled *R. stolonifer* (Pratella et al. 1993).

Endophytic bacteria (*B. subtilis*) isolated from stored apples have been used in the biocontrol of post harvest diseases of apple (Sholberg et al. 1995). Further, an inhibitory compound acidic peptide produced by *B. subtilis*, was responsible for the inhibition of *Botrytis cinerea* but not to *Penicillium expansum* (Bechard et al. 1998). The acidic peptide had a wide spectrum activity against Gram-negative bacteria. Similarly, 175 endophytic bacterial strains were isolated from vegetable produce and were screened for control of *B. cinerea* on pears (Bacon et al. 2001).

Two bacterial strains, *B. amyloliquefaciens* and *B. pumulis*, were effective. Incubating fruits treated with these bacteria at 200 °C for 24 h before cold storage were significantly protected against *B. cinerea* (Mari et al. 1996). The endophytic bacterium *Bacillus thuringiensis* is capable of releasing volatile substances that lead to the inhibition of *Fusarium sambucinum* in potato tubers (Sadfi et al. 2001). Two hundred and fifty eight endophytic bacteria were isolated from chilli leaves and screened against chilli fruit rot pathogen *Colletotrichum capsici* by fruit bioassay method. Of the endophytes tested, *B. megaterium* (ENB-86) recorded the highest suppression of lesion development in chilli fruits (59.66%) (Ramanujam et al. 2012).

The endophytic bacterium *B. lentimorbus* showed highest inhibition on the development of *Botrytis cinerea* causing grey mould disease fruits. This might be due to the production of antifungal substances alpha- and beta-glucosidase (Cheng et al. 2015), while fruits treated with formulation of *Bacillus cereus* CE3 showed effective control of chestnut blight and other fruit rot caused by *Endothia parasitica* (Murr) and *Fusarium solani* and also increased the shelf life of fruits (Cheng et al. 2015). Some other examples of endophytic bacteria against fungal pathogens are shown in Table 7.2.

7.7.8 Nematode Diseases

Endophytic bacteria have an additional advantage in control of phytoparasitic nematodes since the injuries produced by nematodes favour for the entry of bacteria and colonize the root surface and their introduction into the root tissue (Bookbinder et al. 1982; Khan 1993). In cotton and tomato root knot nematode infection, peanut root knot and reniform nematode infection can be effectively controlled by using *B. subtilis* (Sikora 1988). Seven endophytic bacteria, *Aerococcus viridans, B. megaterium, B. subtilis, P. chlororaphis, P. vesicularis, S. marcescens* and

Table 7.2 Biocontrol of endophytic bacteria against fungal pathogens

Endophytic bacterial isolates	Plant origin	Pathogenic fungi	Author
B. pumilus and *Pseudomonas* spp.	Oak	*Fusarium* spp.	Brooks et al. (1994)
Bacillus spp.	Cucumber	*Collectotrichum orbucullariae*	Raupach and Kloepper (1998)
Burkholderia sp.	Sugarcane	*Ustilago scitaminea* and *Fusarium* spp.	Raupach and Kloepper (1998)
Bacillus spp.	Tomato	*F. oxysporum* f.sp. *lycopersici*	Benhamou et al. (2000)
P. aeruginosa 7 NSK2	Tomato	*Botrytis cinerea*	Audenaert et al. (2002a, b)
P. fluorescens EP1	Sugarcane	*Colletotrichum falcatum*	Senthil et al. (2003)
P. fluorescens CHAO	Mousear cress	*Peronospora parasitica*	Lavicoli et al. (2003)
P. fluorescens GRP3	Rice	*Rhizoctonia* sp.	Pathak et al. (2004)
P. putida 5-48	Oak	*Ceratocystis fagacearum*	Compant et al. (2005c)
Burkholderia cepacia		*Fusarium*	Quan et al. (2006)
Bacillus and *Pseudomonas*	Wheat	*F. graminearum*	Nourozian et al. (2006)
B. subtilis and *P. fluorescens*	Peanut	*Aspergillus niger* and *Fusarium oxysporum*	Ziedan (2006)
Burkhloderia phytofirmans Ps JN	Grapevine	*Botrytis cinerea*	Compant et al. (2008)
Bacillus sp.	Cacao	*Pyhtophthora capsici*	Melnick et al. (2008)
B. pumilus SE34	Pea	*F. oxysporum* f.sp. *pisi*	Chaudhary et al. (2009)
P. fluorescens PICF7 and *P. putida*	Olive	*Verticillium dahliae*	Prieto et al. (2009)
B. subtilis	Wheat	*Gaemanomyces graminis tritici*	Liu et al. (2009)
Bacillus spp, *Pseudomonas* spp.	Peanut	*Sclerotinia sclerotiorum, S. minor, S. rolfsii* and *Fusarium solani*	Tonelli et al. (2010)

(continued)

Table 7.2 (continued)

Endophytic bacterial isolates	Plant origin	Pathogenic fungi	Author
Pseudomonas and *Burkholderia*	Banana	*F. oxysporum* f.sp. *cubense*	Fishal et al. (2010)
P. fluorescens 63-28	Pea	*Pythium ultimum* and *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *pisi*	Ardebili et al. (2011)
P. fluorescens 63-28	Tomato	*F. oxysporum* f.sp. *radicis-lycopersici*	Vanitha and Umesha (2011)
Brevibacillus brevis	Tomato	*Botrytis cinerea*	Yang et al. (2011)
B. subtilis	Loblolly pine	*F. circinatum*	Soria et al. (2012)
Bacillus spp., *Pseudomonas* spp.	Soyabean	*R. solani, F. oxysporum* and *S. rolfsii, C. truncatum, A. alternata, Macrophomina phaseolina*	Dalal and Kulkarni (2013)
B. subtilis and *B. megaterium*	Toromiro tree	*Verticillium dahliae*	Lin et al. (2013)
Bacillus sp.	Plants	*F. oxysporum* and *R. solani*	Ohike et al. (2013)
Pseudomonas spp.	Cucumber	*F. oxysporum* f.sp. *cucumerinum*	Ozaktan et al. (2015)
Pseudomonas spp.	Mousear Cress	*V. dahliae*	Iavicoli et al. (2003)

Sphingomonas paucimobilis from cotton and cucumber plants and tested against cucumber root knot nematode. Seed bacterization with endophytic bacteria completely protected cucumber seedlings from *M. incognata* infection (Hallmann et al. 1995).

Culture filtrate of *P. fluorescens* strains CHA0 or CHA0/PME3424 were tested against tomato root knot nematode. The results revealed that the inoculum levels of 10^7, 10^8, 10^9 cfu/g showed greater disease control under glasshouse conditions (Siddiqui and Shaukat 2003). An endophytic bacterium *B. subtilis* strains EPb5, 22, 31 and EPC 16 were effective against root knot nematode, burrowing nematode, root lesion nematode infection in banana (Jonathan and Umamaheswari 2006). Seed bacterization with culture filtrates of endophytic bacteria EB19, EB18, EB16 and EB3 significantly reduced the number of adult females. In another treatment, plants treated with culture filtrates of *B. subtilis, B. cereus* and *Arthrobotrys cladodes* reduced the soil population of *M. incognita* (Vetrivelkalai et al. 2009).

7.7.9 Bacterial Diseases

B. subtilis was isolated from healthy chestnut trees showed strong antagonistic activity against *Cryphonectria parasitica* cause of chestnut blight (Wilhelm et al. 1998). Five strains of *Pseudomonas* inhibited the growth of *X. axonopodis* pv. *malvacearum* and also increased cotton seed germination and seedling growth (12.8%; 22.4%) by 12.8%) (Mondal 1999). The endophytic bacterium *B. amyloliquefaciens*, *B. subtilis* and *B. pumilus* produces several antibiotics (surfactin, iturin, bacillomucine; azalomycin F, surfactin, arthrobactin; surfactin, amphomycin, arthrobactin and valinomycin) which are highly inhibitory to the growth of *X. campestris* pv. *campestris* because of black rot of crucifers (Wulff et al. 2002).

The cotton seeds treated with the endophytic bacterium (Endo PR8) reducing cotyledonary infection with black arm of cotton is caused by *X. campestris* pv. *malvacearum* (Bhowmik et al. 2002). Before planting grapevine shoots should be dipped with endophytic bacterium that produced highest fresh weight of the shoots and roots, and quick growth with more lignin deposits (Barka et al. 2002). Similarly, cotton seeds treated with bacterial endophyte (EPCO 102) showed increased plant vigour under in vivo (Rajendran et al. 2006). Endophytic bacterium (PfG32) was isolated from root region of onion plants and tested against bacterial wilt in tomatoes as seedling dip resulted in reduced incidence of wilt disease because it produces secondary metabolites (Mulya et al. 2006). Foliar spraying and seed soaking with bacterial antagonist *Delftia tsuruhatensis* (strain HR4) was isolated from root region of rice plants showed reduced the bacterial blight infection in range of 7–32% (Han et al. 2005).

Under greenhouse conditions, endophytic *B. subtilis* strain Lu144 remarkably protected mulberry plants against *Ralstonia solanacearum* causing bacterial wilt disease (Ji et al. 2008). Bacterial endophytes such as *Pantoea agglomerans, Pseudomonas* sp. and *Curtobacterium luteum* reduced the growth of *Erwinia carotovora* (Figueiredo et al. 2009). Ninety three isolates of rhizobacteria were tested against *Xanthomonas axonopodis* pv. *malvacearum.* Of these, *B. subtilis* B49 recorded highest inhibitor on the growth of pathogen in vitro and highly effective in controlling bacterial blight of cotton under greenhouse and field conditions (Salaheddin et al. 2010). Bacterial endophytes (*B. amyloliquefaciens* Bg-C31) isolated from *Bruguiera gymnorhiza* showed to be effective in controlling bacterial wilt of chilli under pot and field condition (Hu et al. 2010).

Consortium of endophytic bacterial exhibited higher disease reduction of bacterial blight by two seed-dipping treatments of 24 and 48 h incubation time. The combined application of bacterial endophytes showed better disease reduction of bacterial leaf blight in rice (Susilowati et al. 2012). Endophytic bacterium, *B. subtilis* was applied as seedling dip, soil and foliar application resulted in reduced the bacterial blight infection in rice under laboratory and field condition and it was found to increase the plant growth and yield (Nagendran et al. 2013).

P. fluorescens strain (PDY7) was highly effective in reducing the incidence of bacterial blight of rice (58.83 and 51.88%) under glass house and field condition. This is mainly due to the production of antibiotics called 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol (DAPG) (Velusamy et al. 2013). Twenty six bacterial strains isolated from leaf, root and stem region of mangrove plant (*Rhizopora mucronata*). Among these, highest number bacterial isolates from leaf (38.5%) followed by root (34.5%) and stem (26.9%). Of these, five bacterial strains namely *Serratia, Bacillus, Pseudomonas, Micrococcus* and *Enterobacter* exhibited broad-spectrum of antagonistic activity against fungal and bacterial pathogen (Jose and Christy 2013). Among the bacterial strains tested, strain MB04 and MB08 were highly inhibitory to the growth of *X. campestris pv. oryzae* causing rice bacterial blight (Yuliar 2014).

The endophytic bacteria isolated from tomato plants tested against bacterial wilt pathogen. Of the isolates tested, only Ps1 and Ps8 can inhibit *R. solanacearum* in vitro using seed coat method. In in vivo test, 30 days old tomato seedlings were soaked with endophytic bacteria showed 8.07–9.19% disease suppression within 15–16 days incubation period (Purnawati et al. 2014). Cotton seeds treated with endophytic bacteria strains *B. subtilis* UFLA285 recorded the lowest bacteria blight incidence of 26% (de Medeiros et al. 2015). Four endophytic bacteria isolated from potato stem tissue and it was tested against the growth of *Streptomyces scabies* in agar plate method. The results revealed that all the isolates were highly inhibitory to the growth of test pathogen (Flatley et al. 2015).

7.8 Conclusion

Plant pathogenic fungi particularly *Pythium, Phytophthora, Sclerospora, Rhizoctonia, Peronosclerospora* and *Plasmopara* cause enormous crop losses. At present, fungicides are the only source to control plant diseases but they have several disadvantages that (i) many of them are toxic to human being and animals, and (ii) that develop further resistance to the pathogen. Several important questions remain unanswered concerning the practical use of endophyte 'supplements' in agriculture. However, with the correct management, they hold potential for the control of current and emerging pathogens, as well as biotic stresses, as we encounter deviation in these through climate change. This is likely to be achieved through a better understanding of signalling between the host plant and the microbiome, and, ultimately, the manipulation of root exudation profiles to recruit a more beneficial root microbiome, of which the endosphere is an integral part. The quality of these BCAs can be further increased by using fundamental knowledge to improve methods for their production and to increase their shelf life.

References

Abbamondi GR, Tommanaro G, Weyens N, Thijs S, Sillen W, Gkorezis P, Iodice C, Rangel W, Nicolaus B, Vangronsveld J (2016) Plant growth promoting effects of rhizosphere and endophytic bacteria associated with different tomato cultivars and new tomato hybrids. Chem Biol Technol Agric 3:1

Abdallah RAB, Trabelshi BM, Nefzi A, Khiareddine HJ, Remadi MD (2016) Isolation of endophytic bacteria from *Withania somnifera* and assessment of their ability to suppress *Fusarium* wilt disease in tomato and to promote plant growth. J Plant Pathol Microbiol 17:352

Akila R, Rajendran L, Harish S, Saveetha K, Raguchander T, Samiyappan R (2011) Combined application of botanical formulations and bio-control agents for the management of *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *cubense* (Foc) causing *Fusarium* wilt in banana. Biologic Cont 57:175–183

Akinsanya MA, Goh JK, Lim SP, Yien Ting AS (2015) Metagenomics study of endophytic bacteria in Aloe vera using next-generation technology. Genom Data 6:159–163

Anith KN, Radhakrishnan NV, Manomohandas TP (2003) Screening of antagonistic bacteria for biological control of nursery wilt of black pepper (*Piper nigrum*). Microbiologic Res 158:91–97

Anjum N, Chandra R (2015) Endophytic bacteria: optimization of isolation procedure from various medicinal plants and their preliminary characterization. Asian J Pharma Clin Res 8 (4):33–238

Aravind R, Dinu A, Eapen Kumar SJ, Ramana KV (2009) Isolation and evaluation of endophytic bacteria against plant parasitic nematodes infesting BlackPepper (*Piper nigrum* L.). Indian J Nematol 39:211–217

Araujo WL, Maccheroni WJ, Aguilar-Vildoso CI, Barroso PAV, Saridakis HO, Azevedo JL (2001) Variability and interactions between endophytic bacteria and fungi isolated from leaf tissues of citrus root stocks. Can J Microbiol 47:229–236

Ardebili ZO, Ardebili NO, Hamdi M (2011) Physiological effects of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* CHA0 on tomato (*Lycopersicon esculentum* Mill.) plants and its possible impact on *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici*. Australian J Crop Sci 5:1631–1638

Ashraf YZ, Khalifa AM, Alsyeeh MA, Almalki SF (2015) Characterization of the plant growth promoting bacterium, *Enterobacter cloacae* MSR1, isolated from roots of non-nodulating *Medicago sativa*. Saudi J Biologic Sci 23(1):79–86

Audenaert K, Pattery T, Cornelis P, Höfte M (2002a) Induction of systemic resistance to *Botrytis cinerea* in tomato by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* 7NSK2: role of salicylic acid, pyochelin and pyocyanin. Mol Plant-Microb Interac 15:1147–1156

Audenaert K, De Meyer GB, Höfte M (2002b) Abscisic acid determines basal susceptibility of tomato to *Botrytis cinerea* and suppresses salicylic acid-dependent signalling mechanisms. Plant Physiol 128:491–501

Azevedo JL, Maccheroni WJ, Pereira JO, Araujo WL (2000) Endophytic microorganisms: a review on insect control and recent advances on tropical plants. Elec J Biotechnol 3:40–65

Bacon CW, Hinton DM (2007) Bacterial endophytes: the endophytic niche, its occupants and its utility. Plant Associated Bacteria 155–194

Bacon CW, Yates IE, Hinton DM, Meredith F (2001) Biological control of *Fusarium moniliforme* in maize. Environ Health Persp 2:325–332

Barka EA, Gognies S, Nowak JC, Audran S, Belarbi A (2002) Inhibitory effect of endophyte bacteria on *Botrytis cinerea* and its influence to promote the grapevine growth. Biol Cont 24:135–142

Bechard J, Eastwell KC, Sholberg PL, Mazza G, Skura B (1998) Isolation and partial chemical characterization of an antimicrobial peptide produced by strain of *Bacillus subtilis*. J Agric Food Chem 46:5355–5361

Bell CR, Dickie GA, Harvey WLG, Chan JWYF (1995) Endophytic bacteria in grapevine. Can J Microbiol 41:46–53

Benhamou N, Kloepper JW, Tuzun S (1998) Induction of resistance against *Fusarium* wilt of tomato by combination of chitosan with an endophytic bacterial strain: ultrastructural and cytochemistry of the host response. Planta 204:153–168

Benhamou N, Gagn S, Le Quere D, Dehbi L (2000) Bacteria mediated induced resistance in cucumber: beneficial effect of the endophytic bacterium *Serratia plymuthica* on the protection against infection by *Pythium ultimum.* The American Phytopathological Society 90:45–55

Bent E, Chanway CP (1998) The growth-promoting effects of a bacterial endophyte on lodgepole pine are partially inhibited by the presence of other rhizobacteria. Can J Microbiol 44:980–988

Berg G, Krechel A, Ditz M, Sikora RA, Ulrich A, Hallmann J (2005) Endophytic and ectophytic potato-associated bacterial communities differ in structure and antagonistic function against plant pathogenic fungi. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 51:215–229

Bhowmik B, Singh RP, Jayaraman J, Verma VP (2002) Population dynamics of cotton endophytic *Pseudomonas* their antagonism and protective action against the major pathogens of cotton. Indian Phytopathol 55:124–132

Bisseling T, Dangl JL, Schulze-Lefert P (2009) Next-generation communication. Science 324:691

Bookbinder MG, Bloom JR, Lukezic FL (1982) Interaction among selected endoparasitic nematode and three *Pseudomonas* on alfalfa. J Nematol 14:105–109

Brader G, Compant S, Mitter B, Trognitz F, Sessitsch A (2014) Metabolic potential of endophytic bacteria. Curr Opin Biotechnol 27:30–37

Brooks DS, Gonzalez CF, Appel DN, Filer TH (1994) Evaluation of endophytic bacteria as potential biological control agent for oak wilt. Biologic Cont 4:373–381

Bumb BL, Baanante CA (1996) World trends in fertilizer use and projections to 2020. International Food Policy Research Institute, pp 1–4

Burdman S, Jurkevitch E, Okon Y (2000) Recent advance in the use of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) in agriculture. In: Subba Rao NS, Dommergues YR (eds) Microbial interaction in agriculture forestry, vol 2, pp 229–250

Buttner D, Bonas U (2006) How plant pathogenic bacteria orchestrate type III secretion. Curr Opin Microbiol 9:193–200

Castro-Sowinski S, Herschkovitz Y, Okon Y, Jurkevitch E (2007) Effects of inoculation with plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria on resident rhizosphere microorganisms. FEMS Microbiol Lett 276:1–11

Chakraborty U, Chakraborty B, Basnet M (2006) Plant growth promotion and induction of resistance in *Camellia sinensis* by *Bacillus megaterium*. J Basic Microbiol 46:186–195

Chandrashekhara SN, Saligrama A, Deepak KN, Amruthesh NP, Shetty HS (2007) Endophytic bacteria from different plant origin enhance growth and induce downy mildew resistance in Pearl Millet. Asian J Plant Pathology 1:1–11

Chanway CP (1997) Inoculation of tree roots with plant growth promoting soil bacteria: an emerging technology for reforestation. Forest Sci 43:99–112

Chaudhary RG, Dhar V, Singh RK (2009) Association of fungi with wilt complex of lentil at different crop growth stages and moisture regimes. Arch Phytopathol Plant Protec 42:340–343

Chen Y, Mei R, Lu S, Liu L, Kloepper JW (1995) The use of increasing bacteria (YIB) as plant growth promoting rhizobacteria in chinese agriculture. In: Utkheade R (ed) Management of soil-borne diseases. M/S Kalyani publishers, New Delhi

Cheng H, Linling LI, Juan HUA, Honghui YUAN, Shuiyuan C (2015) Preliminary preparation of endophytic bacteria CE3 wettable powder for biological control of post harvest disease. Notulae Botanicae Horti Agrobotanici 43(1):159–164

Chi F, Yang P, Han F, Jing Y, Shen S (2005) Proteomic analysis of rice seedlings infected by *Sinorhizobium meliloti* 1021. Proteomics 10:1861–1874

Christina A, Christapher V, Bhore SJ (2013) Endophytic bacteria as a source of novel antibiotics: an overview. Pharmacognosy Reviews 7:11–16

Chun J, Lee JH, Jung Y, Kim Y, Kim M, Kim S, Lim YW (2007) Taxon: a web-based tool for the identification of prokaryotes based on 16S ribosomal RNA gene sequences. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 57:2259–2261

Compant D, Duffy B, Nowak J, Clément C, Barka EA (2005a) Use of plant growth promoting bacteria for biocontrol of plant diseases: principles, mechanisms of action, and future prospects. Appl Eviron Microbiol 71:4951–4959

Compant S, Reiter B, Sessitsch A, Nowak J, Clement C Barka EA (2005b) Endophytic colonization of *Vitis vinifera* L. by a plant growth-promoting bacterium, *Burkholderia* sp. strain PsJN. Appl Eviron Microbiol 71:1685–1693

Compant S, Duffy B, Nowak J, Clément C, Ait Barka E (2005c) Use of plant growth-promoting bacteria for bio-control of plant diseases: principles, mechanisms of action, and future prospects. Appl Environ Microbiol 45: 4951-4959

Compant S, Reiter B, Sessitsch B, Nowak J, Clement C, Ait Barka E (2008) Diversity and occurrence of *Burkholderia* spp. in the natural environment. FEMS Microbiologic Rev 32:607–626

Compant S, Mitter B, Colli-Mull B, Gangl JG, Sessitsch A (2011) Endophytes of grapevine flowers, berries, and seeds: Identification of cultivable bacteria, comparison with other plant parts, and visualization of niches of colonization. Microb Ecol 62:188–197

Costa JM, Loper JE (1994) Characterization of siderophore production by the biological- control agent *Enterobacter cloacae.* Mol Plant Microbe Interac 7:440–448

Dalal J, Kulkarni N (2013) Antagonistic and plant growth promoting potentials of indigenous endophytic bacteria of soybean (*Glycine max* (L) Merril). Curr Res Microbiol Biotechnol 1 (2):62–69

de Medeiros FHVD, Souza RMD, Ferro HM, Zanotto E, Machado JDC (2015) Screening of endospore-forming bacteria for cotton seed treatment against bacterial blight and damping-off. Adv Plants Agricul Res 2(4):56–61

de Melo Pereira GV, Magalhaes KT, Lorenzetii ER, Souza TP, Schwan RF (2012) A multiphasic approach for the identification of endophytic bacterial in strawberry fruit and their potential for plant growth promotion. Microb Ecol 63(2):405–417

Dekkers LC, Mulders CM, Phoelich CC, Chin-A-Woeng A, Wijfjes MAHM, Lugtenberg BJJ (2000a) The *sss* colonization gene of the tomato-*Fusarium* f.sp. *radicis-lycopersici* biocontrol strain *Pseudomonas fluorescens* WCS365 can improve root colonization of other wild type *Pseudomonas* spp. Bacteria. Mol Plant Microb Interact 13:1177–1183

Dikin A, Sijam K, Zainal Abidin MA, Idris AS (2003) Biological control of seed borne pathogen of oil palm, *Schizopyllum commune* Fr. with antagonistic bacteria. Int J Agric Biol 5:507–512

Duijff BJ, Gianinazzi-Pearson V, Lemanceau P (1997) Involvement of the outer membrane lipopolysaccharides in the endophytic colonization of tomato roots by biocontrol *Pseudomonas fluorescens* strain WCS417r. New Phytol 135:325–334

Figueiredo S, Poirel L, Croize J, Recule C, Nordmann P (2009) In vivo selection of reduced susceptibility to carbapenems in Acinetobacter baumannii related to ISAba1-mediated over expression of the natural blaOXA-66 oxacillinase gene. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 53:2657–2659

Fishal EM, Meon S, Yun M (2010) Induction of tolerance to fusarium wilt and defense-related mechanisms in the plantlets of susceptible Berangan Banana pre-inoculated with *Pseudomonas* sp. (UPMP3) and *Burkholderia* sp. (UPMB3). Agric Sci China 9:1140–1149

Flatley A, Ogle L, Noel A, Fraley E, Goodman A, Donna B (2015) Isolation of possible biocontrol endophytic bacteria from *Solanum tuberosum* effective against *Streptomyces scabies.* Poster Sessions 7

Foley JA, Defries R, Asner GP, Barford C, Bonan G, Carpenter SR, Chapin FS, Coe MT, Daily GC, Gibbs HK, Helkowski JH, Holloway T, Howard EA, Kucharik CJ, Monfreda C, Patz JA, Prentice IC, Ramankutty N, Snyder PK (2005) Global consequences of land use. Science 309:570–574

Fouts DE, Tyler HL, De Boy RT, Daugherty S, Ren Q, Badger JH (2008) Complete genome sequence of the N_2-fixing broad host range endophyte *Klebsiella pneumoniae* 342 and virulence predictions verified in mice. PLoS Genet 4:10–14

Gagne-Bourgue F, Aliferis KA, Seguin P, Rani M, Samson R, Jabaji S (2013) Isolation and characterization of indigenous endophytic bacteria associated with leaves of switch grass (*Panicum virgatum* L.) cultivars. J Appl Microbiol 114:836–853

Gao X, Yufei G, Yunxia H, Qingmei H, Zhensheng K, Huang HL (2015) Endophytic *Bacillus subtilis* strain E1R-J is a promising biocontrol agent for wheat powdery mildew. Biomed Res Int 1–8

Gardner JW, Feldman AW, Zablotowicz M (1982) Identity and behavior of xylem-residing bacteria in rough lemon roots of Florida citrus trees. Appl Environ Microbiol 43:1335–1342

Germida JJ, Siciliano SD, Renato de Freitas J, Seib AM (1998) Diversity of root- associated bacteria associated with field-grown canola (*Brassica napus* L.) and wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.). FEMS Microbiol Ecol 26:43–50

Glick BR (2012) Plant growth-promoting bacteria: mechanisms and applications. Scientifica 1–15

Gupta C, Dubey R, Maheshwari DK (2002) Plant growth enhancement and suppression of *Macrophomina phaseolina* causing charcoal rot of peanut by fluorescent *Pseudomonas*. Biol Fertil Soil 35:399–405

Guzmán-Trampe S, Lemus D, Jiménez O, Ruiz-Villafán B, García-Carrancá A, Hernández-Fernández R, García-Zepeda E, Rodríguez-Sanoja R, Macías-Rubalcava ML, Sánchez S (2015) Evaluation of the potential bioactivity of an endophytic bacteria isolated from *Magnolia dealbata* Zucc. Int J Curr Microbiol Appl Sci 4(4):515–525

Hallmann J, Kloepper JW, Rodriguez-Kabana R, Sikora RA (1995) Endophytic rhizobacteria as antagonists of *Meloidogyne incognita* on cucumber. Phytopathology 85:1136

Siddiqui IA, Shaukat SS (2003) Plant species, hostage and host genotype effects on Meloidogyne incognita bio-control by *Pseudomonas fluorescens*strain CHAO and its genetically-modified derivatives. J Phytopathol 151:231–238

Hallmann J, Quadt-Hallmann A, Mahaffee WF, Kloepper JW (1997) Bacterial endophytes in agricultural crops. Can J Microbiol 43:895–914

Hallmann J, Quadt-Hallmann A, Rodr´ıguez-Kabana R, Kloepper JW (1998) Interactions between *Meloidogyne incognita* and endophytic bacteria in cotton and cucumber. Soil Biol Biochem 30:925–937

Hamilton CE, Gundel PE, Helander M, Saikkonen K (2012) Endophytic mediation of reactive oxygen species and antioxidant activity in plants: a review. Fungal Divers 54:1–10

Han J, Sun L, Dong X, Cai Z, Sun X, Yang H, Wang Y, Song W (2005) Characterization of a novel plant growth-promoting bacteria strain *Delftia tsuruhatensis* HR4 both as a diazotroph and a potential biocontrol agent against various plant pathogens. Syst Appl Microbiol 28:66–76

Han JI, Choi HK, Lee SW (2011) Complete gemone sequence of the matabloically versatile plant growth promoting endophyte *Variovorax paradoxius* S110. J Bacteriol 193:1183–1190

Heffer P (2013) Assessment of fertilizer use by crop at the global level, 2010–2010/11. 1–9

Hima VM, Surendra V, Ramana Reddy K, Eswara Reddy NP, Bhaskar Reddy BV, Chowdappa P (2013) Leaf endophyte for the management of early leaf spot of groundnut. Indian J Plant Pathol 41:147–151

Holiday P (1989) A dictionary of plant pathology. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge

Hu HQ, Le XS, He H (2010) Characterization of an antimicrobial material from a newly isolated *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* from mangrove for biocontrol of *Capsicum* bacterial wilt. Biol Control 54:359–365

Hurek T, Reinhold-Hurek B (2003) *Azoarcus* sp. strain BH72 as a model for nitrogen-fixing grass endophytes. J Biotechnol 106:169–178

Iavicoli A, Boutet E, Buchala A, Metraux JP (2003) Induced systemic resistance in A*rabidopsis thaliana* in response to root inoculation with *Pseudomonas fluorescens* CHA0. Mol Plant Microb Interac 16:851–858

Iniguez AL, Dong YM, Triplett EW (2004) Nitrogen fixation in wheat provided by *Klebsiella pneumoniae* 342. Mol Plant Microb Interac 7:1078–1085

James EK, Gyaneshwar P, Mathan N, Barraquio WL, Reddy PM, Iannetta PP, Olivares FL, Ladha JK (2002) Infection and colonization of rice seedlings by the plant growth promoting bacterium *Herbaspirillum seropedicae* Z67. Mole Plant Microb Interac 15:894–906

Jasim B, Geethu PR, Mathew J, Radhakrishnan EK (2015) Effect of endophytic *Bacillus* sp. from selected medicinal plants on growth promotion and diosgenin production in *Trigonella foenum-graecum*. Plant Cell Tissue Organ Culture 122:565–572

Jha PN, Gupta G, Jha P, Mehrotra R (2013) Association of rhizospheric/endophytic bacteria with plants: a potential gateway to sustainable agriculture. Green J Agric Sci 3:73–84

Ji X, Lu G, Gai Y, Zheng C, Mu Z (2008) Biological control against bacterial wilt and colonization of mulberry by an endophytic *Bacillus subtilis* strain. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 65:565–573

Jonathan EI, Umamaheswari R (2006) Biomanagement of nematodes infesting banana by bacterial endophytes (*Bacillus subtilis*). Indian J Nematol 36:30–233

Jose AC, Christy PH (2013) Assessment of antimicrobial potential of endophytic bacteria isolated from *Rhizophora mucronata*. Int J Curr Microbiol Appl Sci 2(10):188–194

Jousset A, Rochat L, Lanoue A, Bonkowski M, Keel C, Scheu S (2011) Plants respond to pathogen infection by enhancing the antifungal gene expression of root-associated bacteria. Mol Plant Microb Interac 24:352–358

Kalraa A, Darokar MP, Mahesh C, Nitin A, Singh AK (2010) Endophytic bacteria from *Ocimum sanctum* and their yield enhancing capabilities. Curr Microbiol 60:167–171

Kamilova F, Validov S, Azarova T, Mulders I, Lugtenberg B (2005) Enrichment for enhanced competitive plant root tip colonizers selects for a new class of biocontrol bacteria. Environ Microbiol 7:1809–1817

Kaneko T, Minamisawa K, Isawa T, Nakatsukasa H, Mitsui H, Kawaharada Y (2010) Complete genomic structure of the cultivated rice endophyte *Azospirillum* sp. B510. DNA Res 17:37–50

Khan MW (1993) Mechanisms of interaction between nematode and other plant pathogens. In: Khan MW (ed) Nematode Interactions. Chapman and Hall, London, pp 55–78

Khan MA, Gangopadhyay (2008) Efficacy of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* in controlling root rot of chickpea caused by *Macrophomina phaseolina.* J Mycol Plant Pathol 38:580–587

Kishore GK, Suresh P, Podile AR (2005) Biological control of collar rot disease with road-spectrum antifungal bacteria associated with groundnut. Can J Microbiol 51:123–132

Knief C, Delmotte N, Chaffron S, Stark M, Innerebner G, Wassmann R, Von Mering C, Vorholt JA (2011) Meta proteogenomic analysis of microbial communities in the phyllosphere and rhizosphere of rice. Int Soc Microb Ecol 11:1–13

Kobayashi DY, Palumbo JD (2000) Bacterial endophytes and their effects on plants and uses in agriculture. Microbial Endophytes 199–233

Krause A, Ramakumar A, Bartels D, Battistoni F, Bekel T, Boch J (2006a) Complete genome of the mutualistic, N_2-fixing grass endophyte *Azoarcus* sp. strain BH72. Nat Biotechnol 24:1385–1391

Krishnamurthy K, Gnanamanickam SS (1997) Biological control of sheath blight of rice: Induction of systemic resistance in rice by plant-associated *Pseudomonas* spp. Curr Sci 72:331–334

Kuklinsky-Sobral K, Araujo WL, Mendonca C, Geran Piskala LC, Azevedo JL (2004) Isolation and characterization of soybean-associated bacteria and their potential for plant growth promotion. Environ Microbiol 6:1244–1251

Kumar A, Singh R, Yadav A, Giri DD, Singh PK, Pandey KD (2016) Isolation and characterization of bacterial endophytes of *Curcuma longa* L. Biotechnology 6(1):60

Lavicoli A, Boutet E, Buchela A, Métraux JP (2003) Induced systemic resistance in *Arabidopsis thaliana* in response to root inoculation with *Pseudomonas fluorescens* CHA0. Mol Plant Microb Interact 16:851–858

Lee S, Flores-Encarnacion M, Contreras-Zentella M, Garcia-Flores L, Escamilla JE, Kennedy C (2004) Indole-3-acetic acid biosynthesis is deficient in *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus* strains with mutations in cytochrome C biogenesis genes. J Bacteriol 186:5384–5391

Leveau JH, Lindow SE (2001) Appetite of an epiphyte: quantitative monitoring of bacterial sugar consumption in the phyllosphere. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 98:3446–3453

Li H, Zhao J, Feng H, Huang LL, Kang ZS (2013) Biological control of wheat stripe rust by an endophytic *Bacillus subtilis* strain E1R-j in greenhouse and field trials. Crop Protection 43:201–206

Lin BY, Zhang RY, Tan ZQ (2013) Preliminary study of antimicrobial substance produced by *Bacillus subtilis* B25. Guangdong Acad Agric Sci 1:82–84

Liu BH, Qiao L, Huang (2009) Biological control of take-all in wheat by endophytic *Bacillus subtilis* E1R-j and potential mode of action. Biologic Cont 49:277–285

Lodewyckx C, Vangronsveld J, Porteous F, Bmoore ER, Taghavi S, Mezgeay M, Van der Lelie D (2002) Endophytic bacteria and their potential applications. Crit Rev Plant Sci 21:583–606

M'Piga P, Belanger RR, Paulitz TC, Benhamou N (1997) Increased resistance to *Fusarium oxysporum* f.sp. *radicis-lycopersici* in tomato plants treated with endophytic bacterium *Pseudomonas fluorescens* strain 63-28. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 50:31–32

Manter DK, Delgado JA, Holm DG, Stong RA (2010) Pyrosequencing reveals a highly diverse and cultivar specific bacterial endophyte community in potato roots. Microb Ecol 60:157–166

Marcos FC, Correia I, de Paula Freitas R, Adriana Parada S, Ribeiro V, Machado E Caruso, de Andrade LAMM (2016) Endophytic bacteria affect sugarcane physiology without changing plant growth. Bragantia 75(1):1–9

Mari M, Guizzardi M, Pratella GC (1996) Biological control of gray mould in pear by antagonistic bacteria. Biol Cont 7:30–37

Maropola MK, Ramond JB, Trindade M (2015) Impact of metagenomic DNA extraction procedures on the identifiable endophytic bacterial diversity in *Sorghum bicolor* (L. Moench). J Microbiologic Method 112:104–117

Melnick LR, Nina K, Zidack, Bryan A, Bailey, Siela N, Maximova, Guiltinan M, Paul A, Backman (2008) Bacterial endophytes: *Bacillus* spp. from annual crops as potential biological control agents of black pod rot of cacao. Biol Cont 46:46–56

Miliute I, Buzaite O, Gelvonauskiene D, Sasnauskas A, Stanys V, Baniulis D (2016) Plant growth promoting and antagonistic properties of endophytic bacteria isolated from domestic apple. Zemdirbyste-Agricul 103(1):77–82

Misaghi IJ, Donnedelinger CR (1990) Endophytic bacteria in symptom-free cotton plants. Phytopathol 180:808–811

Mondal KK (1999) Beneficial effects of indigenous cotton rhizobacteria on seed germinability, growth promotion and suppression of bacterial blight disease. Indian Phytopathol 52:228–235

Mulya K, Watanabe M, Goto Takikawa M, Tsuyumu S (2006) Suppression of bacterial wilt disease in tomato by root dipping with *Pseudomonas fluorescens* PfG32: the role of antibiotic substances and siderophore production. Ann Phytopathol Soc 6:134–140

Mundt JO, Hinkle NF (1976) Bacteria within ovules and seeds. Appl Environ Microbiol 32:694–698

Musson G, McInroy JA, Kloepper JW (1995) Development of delivery systems for introducing endophytic bacteria into cotton. Biocontr Sci Technol 5:407–416

Muthukumar A (2008) Management of chilli damping-off caused by *Pythium aphanidermatum* (Edson) Fitz. with bacterial endophytes (*Pseudomonas fluorescens*) in glasshouse conditions. Adv Plant Sci 21:295–298

Nagarajkumar M, Bhaskaran R, Velazhahan R (2004) Involvement of secondary metabolites and extracellular lytic enzymes produced by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* in inhibition of *Rhizoctonia solani*, the rice sheath blight pathogen. Microbiologic Res 159:73–81

Nagendran K, Karthikeyan G, Faisal M, Muthuraj Raveendran P, Prabakar K, Raguchander T (2013) Management of bacterial leaf blight disease in rice with endophytic bacteria. World Appl Sci J 28:2229–2241

Nandhini S, Sendhilvel V, Babu S (2012) Endophytic bacteria from tomato and their efficacy against *Fusarium oxysporum* f.sp. *lycopersici*, the wilt pathogen. J Biopest 5:178–185

Nejed P, Johnson PA (2000) Endophytic bacteria induced growth promotion and wilt disease suppression in oil seed rape and tomato. Biologic Cont 18:208–215

Nourozian J, Etebarian HR, Khodakaramian G (2006) Biological control of *Fusarium graminearum* on wheat by antagonistic bacteria. Songklanakarin J Sci Technol 28:29–38

O'Sullivan D, O'Gara F (1992) Traits of fluorescent pseudomonads involved in suppression of plant root pathogens. Microbiol Rev 56:662–678

Ohike T, Makuni K, Okanami MA, Ano T (2013) Screening of endophytic bacteria against fungal plant pathogens. J Environ Sci 25:122–126

Okon Y, Labandera-Gonzales CA (1994) Agronomic application of *Azospirillum*: an evaluation of 20 years worldwide field inoculation. Soil Biol Biochem 26:1591–1601

Ozaktan H, Çakır B, Gül A, Yolageldi L, Akköprü, A (2015) Isolation and evaluation of endophytic bacteria against *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *cucumerinum* infecting cucumber plants. Austin J Plant Biol 1(1):1003

Pan MJ, Rademan S, Kunert K, Hastings JW (1997) Ul-trastructural studies on the colonization of banana tissue and *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *cubense* race 4 by the endo-phytic bacterium *Burkholderia cepacia*. J Phytopa-thol 145:479–486

Patel A, Hardik K, Patel H, Rajesh V, Khristi SM, Geetha R (2012) Isolation and characterization of bacterial endophytes from *Lycopersicon esculentum* plant and their plant growth promoting characteristics. Nepal J Biotechnol 2:37–52

Pathak A, Sharma A, Johri BN (2004) *Pseudomonas* strain GRP_3 induces systemic resistance to sheath blight in rice. Int Rice Res Notes 29:35–36

Pedraza R, Motok J, Tortora M, Salazar S, Díaz-Ricci J (2007) Natural occurrence of *Azospirillum brasilense* in strawberry plants. Plant Soil 295:169–178

Pedrosa FO, Monteiro RA, Wassem R (2011) Genome of *Herbaspirillum seropedicae* strain SmR1, a specialized diazotrophic endophyte of tropical grasses. PLoS Genet 7:10–16

Pereira de Melo FM, Fátima Fiore M, Beraldo A, de Moraes L, Estela Silva-Stenico M, Scramin M, de Araújo TS, Soares de Melo I (2009) Antifungal compound produced by the cassava endophyte *Bacillus pumilus* MAIIIM4a. Scientia Agricola 66:15–26

Pieterse CM, Zamioudis C, Berendsen RL, Weller DM, Van Wees SC, Bakker PA (2014) Induced systemic resistance by beneficial microbes. Ann Rev Phytopathol 52:347–375

Pirttila A, Joensuu P, Pospiech H, Jalonen J, Hohtola A (2004) Bud endophytes of scots pine produce adenine derivatives and other compounds that affect morphology and mitigate browning of callus cultures. Physiologic Plant Pathol 121:305–312

Prasad P, Dagar S (2014) Identification and characterization of endophytic bacteria from fruits like Avacado and Black grapes. Int J Curr Microbiol Appl Sci 3:937–947

Pratella GC, Mari M, Guizzardi F, Folchi A (1993) Preliminary studies on the efficiency of endophytes in the biological control of the postharvest pathogens *Monilinia laxa* and *Rhizopus stolonifer* in stone fruit. Postharv Biol Technol 3:361–368

Preston GM, Bertrand N, Rainey PB (2001) Type III secretion in plant growth-promoting *Pseudomonas fluorescens* SBW25. Mol Microbiol 41:999–1014

Prieto P, Navarro-Raya C, Valverde-Corredor A, Amyotte SG, Dobinson KF, Mercado-Blanco J (2009) Colonization process of olive tissues by *Verticillium dahliae* and its in planta interaction with the biocontrol rootendophyte *Pseudomonas fluorescens* PICF7. Microb Biotechnol 2:499–511

Purnawati A, Sastrahidayat IR, Abadi AL, Hadiastono T (2014) Endophytic bacteria as biocontrol agents of tomato bacterial wilt disease. J Tropic Life Sci 1:33–36

Quan CS, Zheng W, Liu Q, Otha Y, Fan SD (2006) Isolation and characterization of a novel *Burkholderia cepacia* with strong antifungal activity against *Rhizoctonia solani*. Appl Microb Cell Physiol 72:1276–1284

Rado R, Andrianarisoa B, Ravelomanantsoa S, Rakotoarimanga N, Rahetlah V, Fienena FR, Andriambeloson (2015) Biocontrol of potato wilt by selective rhizospheric and endophytic bacteria associated with potato plant. Afr J Food Agricul Nutr Develop 15:9762–9776

Rajendran L, Saravanakumar D, Raguchander T, Samiyappan R (2006) Endophytic bacterial induction of defence enzymes against bacterial blight of cotton. Phytopathol Mediter 45:203–214

Ramanujam B, Basha H, Vinaya H, Chowdappa P, Rangeshwaran R (2012) Induction of defense related enzymes and phenols in chilli plants by *Bacillus subtilis* against anthracnose pathogen, *Colletotrichum capsici*. Indian Phytopathol 65:382–385

Ramette A, Frapolli M, Fischer-Le Saux M, Gruffaz C, Meyer JM, Défago D, Sutra L, Moënne-Loccoz Y (2011) *Pseudomonas protegens* sp. nov., wide spread plant protecting

bacteria producing the biocontrol compounds 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol and pyoluteorin. Syst Appl Microbiol 34:180–188
Ramli N, Suriza M, Mohamed, Abu Seman I, Ahmad Zairun M, Mohamad N (2016) The potential of endophytic bacteria as a biological control agent for *Ganoderma* disease in oil palm. Sains Malaysiana 45:401–409
Rangeshwaran R, Wasnikar AR, Prasad RD, Anjula N, Sunanda CR (2002) Isolation of endophytic bacteria for biological control of wilt pathogen. Journal of Biological Control 16:125–134
Raupach GS, Kloepper JW (1998) Mixtures of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria enhance biological control of multiple cucumber pathogens. Phytopathology 88:1158–1164
Reinhold-Hurek B, Hurek T (2011) Living inside plants: bacterial endophytes. Curr Opin Plant Biol 14:435–443
Rekha M, Gupta PS, Kale ML, Rathi JN (2015) Isolation, characterization and identification of endophytic bacteria by 16S rRNA partial sequencing technique from roots and leaves of *Prosopis cineraria* plant. Asian J Plant Sci Res 5(6):36–43
Rodrigues FM, Soares RS, Sibov ST, Vieira JDG (2016) Isolation and selection of plant growth-promoting bacteria associated with sugarcane. Pesquisa Agropecuaria Tropical 46 (2):149–158
Rosenblueth M, Martinez-Romero E (2006) Bacterial endophytes and their interactions with hosts. Mol Plant Microb Interact 19:827–837
Ryan RP, Germaine K, FranksA RD (2008) Bacterial endophytes: recent developments and applications. FEMS Microbiol Lett 278:1–9
Ryu CM, Farag MA, Hu CH, Reddy MS, Wei HX, Pare PW, Kloepper JW (2003) Bacterial volatiles promote growth in *Arabidopsis*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 100:4927–4932
Sadfi N, Chérif M, Fliss I, Boudabbous A, Antoun H (2001) Evaluation of bacterial isolates from salty soils and *Bacillus thuringiensis* strains for the biocontrol of *Fusarium* dry rot of potato tubers. J Plant Pathol 83:101–118
Salaheddin K, Valluvaparidasan V, Ladhalakshmi D, Velazhahan R (2010) Management of bacterial blight of cotton using a mixture of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* and *Bacillus subtilis*. Plant Protec Sci 46:41–50
Schulz B, Boyle C (2006) What are endophytes? Microbial Root Endophytes pp 1–13
Seghers D, Wittebolle L, Top EM, Verstraete W, Siciliano SD (2006) Impact of agricultural practices on the *Zea mays* L. endophytic community. Appl Environ Microbiol 70:1475–1482
Senthil N, Raguchander T, Viswanathan R, Samiyappan R (2003) Talc formulated fluorescent pseudomonads for sugarcane red rot suppression and enhanced yield under field conditions. Sugar Technol 5(1):37–43
Sessitsch A, Hardoim P, Weilharter A, Krause A, Woyke T (2012) Functional characteristics of an endophyte community colonizing rice roots as revealed by metagenomic analysis. Mol Plant Microb Interact 25:28–36
Shiomi HF, Silva HSA, de Melo IS, Nunes FV, Bettiol W (2006) Bioprospecting endophytic bacteria for biological control of coffee leaf rust. Scientia Agricola 63:32–39
Sholberg PL, Marchi A, Bechard J (1995) Biological control of post harvest diseases of apple using *Bacillus* spp. isolated from stored apples. Can J Microbiol 41:247–252
Sikora RA (1988) Inter relationship between plant health promoting bacteria, plant parasitic nematodes and soil microorganisms. Med Fac Landbouww Rijks University Gent 53:867–878
Smita V, DipakV (2015) Isolation and study of endophytes from leaves of *Ficus racemosa* L. Int J Res Stud Biosci 4(4):68–74
Smith KP, Goodman RM (1999) Host variation for interactions with beneficial plant-associated microbes. Ann Rev Phytopathol 37:473–491
Soria S, Alonso R, Bettucci L (2012) Endophytic bacteria from *Pinus taeda* L. as biocontrol agents of *Fusarium circinatum* Nirenberg & O'Donnell. Chilean J Agric Res 72:281–284
Souza SA, Xavier AA, Costa MR, Cardoso AM, Pereira MC, Nietsche S (2013) Endophytic bacterial diversity in banana 'Prata Ana' (*Musa* spp.) roots. Genet Mol Biol 36:252–264

Stoltzfus JR, Malarvithi JK, Ladha de Bruijn FJ (1997) Isolation of endophytic bacteria from rice and assessment of their potential for supplying rice with biologically fixed nitrogen. Plant Soil 194:25–36

Strobel G, Daisy B, Castillo U, Harper J (2004) Natural products from endophytic microorganisms. J Nat Prod 67:257–268

Sturz AV, Matheson BG (1996) Populations of endophytic bacteria which influence host-resistance to *Erwinia*-induced bacterial soft rot in potato tubers. Plant Soil 184:265–271

Sturz AV, Christie BR, Matheson BG, Arsenault WJ, Buchanan NA (1999) Endophytic bacterial communities in the periderm of improve resistance to soil-borne plant pathogens. Plant Pathol 48:360–369

Sun Z, Yuan X, Zhang H, Wu L, Liang C, Feng Y (2013) Isolation, screening and identification of antagonistic downy mildew endophytic bacteria from cucumber. Euro J Plant Pathol 137: 847–857

Sundaramoorthy S, Raguchander T, Ragupathi N, Samiyappan R (2012) Combinatorial effect of endophytic and plant growth promoting rhizobacteria against wilt disease of *Capsicum annum* L. caused by *Fusarium solani.* Biologic Cont 60:59–67

Susilowati DN, Kadir TS, Ruskanda A (2012) Seed dipping application of local endophytic bacterial consortium against bacterial leaf blight of rice. J Agrotrop 17:7–13

Taghavi S, Garafola C, Monchy S, Newman L, Hoffman A Weyens N (2009) Genome survey and characterization of endophytic bacteria exhibiting a beneficial effect on growth and development of poplar trees. Appl Environ Microbiol 75:748–757

Tanprasert P, Reed BM (1997) Detection and identification of bacterial contaminants from strawberry runner explants. In Vitro Cell Dev Biol 33:221–226

Thangavelu R, Muthukathan G (2015) Field suppression of Fusarium wilt disease in banana by the combined application of native endophytic and rhizospheric bacterial isolates possessing multiplemfunctions. Phytopathol Mediterr 54:241–252

Tombolini R, Jansson JK (1998) Monitoring of GFP-tagged bacterial cells. In: LaRossa RA (ed) Methods in molecular biology: bioluminescence method protocol, pp 285–298

Tombolini R, Unge A, Davey ME, de Bruijn FJ, Jansson JK (1997) Flow cytometric and microscopic analysis of GFP tagged *Pseudomonas fluorescens* bacteria. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 22:17–28

Tonelli ML, Taurian T, Ibáñez F, Angelini J (2010) Selection and in vitro characterization of biocontrol agents with potential to protect peanut plants against fungal pathogens. J Plant Pathol 92:73–82

Trognitz F, Piller K, Nagel M, Borner A, Bacher CF, Rechlik M, Mayrhofer H, Sessitsch A (2014) Isolation and characterization of endophytes isolated form seeds of different plants and the application to increase juvenile development. Tagung Verein Pflanzen Saatgut Osterr 65:25–28

Tsurumaru H, Okubo T, Okazaki K, Hashimoto M, Kakizaki K, Hanzawa E, Takahashi H, Asanome N, Tanaka F, Sekiyama Y, Ikeda S, Minamisawa K (2015) Metagenomic analysis of the bacterial community associated with the tap root of sugar beet. Microb Environ 30:63–69

Uppala SS, Beena S, Chapala MM, Bowen KL (2009) Bioefficacy of endophytes in the management of leaf blight disease of *Amaranthus*. In: Proceedings First Asian PGPR congress for sustainable agriculture 21–24

Vanitha SC, Umesha S (2011) *Pseudomonas fluorescens* mediated systemic resistance in tomato is driven through an elevated synthesis of defense enzymes. Biol Plant 55:17–322

Veena GA, Eswara reddy NP, Harshitha M, Prathyusha C (2014) Efficacy of rhizospheric and root endophytic bacteria against *Rhizoctonia bataticola* and compatibility studies with fungicides. Int J Plant Anim Environ Sci 4:270–275

Velusamy P, Immanuel JE, Gnanamanickam SS (2013) Rhizosphere bacteria for biocontrol of bacterial blight and growth promotion of rice. Rice Sci 20(5):356–362

Verma SC, Ladha JK, Tripathi AK (2001) Evaluation of plant growth promoting and colonization ability of endophytic diazotrophs from deep water rice. J Biotechnol 91:121–141

Vetrivelkalai P, Sivakumar M, Jonathan EI (2009) Biocontrol potential of endophytic bacteria on *Meloidogyne incognita* and its effect on plant growth in bhendi. Journal of Biopesticides 3:452–457

Wakelin S, Warren R, Harvey P, Ryder M (2004) Phosphate solubilization by *Penicillium* spp, closely associated with wheat roots. Bio Fertil Soils 40:36–43

Wang M, Xing Y, Wang J, Xu Y, Wang G (2014) The role of the *chi1* gene from the endophytic bacteria *Serratia proteamaculans* 336x in the biological control of wheat take all. Can J Microbiol 60:533–554

Webster G, Gough C, Vasse J, Batchelor CA, Callaghan KJO, Kothari SL, Davey SR, Denarie J, Cocking EC (1997) Interactions of rhizobia with rice and whea. Plant Soil 194:115–122

Weilharter A, Mitter B, Shin MV, Chain PSG Nowak J, Sessitsch A (2011) Complete genome sequence of the plant growth-promoting endophyte *Burkholderia phytofirmans* strain PsJN. J Bacteriol 193:3383–3384

West ER, Cother EJ, Steel CC, Ash GJ (2010) The characterization and diversity of bacterial endophytes of grapevine. Can J Microbiol 56:209–216

Wilhelm EW, Arthofer SR (1997) *Bacillus subtilis*, an endophyte of chestnut (*Castanea sativa*), as antagonist against chestnut blight (*Cryphonectria parasitica*). In: Cassells AC (ed) Pathogen and microbial contamination management in micropropagation. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dortrecht, The Netherlands, pp 331–337

Wilhelm E, Arthofer W, Eitner S, Krebs B (1998) *Bacillus subtilis* an endophyte of chestnut (*Castenea sativa*) as antagonist against chestnut blight (*Cryphonectria parasitica*). Plant cell Tissue Organ Culture 52:105

Wulff EG, Mguni CM, Mortensen CN, Keswani CL, Hockenhul J (2002) Biological control of black rot (*Xanthomonas campestris* pv. *campestris*) of *Brassicas* with an antagonistic strain of *Bacillus Subtilis* in Zimbabwe. Eur J Plant Pathol 108:317–325

Yang S, Park M, Kim I, Kim Y, Yang J, Ryu CM (2011) 2-Aminobenzoic acid of *Bacillus* sp. Bs107 as an ISR determinant against *Pectobacterium carotovorum* sub sp *carotovotrum* Scc1 in tobacco. Euro J Plant Pathol 129:371–378

Yuliar (2014) The effect of suppression of endophytic mangrove bacteria on leaf blight of rice caused by *Xanthomonas oryzae* pv.*oryzae*. Global J Biol Agric Health Sci 3(1):1–7

Zaiton S, Sariah M, Zainal Abidin MA (2006) Isolation and characterization of microbial endophytes from oil palm roots: Implication as biocontrol agents against *Ganoderma*. The Planter 82:587–597

Zhang XX, George A, Bailey MJ, Rainey PB (2006) The histidine utilization (hut) genes of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* SBW25 are active on plant surfaces, but are not required for competitive colonization of sugar beet seedlings. Microbiology 152:1867–1875

Zhao X, de Jong A, Zhou Z, Kuipers OP (2015) Complete genome sequence of *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* strain BH072, isolated from honey. Genom Announ 3(2):12–15

Ziedan EHE (2006) Manipulating endophytic bacteria for biological control of soil-borne diseases of peanut. J Appl Sci Res 2:497–502

Zinniel DK, Lambrecht P, Harris NB, Feng Z, Kuczmarski D, Higley P (2002) Isolation and characterization of endophytic colonizing bacteria from agronomic crops and prairie plants. Appl Environ Microbiol 66:2198–2208

Chapter 8
Endophytic Actinobacteria for Sustainable Agricultural Applications

M.F. Carvalho, Y. Ma, R.S. Oliveira and H. Freitas

Abstract Endophytic actinobacteria have the capacity to establish intimate associations with plants and colonize their inner tissues without causing apparent disease symptoms. They can protect plants by producing bioactive compounds that act as plant growth promoters or biological control agents and, in return, obtain nutrition and protection from the host plant. The application of endophytic actinobacteria in agriculture has attracted increasing attention. We address isolation and identification methods and the occurrence and diversity of endophytic actinobacteria in agricultural crops. Attention is given to the roles of endophytic actinobacteria in plant growth and development and health promotion for sustainable agriculture is discussed.

Keywords Actinobacteria · Endophytes · Sustainable agriculture
Plant growth · Promoting bacteria · Isolation · Biocontrol

M.F. Carvalho (✉)
CIIMAR – Interdisciplinary Centre of Marine and Environmental Research,
University of Porto, Terminal de Cruzeiros do Porto de Leixões,
Avenida General Norton de Matos, 4450-208 Matosinhos, Portugal
e-mail: mcarvalho@ciimar.up.pt

Y. Ma · R.S. Oliveira · H. Freitas
Centre for Functional Ecology, Department of Life Sciences,
University of Coimbra, Calçada Martim de Freitas,
3000-456 Coimbra, Portugal
e-mail: cathymaying@gmail.com

R.S. Oliveira
e-mail: rsoliveira@uc.pt

H. Freitas
e-mail: hfreitas@uc.pt

R.S. Oliveira
Department of Environmental Health, Research Centre on Health and Environment,
School of Allied Health Sciences, Polytechnic Institute of Porto,
Rua Dr. António Bernardino de Almeida, 400, 4200-072 Porto, Portugal

D.K. Maheshwari and K. Annapurna (eds.), *Endophytes: Crop Productivity and Protection*, Sustainable Development and Biodiversity 16,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-66544-3_8

8.1 Introduction

Actinobacteria constitutes a major phylum within the domain Bacteria and includes six classes: Actinobacteria, Acidimicrobiia, Coriobacteriia, Nitriliruptoria, Rubrobacteria, and Thermoleophilia, with the class Actinobacteria comprising 43 of the 53 families integrating the phylum (Barka et al. 2016; Gao and Gupta 2012; Goodfellow et al. 2012). Actinobacteria are Gram-positive mostly aerobic bacteria exhibiting diverse morphologies that range from unicellular organisms to filamentous forms. Due to their growth style often involving the formation of branching hyphae that can generate dense mycelia and produce spores, these microorganisms were misclassified for a long time as fungi. However, they are indeed prokaryotes having no nuclear membrane. Actinobacteria typically have a high G+C content in their genomes (>50%), and are commonly known for their remarkable capacity to produce bioactive compounds. More than half of the bioactive substances described in the literature is attributed to microorganisms belonging to this phylum (Barka et al. 2016; Berdy 2005), including antibiotics, anticancer agents, immunosuppressive agents, antiviral agents, antioxidants, enzymes, plant growth hormones, etc., that are highly important for applications in medicine, industry and agriculture (Castillo et al. 2002; Fiedler et al. 2008; Igarashi et al. 2007; Strobel and Daisy 2003). Within Actinobacteria, the genus *Streptomyces* is particularly prolific in the production of a wide range of bioactive compounds, being responsible for the production of ca. 80% of all natural products produced by actinobacteria, including agriculturally relevant compounds like insecticides and herbicides, holding a biosynthetic capacity that remains without parallel in the microbial world (Berdy 2005; Jizba et al. 1991; Tanaka and Omura 1993). These microorganisms are widely distributed, being found in both terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems, including marine environments. They are common inhabitants of soils where they spend a significant part of their life cycles as semi-dormant spores, and constitute ca. 20–30% of the rhizospheric microbial community (Bouizgarne and Ben Aouamar 2014; Coombs and Franco 2003). Actinobacteria are mostly saprophytic microorganisms that play important ecological roles in the recycling of nutrients, in the decomposition of organic matter, especially complex polymers derived from dead plants and animals, like lignin, starch, and chitin (Coombs and Franco 2003; Minotto et al. 2014; Sharma 2014), in the degradation of agricultural and urban wastes as well as in the removal of several environmental pollutants, such as petroleum, dyes, and other recalcitrant compounds (Amorim et al. 2014; Bagewadi et al. 2011; Kekuda 2016; Khedkar and Shanker 2015). Most actinobacteria are mesophilic, having optimal growth temperatures between 25 and 30 °C, and grow in soils with a neutral pH.

8.2 Actinobacterial Endophytes

Many actinobacteria have the capacity to establish intimate associations with plants and colonize their inner tissues without causing apparent disease symptoms, being defined as endophytic actinobacteria (Qin et al. 2009; Schulz and Boyle 2006; Stone et al. 2000; Strobel and Daisy 2003). Different parts of the plant can be colonized, including roots, stems, leaves, seeds, flowers, and fruits. *Frankia* was the first isolated actinobacterial endophyte, and is known for inducing the formation of nitrogen-fixing nodules in non-leguminous plants (Benson and Silvester 1993; Callaham et al. 1978; Coombs and Franco 2003). Endophytic actinobacteria play an important role in the protection of plants by producing bioactive compounds that can act as plant growth promoters, biological control agents or alleviate stress effects in plants, while in return these microorganisms can obtain nutrition and protection from the host plant (Cao et al. 2005; Conn et al. 2008; Goudjal et al. 2013; Igarashi et al. 2002; Yandigeri et al. 2012). Many studies also indicate that endophytic actinobacteria are capable of producing a wide range of pharmaceutically relevant bioactive compounds such as antimicrobial, antitumor, anti-inflammatory, antiviral agents, etc., including the production of metabolites bioactive against drug resistant pathogens (Golinska et al. 2015; Savi et al. 2015; Singh and Dubey 2015; Zhang et al. 2012). In addition, PKS and NRPS gene clusters, which are behind the synthesis of a wide variety of secondary metabolites, have also been shown to be present in many endophytic actinobacteria (Luo et al. 2013).

It is thought that almost every plant on earth hosts one or more endophytic microorganisms, where actinobacteria are included (Golinska et al. 2015; Kekuda 2016; Strobel and Daisy 2003). Endophytic microorganisms may originate both from the rhizosphere or phyllosphere and may enter plants through naturally occurring wounds or epidermal root hairs, or through the production of hydrolytic enzymes, such as cellulase and pectinase (Dudeja et al. 2012; Suman et al. 2016). Once inside the plant they can become installed at the entry location or spread through the different parts of the plant, where they may colonize the interior of the cells, intercellular spaces, or vascular systems (Suman et al. 2016). Due to their several beneficial effects in plants, endophytic actinobacteria are very promising biological resource that can be applied in environmentally friendly and sustainable agricultural approaches to control plant diseases and promote plant health and growth (Kunoh 2002). The capacity of endophytic actinobacteria to colonize seeds is particularly relevant due to the possibility of transmission of the endophytic community to the next generation (Tchinda et al. 2016).

Culture-dependent and culture-independent methods have revealed an increasing number of plants, including crops, hosting endophytic actinobacteria. Studies indicate that these microorganisms are among the predominant phyla inside the plants (Manter et al. 2010; Sessitsch et al. 2012). The potential of these microorganisms for agricultural applications is enormous, where they can be used as microbial inoculants for increasing crop yields and controlling pathogenic agents

(Conn and Franco 2004; Franco et al. 2007; Taechowisan et al. 2003). Previous studies have demonstrated that endophytic actinobacteria were capable of improving grain yields in the presence of common fungal root pathogens in a range between 5 and 60% comparing with untreated controls (Franco et al. 2007). Moreover, several actinobacterial species have been shown to be effective against various soil-borne plant pathogens such as, *Fusarium* spp. (Cao et al. 2005; Gopalakrishnan et al. 2011; Taechowisan et al. 2003), *Pythium* spp. (Hamdali et al. 2008; Verma et al. 2009), *Alternaria* spp. (Chattopadhyay and Nandi 1982; Vernekar et al. 1999), and *Rhizoctonia* spp. (Sadeghi et al. 2006; Sharma 2014), being capable of protecting different important crops. Comparing with plant growth promoting rhizobacteria, the use of endophytic microorganisms as microbial inoculants for biocontrol strategies offers considerable advantages, since competition effects are greatly reduced in the colonization of the internal tissues of the plant, thus increasing the chances of survival, growth, and effectiveness of the endophytic inoculants (Coombs et al. 2004; Rosenblueth and Martinez-Romero 2006).

8.3 Isolation of Actinobacterial Endophytes

Endophytic actinobacteria may be isolated from a wide diversity of plants. Isolation of these microorganisms is dependent on several factors, such as host plant species and age, sampling mode, sampling season, cultivation conditions, surface sterilization strategy, and selective media used (Gaiero et al. 2013; Kaewkla and Franco 2013; Zhang et al. 2006). The selected isolation procedure will determine the spectrum of endophytes recovered and should be able to yield the largest possible number of endophytes, while at the same time eliminating epiphytic microorganisms from the surface of plant tissues (Hallmann et al. 2006; Le et al. 2015; Li et al. 2012). Collected plants, or plant parts, should be processed as soon as possible within a period of 24 h. Samples should be stored at 4 °C between sampling and processing.

The critical step in the isolation of endophytic actinobacteria lies in the surface sterilization of plant tissues. This may be achieved through the use of surface sterilizing agents, with the most common ones being sodium hypochlorite (3–10%), ethanol (70–95%) and hydrogen peroxide. Other less conventional sterilizing agents, such as sodium chlorate (5%), sodium thiosulfate (2.5%), and sodium bicarbonate (10%) have also been employed for the inhibition of growth of endophytic fungi (Dochhil et al. 2013; Qin et al. 2008). The concentration of the sterilizing agents will depend on the permeability of the plant tissues. In some cases, sterilization efficiency is improved through the additional use of surfactants, such as Tween 20, Tween 80, or Triton X-100, which reduce surface tension and enable a better action of the sterilizing agent (Hallmann et al. 2006). Sterilization protocols typically include a tissue washing step, to remove soil particles and loosely adhered epiphytic microorganisms, followed by disinfection (which may or

not be preceded by a pre-treatment step with a surfactant), final rinse with sterile water, and sterility control to evaluate the sterilization efficiency. Apart from this standard protocol, some additional strategies are available to increase the isolation efficiency of endophytic actinobacteria. For instance, Qin et al. (2009) suggest the use of a thiosulfate solution after the disinfection step with sodium hypochlorite to minimize loss of endophytes caused by the presence of traces of disinfectant in treated plants tissues. Nimnoi et al. (2010) suggested soaking treated plant samples in a 10% $NaHCO_3$ solution in order to inhibit growth of endophytic fungi. Control tests of sterilization efficiency often consist in plating a sample of water derived from the last washing step or directly platting a surface-sterilized plant tissue. Microorganisms can only be assumed to be endophytes if sterility control tests are completely negative.

Ideally, the sterilization protocol should be adapted according to the plant species, age and type of plant tissue. After the surface sterilization procedure, sterilized plant tissues are inoculated in appropriate growth media, using one of two common strategies: (i) tissues are aseptically cut into small fragments (Coombs and Franco 2003; de Oliveira et al. 2010; Sardi et al. 1992) or (ii) tissues are macerated with a mortar and pestle (El-Tarabily et al. 2009; Garbeva et al. 2001; Hallmann et al. 2006; Kaur et al. 2015). In the latter case, in order to prevent inhibition of growth of endophytic actinobacteria caused by plant enzymes or toxins released during the maceration process, macerated samples may be diluted or buffered with appropriate compounds such as phosphate buffer, polyvinylpyrrolidone or EDTA (Golinska et al. 2015; Hallmann et al. 2006). More recent methods combining enzymatic hydrolysis and differential centrifugation have been alternatively used and shown very efficient in the isolation of endophytic microorganisms, especially rare endophytic actinobacteria (Jiao et al. 2006; Qin et al. 2009).

The selection of growth medium is a very important step in the isolation of actinobacterial endophytes. Nutrient poor media, such as tap water–yeast extract agar (TWYE), humic acid–vitamin B agar (HV), and yeast extract–casein hydrolysate agar (YECD), have been reported to be very effective in the isolation of these microorganisms (Coombs and Franco 2003; Qin et al. 2009). The formulation of growth media with nutrients identical to those found in plants has also been shown to be an effective strategy for the isolation of endophytic actinobacteria. Qin et al (2009) isolated rare endophytic actinobacteria comprising several genera using growth media supplemented with the aminoacids L-asparagine, proline or arginine as nitrogen sources and carbon substrates commonly found in plants, such as cellulose, fucose, or xylan. Addition of plant extracts to the growth medium is another effective strategy (Qin et al. 2011). Growth media should be supplemented with antibiotics such as nystatin, nalidixic acid, or cycloheximide (50 or 100 μg/ml) to inhibit growth of fungi and Gram-negative bacteria (Golinska et al. 2015; Lee et al. 2008; Qin et al. 2011). Examples of isolation strategies used for the recovery of endophytic actinobacteria from various plants with agricultural relevance are presented in Table 8.1.

Table 8.1 Examples of endophytic actinobacteria isolated from different crops and respective isolation strategy

Crop	Plant tissue	Sterilization method employed	Strategy of plant tissue inoculation	Isolation medium	Antimicrobial supplemented to growth medium	Number of recovered endophytic actinobacterial isolates	Identification of endophytic actinobacterial isolates	References
Maize (*Zea mays* L.)	Leaves and roots	Ethanol 70% for 30 s Sodium hypochlorite (3–5%) for 3 min Final rinse with sterile water	Roots cut into ca. 1 cm fragments and leaves divided in ca. 1 cm^2 fragments	Starch-casein-agar 2.5% water-agar	Nystatin and cycloheximide (50 μg/ml)	53	*Microbispora* spp. *Streptomyces* spp. *Streptosporangium* spp.	Araújo et al. (2000)
Wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.)	Roots	Ethanol 99% for 60 s Sodium hypochlorite (3.125%) for 6 min Final rinse in sterile reverse osmosis-treated water	Cut into 1 cm fragments	Tap water–yeast extract agar Humic acid–vitamin B agar Flour–yeast extract-sucrose-casein hydrolysate agar Flour-calcium carbonate agar Yeast extract-casein hydrolysate agar	Benomyl	58	*Streptomyces* spp. *Micromonospora* spp. *Nocardiodes albus* *Streptosporangium*/*Microbispora*	Coombs and Franco (2003)
Tomato (*Lycopersicon esculentum*)	Roots	Ethanol 70% for 5 min Sodium hypochlorite (2.5%) for 10 min Final rinse with sterilized distilled water	Cut into 1 cm fragments	Starch casein agar S medium ISP2 agar	None	70	*Streptomyces* spp. *Micromonospora* spp. *Microbispora* spp. *Nocardia* spp.	de Oliveira et al. (2010)

(continued)

Table 8.1 (continued)

Crop	Plant tissue	Sterilization method employed	Strategy of plant tissue inoculation	Isolation medium	Antimicrobial supplemented to growth medium	Number of recovered endophytic actinobacterial isolates	Identification of endophytic actinobacterial isolates	References
Citrus rootstocks (several citrus cultivars)	Leaves and seeds	Rinsed with ethanol 70% Sodium hypochlorite (3%) for 3 min Rinsed once in ethanol 70% Rinsed twice in sterile distilled water	Leaves homogenized in a blender with 5 mL of sterile NaCl 0.85% and serially diluted Leaf and seed cut into 4–6 mm fragments	Trypticase soy agar (TSA)	Benomyl (50 μg/mL)	N.i.	*Curtobacterium flaccumfaciens*	Araújo et al. (2001)
Sweet-orange (*Citrus sinensis* Osbeck cv. Natal) Tangerine (*C. reticulata* cv. Blanco)	Branches	Ethanol 70% for 5 min Sodium hypochlorite (2%) for 5 min Ethanol 70% for 30 s Two rinses in sterile distilled water Bark of surface-disinfected branches removed with a sterilized razor blade	Bark of surface-disinfected branches removed Branches cut into 4–6 mm fragments	TSA	Benomyl (50 μg/mL)	N.i.	*Curtobacterium flaccumfaciens* *Nocardia* spp. *Streptomyces* spp.	Araújo et al. (2002)

(continued)

Table 8.1 (continued)

Crop	Plant tissue	Sterilization method employed	Strategy of plant tissue inoculation	Isolation medium	Antimicrobial supplemented to growth medium	Number of recovered endophytic actinobacterial isolates	Identification of endophytic actinobacterial isolates	References
Potato plants (*SoIanum tuberosum* cv Desiré)	Roots and stems	Sodium hypochlorite 1% supplemented with Tween-20 0.02% for 1 min Ethanol 70% for 1 min 3 times washing in thiosulfate/Ringer's solution for 1 min Incubation of grounded material with 120 mM sodium phosphate (pH 8) for 2 h	Cut into pieces of ca. 0.3 cm and macerated Incubated for 2 h at room temperature with sodium phosphate (pH 8) 120 mM	TSA (0.05x) *R2A agar*	Cycloheximide (100 µg/mL)	N.i.	*Nocardia globerula* *Corynebacterium aquaticum*	Garbeva et al. (2001)
Canola (*Brassica napus* cv. Westar)	Roots	Ethanol 95% for 1 min Acidified mercuric chloride 0.1% (w/v) for 1 min Washed 10 times with sterile tap water	Roots suspended in 1/10 PBS, macerated and serially diluted	Trypticase soy broth 0.3% (TSB) with 1.5% agar	None	65	*Arthrobacter* spp. *Curtobacter* spp. *Micrococcus* spp. *Rathayibacter* spp.	Germida et al. (1998)

(continued)

Table 8.1 (continued)

Crop	Plant tissue	Sterilization method employed	Strategy of plant tissue inoculation	Isolation medium	Antimicrobial supplemented to growth medium	Number of recovered endophytic actinobacterial isolates	Identification of endophytic actinobacterial isolates	References
Fodder leguminous plants (*Vigna unguiculata* and *Trifolium alexandrinum*)	Roots and nodules	Ethanol 70% for 5 min Sodium hypochlorite 0.9% for 20 min Washed 3 times with sterile water Sodium bicarbonate solution 10% for 10 min	Macerated tissues	Starch casein agar	None	34	*Streptomyces* spp. *Actinopolyspora* spp. *Saccharopolyspora* spp. *Micromonospora* spp. *Nocardia* spp.	Kaur et al. (2015)
Chinese cabbage (*Brassica campestris* L.)	Roots	Ethanol 90% for 1 min Sodium hypochlorite 3.1% for 6 min Washed 3 times with sterile water	Cut into 1 cm fragments	Humic acid–vitamin agar Corn meal agar	Cycloheximide (50 μg/mL) Nalidixic acid (10 μg/mL)	81	*Microbispora* spp. *Streptomyces* spp. *Micromonospora* spp. *Nocardia* spp. *Verrucosispora* spp. *Nonomuraea* spp. *Actinomadura* spp. *Thermomonospora* spp.	Lee et al. (2008)
Rice (*Oryza sativa* cv. Qilisimiao and Huajingxian)	Leaves and roots	Ethanol 70% for 5 min Sodium hypochlorite 0.87% for 15 min Sodium bicarbonate solution 10% for 15 min Rinsed three times with autoclaved distilled water	Cut into 1 cm fragments	1.2% S medium	Potassium dichromate (25 μg/mL) Nalidixic acid (15 μg/mL)	274	*Streptomyces* spp. *Streptoverticillium* spp.	Tian et al. (2004)

(continued)

Table 8.1 (continued)

Crop	Plant tissue	Sterilization method employed	Strategy of plant tissue inoculation	Isolation medium	Antimicrobial supplemented to growth medium	Number of recovered endophytic actinobacterial isolates	Identification of endophytic actinobacterial isolates	References
Cucumber seeds (*Cucumis sativus* L. cv. Cheyenne)	Roots	Exposure to propylene oxide vapors for 1 h	Macerated tissues	Humic acid–vitamin agar	Cycloheximide (50 μg/mL) Nystatin (50 μg/mL)	29	*Actinoplanes* spp. *Micromonospora* spp. *Streptomyces* spp. *Microbispora* spp. *Streptosporangium* spp.	El-Tarabily et al. (2009)
Rice (*Oryza sativa* L. cv. KDML 105)	Leaves, leaf sheathes, stems and roots	Ethanol 70% for 1 min Sodium hypochlorite 3% for 6 min Final rinse in sterile reverse osmosis-treated water	Cut into 1 cm fragments	Mannitol mung bean yeast extract mineral salt agar Tap water–yeast extract agar Humic acid–vitamin B agar TSA	Nystatin 100 IU/mL	116	*Streptomyces* spp. *Microbispora* spp. *Kineococcus* spp.	Kampapongsa and Kaewkla (2016)
Ginger (*Zingiber officinale*) Tumeric (*Curcuma domestica*)	Leaves, stems and roots	Rinsed in Tween 20 0.1% for 30 s Sodium hypochlorite 1% for 5 min Washed in sterile distilled water for 5 min Ethanol 70% for 5 min Air-dried in a laminar flow chamber	Cut into small pieces of ca. 4×4 mm^2	Humic acid–vitamin agar	Nystatin (100 μg/mL) Cycloheximide (100 μg/mL)	97	*Streptomyces* spp. *Microbispora* spp. *Nocardia* spp. *Micromonospora* spp.	Taechowisan et al. (2003)

N.i. Not indicated

8.4 Identification and Diversity of Endophytic Actinobacteria in Agricultural Plants

Plants may host a wide range of actinobacteria genera within their inner tissues. Identification of actinobacterial endophytes is often based in a polyphasic approach consisting of several morphological, biochemical and molecular studies. Morphological studies often consist in colony characterization on agar plates, which include examination of aerial and substrate mycelia colors and spore mass color, analysis of spores and hyphae morphology (usually observed in a scanning electron microscope), as well as inspection for the production and color of diffusible soluble pigments. Biochemical tests may comprise analysis of melanin production, presence of various enzymes, and utilization of a range of carbon sources, cell wall composition, whole-cell sugar distribution, cellular phospholipid composition, and menaquinone type (Barka et al. 2016; Labeda 1987; Shirling and Gottlieb 1966). Molecular analyses are based on the sequencing of the 16S rRNA gene and DNA–DNA hybridization, and are strictly necessary for the identification of new species (Barka et al. 2016).

Diversity of endophytic actinobacteria seems to be higher in woody than in herbaceous plants, with roots having the highest number and diversity, followed by stems and leaves (Kekuda 2016). The ecological environment of the plant also influences actinobacterial diversity (Sheil 1999). Endophytic actinobacteria have been isolated from various crop plants, such as maize, wheat, tomato, rice, citrus, potato, Aloe vera, etc. (Araújo et al. 2000, 2001; Coombs and Franco 2003; de Oliveira et al. 2010; Garbeva et al. 2001; Prakash et al. 2014; Thanaboripat et al. 2015; Tian et al. 2007), with the most frequently isolated genus being *Streptomyces* (Kampapongsa and Kaewkla 2016; Sardi et al. 1992; Taechowisan et al. 2003; Tian et al. 2004). Other common isolated genera are *Micromonospora*, *Microbispora*, and *Nocardia* (Table 8.1). Recent studies on the diversity of endophytic actinobacteria in various plants have also allowed the identification of more than 40 new taxa, namely of the genera *Actinoallomurus*, *Actinophytocola*, *Jishengella*, *Phytohabitans*, *Saccharopolyspora*, *Streptosporangium*, *Plantactinospora*, among others (Masand et al. 2015; Qin et al. 2011).

Studies revealed that in addition to roots, stems, and leaves, nitrogen-fixing nodules also harbor endophytic actinobacteria, and exhibited the isolation of the genera *Streptomyces*, *Agromyces*, *Curtobacterium*, *Micromonospora,* and *Microbacterium* from the nodules of different leguminous and actinorhizal plants (Carro et al. 2012; Deng et al. 2011; Trujillo et al. 2006, 2007). The two latter genera were found to be particularly predominant in plant nodules, with several new species of *Micromonospora* being isolated from these tissues (Carro et al. 2013; Garcia et al. 2010; Trujillo et al. 2006, 2007, 2015). The role of these microorganisms in plant growth promotion in not completely known, but studies

with *Micromonospora* species suggest that these microorganisms have important beneficial effects in plants (Martínez-Hidalgo 2014; Trujillo et al. 2010, 2015).

Due to the fact that culture-dependent methods are very limiting and only target less than 1% of the existing bacterial universe, culture-independent methods such as denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis (DGGE), terminal restriction fragment length polymorphism (T-RFLP) and, more recently, next generation sequencing techniques, like metagenomics analysis, have become very important tools for the investigation of the complex microbial communities associated with plants and of the inherent endophytic population. In particular, metagenomics analysis has allowed a better understanding of the abundance, diversity, and distribution of endophytic actinobacteria in a wide variety of plants, including agriculturally important crops. Using this approach, several studies have shown that endophytic actinobacteria are well represented in different crops such as grapevine (*Vitis vinifera*), olive (*Olea europaea*), rice (*Oryza sativa*), potato (*Solanum tuberosum*), and lettuce (*Lactuca sativa*), with the families Corynebacteriaceae, Kineosporiaceae, Microbacteriaceae, Micrococcaceae, Micromonosporaceae, Nocardioaceae, and Streptomycetaceae, being amongst the predominant taxa (Cardinale et al. 2015; Manter et al. 2010; Müller et al. 2015; Okubo et al. 2014; Pinto et al. 2014; Trujillo et al. 2015). A combination of culture-dependent and independent methods may be used for a deeper investigation of endophytic communities, with studies suggesting that these two approaches are complementary, as the microbial communities retrieved by isolation methods are often different from those obtained through molecular techniques (Garbeva et al. 2001; Qin et al. 2011, 2012).

Despite the accumulating studies suggesting that endophytic actinobacteria are beneficial to their host plants and contribute to their health, a restricted number of these microorganisms has been reported to have a pathogenic character, though when compared with other bacteria these exert a minor role in plant diseases. Examples of pathogens of agricultural plants include *Streptomyces scabies*, *S. acidiscabies*, *S. europaeiscabiei,* and *S. turgidiscabies* that cause diverse potato scab diseases (Bignell et al. 2010; Loria et al. 2006). *S. scabies* has a worldwide distribution and was the first pathogenic *Streptomyces* described in the literature, while the other species have a more recent occurrence (Barka et al. 2016; Kreuze et al. 1999; Wanner 2006). Examples of other pathogenic endophytic actinobacteria are the species *Curtobacterium flaccumfaciens* which cause disease on a variety of plants such as *Phaseolus* and *Vigna* species, sugar beet, etc. (Saddler and Messenber-Guimaraes 2012), *Leifsonia xyli* subsp. *xyli* which causes the disease ratoon stunting in sugarcane (Monteiro-Vitorello et al. 2004) and *Clavibacter michiganensis* which is pathogenic to alfalfa, maize, potato and wheat, causing considerable economic losses worldwide (Eichenlaub and Gartemann 2011; Flügel et al. 2012; Trujillo et al. 2015).

8.5 Potential of Endophytic Actinobacteria for Sustainable Agriculture

Plant growth promoting microorganisms (PGPM) have great potential to help host plants adapt to a changing environment, since they can help plants to tolerate stressors like extreme temperature, drought, and salinity, and thus better withstand the challenges of climate change in agriculture (Welbaum et al. 2004).

Although plant growth promoting bacteria are one of the well-studied groups of PGPM, only scanty information are focused on endophytic actinobacteria possessing plant growth promoting properties. Recent findings demonstrated that endophytic actinobacteria are able to enhance establishment, growth, development, and health of agricultural crops directly via production/secretion of various regulatory chemicals in the vicinity of the rhizosphere, as well as indirectly via inhibition of phytopathogens by producing specific chemicals (Fig. 8.1).

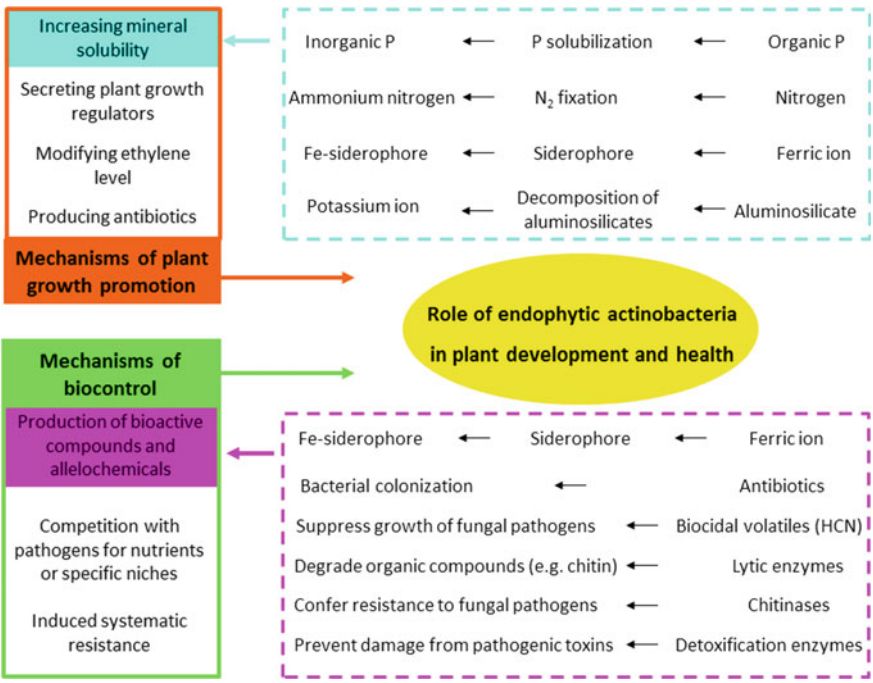


Fig. 8.1 Role of endophytic actinobacteria in plant development and health

8.5.1 *Endophytic Actinobacteria as Plant Growth Promoting Agents*

Although plants are able to adjust their activities and metabolism in the presence of stresses during their life cycle, for instance, they can synthesize various specific defensive proteins to overcome stress (Hossain et al. 2012), the exposure of plants to abiotic and biotic stresses still causes major losses in yield of agricultural crops. Certain actinobacteria have been found to be able to help their host plants by either completely or partially avoiding abiotic and biotic stresses (Gopalakrishnan et al. 2016). Especially, beneficial endophytic actinobacteria that promote plant growth under favorable and unfavorable conditions have recently received attention (Hasegawa et al. 2006). Like rhizosphere actinobacteria, beneficial endophytic actinobacteria are capable of improving plant growth via one or more plant growth promoting mechanisms, including fixation of atmospheric nitrogen, solubilization of mineral nutrients, secretion of phytohormones, and siderophores (Dudeja et al. 2012) (Fig. 8.1).

Endophytic actinobacteria are able to express nitrogenase and occupy an essential ecological niche in the living plant tissue by providing fixed nitrogen to their hosts (Soe et al. 2012). It is well known that endophytic actinobacteria possessing strong nitrogen-fixing property may confer plants the capacity to tolerate nitrogen-poor soil environment. For instance, the endophytic genera *Frankia* (Callaham et al. 1978), *Micromonospora* (Trujillo et al. 2015) and *Streptomyces* (Soe et al. 2012) were capable of enhancing plant growth under nitrogen-limited environment by fixing nitrogen. Recently, nitrogen-fixing endophytic actinobacteria have been reported to be able to increase the number of nodules, nitrogen fixation rate, as well as nitrogen uptake by plants in low nitrogen ecosystems (Le et al. 2016; Rafik et al. 2014; Trujillo et al. 2015).

Phosphorus is involved in various enzymatic reactions in living organisms, such as transport of glucose, stimulation of cell proliferation and promotion of organ development (Ahemad 2015). Although most of soil phosphorus is immobile and thus unavailable for plant uptake (Ezawa et al. 2002), some endophytic bacteria are able to solubilize precipitated phosphates through acidification, chelation, redox changes (Nautiyal et al. 2000), or to mineralize organic P through production of phosphatase (van der Hiejden et al. 2008) under environmental stress conditions, thus enhancing P bioavailability. Jog et al. (2014) found that two root endophytic actinobacteria (*Streptomyces* spp.) isolated from *Triticum aestivum* significantly improved plant growth through phosphate solubilization and secretion of phytases as well as some other plant growth promoting traits. This is probably because the phytase-P complex process facilitates plant uptake of P.

Iron is a vital element for life and is needed by almost all organisms; since it plays a significant role in physiological processes (e.g., transpiration) and enzymatic activities (Bothwell 1995). In general, most iron in soil exists in highly insoluble ferric (Fe^{3+}) form and is unavailable for plants. Siderophores produced by soil bacteria are able to solubilize iron under iron-limited conditions, therefore

improving iron availability to plant roots. In general, plants acquire iron either from bacterial siderophore-iron complex, or from the phytosiderophore-iron complex (Ma et al. 2011; Rajkumar et al. 2009). It is known that bacterial siderophores generally have higher affinity for iron than phytosiderophores and that siderophore producing bacteria can help plants accumulate more iron than the plant alone under iron-limited conditions (Ma et al. 2011). After the iron is complexed by siderophores produced by endophytic actinobacteria, plant roots are able to uptake it directly from bacterial siderophore-iron complexes (Chen et al. 1998; Rungin et al. 2012).

Endophytic actinobacteria can provide phytohormones to hosts in order to facilitate nutrients accumulation (Gopalakrishnan et al. 2016). Recently, Phetcharat and Duangpaeng (2012) investigated the role of phytohormones produced by endophytes in protecting plants against environmental stress. The authors found that the success of endophytic colonization was associated with increases in plant nutrient uptake and biomass yield. Indole-3-acetic acid (IAA) has been considered as a major auxin, which plays a vital role in stimulating plant development (Gravel et al. 2007; Shi et al. 2009), inducing plant self-defense or adaptation system (Navarro et al. 2006), and functioning as a signaling molecule (Spaepen et al. 2007). The IAA synthesized by endophytic actinobacteria is considered to have great potential to modulate the establishment and development of plant-endophyte association (Goudjal et al. 2013). Endophytic actinobacteria, such as *Streptomyces*, *Nocardia*, *Nocardiopsis*, *Spirillospora*, *Microbispora,* and *Micromonospora* were found to be involved in the production of this phytohormone, therefore benefiting plants in situ (Goudjal et al. 2013; Shutsrirung et al. 2013). El-Tarabily et al. (2009) demonstrated that some endophytic actinobacterial strains greatly enhanced growth of *Cucumis sativus* by synthesizing indole-3-pyruvic acid and IAA. However, unfavorable effects of phytohormones have also been reported by Patten and Glick (2002), who found that low concentrations of bacterial IAA induced the elongation of plant primary root, whereas high IAA concentrations caused the formation of plant lateral and adventitious roots with negative effects on primary root growth. Therefore, the endophytic actinobacteria that can modify the balance of phytohormones might be good candidates for hastening plant development.

Ethylene, a universal phytohormone, is involved in plant growth and physiological responses to both abiotic and biotic environmental stresses (Sun et al. 2006). The pathway of ethylene synthesis has been extensively reviewed (Glick et al. 2007). It is well known that plants exposed to environmental stresses such as extreme temperature, drought and salinity can induce the production of ethylene, which is able to hamper elongation of roots as well as formation of root hairs. Under such stresses, some endophytic actinobacteria might mitigate the negative impact of stress by hydrolyzing 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid (ACC) and subsequent diminishing plant ethylene production. It has been reported that the enzyme ACC deaminase produced by some endophytic actinobacteria may hydrolyze ACC into α-ketobutyrate and ammonia, which then serves as a nitrogen source for such microbes (Viterbo et al. 2010; Xing et al. 2012).

8.5.2 Endophytic Actinobacteria as Biocontrol Tools

Endophytes are becoming very interesting biocontrol candidates, because of their crucial role in host–plant association, such as competition with phytopathogens for colonization sites and mineral nutrients (Ma et al. 2016). Bacterial endophytes have great potential to inhibit the growth of phytopathogens, and to stimulate the growth and development of host plants (Ma et al. 2011). The understanding of the endophytic actinobacteria–host plant interaction might accelerate the application of these microbes in sustainable agriculture. Currently, endophytic actinobacteria have been isolated from various plant species, such as *Brassica rapa* (Lee et al. 2008), *Brassica oleracea* (Kanchanadevi et al. 2013), *Oryza sativa* (Mingma et al. 2015), *Lycopersicon esculentum* (Cao et al. 2004; Kanchanadevi et al. 2013), *Jatropha curcas* (Xing et al. 2012), *Glycine max* (Mingma et al. 2014), *Triticum aestivum* (Jog et al. 2014), and *Zea mays* (Costa et al. 2013); however, only few crop species have been investigated in terms of their endophytic actinobacterial diversity and their effect as biocontrol agents. Additionally, the mechanisms involved in endophytic actinobacteria–host plant interaction are still very poorly understood given the limited data currently available.

Endophytic actinobacteria have been attracting interest because of their capability to produce bioactive chemicals and/or allelochemicals, such as siderophores, antibiotics, biocidal volatiles, lytic enzymes, chitinases, and detoxification enzymes (Bérdy 2005; Clardy et al. 2006; El-Tarabily et al. 2010; Quecine et al. 2008) (Fig. 8.1). Siderophores chelate or complex soluble iron from the soil; antibiotics hinder pathogenic colonization; biocidal volatiles (e.g., hydrogen cyanide) inhibit the growth of pathogenic fungi; lytic enzymes (e.g., chitinases) degrade some organic compounds (e.g., chitin) conferring plant resistance/tolerance to pathogens; detoxifying enzymes protect against pathogen and toxins. Moreover, endophytic actinobacteria are capable of successfully competing with pathogens for specific niches and mineral nutrients in plant tissues, and of inducing systemic resistance (Doumbou et al. 2001). For instance, antibiotics produced by *Streptomyces* spp. are able to hinder the growth of a wide range of pathogenic microbes (Gopalakrishnan et al. 2016). Moreover, these compounds are considered as important agents to control soil-borne diseases with low toxic impacts on the environment and human health (Cao et al. 2004).

8.5.3 Endophytic Actinobacteria as Helpers of Agricultural Crops

The mechanisms of plant growth promotion and biological control involved in host plant–microbe association have been discussed above. In this section, we have summarized some recent publications on the beneficial functions of endophytic actinobacteria in enhancing sustainable agriculture via acting as helpers of

agricultural crops (Table 8.2). Efforts have been made in searching for biostimulator/biofertilizer for crop production, and natural biocontrol agents for crop protection. Endophytic actinobacteria, especially those belonging to the genus *Streptomyces* have become an important microbial source for application in various crops, such as *Lycopersicon esculentum*, *Triticum aestivum*, *Medicago sativa*, *Brassica rapa*, *Citrus reticulate*, *Oryza sativa,* and *Zea mays* (Table 8.2). Several studies indicate that endophytic actinobacterial species are able to enhance the performance of agricultural crops by employing a range of mechanisms, such as nitrogen fixation (Le et al. 2016), solubilization of phosphate (Jog et al. 2014), production of phytohormones (El-Tarabily et al. 2009; Goudjal et al. 2013; Meguro et al. 2006), siderophores (Hastuti et al. 2012; Rungin et al. 2012), hydrogen cyanide (Passari et al. 2015), chitinase (Singh and Gaur 2016), ammonia (Passari et al. 2015), antibiotics (Mingma et al. 2014), and other antibacterial and antifungal metabolites (Cao et al. 2004; Costa et al. 2013; Goudjal et al. 2014). However, the beneficial effects contributing to plant growth promotion and the level of biocontrol achieved by various endophytic actinobacteria are mainly performed in laboratory or identically controlled environmental conditions. In this regard, endophytic actinobacteria possessing biofertilizer and biocontrol properties for commercial use must be further tested for practical agricultural applications. Studies are, therefore, needed to evaluate the functions of these endophytic actinobacteria in terms of enhancing host plant growth, as well as inducing systemic resistance and antibiosis activity against phytopathogens in field trials.

Table 8.2 Enhanced performance of agricultural crops by endophytic actinobacteria

Endophytic actinobacteria	Isolated from	Plant beneficial trait	Effect	References
Streptomyces spp.	*Lycopersicon esculentum*	Production of antibacterial and antifungal metabolites	Growth promotion and enhanced disease resistance of tomato seedlings, but not in cucumber seedlings	Cao et al. (2004)
Streptomyces spp.	*Zea mays*	Growth inhibition of phytopathogenic fungi	Isolate 16R3B was able to reduce up to 71% damping-off incidence whereas isolate 14F1D/2 reduced disease incidence by 36%	Costa et al. (2013)
Actinoplanes campanulatus, *Micromonospora chalcea*, *Streptomyces spiralis*	N.i.	Production of IAA and indole-3-pyruvic acid	Promoted plant growth and suppressed pathogenic activities of *Pythium aphanidermatum* on seedling and mature cucumber	El-Tarabily et al. (2009)

(continued)

Table 8.2 (continued)

Endophytic actinobacteria	Isolated from	Plant beneficial trait	Effect	References
Actinoplanes campanulatus, *Micromonospora chalcea*, *Streptomyces spiralis*	N.i.	Biological control and plant growth promotion	Colonized the internal tissues of roots, stems and leaves under field conditions; promoted plant growth and yield and reduced seedling damping-off and root and crown rots of mature cucumber plants	El-Tarabily et al. (2010)
Streptomyces sp. and non-*Streptomyces*	Spontaneous plants of Algerian Sahara	Production of IAA	Promoted seed germination and root elongation	Goudjal et al. (2013)
Streptomyces sp. and non-*Streptomyces*	Native plants of the Algerian Sahara	Antifungal activity	Increased seedling fresh weight, the length of shoot and root; Reduced the severity of damping-off of tomato seedlings	Goudjal et al. (2014)
Streptomyces spp.	N.i.	Production of chitinase, phosphatase and siderophore	Increased plant height and produced higher tiller number; Inhibited the growth of *Xanthomonas oryzae* pv. *oryzae*	Hastuti et al. (2012)
Streptomyces spp.	*Triticum aestivum*	Solubilization of phosphate, production of phytase, chitinase, IAA, siderophore and malate	Improved plant growth, biomass and mineral (Fe, Mn, P) content under non-axenic conditions	Jog et al. (2014)
Streptomyces spp.	*Medicago sativa*	Growth promotion and N_2-fixation	Improved shoot weight and the number of nodules	Le et al. (2016)
Microbispora sp., *Streptomyces* sp., *Micromonospora* sp.	*Brassica rapa*	Biological control	Suppressed the occurrence of a post-inoculated strain of *Plasmodiophora brassicae*	Lee et al. (2008)

(continued)

Table 8.2 (continued)

Endophytic actinobacteria	Isolated from	Plant beneficial trait	Effect	References
Streptomyces sp. MBR-52	*Rhododendron ferrugineum*	Production of rooting-promoting plant hormones	Accelerated emergence and elongation of plant adventitious roots	Meguro et al. (2006)
Streptomyces sp. and non-*Streptomyces*	Leguminosae	Contained *LL*-isomer of diaminopimelic acid; antagonistic activity	Protected against soybean pathogen *Xanthomonas campestris* pv. *glycine*	Mingma et al. (2014)
Streptomyces sp. and *Leifsonia xyli*	Medicinal plants	Solubilization of phosphate, production of siderophores, HCN, ammonia, chitinase, IAA, antifungal activities	Improved a range of growth parameters in *Capsicum annuum* L.	Passari et al. (2015)
Streptomyces sp., *Nocardia* sp., *Nocardiopsis* sp., *Spirillospora* sp., *Microbispora* sp. and *Micromonospora* sp.	*Citrus reticulata*	Production of IAA	Promoted shoot height, fresh shoot weight and fresh root weight of seedlings	Shutsrirung et al. (2013)
Streptomyces diastaticus, *Streptomyces fradiae*, *Streptomyces olivochromogenes*, *Streptomyces collinus*, *Streptomyces ossamyceticus* and *Streptomyces griseus*	Medicinal plants	Production of chitinase; Plant growth promoting abilities and antagonistic potential	Protect chickpea against *Sclerotium rolfsii* infestation; increased the biomass and reduced plant mortality of chickpea	Singh and Gaur (2016)
Streptomyces sp.	N.i.	N.i.	Single inoculation of *Streptomyces* sp. P4 did not influence nodulation, N_2 fixation, shoot dry weight and seed weight at harvest of all soybeans	Soe et al. (2012)
Streptomyces sp. GMKU 3100	*Oryza sativa* L. cv. KDML105	Production of siderophores	Increased root and shoot biomass and lengths of rice and mungbean plants	Rungin et al. (2012)

HCN Hydrogen cyanide; *IAA* Indole-3-acetic acid; *N.i.* Not indicated

8.6 Conclusion

Endophytic actinobacteria have been isolated from several plant species and inoculated onto different target agricultural crops often resulting in enhanced plant performance. Improvements in isolation and identification methods are yielding new isolates with plant growth promoting traits and showing that endophytic actinobacteria are amongst the predominant bacterial phyla inside plants, including agriculturally important crops. The use of endophytic actinobacteria as microbial inoculants in agriculture offers considerable advantages when compared with that of rhizobacteria, since competition effects are greatly reduced in the colonization of the internal tissues of the plant, thus increasing the chances of survival, growth, and effectiveness of the endophytic inoculants. Endophytic actinobacteria are able to enhance the establishment, growth, development, and health of agricultural crops directly via production/secretion of various regulatory chemicals and indirectly via inhibition of phytopathogens. Thus, endophytic actinobacteria hold the prospect of reducing the input of chemical fertilizers and pesticides and their inoculation can be regarded as an environmentally friendly approach in agriculture. There is, therefore, great potential in using endophytic actinobacteria as biotechnological tools for sustainable agricultural applications.

Acknowledgements M.F. Carvalho acknowledges Investigator FCT program supported by Fundação para a Ciência e a Tecnologia (FCT), Fundo Social Europeu (FSE) and Programa Operacional Potencial Humano. R.S. Oliveira and Y. Ma thank the support of FCT through the research grants SFRH/BPD/85008/2012 and SFRH/BPD/76028/2011, FSE and Programa Operacional do Capital Humano (POCH). This work was partly financed by Portuguese national funds through Programa Operacional Competitividade e Internacionalização (POCI), Project 3599 – Promover a Produção Científica e Desenvolvimento Tecnológico e a Constituição de Redes Temáticas (3599-PPCDT) and Fundo Europeu de Desenvolvimento Regional (FEDER) under Project POCI-01-0145-FEDER-016801 and by FCT under Project PTDC/AGR-TEC/1140/2014.

References

Ahemad M (2015) Phosphate-solubilizing bacteria-assisted phytoremediation of metalliferous soils: a review. 3. Biotech 5:111–121

Amorim CL, Ferreira AC, Carvalho MF, Afonso CM, Castro PML (2014) Mineralization of 4-fluorocinnamic acid by a *Rhodococcus* strain. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 98:1893–1905

Araújo JM, Silva AC, Azevedo JL (2000) Isolation of endophytic actinomycetes from roots and leaves of maize (*Zea mays* L.). Braz Arch Biol Technol 43:447–451

Araújo WL, Maccheroni W Jr, Aguilar-Vildoso CI, Barroso PA, Saridakis HO, Azevedo JL (2001) Variability and interactions between endophytic bacteria and fungi isolated from leaf tissues of citrus rootstocks. Can J Microbiol 47:229–236

Araújo WL, Marcon J, Maccheroni W, van Elsas JD, van Vuurde JW, Azevedo JL (2002) Diversity of endophytic bacterial populations and their interaction with *Xylella fastidiosa* in citrus plants. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:4906–4914

Bagewadi ZK, Vernekar AG, Patil AY, Limaye AA, Jain VM (2011) Biodegradation of industrially important textile dyes by actinomycetes isolated from activated sludge. Biotechnol Bioinf Bioeng 1:351–360

Barka EA, Vatsa P, Sanchez L, Gaveau-Vaillant N, Jacquard C, Klenk HP, Clément C, Ouhdouch Y, van Wezel GP (2016) Taxonomy, physiology, and natural products of Actinobacteria. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 80:1–43

Benson DR, Silvester WB (1993) Biology of *Frankia* strains, actinomycete symbionts of actinorhizal plants. Microbiol Rev 57:293–319

Berdy J (2005) Bioactive microbial metabolites. J Antibiot 58:1–26

Bignell DR, Huguet-Tapia JC, Joshi MV, Pettis GS, Loria R (2010) What does it take to be a pathogen: genomic insights from *Streptomyces* species. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 9:179–194

Bothwell TH (1995) Overview and mechanisms of iron regulation. Nutr Rev 53:237–245

Bouizgarne B, Ben Aouamar AA (2014) Diversity of plant associated actinobacteria. In: Maheswari DK (ed) Bacterial diversity in sustainable agriculture. Springer International Publishing, Switzerland, pp 41–99

Callaham D, Deltredici P, Torrey JG (1978) Isolation and cultivation in vitro of the actinomycete causing root nodulation in *Comptonia*. Science 199:899–902

Cao L, Qiu Z, You J, Tan H, Zhou S (2004) Isolation and characterization of endophytic *Streptomyces* strains from surface-sterilized tomato (*Lycopersicon esculentum*) roots. Lett Appl Microbiol 39:425–430

Cao L, Qiu Z, You J, Tan H, Zhou S (2005) Isolation and characterization of endophytic streptomycete antagonists of *Fusarium* wilt pathogen from surface-sterilized banana roots. FEMS Microbiol Lett 247:147–152

Cardinale M, Grube M, Erlacher A, Quehenberger J, Berg G (2015) Bacterial networks and co-occurrence relationships in the lettuce root microbiota. Environ Microbiol 17:239–252

Carro L, Spröer C, Alonso P, Trujillo ME (2012) Diversity of *Micromonospora* strains isolated from nitrogen fixing nodules and rhizosphere of *Pisum sativum* analyzed by multilocus sequence analysis. Syst Appl Microbiol 35:73–80

Carro L, Pujic P, Trujillo ME, Normand P (2013) *Micromonospora* is a normal inhabitant of actinorhizal nodules. J Biosci 38:685–693

Castillo UF, Strobel GA, Ford EJ, Hess WM, Porter H, Jensen JB, Albert H, Robison R, Condron MA, Teplow DB, Stevens D, Yaver D (2002) Munumbicins, wide-spectrum antibiotics produced by *Streptomyces* NRRL 30562, endophytic on *Kennedia nigriscans*. Microbiology 148:2675–2685

Chattopadhyay SK, Nandi B (1982) Inhibition of *Helminthosporium oryzae* and *Alternaria solani* by *Streptomyces longisporus* (Krasilnokov) Waksman. Plant Soil 69:171–175

Chen LM, Dick WA, Streeter JG, Hoitink HAJ (1998) Fe chelates from compost microorganisms improve Fe nutrition of soybean and oat. Plant Soil 200:139–147

Clardy J, Fischbach MA, Walsh CT (2006) New antibiotics from bacterial natural products. Nature Biotechnol 24:1541–1550

Conn VM, Franco CMM (2004) Analysis of the endophytic actinobacterial population in the roots of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) by Terminal Restriction Fragment Length Polymorphism (T-RFLP) and sequencing of 16S rRNA clones. Appl Environ Microbiol 70:1787–1794

Conn VM, Walker AR, Franco CM (2008) Endophytic actinobacteria induce defense pathways in *Arabidopsis thaliana*. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 21:208–218

Coombs JT, Franco CMM (2003) Isolation and identification of actinobacteria from surface-sterilized wheat roots. Appl Environ Microbiol 69:5603–5608

Coombs JT, Michelsen PP, Franco CMM (2004) Evaluation of endophytic actinobacteria as antagonists of *Gaeumannomyces graminis* var. *tritici* in wheat. Biol Control 29:359–366

Costa FG, Zucchi TD, Melo IS (2013) Biological control of phytopathogenic fungi by endophytic actinomycetes isolated from maize (*Zea mays* L.). Braz Arch Biol Tech 56:948–955

de Oliveira MF, da Silva MG, Van Der Sand ST (2010) Anti-phytopathogen potential of endophytic actinobacteria isolated from tomato plants (*Lycopersicon esculentum*) in southern Brazil, and characterization of *Streptomyces* sp. R18 (6), a potential biocontrol agent. Res Microbiol 161:565–572

Deng ZS, Zhao LF, Kong ZY, Yang WQ, Lindström K, Wang ET, Wei GH (2011) Diversity of endophytic bacteria within nodules of the *Sphaerophysa salsula* in different regions of Loess Plateau in China. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 76:463–475

Dochhil H, Dkhar MS, Barman D (2013) Seed germination enhancing activity of endophytic *Streptomyces* isolated from indigenous ethno-medicinal plant *Centella asiatica*. Int J Pharm Biol Sci 4:256–262

Doumbou CL, Hamby Salove MK, Crawford DL, Beaulieu C (2001) Actinomycetes, promising tools to control plant diseases and to promote plant growth. Phytoprotection 82:85–102

Dudeja SS, Giri R, Saini R, Suneja-Madan P, Kothe E (2012) Interaction of endophytic microbes with legumes. J Basic Microbiol 52:248–260

Eichenlaub R, Gartemann K-H (2011) The *Clavibacter michiganensis* subspecies: molecular investigation of Gram-positive bacterial plant pathogens. Annu Rev Phytopathol 49:445–464

El-Tarabily KA, Nassar AH, Hardy GE, Sivasithamparam K (2009) Plant growth promotion and biological control of *Pythium aphanidermatum*, a pathogen of cucumber, by endophytic actinomycetes. J Appl Microbiol 106:13–26

El-Tarabily KA, St J Hardy GE, Sivasithamparam K (2010) Performance of three endophytic actinomycetes in relation to plant growth promotion and biological control of *Pythium aphanidermatum*, a pathogen of cucumber under commercial field production conditions in the United Arab Emirates. Eur J Plant Pathol 128:527–539

Ezawa T, Smith SE, Smith FA (2002) P metabolism and transport in AM fungi. Plant Soil 244:221–230

Fiedler HP, Bruntner C, Riedlinger J, Bull AT, Knutsen G, Goodfellow M, Jones A, Maldonado L, Pathom-aree W, Beil W, Schneider K, Keller S, Sussmuth RD (2008) Proximicin A, B and C, novel aminofuran antibiotic and anticancer compounds isolated from marine strains of the actinomycetes *Verrucosispora*. J Antibiot 61:158–163

Flügel M, Becker A, Gartemann K-H, Eichenlaub R (2012) Analysis of the interaction of *Clavibacter michiganensis* subsp. *michiganensis* with its host plant tomato by genome-wide expression profiling. J Biotechnol 160:42–54

Franco C, Michelsen P, Percy N, Conn V, Listiana E, Moll S, Loria R, Coombs J (2007) Actinobacterial endophytes for improved crop performance. Australas Plant Pathol 36:524–531

Gaiero JR, McCall CA, Thompson KA, Day NJ, Best AS, Dunfield KE (2013) Inside the root microbiome: bacterial root endophytes and plant growth promotion. Am J Bot 100:1738–1750

Gao B, Gupta RS (2012) Phylogenetic framework and molecular signatures for the main clades of the phylum Actinobacteria. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 76:66–112

Garbeva P, Van Overbeek LS, Van Vuurde JW, Van Elsas JD (2001) Analysis of endophytic bacterial communities of potato by plating and denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis (DGGE) of 16S rDNA based PCR fragments. Microb Ecol 41:369–383

Garcia LC, Martínez-Molina E, Trujillo ME (2010) *Micromonospora pisi* sp. nov., isolated from root nodules of *Pisum sativum*. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 60:331–337

Germida JJ, Siciliano SD, de Freitas JR, Seib AM (1998) Diversity of root-associated bacteria associated with field-grown canola (*Brassica napus* L.) and wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.). FEMS Microbiol Ecol 26:43–50

Glick BR, Todorovic B, Czarny J, Cheng Z, Duan J, McConkey B (2007) Promotion of plant growth by bacterial ACC deaminase. Crit Rev Plant Sci 26:227–242

Golinska P, Wypij M, Agarkar G, Rathod D, Dahm H, Rai M (2015) Endophytic actinobacteria of medicinal plants: diversity and bioactivity. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 108:267–289

Gopalakrishnan S, Pande S, Sharma M, Humayun P, Keerthi Kiran BK, Sandeep D, Vidya MS, Deepthi K, Rupela O (2011) Evaluation of actinomycete isolates obtained from herbal vermicompost for the biological control of *Fusarium* wilt of chickpea. Crop Prot 30:1070–1078

Gopalakrishnan S, Sathya A, Vijayabharathi R (2016) Plant growth promoting actinobacteria: a new avenue for enhancing the productivity and soil fertility of grain legumes. Springer, Singapore

Goudjal Y, Toumatia O, Sabaou N, Barakate M, Mathieu F, Zitouni A (2013) Endophytic actinomycetes from spontaneous plants of Algerian Sahara: indole-3-acetic acid production and tomato plants growth promoting activity. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 29:1821–1829

Goudjal Y, Toumatia O, Yekkour A, Sabaou N, Mathieu F, Zitouni A (2014) Biocontrol of *Rhizoctonia solani* damping-off and promotion of tomato plant growth by endophytic actinomycetes isolated from native plants of Algerian Sahara. Microbiol Res 169:59–65

Gravel V, Antoun H, Tweddell RJ (2007) Growth stimulation and fruit yield improvement of greenhouse tomato plants by inoculation with *Pseudomonas putida* or *Trichoderma atroviride*: possible role of indole acetic acid (IAA). Soil Biol Biochem 39:1968–1977

Hallmann J, Berg G, Schulz B (2006) Isolation procedures for endophytic microorganisms. In: Schulz BJE, Boyle CJC, Sieber TN (eds) Microbial root endophytes. Springer, New York, pp 299–314

Hamdali H, Hafidi M, Virolle MJ, Ouhdouch Y (2008) Growth promotion and protection against damping-off of wheat by two rock phosphate solubilizing actinomycetes in a P-deficient soil under greenhouse conditions. Appl Soil Ecol 40:510–517

Hasegawa S, Meguro A, Shimizu M, Nishimura T, Kunoh H (2006) Endophytic actinomycetes and their interactions with host plants. Actinomycetologica 20:72–81

Hastuti RD, Lestari Y, Suwanto A, Saraswati R (2012) Endophytic *Streptomyces* spp. as biocontrol agents of rice bacterial leaf blight pathogen (*Xanthomonas oryzae* pv. *oryzae*). HAYATI J Biosci 19:155–162

Hossain Z, Nouri MZ, Komatsu S (2012) Plant cell organelle proteomics in response to abiotic stress. J Proteome Res 11:37–48

Igarashi Y, Iida T, Yoshida R, Furumai T (2002) Pteridic acids A and B, novel plant growth promoters with auxin-like activity from *Streptomyces hygroscopicus* TP-A0451. J Antibiot 55:764–767

Igarashi Y, Trujillo ME, Martínez-Molina E, Yanase S, Miyanaga S, Obata T, Sakurai H, Saiki I, Fujita T, Furumai T (2007) Antitumor anthraquinones from an endophytic actinomycete *Micromonospora lupini* sp. nov. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 17:3702–3705

Jiao JY, Wang HX, Zeng Y, Shen YM (2006) Enrichment for microbes living in association with plant tissues. J Appl Microbiol 100:830–837

Jizba J, Sedmera P, Zima J, Beran M, Blumauerová M, Kandybin N, Samoukina G (1991) Macrotetrolide antibiotics produced by *Streptomyces globisporus*. Folia Microbiol 36:437–443

Jog R, Pandya M, Nareshkumar G, Rajkumar S (2014) Mechanism of phosphate solubilization and antifungal activity of *Streptomyces* spp. isolated from wheat roots and rhizosphere and their application in improving plant growth. Microbiology 160:778–788

Kaewkla O, Franco CM (2013) Rational approaches to improving the isolation of endophytic actinobacteria from Australian native trees. Microb Ecol 65:384–393

Kampapongsa D, Kaewkla O (2016) Biodiversity of endophytic actinobacteria from jasmine rice (*Oryza sativa* L. KDML 105) grown in Roi-Et Province, Thailand and their antimicrobial activity against rice pathogens. Ann Microbiol 66:587–595

Kanchanadevi D, Hemashenpagam N, Sandhya R (2013) Characterization and plant growth promoter production of endophytic actinomycetes isolated from agricultural crops. Pharmanest 4:808–827

Kaur H, Gangwar M, Kalia A (2015) Diversity of actinomycetes from fodder leguminous plants and their biocontrol potential. Int J Adv Res 3:1141–1151

Kekuda TP (2016) Isolation, characterization and antimicrobial potential of endophytic actinomycetes. Int J Curr Microbiol App Sci 5:100–116

Khedkar S, Shanker R (2015) Isolation and classification of a soil actinomycete capable of sulphur-specific biotransformation of dibenzothiophene, benzothiophene and thianthrene. J Appl Microbiol 118:62–74

Kreuze JF, Suomalainen S, Paulin L, Valkonen JP (1999) Phylogenetic analysis of 16S rRNA genes and PCR analysis of the nec1 gene from *Streptomyces* spp. causing common scab, pitted scab, and netted scab in Finland. Phytopathology 89:462–469

Kunoh H (2002) Endophytic actinomycetes: attractive biocontrol agents. J Gen Plant Pathol 68:249–252

Labeda D (1987) Actinomycete taxonomy: generic characterization. Dev Ind Microbiol 28:115–121

Le XH, Franco CM, Ballard RA, Drew EA (2015) Isolation and characterisation of endophytic actinobacteria and their effect on the early growth and nodulation of lucerne (*Medicago sativa* L.). Plant Soil 405:13–24

Le XH, Ballard RA, Franco CMM (2016) Effects of endophytic *Streptomyces* and mineral nitrogen on Lucerne (*Medicago sativa* L.) growth and its symbiosis with rhizobia. Plant Soil 405:25–34

Lee SO, Choi GJ, Choi YH, Jang KS, Park DJ, Kim CJ, Kim JC (2008) Isolation and characterization of endophytic actinomycetes from Chinese cabbage roots as antagonists to *Plasmodiophora brassicae*. J Microbiol Biotechnol 18–1741–1746

Li J, Zhao GZ, Huang HY, Qin S, Zhu WY, Zhao LX, Xu LH, Zhang S, Li WJ, Strobel G (2012) Isolation and characterization of culturable endophytic actinobacteria associated with *Artemisia annua* L. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 101:515–527

Loria R, Kers J, Joshi M (2006) Evolution of plant pathogenicity in *Streptomyces*. Annu Rev Phytopathol 44:469–487

Luo H, Lin X, Zhang L, Liu N, Huang Y (2013) Isolation, classification and biosynthetic potential of endophytic actinomycetes from *Stemona*. Acta Microbiol Sin 52:389–395

Ma Y, Prasad MNV, Rajkumar M, Freitas H (2011) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria and endophytes accelerate phytoremediation of metalliferous soils. Biotechnol Adv 29:248–258

Ma Y, Rajkumar M, Zhang C, Freitas H (2016) Beneficial role of bacterial endophytes in heavy metal phytoremediation. J Environ Manag 174:14–25

Manter DK, Delgado JA, Holm DG, Stong RA (2010) Pyro sequencing reveals a highly diverse and cultivar-specific bacterial endophyte community in potato roots. Microb Ecol 60:157–166

Martínez-Hidalgo P, Galindo-Villardón P, Trujillo ME, Igual JM, Martínez-Molina E (2014) *Micromonospora* from nitrogen fixing nodules of alfalfa (*Medicago sativa* L.). A new promising plant probiotic bacteria. Sci Rep 4:6389

Masand M, Jose PA, Menghani E, Jebakumar SRD (2015) Continuing hunt for endophytic actinomycetes as a source of novel biologically active metabolites. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 31:1863–1875

Meguro A, Ohmura Y, Hasegawa S, Shimizu M, Nishimura T, Kunoh H (2006) An endophytic actinomycete, *Streptomyces* sp. MBR-52, that accelerates emergence and elongation of plant adventitious roots. Actinomycetologica 20:1–9

Mingma R, Pathom-aree W, Trakulnaleamsai S, Thamchaipenet A, Duangmal K (2014) Isolation of rhizospheric and roots endophytic actinomycetes from *Leguminosae* plant and their activities to inhibit soybean pathogen, *Xanthomonas campestris* pv. *glycine*. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 30:271–280

Mingma R, Duangmal K, Thamchaipenet A, Trakulnaleamsai S, Matsumoto A, Takahashi Y (2015) *Streptomyces oryzae* sp. nov., an endophytic actinomycete isolated from stems of rice plant. J Antibiot 68:368–372

Minotto E, Milagre LP, Oliveira MT, Van Der Sand ST (2014) Enzyme characterization of endophytic actinobacteria isolated from tomato plants. J Adv Sci Res 5:16–23

Monteiro-Vitorello CB, Camargo LE, Van Sluys MA, Kitajima JP, Truffi D, do Amaral AM, Harakava R, de Oliveira JC, Wood D, de Oliveira MC, Miyaki C, Takita MA, da Silva AC, Furlan LR, Carraro DM, Camarotte G, Almeida NF Jr, Carrer H, Coutinho LL, El-Dorry HA, Ferro MI, Gagliardi PR, Giglioti E, Goldman MH, Goldman GH, Kimura ET, Ferro ES, Kuramae EE, Lemos EG, Lemos MV, Mauro SM, Machado MA, Marino CL, Menck CF, Nunes LR, Oliveira RC, Pereira GG, Siqueira W, de Souza AA, Tsai SM, Zanca AS, Simpson AJ, Brumbley SM, Setúbal JC (2004) The genome sequence of the gram-positive sugarcane pathogen *Leifsonia xyli* subsp. *xyli*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 17:827–836

Müller H, Berg C, Landa BB, Auerbach A, Moissl-Eichinger C, Berg G (2015) Plant genotype-specific archaeal and bacterial endophytes but similar *Bacillus* antagonists colonize Mediterranean olive trees. Front Microbiol 6:138

Nautiyal CS, Bhadauria S, Kumar P, Lal H, Mondal R, Verma D (2000) Stress induced phosphate solubilization in bacteria isolated from alkaline soils. FEMS Microbiol Lett 182:291–296

Navarro L, Dunoyer P, Jay F, Arnold B, Dharmasiri N, Estelle M, Voinnet O, Jones JDG (2006) A plant miRNA contributes to antibacterial resistance by repressing auxin signaling. Science 312:436–439

Nimnoi P, Pongsilp N, Lumyong S (2010) Endophytic actinomycetes isolated from *Aquilaria crassna* Pierre ex Lec and screening of plant growth promoters production. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 26:193–203

Okubo T, Ikeda S, Sasaki K, Ohshima K, Hattori M, Sato T, Minamisawa K (2014) Phylogeny and functions of bacterial communities associated with field-grown rice shoots. Microbes Environ 29:329–332

Passari AK, Mishra VK, Gupta VK, Yadav MK, Saikia R, Singh BP (2015) In vitro and in vivo plant growth promoting activities and DNA fingerprinting of antagonistic endophytic actinomycetes associates with medicinal plants. PLoS ONE 10:e0139468

Patten CL, Glick BR (2002) Role of *Pseudomonas putida* indole acetic acid in development of host plant root system. Appl Environ Microbiol 48:3795–3801

Phetcharat P, Duangpaeng A (2012) Screening of endophytic bacteria from organic rice tissue for indole acetic acid production. Procedia Eng 32:177–183

Pinto C, Pinho D, Sousa S, Pinheiro M, Egas C, Gomes AC (2014) Unravelling the diversity of grapevine microbiome. PLoS ONE 9:e85622

Prakash O, Nimonkar Y, Munot H, Sharma A, Vemuluri VR, Chavadar MS, Shouche YS (2014) Description of *Micrococcus aloeverae* sp. nov., an endophytic actinobacterium isolated from *Aloe vera*. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 64:3427–3433

Qin S, Wang HB, Chen HH, Zhang YQ, Jiang CL, Xu LH, Li WJ (2008) *Glycomyces endophyticus* sp. nov., an endophytic actinomycete isolated from the root of *Carex baccans* Nees. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 58:2525–2528

Qin S, Li J, Chen HH, Zhao GZ, Zhu WY, Jiang CL, Xu LH, Li WJ (2009) Isolation, diversity, and antimicrobial activity of rare actinobacteria from medicinal plants of tropical rain forests in Xishuangbanna, China. Appl Environ Microbiol 75:6176–6186

Qin S, Xing K, Jiang JH, Xu LH, Li WJ (2011) Biodiversity, bioactive natural products and biotechnological potential of plant-associated endophytic actinobacteria. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 89:457–473

Qin S, Chen HH, Zhao GZ, Li J, Zhu WY, Xu LH, Jiang JH, Li WJ (2012) Abundant and diverse endophytic actinobacteria associated with medicinal plant Maytenus austroyunnanensis in Xishuangbanna tropical rainforest revealed by culture-dependent and culture-independent methods. Environ Microbiol Rep 4:522–531

Quecine MC, Araujo WL, Marcon J, Gai CS, Azevedo JL, Pizzirani-Kleiner AA (2008) Chitinolytic activity of endophytic *Streptomyces* and potential for biocontrol. Lett Appl Microbiol 47:486–491

Rafik E, Rahal EK, Ahmed L (2014) Effects of selected endophyte actinomycete on growth, nodulation, nitrogen fixation and yield for three leguminous. Int J Curr Microbiol App Sci 3:733–742

Rajkumar M, Ae N, Freitas H (2009) Endophytic bacteria and their potential to enhance heavy metal phytoextraction. Chemosphere 77:153–160

Rosenblueth M, Martinez-Romero E (2006) Bacterial endophytes and their interactions with hosts. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 19:827–837

Rungin S, Indanand C, Suttiviriya P, Kruasuwan W, Jaemsaeng R, Thamchaipenet A (2012) Plant growth enhancing effects by a siderophore producing endophytic streptomycete isolated from a Thai jasmine rice plant (*Oryza sativa* L. cv. KDML105). Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 102: 463–472

Saddler GS, Messenber-Guimaraes (2012) Genus *Curtobacterium*. In: Whitman W, Goodfellow M, Kämpfer P, Busse H-J, Trujillo M, Ludwig W, Suzuki K-i, Parte A (eds) Bergey's manual of systematic bacteriology, vol 5: The actinobacteria. Springer, New York, pp 887–895

Sadeghi A, Hessan AR, Askari H, Aghighi S, Shahidi Bonjar GH (2006) Biological control potential of two *Streptomyces* isolates on *Rhizoctonia solani*, the causal agent of damping-off of sugar beet. Pak J Biol Sci 9:904–910

Sardi P, Sarachhi M, Quaroni S, Petrolini B, Borgonovi GE, Merli S (1992) Isolation of endophytic *Streptomyces* strains from surface-sterilised roots. Appl Environ Microbiol 58:2691–2693

Savi DC, Haminiuk CWI, Sora GTS, Adamoski DM, Kenski J, Winnischofer SMB, Glienke C (2015) Antitumor, antioxidant and antibacterial activities of secondary metabolites extracted by endophytic actinomycetes isolated from *Vochysia divergens*. Int J Pharm Chem Biol Sci 5:347–356

Schulz B, Boyle C (2006) Microbial root endophytes. In: Sieber TN (ed) What are endophytes?, vol 9. Springer, Berlin, pp 1–13

Sessitsch A, Hardoim P, Döring J, Weilharter A, Krause A, Woyke T, Mitter B, Hauberg-Lotte L, Friedrich F, Rahalkar M, Hurek T, Sarkar A, Bodrossy L, van Overbeek L, Brar D, van Elsas JD, Reinhold-Hurek B (2012) Functional characteristics of an endophyte community colonizing rice roots as revealed by metagenomic analysis. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 25:28–36

Sharma M (2014) Actinomycetes: source, identification, and their applications. Int J Curr Microbiol Appl Sci 3:801–832

Sheil D (1999) Tropical forest diversity, environmental change and species augmentation: after the intermediate disturbance hypothesis. J Veg Sci 10:851–860

Shi YW, Lou K, Li C (2009) Promotion of plant growth by phytohormone producing endophytic microbes of sugar beet. Biol Fertil Soils 45:645–653

Shirling ET, Gottlieb D (1966) Methods for characterization of *Streptomyces* species. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 16:313–340

Shutsrirung A, Chromkaew Y, Pathom-Aree W, Choonluchanon S, Boonkerd N (2013) Diversity of endophytic actinomycetes in mandarin grown in northern Thailand, their phytohormone production potential and plant growth promoting activity. Soil Sci Plant Nutr 59:322–330

Singh R, Dube AK (2015) Endophytic actinomycetes as emerging source for therapeutic compounds. Indo Global J Pharm Sci 5:106–116

Singh SP, Gaur R (2016) Evaluation of antagonistic and plant growth promoting activities of chitinolytic endophytic actinomycetes associated with medicinal plants against *Sclerotium rolfsii* in chickpea. J Appl Microbiol 121:506–518

Soe KM, Bhromsiri A, Karladee D, Yamakawa T (2012) Effects of endophytic actinomycetes and *Bradyrhizobium japonicum* strains on growth, nodulation, nitrogen fixation and seed weight of different soybean varieties. Soil Sci Plant Nutr 58:319–325

Spaepen S, Vanderleyden J, Remans R (2007) Indole-3-acetic acid in microbial and microorganism-plant signaling. FEMS Microbiol Rev 31:425–448

Stone JK, Bacon CW, White JF (2000) An overview of endophytic microbes: endophytism defined. In: Bacon CW, White JF (eds) Microbial endophytes. Marcel Dekker Inc., New York, pp 3–29

Strobel GA, Daisy B (2003) Bioprospecting for microbial endophytes and their natural products. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 67:491–502

Suman A, Yadav AN, Verma P (2016) Endophytic microbes in crops: diversity and beneficial impact for sustainable agriculture. In: Singh DP, Singh HB, Prabha R (eds) Microbial inoculants in sustainable agricultural productivity. Springer, India, pp 117–143

Sun Q, Rost TL, Matthews MA (2006) Pruning-induced tylose development in stems of current-year shoots of *Vitis vinifera* (Vitaceae). Am J Bot 93:1567–1576

Taechowisan T, Peberdy JF, Lumyong S (2003) Isolation of endophytic actinomycetes from selected plants and their antifungal activity. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 19:381–385

Tanaka Y, Omura S (1993) Agroactive compounds of microbial origin. Annu Rev Microbiol 47:57–87

Tchinda RA, Boudjeko T, Simao-Beaunoir AM, Lerat S, Tsala É, Monga E, Beaulieu C (2016) Morphological, physiological, and taxonomic characterization of actinobacterial isolates living as endophytes of cacao pods and cacao seeds. Microbes Environ 31:56–62

Thanaboripat D, Thawai C, Kittiwongwattana C, Laosinwattana C, Koohakan P, Parinthawong N (2015) *Micromonospora endophytica* sp. nov., an endophytic actinobacteria of Thai upland rice (*Oryza sativa*). J Antibiot 68:680–684

Tian XL, Cao LX, Tan HM, Zeng QG, Jia YY, Han WQ, Zhou SN (2004) Study on the communities of endophytic fungi and endophytic actinomycetes from rice and their antipathogenic activities in vitro. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 20:303–309

Tian XL, Cao LX, Tan HM, Han WQ, Chen M, Liu YH, Zhou SN (2007) Diversity of cultivated and uncultivated actinobacterial endophytes in the stems and roots of rice. Microb Ecol 53:700–707

Trujillo ME, Kroppenstedt RM, Schumann P, Carro L, Martínez-Molina E (2006) *Micromonospora coriariae* sp. nov., isolated from root nodules of *Coriaria myrtifolia*. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 56:2381–2385

Trujillo ME, Kroppenstedt RM, Fernández-Molinero C, Schumann P, Martínez-Molina E (2007) *Micromonospora lupini* sp. nov. and *Micromonospora saelicesensis* sp. nov., isolated from root nodules of *Lupinus angustifolius*. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 57:2799–2804

Trujillo ME, Alonso-Vega P, Rodríguez R, Carro L, Cerda E, Alonso P, Martínez-Molina E (2010) The genus *Micromonospora* is widespread in legume root nodules: the example of *Lupinus angustifolius*. ISME J 4:1265–1281

Trujillo ME, Riesco R, Benito P, Carro L (2015) Endophytic actinobacteria and the interaction of *Micromonospora* and nitrogen fixing plants. Front Microbiol 6:1341

van der Hiejden MGA, Bardgett RD, van Straalen NM (2008) The unseen majority: soil microbes as drivers of plant diversity and productivity in terrestrial ecosystems. Ecol Lett 11:296–310

Verma VC, Gond SK, Kumar A, Mishra A, Kharwar RN, Gange AC (2009) Endophytic actinomycetes from *Azadirachta indica* A. Juss.: isolation, diversity, and anti-microbial activity. Microb Ecol 57:749–756

Vernekar JV, Ghatge MS, Deshpande VV (1999) Alkaline protease inhibitor: a novel class of antifungal proteins against phytopathogenic fungi. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 262:702–707

Viterbo A, Landau U, Kim S, Chernin L, Chet I (2010) Characterization of ACC deaminase from the biocontrol and plant growth-promoting agent *Trichoderma asperellum* T203. FEMS Microbiol Lett 305:42–48

Wanner LA (2006) A survey of genetic variation in *Streptomyces* isolates causing potato common scab in the United States. Phytopathology 96:1363–1371

Welbaum GE, Sturz AV, Dong Z, Nowak J (2004) Managing soil microorganisms to improve productivity of agro-ecosystems. Crit Rev Plant Sci 23:175–193

Whitman W, Goodfellow M, Kämpfer P, Busse HJ, Trujillo ME, Ludwig W, Suzuki K, Parte A (eds) (2012) Bergey's manual of systematic bacteriology, vol 5: The actinobacteria, part A and B. Springer, New York

Xing K, Bian GK, Qin S, Klenk HP, Yuan B, Zhang YJ, Li WJ, Jiang JH (2012) *Kibdelosporangium phytohabitans* sp. nov., a novel endophytic actinomycete isolated from oil-seed plant *Jatropha curcas* L. containing 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid deaminase. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 101:433–441

Yandigeri MS, Meena KK, Singh D, Malviya N, Singh DP, Solanki MK, Yadav AK, Arora DK (2012) Drought-tolerant endophytic actinobacteria promote growth of wheat (*Triticum aestivum*) under water stress conditions. Plant Growth Regul 68:411–420

Zhang HW, Song YC, Tan RX (2006) Biology and chemistry of endophytes. Nat Prod Rep 23:753–771

Zhang X, Ren K, Zhang L (2012) Screening and preliminary identification of medicinal plants endophytic actinomycetes used for inhibiting penicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. Int J Biol 4:119–124

Chapter 9
Endophytic Fungi: A Remarkable Source of Biologically Active Secondary Metabolites

Pamoda B. Ratnaweera and E. Dilip de Silva

Abstract Endophytic fungi are ubiquitous in internal tissues of healthy plants and are known to biosynthesis a remarkable array of secondary metabolites with diverse chemical structures and assist host plants to overcome both abiotic and biotic stress factors in their natural environment. Screening technologies have established these natural products are an outstanding source of biologically active metabolites with promising medicinal and agricultural applications. Selection of plants from distinct environmental settings and/or with unconventional biology is expected to enhance the chances of isolating novel fungal endophytes as well as new bioactive secondary metabolites. Using selected examples from different ecological niches, this review illustrates the chemical potential of endophytic fungi for producing pharmaceutically and agriculturally valuable products. The biosynthesis of the same specific biologically active metabolites by the endopyte as well as the host plant and the factors that influence the production of secondary metabolites by the endophyte are also discussed. Finally, the current challenges in the production and commercialization of bioactive compounds of endophytic fungal origin are debated.

Keywords Bioactive · Rainforest · Mangrove · Ecological · Marine · Sedges

9.1 Endophytic Fungi

The evidence from fossil records indicates that endophyte-plant association may have evolved from the period higher plants first colonized land, thus played a long and important role in driving the evolution of life on land (Zhang et al. 2006). Fungi are a distinct group of heterotrophic eukaryotic organisms, wide spread in nature.

P.B. Ratnaweera
Department of Science and Technology, Uva Wellassa University, Badulla, Sri Lanka
e-mail: pamoda.b@gmail.com; pamoda@uwu.ac.lk

E.D. de Silva (✉)
Department of Chemistry, University of Colombo, Colombo 03, Sri Lanka
e-mail: edilip.desilva@gmail.com; dilip@chem.cmb.ac.lk

D.K. Maheshwari and K. Annapurna (eds.), *Endophytes: Crop Productivity and Protection*, Sustainable Development and Biodiversity 16,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-66544-3_9

A vast majority of fungi are composed of microscopic multicellular hyphae (with a few unicellular species) and show cryptic lifestyles in soil and dead matter and become noticeable only when developed fruiting bodies spores in as mushrooms or molds. Fungi are the principal decomposers of organic matter and perform important role in nutrient cycling in ecosystems (Cooke 2009). They establish parasitic relationships with both plants and animals and are known to cause widespread damage, to certain agricultural crops (Fisher et al. 2012). Endophytic fungi on the other hand, are symbionts that spend all or part of their life cycle inter and/or intracellularly colonizing the healthy tissues of a plant without causing any visible manifestation of symptoms (Tan and Zou 2001). The word "endophyte" originates from Greek, "endo" denoting within, and 'phyte' meaning plant and was first proposed in 1866 (Jalgaonwala et al. 2011; de Bary 1866). In addition to fungi, bacteria including actinobacteria are reported as the major endophytes of plants (Bandara et al. 2006).

9.2 Distribution of Endophytic Fungi

The existence of fungi inside the organs of the asymptomatic plants has been known since nineteenth century (Guerin 1898). The first description of endophytic fungi was made as far as back in the year 1904, from the seeds of *Lolium temulentum* (Freeman 1904). Since then fungi have been found from almost every plant species examined to date (Guo et al. 2008). Endophytic fungi have a long life history and their diversity among plants has been found to be one of the largest (Jalgaonwala et al. 2011).

It is noteworthy that each of the nearly 300,000 existing plant species on Earth is assumed to host at least one or even several hundred strains of endophytes (Strobel and Daisy 2003). Fungal endophytes are found in a range of host plants growing in tropical, temperate, boreal forests to extreme arctic, alphine, and xeric environments (Zhang et al. 2006). There are as many as 1.5 million different fungal species on our planet and about 1 million of them are endophytic fungal species (Strobel and Daisy 2003; Radic and Strukelj 2012; Hawksworth 2001). Among them, only about 0.1 million fungal species including endophytic fungi have been described in the past century (Radic and Strukelj 2012; Ganley et al. 2004). Accordingly, fungal endophytes are a group of mainly undescribed organisms that potentially is a rich and reliable source of genetic diversity.

Endophytic fungi are known to thrive asymptomatically in the tissues of plants above ground as well as below ground, including flowers, seeds and ovules, fruits, stems, leaves, xylem, rachis, bark, tubers, and/or roots (Zhang et al. 2006; Kusari

et al. 2012). Recent studies have shown that endophytes are not host-specific (Cohen 2006). A single species of endophytes can invade a wide range of hosts while several studies have suggested that same fungus isolated from different parts of the same host shows diverse abilities to utilize different substances (Carroll and Petrini 1983), thus host endophyte relationship may vary from host to host and endophyte in general.

9.3 The Plant-Endophyte Interaction

The relationship between the endophyte and its host may range from mutualistic symbiosis to phytopathogenesis. Sometimes the endophyte remains latent, with symptomless nature, inside the host plant until the environmental conditions are favorable for the fungus or the ontogenetic state of the host changes to the advantage of the fungus (Rodriguez and Redman 2008; Sieber 2007). Therefore, with time, endophytic fungi can also be aggressive saprophytes or opportunistic pathogens as well (Strobel and Daisy 2003; Tan and Zou 2001; Rodriguez and Redman 2008).

The mutualistic relationship between the fungal endophytes and the host plants are somewhat complex, but results in fitness benefits for both partners. The plants provide endophytes with nutrients, protection from desiccation, spatial structure, and transmission via seed dissemination to the next generation of host (Guo et al. 2008). The plant may also provide important chemical compounds that are essential for the endophytes' growth and self-defense (Metz et al. 2000; Strobel 2002). On the other hand, endophytes contribute significant benefits to their host plants by producing a plethora of bioactive substances required to adapt to abiotic and biotic stress factors (Guo et al. 2008). Resistance to abiotic stress is enhanced by increasing tolerance to drought or water stress, high temperature, low pH, high salinity and presence of heavy metals (Jalgaonwala et al. 2011). In a study done in Lassen Volcanic and Yellowstone national park, it has been shown that an endophytic *Curvularia* species isolated from a grass species collected from geothermal soils gives thermotolerance to the host, probably as a result of production of cell wall melanin that may disperse heat along fungal hyphae (Gunatilaka 2006). A study conducted with an endophytic *Penicillium minioluteum* species and soybean has shown that endophytic association has significantly ameliorated the negative effects of salinity stress damage and increased the growth and metabolism of the soybean (Khan et al. 2011).

Plants encounter biotic stress due to bacterial and fungal pathogens, and attack of insects, nematodes, and mammalian herbivore (Rodriguez et al. 2009). The bioactive secondary metabolites produced by the endophytes living in these plants are known to induce resistance to biotic stress factors (Gunatilaka 2006). Previous researches have reported that in many cases tolerance to biotic stress has been correlated with fungal natural products (Tan and Zou 2001; Zhang et al. 2006; Aly

et al. 2011). There are a number of reports describing various bioactive metabolites produced by fungal endophytes which help the plant to increase the resistance against biotic stress (Guo et al. 2008; Suryanarayanan et al. 2009). For example, production of two macrocyclic alkaloids, pyrrocidines A and B with antibiotic activity, by the endophytic fungus *Acremonium zeae* has been implicated in the protection of its host, maize, against pathogenic and mycotoxin producing fungi (He et al. 2002). In grasses and herbaceous plants, the endophytes are known to produce toxic alkaloids that prevent or poison invertebrate and vertebrate herbivores (Rodriguez et al. 2009). Accordingly in symbiotically conferred stress tolerance, endophytes act as a biological trigger to activate host defense system more rapidly and strongly (Rodriguez and Redman 2008). At the same time some endophytes are capable of enhancing the hosts' allelopathic effects on other species growing close by, being an opponent for the space and nutrients (Newcombe et al. 2009). Apart from the above benefits, many endophytes are reported to enhance uptake of phosphorus, and other important elements for plant growth, capable of fixing nitrogen and producing plant hormones such as auxin, indole acetic acid, which are essential for regulation of plant growth and development (Guo et al. 2008).

9.4 Biological Rationale in Plant Selection

Due to the vast number of plant species in the world, creative and imaginative strategies are necessary to quickly narrow down the search for bioactive endophytes. This provides the best opportunities to isolate endophytes prone to produce novel bioactive products. Plants from distinct environmental settings and/or with an unconventional biology are considered to be a promising source for isolating novel endophytes bearing new secondary metabolites (Strobel 2003). Strobel and Daisy (2003) reported several reasonable hypotheses governing the plant selection for isolating bioactive endophytes. Selection of plants from a unique environment, having unusual biology, using novel approaches for survival is one such strategy. Mangrove environments are an example for hosting such plants. A second tactic is the selection of plants that have a historic background, which have been exploited as a source of traditional medicine. Third, plants that are endemic, having an unusual longevity or that occupy a certain ancient land mass, have the prospect of lodging such endophytes. Finally, plants growing in areas of high biodiversity, such as rainforest ecosystems, are potential sources housing novel and bioactive endophytic fungi (Strobel and Daisy 2003).

9.5 Bioactive Metabolites from Endophytic Fungal Origin from Different Ecological Niches

Although the discovery of endophytic fungi dates as far back as the early 1900s, they did not receive much attention until the recent realization of their pharmaceutical and ecological significance (Gunatilaka 2006). Recent developments of screening technologies have revealed that endophytic fungi are an outstanding source of biologically active compounds with promising medicinal and agricultural applications (Aly et al. 2011).

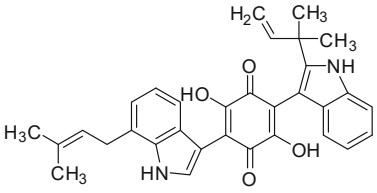
Tropical rainforest ecosystems are the richest ecosystems in the world containing more than half of the Earth's biota (Wilson 1988). The extreme biological diversity of tropical rainforests ultimately implies the chemical diversity resulting from the constant chemical innovations that exist in such ecosystems (Strobel and Daisy 2003). In tropical rainforests, the resources are limited due to the high species diversity, therefore competition among species is high, and the selection pressure is at its peak (Strobel and Daisy 2003). These factors eventually make rainforests a potentially productive source for the discovery of novel molecular structures and biologically active metabolites (Redell et al. 2000; Strobel and Daisy 2003).

Specific endophytes may have evolved within endemic plant species in areas of high plant endemicity with moist, warm, and geographically isolated climates (Strobel 2003; Strobel and Daisy 2003). This has been reported in rainforests of Venezuela, Central America, monsoonal areas of Australia, golden triangle of Thailand, Papua New Guinea, Madagascar, and upper Amazon regions (Mittermeier et al. 1999). Novel endophytic fungal taxa and series of new bioactive compounds have been discovered from each of the above areas (Mittermeier et al. 1999).

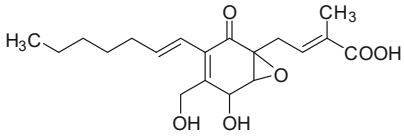
On the other hand, Strobel (2003) has stated plants growing in extremely moist conditions or plants growing in rainforests which have a more or less constant 90–100% relative humidity are prone to attack by certain extremely pathogenic fungi, thus specialized defensive mechanisms in such plants are necessary for their survival. Accordingly, such disease defences may have offered by endophytes associated with the plant (Strobel 2003). A comparative study using statistical data, revealed that tropical plant endophytes provide more active natural products and a larger number of secondary metabolites in comparison to that of temperate plant endophytes (Bill et al. 2002).

The metabolite demethylasterriquinone B-1, L-783,281 **(1)**, isolated from an endophytic *Pseudomassari* sp. collected from an African rainforest tree has acted as an antidiabetic agent (Strobel et al. 2004; Zhang et al. 1999). Unlike insulin, this non-peptide secondary metabolite (L-783,281) does not get ineffective in the digestive tract and thus can be a lead for an orally ingested drug for diabetes. Similarly, Ambuic acid **(2)** is an antifungal agent isolated from a common rainforest

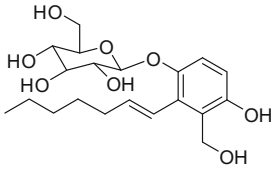
endophyte *Pestalotiopsis microspora* (Li et al. 2001). Pestaloside **(3)**, an aromatic β-glucoside, and two pyrones namely pestalopyrone and hydroxypestalopyrone are other secondary metabolites isolated from *P. microspora* with antifungal and phytotoxic activities (Lee et al. 1995). Antibacterial helvolic acid **(4)** is a nor-triterpenoid isolated from *Xylaria* sp. from an endemic endangered rainforest orchid *Anoectochilus setaceus* in Sri Lanka (Ratnaweera et al. 2014). Helvolic acid has reported for antibacterial activity against Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA, MIC 4 μg mL^{-1}) and *Bacillus subtilis* (MIC: 2 μg mL^{-1}).



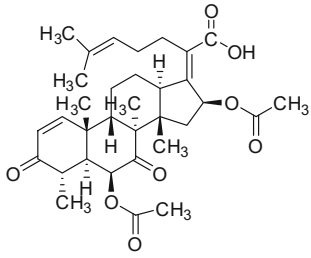
(1)



(2)



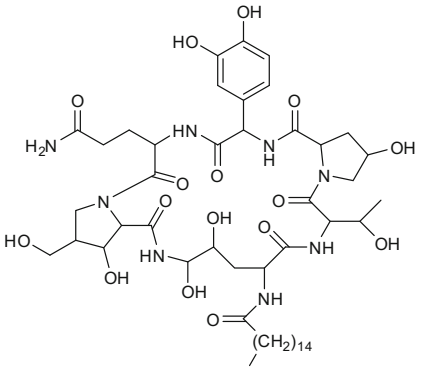
(3)



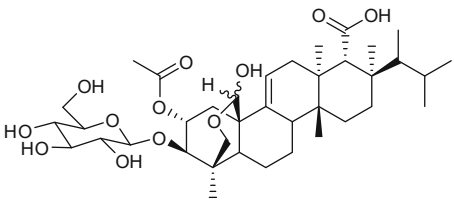
(4)

Several important bioactive natural products found in other terrestrial plants are as follows. Cryptocandin **(5)**, a peptide antifungal agent was isolated and characterized from the endophytic fungus *Cryptosporiopsis quercina* inhabiting in the medicinal plant *Tripterygium wilfordii* (Strobel et al. 1999). This compound has shown excellent antifungal activity against several human fungal pathogens, *Candida albicans*, *Trichophyton* spp. and number of plant pathogenic fungi, including *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum* and *Botrytis cinerea*. Currently several companies have tested and developed Cryptocandin to use against a number of fungi causing skin and nail diseases (Strobel 2003).

Enfumafungin **(6)**, is a hemiacetal triterpene glycoside, isolated from *Hormonema* sp. comprising in mesophyll tissue of leaves of *Juniperus communis* L (Aly et al. 2011). Enfumafungin is a specific inhibitor of fungal cell wall glucan synthesis. The compound has shown in vitro antifungal activity with 0.07 μM, EC_{50} value against *C. albicans* (Aly et al. 2011). Extensive structural modifications of the Enfumafungin resulted in the development of an orally available semi-synthetic inhibitor derived from this fungal secondary metabolite. This inhibitor, with EC_{50}, 0.6 ng mL^{-1} against *C. albicans* and 1.7 ng mL^{-1} against *Aspergillus fumigatus*, has entered phase I clinical trials as the first oral glucan synthase inhibitor for fungal infections therapy (Motyl et al. 2010).

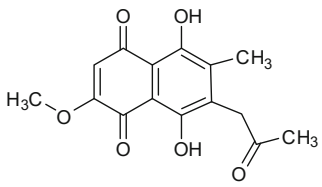


(5)

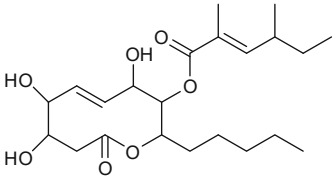


(6)

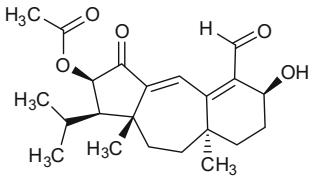
Highly antibacterial naphthaquinone, javanicin **(7)**, has been isolated from the endophytic fungus *Choridium* spp. from root tissues of *Azadirachta indica*. The sensitivity to javanicin with MIC value of 2 μg mL^{-1} showed antibacterial activity against *Pseudomonas aeruginose* and *P. fluorescens* (Kharwar et al. 2009). Phomol **(8)** is a novel polyketide lactone with antibacterial, antifungal, and anti-inflammatory activities, isolated from an endophytic *Phomopsis* sp. in Argentinian medicinal plant, *Erythrina crista*-galli (Weber et al. 2004). The diterpenoids guanacastepenes A-O, have been encountered in an unidentified endophytic fungal strain CR115, occurring in *Daphnopsis americana*. Guanacastepenes A **(9)** and I **(10)** exhibited antibacterial activity against drug resistant strains of *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Enterococcus faecalis* (Brandy et al. 2001). Recent discovery of two new metabolites, antibacterial active eupenicinicols A and B **(11, 12)**, from an endophytic fungus, *Eupenicillium* sp. harbored in the roots of a Chinese medicinal plant, *Xanthium sibiricum* showed the unfailing potential of endophytes as probable antimicrobial agents (Li et al. 2014).



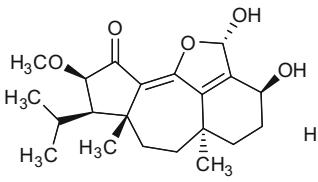
(7)



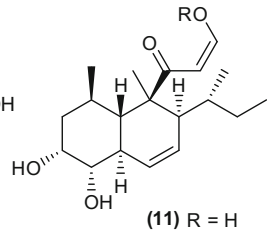
(8)



(9)



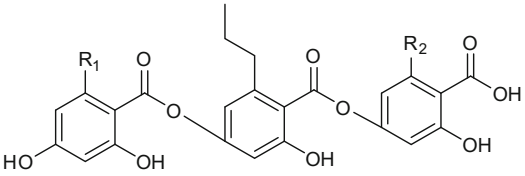
(10)



(11) R = H
(12) R = CH_3

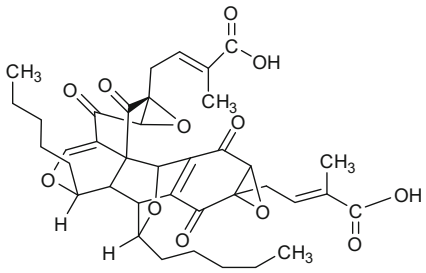
Besides the above-mentioned endophytic fungal antibiotic metabolites, there is a plethora of endophytes, with no certain compound isolated, but have been reported to show strong antibiotic activity for tested microorganisms. Methanol extract of a new endophytic fungus *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides* from the medicinal plant *Vitex negundo* with antimicrobial activity against methicillin-penicillin-and/or vancomycin-resistant clinical strains of *S. aureus*, is an example for the former statement (Arivudainambi et al. 2011).

Cytonic acid A and B **(13, 14)** are two novel human cytomegalovirus protease inhibitors isolated from endophytic fungus *Cytonaema* sp. (Guo et al. 2000). The absence of appropriate antiviral screening systems in most programs is the main limitation in this type of compound discovery. Cytochalasins are alkaloids, common in endophytic *Xylaria*, *Phoma,* and *Hypoxylon* spp. exhibiting antitumor activities (Wagenaar et al. 2000). Torreyanic acid **(15)**, is a selectively cytotoxic unusual dimeric quinone isolated from *Pestalotiopsis microspora* endophytic to the endangered tree *Torrya taxifolia* (Lee et al. 1996). Torreyanic acid, in general has demonstrated 5–10 times more potency to several cancer cell lines that are sensitive to protein kinase C agonists and caused cell death by apoptosis (Lee et al. 1996). A recent study has reported a new epitetrathiodioxopiperizine, secoemestrin D **(16)** from an endophytic fungal strain *Emericella* sp., occurred in mesophyll of *Astrgalus lentiginosus.* Secoemestrin D exhibited significant cytotoxic activity with IC_{50} values ranging from 0.06 to 0.24 μM and moderate selectivity to human glioma and metastatic breast adenocarcinoma cell lines (Xu et al. 2013).

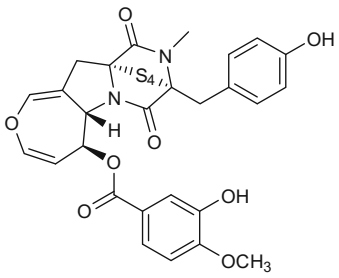


(13) R_1 : $(CH_2)_4CH_3$ R_2 : $(CH_2)_2CH_3$

(14) R_1 : $(CH_2)_2CH_3$ R_2 : $(CH_2)_4CH_3$

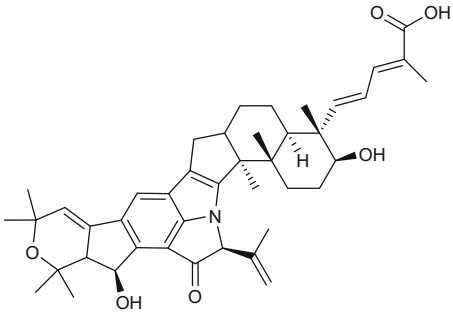


(15)

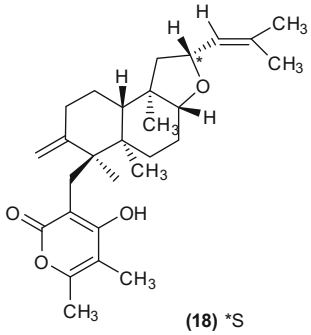


(16)

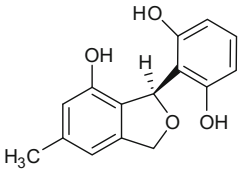
Apart from the antibiotic activities, endophytic fungi have been a potential source of various other interesting behaviors. Nodulisporic acid A **(17)** is an insecticidal fungal metabolite isolated from endophytic *Nodulisporium* sp. from the Hawaiian plant *Bontia daphnoides*. This compound has shown systemic efficacy against fleas by modulating an invertebrate-specific glutamate-gated ion channel and has resulted in identifying a potent and effective oral agent for control of fleas and ticks in mammals (Ondeyka et al. 1997; Aly et al. 2011). Subglutinols A and B **(18, 19)** are immunosuppressive compounds produced by endophytic fungus *Fusarium subglutinans*, from *Tripterygium wilfordii*. Both compounds showed IC_{50} value of 0.1 μM in the mixed lymphocyte reaction assay (Lee et al. 1995). Pestacin **(20)** and isopestacin **(21)** are two antioxidants secreted by an endophytic *P. microspora* isolated from *Timonius morobensis* growing on the north coast of Papua New Guinea (Strobel et al. 2002; Harper et al. 2003). A new alkaloid named 16α-hydroxy-5 N-acetylardeemin **(22)**, demonstrating acetylcholineesterase inhibitory activity (EC_{50}: 58.3 μM), has been isolated from a fermented broth of endophytic *A. terreus* from stems of *Artemisia annua* collected from the Zijin Mountain in China (Ge et al. 2010).



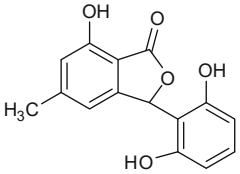
(17)



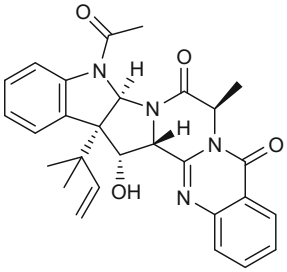
(18) *S
(19) *R



(20)



(21)



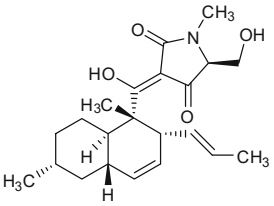
(22)

Shipunov et al. (2008) have mentioned that in the host's invaded range, endophytes increase the competitiveness of the host by producing metabolites inhibitory to evolutionarily native plants. An endophytic fungus *Fusarium* sp. of the invasive cactus *Opuntia dillenii* contained antimicrobial secondary metabolite equisetin **(23)** (Ratnaweera et al. 2015a). The production of such biologically active substances may enhance the competitive ability of the host against microorganisms and perhaps increase its adaptability to withstand the biotic and harsh abiotic stress factors that assist in the successful establishment of *O. dillenii* to the detriment of native plants in the area.

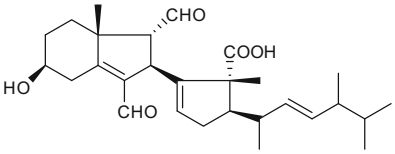
Various workers have reported grasses and sedges are reservoirs for a number of endophytic fungi and result in enhancement of the ecological fitness and tolerance to biotic and abiotic environmental stresses (Gunatilaka 2006; Mukhtar et al. 2010). In grasses and herbaceous plants, the endophytes are known to produce toxic alkaloids that prevent or poison invertebrate and vertebrate herbivores (Rodriguez et al. 2009). A Korean study has shown endophytic fungal isolates of the roots of *Monochoria vaginalis*, a weed of rice paddy significantly promote the growth of the plant mainly due to higher secretions of Gibberellins (Ahmad et al. 2010). Among the bioactive secondary metabolites, solanioic acid **(24)** isolated from *Rhizoctonia solani* from *Cyperus rotundus* showed antibacterial activity (Ratnaweera et al.

2015b). Solanioic acid has a highly functionalized and rearranged steroidal carbon skeleton and is a potent antibiotic, active at 1 μg/mL against MRSA. The endophytic *Aspergillus* strain CY725 and *Rhizoctonia* sp. strain Cy064 isolated from the leaves of *Cynodon dactylon*, have afforded antimicrobial helvolic acid, rhizoctonic acid, monomethylsulochrin and ergosterol (Li et al. 2005; Ma et al. 2004). *Paspalum conjugatum* harbored an endophytic *Microthyriaceae* sp. which contained a known mycotoxin sterigmatocystin which exhibited antiparasitic activity against *Trypanosoma cruzi*, with an IC_{50} value of 0.13 μmol L^{-1} and a novel polyketide integrasone B (Almeida et al. 2014).

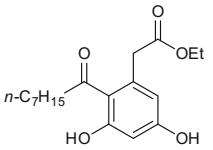
Mangrove forests are considered as biodiversity 'hotspots' for marine-derived fungi (Shearer et al. 2007). This is mainly because, the permanently and intermittently submerged mangrove trunks and aerating roots are host to terrestrial, marine and an overlap of terrestrial and marine fungi (Sarma and Hyde 2001; Shearer et al. 2007). According to Schmit and Shearer (2003), 106 fungi have been reported from mangrove habitats in the Atlantic Ocean, while 173 and 128 are documented from Pacific and Indian Ocean mangroves, respectively. Among the mangrove-derived fungal community, the fungal endophytes play an important role protecting their host against various aggressions (Cheng et al. 2009). According to reports more than 200 species of endophytic fungi have been isolated and identified from mangrove plants and dominant among them are species of *Alternaria*, *Aspergillus*, *Cladosporium*, *Colletotrichum*, *Fusarium*, *Paecilamyces*, *Penicillium*, *Pestalotiopsis*, *Phoma*, *Phomopsis*, *Phyllosticta,* and *Trichoderma* (Liu et al. 2007). Mangrove-derived endophytic fungi are believed to contribute to their hosts' ability to adapt to endure the extreme habitat conditions (Debbab et al. 2013). In addition, these mangrove endophytic fungi are proven to be a promising source of structurally unique natural products, and drug leads with remarkable bioactivities (Tan et al. 2008). Cytosporone B **(25)** is such a novel natural product, isolated from an endophytic *Dothiorella* sp. from mangrove plant *Avicennia marina* at an estuary in China, with broad antifungal activities against *A. niger*, *Trichoderma* sp. and *Fusarium* sp. and high activity against human epidermal carcinoma and several other cell lines (Xu et al. 2005). Recent report of two new antibacterial α-pyrone derivatives, infectopyrones A **(26)** and B **(27)** from the mangrove endophytic fungus, *Stemphylium* sp. isolated from a *Brguiera* sp. also demonstrates the potential of mangrove endophytes to produce bioactive chemical scaffolds (Zhou et al. 2014). Two new compounds pinazaphilones B and (±)-penifupyrone with significant α-glucosidase inhibitory activity have been discovered from a mangrove endophytic *Penicillium* sp. isolated from the fresh branches of the mangrove plant *Cerbera manghas* (Liu et al. 2015).



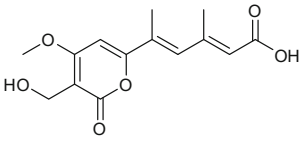
(23)



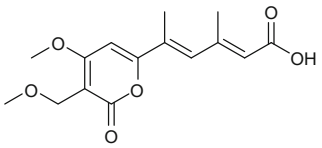
(24)



(25)



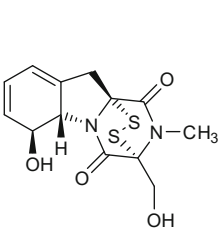
(26)



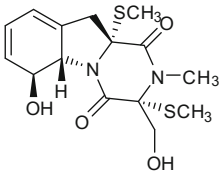
(27)

Mangrove associates are species mainly distributed in terrestrial or aquatic habitat but also occur in the mangrove ecosystem (Parani et al. 1998). According to Tomlinson criteria, mangrove associates are also distinguished from true mangroves by lacking aerial roots, vivipary, and no physiological mechanism for salt exclusion (Wang et al. 2011). However, mangrove associates growing in the mangrove habitat also have to face the same extreme ecological conditions as the true mangroves. Therefore, these mangrove associates also have the potential of producing bioactive natural products as the true mangroves. This is evident by the recent report of Ratnaweera et al. (2016), who described the isolation of antimicrobial gliotoxin **(28)** and Bisdethiobis (methylthio) gliotoxin **(29)** from an extract of the endophytic fungus *Hypocrea virens* from the plant *Premna serratifolia* from a mangrove habitat.

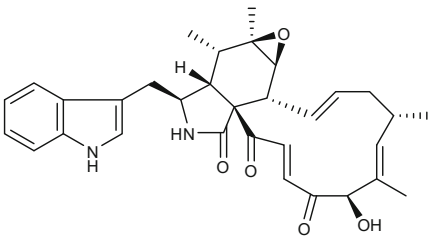
Inland fresh water bodies also are productive ecosystems in the world which house diverse microorganisms. Aquatic plants highly adapted to its environmental and ecological conditions also harbor endophytic fungi having bioactive metabolites. A recent investigation of endophytic fungi of *Nymphaea nouchali* led to the isolation of the known secondary metabolites chaetoglobosin A and C **(30, 31)** from *Chaetomium globosum*, with chaetoglobisn A showing good antibacterial activities (Dissanayaka et al. 2016).



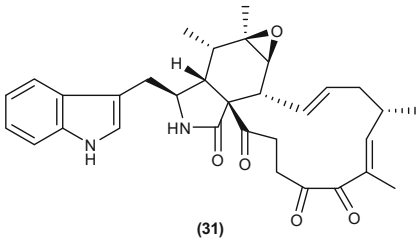
(28)



(29)

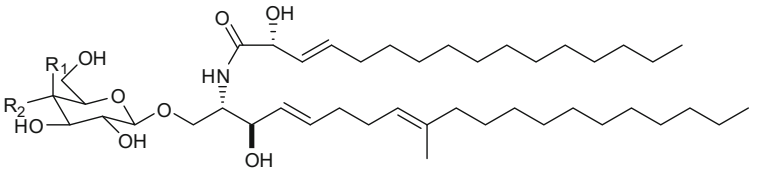


(30)

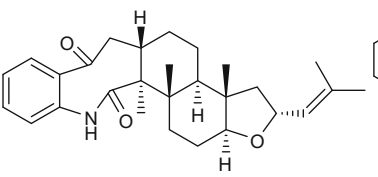


(31)

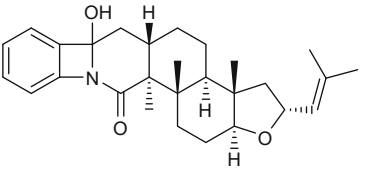
Among the vast diversity of marine-derived fungi are endophytic fungi from macro-algae, sea grasses and other marine plants. Most of these fungi belong to class Ascomycota and their distribution is governed by plant metabolites, temperature, salinity and pH (Ji and Wang 2016). These fungi are proven to be prolific producers of huge array of bioactive natural products. Up to date more than 300 natural products have been identified from endophytic fungi of marine macro-algae. From the published natural products 43% were reported novel compounds with various biological activities such as antioxidant, anticancer, antiplaspodial, and antimicrobial (Flewelling et al. 2015). Among the novel antimicrobial metabolites are Asperamide A, B (**32**, **33**), Asporyzin A-C (**34–36**) and Asperversin A (**37**), from endophytic *Aspergillus* spp., isolated from *Colpomenia sinuosa*, *Heterosiphonia japonica,* and *Sargassum thunbergii,* respectively (Zhang et al. 2007; Qiao et al. 2010; Miao et al. 2012). Myrocin A (**38**) and asperwentin A-C (**39–41**) are some of the anticancer compounds isolated from *Apiospora montagnei* from *Polsiphonia violacea* and *Aspergillus wentii* from *Sargassum fusiforme* (Klemke et al. 2004; Miao et al. 2014). Three 2-pyridone alkaloids, the known N-hydroxy-2-pyridone PF1140 (**42**), and two new 2-pyridones **43** and **44** have been isolated from a *Penicillium* species associated with the New Zealand marine brown algae *Xiphophora gladiata* (de Silva et al. 2009). PF1140 was active against *B. subtilis* and *C. albicans* and to that of murine leukemia P388 cells. Both **43** and **44** were inactive pointing to the importance of the presence of the N–OH functionality meant for bioactivity.



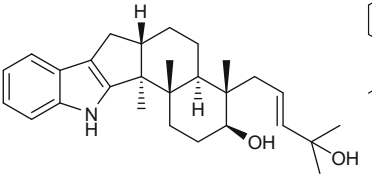
(32) R_1: OH, R_2: H
(33) R_1: H, R_2: OH



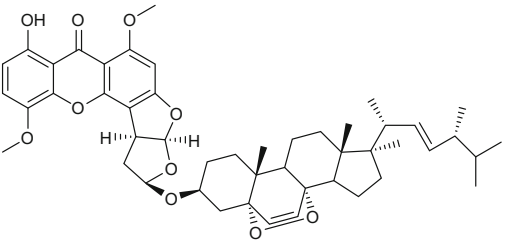
(34)



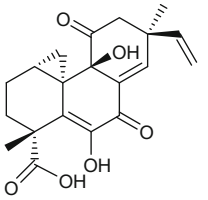
(35)



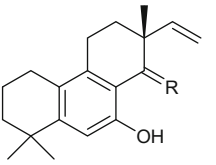
(36)



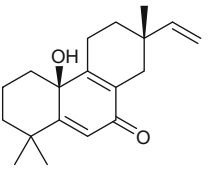
(37)



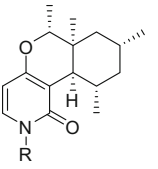
(38)



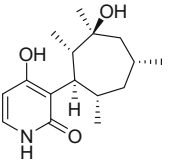
(39) R=H_2
(40) R=O



(41)



(42) R=OH
(43) R=H



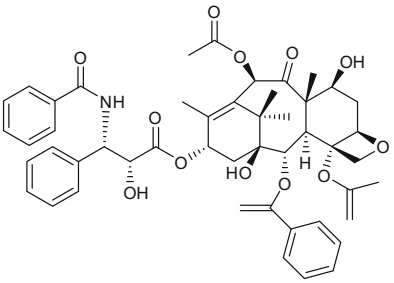
(44)

9.6 Production of Similar Metabolites by Endophytic Fungi and Host Plants

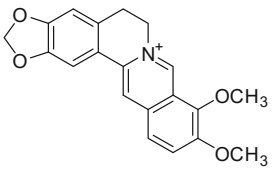
The long co-evolution of endophytes with their host plants has resulted a genetic recombination. It has opened the path for some endophytes to produce the same bioactive compounds originally characteristic of the host plant (Tan and Zou 2001). Taxol **(45)**, Berberine **(46)**, Sanguinarine **(47)** Camptothecin (CPT) **(48)** producing endophytic fungi are examples for this phenomenon. Taxol (paclitaxel) **(45)**, the first billion dollar anticancer drug was discovered initially from *Taxus brevifolia* and later from 11 other *Taxus* species in the world (Stierie et al. 1993). Therefore, as an alternative source, taxol producing endophytic fungi have been investigated from these yew plants, and *Taxomyces andreanae*, was the initially discovered taxol producing endophytic fungus from host plant *Taxus brevifolia* (Strobel 2003).

Berberine **(46)**, with diverse pharmacological properties is an isoquinoline alkaloid isolated from several medicinal plants including *Berberis aristata*, *Hydrastis canadensis*, *Coptis chinensis*, *Coptis rhizome*, *Coptis japonica*, *Phellondendron amurense,* and *Coscinium fenestratum* (Timothy et al. 1997; Tillhon et al. 2012). This natural product is currently undergoing 10 clinical trials (Tillhon et al. 2012). Berberine has also been reported from the endophytic fungus, *Fusarium solani*, from the roots of *Coscinium fenestratum* a critically endangered plant species (Diana and Agastian 2013). Since *C. fenestratum* also been reported to produce berberine, it supports the theory that, with the long co-evolution with the host, an endophyte can adapt to the special microenvironments through genetic modification which includes uptake of some plant DNA into their own genomes (Germaine et al. 2004; Diana and Agastian 2013).

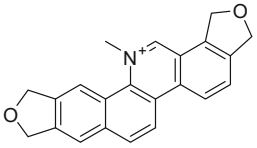
Sanguinarine **(47)** is an antimicrobial benzylisoquinoline alkaloid reported from several plants belonging to the family Papaveraceae including *Macleaya cordata* (Nicoletti and Fiorentino 2015). This compound has also been isolated from the endophytic fungal strain of *Fusarium proliferatum* inhabiting the leaves of *Macleaya cordata* (Wang et al. 2014). CPT **(48)** is another anticancer agent first isolated from the extracts of *Camptotheca acuminata*, and later from several other plants (Wall et al. 1966; Asano et al. 2004). The production of CPT in *Ophiorrhiza mungos* was first reported by Tafur et al. (1976). Later, Salim et al. (2011) isolated the CPT producing endophytic fungus *Glomerella cingulata* from *O. mungos* providing an alternative strategy to reduce the need to harvest slow-growing and possibly rare plants consequently helping to preserve the world's ever diminishing biodiversity. In addition, it is easier and more economical to produce a valued phytochemical by exploiting a microbial source than using a plant, which eventually leads to increase availability and low market price (Radic and Strukelj 2012).



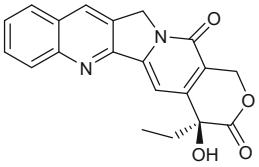
(45)



(46)



(47)



(48)

9.7 Factors Influencing the Production of Secondary Metabolites of Endophytic Fungi

In the natural setting, the climatic conditions, soil, season, location, age and tissue of the host plant, all affect the endophytes' biology, and consequently considerable variations in the production of secondary metabolites (Strobel and Daisy 2003). Therefore, the chemical substances isolated from two endophytic fungi of the same species may differ from each other. At the same time, the differences also in the isolation methods and in vitro cultivation conditions can impact the kind and range of secondary metabolites (Gunatilaka 2006). It has been reported that the size of the plant tissue fragments used for the isolation, time since harvesting of the tissue, composition of the culture media and culture conditions such as aeration, temperature, pH, incubation period, agitation, shape of the culturing flask (with respect to liquid media), all affect the production of secondary metabolites in laboratory (Aly et al. 2011; Kusari et al. 2012). Even, the production of six new secondary metabolites by the plant associated fungus *Paraphaeosphaeria quadriseptata*, only when the water used to make the media changed from tap water to distilled water is a good example to prove this fact (Paranagama et al. 2007).

9.8 Current Challenges

To achieve a competent endophyte with promising bioactivity is a challenging task (Scherlach and Hertweck 2009; Kusari et al. 2012). In the traditional way, this requires screening of a plethora of endophytes from a host. Most of the isolating endophytes are incompetent, i.e., they do not possess desired potential to produce bioactivity. However, whole-genome sequencing strategies have revealed that the incompetent endophytes express only a subset of biosynthetic genes under laboratory culture conditions (Scherlach and Hertweck 2009; Winter et al. 2011). Therefore there is possibility of utilizing the large reservoir of cryptic natural metabolites by experimenting with different in vitro culture conditions and understanding the chemical ecological interactions of endophytes (Kusari et al. 2012).

Another major challenge is the low yield of the active desirable compound/s obtained from the cultures (Yu et al. 2010; Aly et al. 2011). This is a major drawback for bioactive compounds from entering the commercial industry. For an example, the yield of the anticancer drug paclitaxel obtained from several endophytic fungal cultures are 846.1, 187.6 and 163.4 μg L^{-1}, which is too low for commercial production (Gangadevi and Muthumary 2008; Liu et al. 2009). Therefore, so far fungal endophytes have not been an industrial source of paclitaxel (Aly et al. 2011) or any other pharmaceutical. However, genetic engineering technology and research identifying the regulatory gene/s in the biosynthesis pathway of the active compound can lead to increase production of the compounds (Yu et al. 2010; Radic and Strukelj 2012).

The mammalian toxicity of any prospective drug developed has also become a major concern in the field (Yu et al. 2010). Most of these isolated bioactive metabolites precluded clinical use due to the toxicities to animals and humans (Waring and Beaver 1996). However, Strobel (2003) stated that plants as an eukaryotic system, have naturally served as a selection system for microbes having bioactive molecules with reduced toxicity toward higher organisms.

Compounds showing moderate biological activity most often cannot be used as potential chemotherapeutic agents (Yu et al. 2010). Totally or partly unknown biosynthesis, regulation, and synthesis, of these natural products in endophytes are other issues in the field (Yu et al. 2010). The rapidly diminishing rainforests, which is a huge reservoir for novel fungal endophytes and their bioactive products, is one of the major problems facing the future in this area (Strobel 2003). Therefore, countries need to establish information repositories of their biodiversity and at the same time should take conservation measures to protect the biodiversity.

Despite speculation by many authors no endophytic fungal-derived metabolite has so far become commercially useful (Kusari and Spiteller 2011). However, interest in the biosynthetic abilities of the endophytic fungi by the scientific community has not diminished but in fact is on the rise.

9.9 Conclusion

Exploration of competent endophyte for only subset of biosynthetic genes expressed under laboratory culture conditions is not enough to utilize the large reservoir of natural metabolites produced endophytes. Therefore, incorporation of genetic manipulation technology so as to advance the research to identify the regulatory gene/s of several biosynthesis pathways of metabolite production can lead to increase production of the compounds to be used in human welfare. As such, innovative approaches are bound to result in the productive utilization of this important and remarkable resource of much potential in the coming years.

References

Ahmad N, Hamayun M, Khan SA, Khan AL, Lee IJ, Shin DH (2010) Gibberellin-producing endophytic fungi isolated from *Monochoria vaginalis*. J Microbiol Biotechnol 20:1744–1749

Almeida C, Ortega S, Higginbotham C, Spadafora AE, Arnold PD, Coley TA, Kursar TA, Gerwick WH, Cubilla-Rios L (2014) Chemical and bioactive natural products from *Microthyriaceae* sp., an endophytic fungus from a tropical grass. Lett Appl Microbiol 59:58–64

Aly AH, Debbab A, Proksch P (2011) Fungal endophytes: unique plant inhabitants with great promises. Appl J Microbiol Biotechnol 90:1829–1845

Arivudainambi US, Anand TD, Shanmugaiah V, Karunakaran C, Rajendran A (2011) Novel bioactive metabolites producing endophytic fungus *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides* against multidrug-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol 61:340–345

Asano T, Watasi I, Sudo H, Kitajima M, Takayama H, Aimi N, Yamazaki M, Saito K (2004) Camptothecin production by in vitro cultures of *Ophiorrhiza liukiuensis* and *O. kuroiwai*. Plant Biotechol 21:275–281

Bandara WMMS, Seneviratne G, Kulasooriya SA (2006) Interactions among endophytic bacteria and fungi: effects and potentials. J Bioscience 31:645–650

Bills G, Dombrowski A, Pelaez F, Polishhook J, An Z (2002) In: Watling R, Frankland JC, Ainsworth AM, Issac S, Robinson CH (eds) Tropical mycology: micromycetes, vol 2. CABI Publishing, New York, pp 165–194

Brandy SF, Bondi SM, Clardy J (2001) The guanacastepenes: a highly diverse family of secondary metabolites produced by an endophytic fungus. J Am Chem Soc 123:9900–9901

Carroll GC, Petrini O (1983) Patterns of substrate utilization by some fungal endophytes from coniferous foliage. Mycologia 75:53–63

Cheng Z, Pan J, Tang W, Chen Q, Lin Y (2009) Biodiversity and biotechnological potential of mangrove-associated fungi. J For Res 20:63–72

Cohen SD (2006) Host selectivity and genetic variation of *Discula umbrinella* isolates from two oak species: analyses of intergenic spacer region sequences of ribosomal DNA. Microbiol Ecol 52:463–469

Cooke MC (2009) In: Berkeley MJ (ed) Fungi: their nature and uses. Project Gutenberg, New York, p 295

de Bary A (1866) Morphologie und Physiologie der Pilze, Flechten, und Myxomyceten. In: Hofmeister's handbook of physiological botany, vol II, Leipzig, Germany

Debbab A, Aly AH, Proksch P (2013) Mangrove derived fungal endophytes-a chemical and biological perception. Fungal Divers 61:1–27

de Silva ED, Geiermann AS, Mitova MI, Kuegler P, Blunt JW, Cole ALJ, Munro MHG (2009) Isolation of 2-pyridone alkaloids from a New Zealand marine-derived *Penicillium* species. J Nat Prod 72:477–479

Diana VS, Agastian P (2013) Berberine production by endophytic fungus *Fusarium solani* from *Coscinium fenestratum*. Int J Biol Pharm Res 4:1239–1245

Dissanayake RK, Ratnaweera PB, Williams DE, Wijayarathne CD, Wijesundera RLC, Andersen RJ, de Silva ED (2016) Antimicrobial activities of endophytic fungi of the Sri Lankan aquatic plant *Nymphaea nouchali* and chaetoglobosin A and C, producing by the endophytic fungus *Chaetomium globosum*. Mycology 7:1–8

Fisher MC, Henk DA, Briggs CJ, Brownstein JS, Madoff LC, McCraw SL, Gurr SJ (2012) Emerging fungal threats to animal, plant nd ecosystem health. Nature 484:7393

Flewelling AJ, Currie J, Gray CA, Johnson JA (2015) Endophytes from marine macroalgae: promising sources of novel natural products. Curr Sci 109:88–111

Freeman EM (1904) The seed fungus of *Lolium temulentum* I. Phil Trans R Soc B 196:1–27

Gangadevi V, Muthumary J (2008) Isolation of *Colletotrichum gloeosporiodes*, a novel endophytic taxol-producing fungus from the leaves of a medicinal plant. Mycol Balc 5:1–4

Ganley RJ, Brunsfeld SJ, Newcombe G (2004) A community of unknown, endophytic fungi in western white pine. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 101:10107–10112

Ge HM, Peng H, Guo ZK, Cui JT, Song YC, Tan RX (2010) Bioactive alkaloids from the plant endophytic fungus *Aspergillus terreus*. Planta Med 76:822–824

Germaine K, Keogh E, Garcia-cabello G, Borremans B, Barac T, Dowling DN (2004) Colonisation of poplar trees by gfp expressing bacterial endophytes. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 48:109

Guerin P (1898) Sur la presence d'un champignon dans I'ivraie. J Bot 12:230–238

Gunatilaka AAL (2006) Natural products from plant-associated microorganisms: distribution, structural diversity, bioactivity, and implications of their occurrence. J Nat Prod 69:509–526

Guo B, Dai J, Ng S, Huang Y, Leong C, Ong W, Carte BK (2000) Cytonic acids A and B: novel tridep side inhibitors of hCMV protease from the endophytic fungus *Cytonaema* species. J Nat Prod 63:602–604

Guo B, Wang Y, Sun X, Tang K (2008) Bioactive natural products from endophytes: a review. Appl Biochem Microbiol 44:136–142

Harper JK, Ford EJ, Strobel GA, Arif A, Grant DM, Porco J, Tomer DP, Oneill K (2003) Pestacin: a 1,3-dihydro isobenzofuran from *Pestalotiopsis microspora* possessing antioxidant and antimycotic activities. Tetrahedron 59:2471–2476

Hawksworth DL (2001) The magnitude of fungal diversity: the 1.5 million species estimate revisited. Mycol Res 105:1422–1432

He H, Yang HY, Bigelis R, Solum EH, Greenstein M, Carter GT (2002) Pyrrocidines A and B, new antibiotics produced by a filamentous fungus. Tetrahedron Lett 43:1633–1636

Jalgaonwala RE, Mohite BV, Mahajan RT (2011) A review: natural products from plant associated endophytic fungi. J Microbiol Biotechnol Res 1:21–32

Ji NY, Wang BG (2016) Mycochemistry of marine algocolous fungi. Fungal Diversity. Online published 28 March 2016

Khan AL, Hamayun M, Ahmad N, Hussain J, Kang SM, Kim YH, Muhammad A, Dong-Sheng T, Muhammad W, Ramalingan R, Young-Hyun H, In-Jung L (2011) Salinity stress resistance offered by endophytic fungal interaction between *Penicillium minioluteum* LHL09 and Glycine max L. J Microbiol Biotechnol 21:893–902

Kharwar RN, Verma VC, Kumar A, Gond DK, Harper JK, Hess WM, Lobkovosky E, Ma C, Ren YH, Strobel GA (2009) Javanicin, an antibacterial naphthaquinone from an endophytic fungus of neem, *Chloridium* sp. Curr Microbiol 58:233–238

Klemke C, Kehraus S, Wright AD, Konig GM (2004) New secondary metabolites from the marine endophytic fungus *Apiospora montagnei*. J Nat Prod 67:1058–1063

Kusari S, Spiteller M (2011) Are we ready for industrial production of bioactive plant secondary metabolites utilizing endophytes. Nat Prod Rep 28:1203–1207

Kusari S, Hertweck C, Spiteller M (2012) Chemical ecology of endophytic fungi: origin of secondary metabolites. Chem Biol 19:792–798

Lee J, Lobkovsky E, Pliam NB, Strobel G, Clardy J (1995a) Subglutinols A and B: immunosuppressive compounds from the endophytic fungus *Fusarium subglutinans*. J Org Chem 60:7076–7077

Lee JC, Yang X, Schwartz M, Strobel GA, Clardy J (1995b) The relationship between an endangered North American tree and an endophytic fungus. Chem Biol 2:721–727

Lee JC, Strobel GA, Lobkovsky E, Clardy JC (1996) Torreyanic acid: a selectively cytotoxic quinone dimer from the endophytic fungus *Pestalotiopsis microspora*. J Org Chem 61:3232–3233

Li JY, Harper JK, Grant DM, Tombe BO, Bashyal B, Hess WM, Strobel GA (2001) Ambuic acid, a highly functionalized cyclohexanone with antifungal activity from *Pestalotiopsis* spp. and *Monochaetia* sp. Phytochem 56:463–468

Li Y, Song YC, Liu JY, Ma YM, Tan RX (2005) Anti-Helicobacter *pylori* substances from endophytic fungal cultures. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 21:553–558

Li G, Kusari S, Lamshoft M, Schuffler A, Laatsch H, Spiteller M (2014) Antibacterial secondary metabolites from an endophytic fungus, *Eupenicillium* sp. LG41. J Nat Prod 77:2335–2341

Liu AR, Wu XP, Xu T (2007) Research advances in endophytic fungi of mangrove. Ying Yong Sheng Tai Xue Bao 18:912–918

Liu K, Ding X, Deng B, Chen W (2009) Isolation and characterization of endophytic taxol-producing fungi from *Taxus chinensis*. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 36:1171–1177

Liu Y, Yang Q, Xia G, Huang H, Li H, Ma L, Lu Y, He L, Xia X, She Z (2015) Polyketides with α-glucosidase inhibitory activity from a mangrove endophytic fungus, *Penicillium* sp. HN29-3B1. J Nat Prod 78:1816–1822

Ma YM, Li Y, Liu JY, Song YC, Tan RX (2004) Anti-helicobacter pylori metabolites from *Rhizoctonia* sp. Cy064, an endophytic fungus in *Cynodon dactylon*. Fitoterapia 75:451–456

Metz A, Haddad A, Worapong J, Long D, Ford E, Hess WM, Strobel GA (2000) Induction of the sexual stage of *Pestalotiopsis microspora*, a taxol-producing fungus. Microbiology 146:2079–2089

Miao FP, Li XD, Liu XH, Cichewicz RH, Ji NY (2012) Secondary metabolites from an algicolous *Aspergillus versicolor* strain. Mar Drugs 10:131–139

Miao FP, Liang XR, Liu XH, Ji NY (2014) Aspewentins A-C, norditerpenes from a crypticpathway in an algicolous strain of *Aspergillus wentii*. J Nat Prod 77:429–432

Mittermeier RA, Myers N, Gil PR, Mittermeier CG (1999) Hotspots. CEMEX Conservation International, Washington, DC

Motyl MR, Tan C, Liberator P, Giacobbe R, Racine F, Hsu M, Nielsen-Kahn J, Douglan C, Bowman J, Hammond M, Balkovec J, Greenlee M, Meng D, Parker D, Peel M, Fan W, Mamai A, Hong J, Orr M, Ouvray G, Perrey D, Liua H, Jones M, Nelson K, Ogbu C, Lee S, Li K, Kirwan R, Note A, Sligar J, Martensen P (2010) 50th Inter-science conference on antimicrobial agent and chemotherapy F1-847

Mukhtar I, Khokhar I, Mushtaq S, Ali A (2010) Diversity of epiphytic and endophytic microorganisms in some dominant weeds. Pak J Weed Sci Res 16:287–297

Newcombe G, Shipunov A, Eigenbrode SD, Raghavendra AKH, Ding H, Anderson AL, Menjivar R, Craeford M, Schwarzlander M (2009) Endophytes influence protection and growth of an invasive plant. Commun Integr Biol 2:29–31

Nicoletti R, Fiorentino A (2015) Plant bioactive metabolites and drugs produced by endophytic fungi of Spermatophyta. Agriculture 5:918–970

Ondeyka JG, Helms GL, Hensens OD, Goetz MA, Zink DL, Tsipouras A, Shoop WL, Slayton L, Dombrowski AW, Polishhook JD, Ostlind DA, Tsou NN, Ball RG, Singh SB (1997) Nodulisporic acid A, a novel and potent insecticide from a nodulisporium sp. isolation, structure determination, and chemical transformations. J Am Chem Soc 119:8809–8816

Paranagama PA, Wijeratne EMK, Gunatilaka AAL (2007) Uncovering biosynthetic potential of plant-associated fungi: effect of culture conditions on metabolite production by *Paraphaeosphaeria quadriseptata* and *Chaetomium chiversii*. J Nat Prod 70:1939–1945

Parani M, Lakshmi M, Senthilkumar P, Ram N, Parida A (1998) Molecular phylogeny of mangroves V. Analysis of genome relationships in mangrove species using RAPD and RFLP markers. Theor Appl Genet 97:615–617

Qiao MF, Ji NY, Liu XH, Li K, Zhu QM, Xue QZ (2010) Indoloditerpenes from an algicolous isolate of *Aspergillus oryzae*. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 20:5677–5680

Radic N, Strukelj B (2012) Endophytic fungi-the treasure chest of antibacterial substances. Phytomedicine 19:1270–1284

Ratnaweera PB, Williams DE, de Silva ED, Wijesundera RLC, Dalisay DS, Andersen RJ (2014) Helvolic acid, an antibacterial nortriterpenoid from a fungal endophyte, *Xylaria* sp. of orchid *Anoectochilus setaceus* endemic to Sri Lanka. Mycology 5:23–28

Ratnaweera PB, de Silva ED, Williams DE, Andersen RJ (2015a) Antimicrobial activities of endophytic fungi from the arid zone invasive plant *Opuntia dillenii* and the isolation of equisetin, from endophytic *Fusarium* sp. BMC Complem Altern M 15:220

Ratnaweera PB, Williams DE, Patrick BO, de Silva ED, Andersen RJ (2015b) Solanioic acid, an antibacterial degraded steroid produced in culture by the fungus *Rhizoctonia solani* isolated from tubers of the medicinal plant *Cyperus rotundus*. Org Lett 17:2074–2077

Ratnaweera PB, de Silva ED, Wijesundera RLC, Andersen RJ (2016) Antimicrobial constituents of *Hypocrea virens*, an endophyte of the mangrove-associate plant *Premna serratifolia* L. J Natn Sci Foundation Sri Lanka 44:43–51

Redell P, Gordon V (2000) In: Wrigley SK, Hayes MA, Thomas R, Chrystal EJT, Nicholson N (eds) Biodiversity: new leads for pharmaceutical and agrochemical industries. The Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge, United Kingdom, pp 205–212

Rodriguez R, Redman R (2008) More than 400 million years of evolution and some plants still can't make it on their own: plant stress tolerance via fungal symbiosis. J Exp Bot 59:1109–1114

Rodriguez RJ, White JF Jr, Arnold AE, Redman RS (2009) Fungal endophytes: diversity and functional roles. New Phytol 182:314–330

Salim N, Chandrika UG, Abeysekera AM, Senanayaka SMC (2011) International symposium on natural products and their applications in health and agriculture. Institute of Fundamental Studies, Kandy, Sri Lanka, 3–8 Oct, 2011

Sarma VV, Hyde KD (2001) A review on frequently occurring fungi in mangroves. Fungal Divers 8:1–34

Scherlach K, Hertweck C (2009) Triggering cryptic natural product biosynthesis in microorganisms. Org Biomol Chem 7:1753–1760

Schmit JP, Shearer CA (2003) A checklist of mangrove associated fungi, their geographical distribution and known host plants. Mycotaxon 80:423–477

Shearer CA, Descals E, Kohlmeyer B, Kohlmeyer J, Marvanova L, Padgett D, Porter D, Raja HA, Schmit JP, Thorton HA, Voglymayr H (2007) Fungal biodiversity in aquatic habitats. Biodivers Conserv 16:49–67

Shipunov A, Newcombe G, Raghavendra AKH, Andersen CL (2008) Hidden diversity of endophytic fungi in an invasive plant. Am J Bot 95:1096–1108

Sieber TN (2007) Endophytic fungi in forest trees: are they mutualists? Fungal Biol Rev 21:75–89

Stierie A, Strobel G, Stierie D (1993) Taxol and taxane production by *Taxomyces andreanae*, an endophytic fungus of Pacific yew. Science 260:214–216

Strobel GA (2002) Microbial gifts from rainforests. Can J Plant Pathol 24:14–20

Strobel GA (2003) Endophytes as sources of bioactive products. Microbes Infect 5:535–544

Strobel G, Daisy B (2003) Bioprospecting for microbial endophytes and their natural products. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 67:491–502

Strobel GA, Miller RV, Miller C, Condron M, Teplow DB, Hess WM (1999) Cryptocandin, a potent antimycotic from the endophytic fungus *Cryptosporiopsis cf. quercina*. Microbiology 145:1919–1929

Strobel GA, Ford E, Worapong J, Harper JK, Arif AM, Grant DM, Fung PCW, Chan K (2002) Isopectacin, an isobenzofuranone from *Pestalotiopsis microspora*, possessing antifungal and antioxidant activities. Phytochemistry 60:179–183

Strobel G, Daisy B, Castillo U, Harper J (2004) Natural products from endophytic microorganisms. J Nat Prod 67:257–268

Suryanarayanan TS, Thirunavukkarasu N, Govindarajulu MB, Sasse F, Jansen R, Murali TS (2009) Fungal endophytes and bioprospecting. Fungal Biol Rev 23:9–19

Tafur S, Nelsson JD, Delong DC, Svoboda GH (1976) Antiviral components of *Ophiorrhiza mungos*. Isolation of camptothecin and 10-methoxycamptothecin. Lloydia 39:261–262

Tan RX, Zou WX (2001) Endophytes: a rich source of functional metabolites. Nat Prod Rep 18:448–459

Tan N, Cai X, Wang S, Pan J, Tao Y, She Z, Zhou S, Lin Y, Vrijmoed LLP (2008) A new hTopo I isomerase inhibitor produced by a mangrove endophytic fungus no: 2240. J Asian Nat Prod Res 10:607–610

Tillhon M, Ortiz Guaman LM, Lombardi P, Scovassi AI (2012) Berberine: new perspectives for old remedies. Biochem Pharmacol 84:1260–1267

Timothy BN, Gregory C, Kelly S (1997) Berberine: therapeutic potential of an alkaloid found in several medicinal plants. Altern Med Rev 2:94–102

Wagenaar M, Corwin J, Strobel GA, Clardy J (2000) Three new cytochalasins produced by an endophytic fungus in the genus Rhinocladiella. J Nat Prod 63:1692–1695

Wall ME, Wani MC, Cook CE, Palmer KH, Mcphail AT, Sim GA (1966) Plant antitumor agents. 1. The isolation and structure of camptothecin, a novel alkaloidal leukemia and tumor inhibitor from *Camptotheca acuminata*. J Am Chem Soc 88:3888–3890

Wang L, Mu M, Li X, Lin P, Wang W (2011) Differentiation between true mangroves and mangrove associates based on leaf traits and salt contents. J Plant Ecol 4:292–301

Wang XJ, Min CL, Ge M, Zuo RH (2014) An endophytic sanguinarine-producing fungus from *Macleaya cordata*, *Fusarium proliferatum* BLH51. Curr Microbiol 68:336–341

Waring P, Beaver J (1996) Gliotoxin and related epipolythiodioxopiperazines. Gen Pharmacol 27:1311–1316

Weber D, Sterner O, Anke T, Gorzalczancy S, Martino V, Acevedo CJ (2004) Phomol, a new antiinflammatory metabolite from an endophyte of the medicinal plant Erythrina crista-galli. J Antibiot 57:559–563

Wilson EO (1988) Biodiversity. National Academy Press, Washington

Winter JM, Behnken S, Hertweck C (2011) Genomics-inspired discovery of natural products. Curr Opin Chem Biol 15:22–31

Xu QY, Huang YJ, Zheng ZH, Song SY (2005) Purification, elucidation and activities study of cytosporone B. J Xiamen Univ Nat Sci 44:425–428

Xu Y, Espinosa-Artiles P, Liu MX, Arnold E, Gunatilaka AAL (2013) Secoemestrin D, a cytotoxic epitetrathiodioxopiperizine, and emeri-cellenes A-E, five sesterterpenoids from *Emericella* sp. AST0036, a fungal endophytes of *Astragalus lentiginosus*. J Nat Prod 76:2330–2336

Yu H, Zhang L, Li L, Zheng C, Guo L, Li W, Sun P, Qin L (2010) Recent developments and future prospects of antimicrobial metabolites produced by endophytes. Microbiol Res 165:437–449

Zhang B, Salituro G, Szalkowski D, Li Z, Zhang Y, Royo I, Vilella D, Dez M, Pelaez F, Ruby C, Kendall RL, Mao X, Griffin P, Calaycay J, Zierath JR, Heck JV, Smith RG, Moller DE (1999) Discovery of a small molecule insulin mimetic with antidiabetic activity in mice. Science 284:974–977

Zhang HW, Song YC, Tan RX (2006) Biology and Chemistry of endophytes. Nat Prod Rep 23:753–771

Zhang Y, Wang S, Li XM, Cui CM, Feng C, Wang BG (2007) New sphingolipids with a previously unreported 9-methylc20-sphingosine moiety from a marine algous endophytic fungus *Aspergillus niger* EN-13. Lipids 42:759–764

Zhou XM, Zheng CJ, Song XP, Han CR, Chen WH, Chen GY (2014) Antibacterial-pyrone derivatives from a mangrove-derived fungus *Stemphylium* sp. 33231 from the South China Sea. J Antibiot 67:401–403

Chapter 10
Endophytes: Potential Source of Therapeutically Important Secondary Metabolites of Plant Origin

Shahid Iqbal Mohammed, Mohini Panditrao Patil, Ravindra Himmatrao Patil and Vijay Laxminarayan Maheshwari

Abstract Use of plants and plant-derived metabolites for human health and well-being is as old as human civilization. The plant kingdom contains an estimated 400,000–500,000 different species and each plant produces a number of secondary metabolites which enables them to withstand various biotic and abiotic stresses. The plant secondary metabolites such as alkaloids, steroids, flavonoids, terpenoids, etc., are known to have a number of biological activities. Moreover, because of their natural origin, the plant-derived metabolites are increasingly preferred for therapeutic applications all over the world. However, the overharvesting of plants for biologically active secondary metabolites is rapidly diminishing the valuable treasure of medicinal plants. Endophytes are the microbial symbionts which live in the internal tissues of plants and mimic the chemistry of the host plant. Because of their huge diversity and ability to produce a range of metabolites similar to host plant, they have attracted significant attention of scientific community all over the world. The plant- and endophyte-derived metabolites which have attracted sufficient research in last decade include compounds with antioxidant, antihypercholesterolemic, antidiabetic, and anticancer activities. The present article reviews the current state of research on biologically active metabolites from plant and endophytic fungi. The work carried out in our lab on bioprospecting of endophytic fungi for molecules with antihypercholesterolemic potential is also included.

S.I. Mohammed and M.P. Patil have contributed equally in this work.

S.I. Mohammed · V.L. Maheshwari (✉)
School of Life Sciences, North Maharashtra University, Jalgaon 425001, MS, India
e-mail: vlmaheshwari@rediffmail.com

S.I. Mohammed
e-mail: shahid.pinjari@ymail.com

M.P. Patil · R.H. Patil
Department of Microbiology and Biotechnology, R. C. Patel Arts, Commerce and Science College, Karvand Naka, Shirpur, MS, India
e-mail: mohini_rpatil@rediffmail.com

R.H. Patil
e-mail: ravi_nmu@yahoo.co.in

D.K. Maheshwari and K. Annapurna (eds.), *Endophytes: Crop Productivity and Protection*, Sustainable Development and Biodiversity 16,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-66544-3_10

Keywords Secondary metabolites · Endophytes · Therapeutic applications Bioprospecting

10.1 Introduction

Secondary metabolites are naturally derived substances from plants, animals, and microorganisms (Baker et al. 2000). Plant secondary metabolites are known to provide protection from pathogen invasion to their host plant (Yang et al. 1994). As per world health organization (WHO) estimates, 80% of the people in the developing countries use traditional plant derived drugs for their primary health need. Moreover, plant secondary metabolites have featured significantly in the treatment of many diseases as well as used as base substances for the development of efficient drugs. For example, Digitoxigenin, a steroid glycoside produced by *Digitalis purpura,* is the oldest of the commonly used compounds in the treatment of heart diseases. After the discovery of Penicillin, the wonder drug, followed by advancement in the fermentation technology for cultivation of microbial cells, the potential of microbes as a good source of secondary metabolites was recognized by world scientific community. Microorganisms produce a range of secondary metabolites, many of them novel/new, apparently as a part of survival/adaptation strategy to overcome constant metabolic stress and challenging environmental conditions that they live and encounter continuously (Schutz 2001). On the other hand, despite the abundant biological diversity of plants on earth, discovery of bioactive secondary metabolites has focused on microorganisms which were mainly isolated from soil. Therefore, selection of the ecological niche for isolation of the desired microbes is an important stage in new drug discovery rather than using a totally random approach.

Throughout history, humans have used plants and plant-derived medicines to treat all kinds of illnesses. However, extensive use of plant derived medicines has questioned the survival of many medicinally valuable and rare plant species. So it is a need of hour to find alternate sources and strategies for the production of bioactive metabolites of plant origin. Approximately 0.4–0.5 million plant species exist on the earth and, every plant inhabits/hosts one or other endophytic microorganism in its internal tissues. Thus, this huge and relatively unexplored biodiversity can be tapped for the search of novel microbiota significant for chemical and functional diversity.

De Bary (1866) first coined and introduced the term “endophytes”. They are the microbes that colonize inside the living internal tissues of the host plant without causing any negative effect on them (Bacon and white 2000) and establish symbiotic relationship with their host. Among the endophytic microorganisms, the endophytic fungi are highly diverse and are known to produce biologically active and structurally diverse natural products of pharmaceutical importance. The bioactive compounds isolated from endophytic fungi have been found to produce a range of compounds/metabolites having diverse biological properties including antimicrobial, antioxidant, antidiabetic, anticancer, antihypercholesterolemic, etc. (Ruma et al. 2013). Use of endophytic fungi as a source of therapeutically important

compounds/metabolites has several advantages. For example, (i) When a plant based drug is produced from the source like endophytic fungi, it will not only reduce our dependence on plant sources for these metabolites but also help in preserving the continuously decreasing plant biodiversity on earth (Strobel et al. 2004). (ii) Environmental conditions which affect the quality and quantity of desired phytochemicals *in planta* can be avoided if isolated endophytes are cultured successfully in vitro by providing optimum physicochemical parameters. (iii) Production of plant derived drugs using microbial sources can be easily scaled up for industrial process. It is also possible to obtain improved versions of existing drugs by simply altering the cultural conditions. (iv) Isolation of drugs from microbial sources is relatively easier and cost-effective as compared to extraction and purification of drugs from the whole plant or plant part(s) including tissue culture. (v) Since the plant and fungal endophytes, both are eukaryotic systems, the metabolites produced by the endophytes are less likely to show mammalian toxicity when used for human applications and, (vi) High-value metabolites/compounds of medicinal importance are produced in easier and economical way using the endophytic microorganisms (Strobel et al. 2004).

It has been proved that both plant and endophytic fungi isolated from the same plant produced similar compounds with same bioactivity (Kusari et al. 2012). The possible reason for this could be the genetic recombination between the host and endophytes or vice versa that occurred during the course of evolution (Tan and Zou 2001).

In the ensuing paragraphs, an attempt has been made to briefly review the studies on plants and endophytic fungi which could produce antioxidant, antihypercholesterolemic, antidiabetic, and anticancer metabolites of therapeutic importance.

10.2 Antioxidant Activity of Plants/Plant Extracts

Reactive oxygen species (ROS) generated in the biological system are the major cause of the degenerative conditions such as aging, cancer inflammation, atherosclerosis, etc. (Sandesh et al. 2014). Naturally occurring antioxidants/enzymes, superoxide dismutase, catalase, glutathione, etc., can stabilize the adverse effects of ROS and, thus help maintain the redox balance in the body. However, when generation of ROS is more than what can be processed by the endogenous antioxidant system, it results in oxidative damages leading to several other disorders such as arthritis, atherosclerosis, cancer, diabetes, and many others (Castaneda et al. 2003). Sufficient amounts of exogenous antioxidants are required to reduce the effects of ROS to the human body. In response to the growing consumer demand for food supplements that are free of synthetic antioxidants with carcinogenic potential (Baardseth 1989), there has been tremendous increase in the search for naturally occurring antioxidants during the past decades (Gould 1995). Of the vast amount of literature, a concise list of studies on the antioxidant activities of plant/plant parts using DPPH free radical scavenging assay, mainly in last 10 years is shown in Table 10.1.

Table 10.1 List of plants with DPPH radical scavenging activity

Name of plant	Extract	Results	References
Alnus incana	Catkins methanolic extract	Showed IC_{50} value 18.9 µg/ml	Stevie et al. (2010)
Tansy vulgare	Arial part methanolic extract	Showed EC_{50} value 37 µg/ml	Juan-Badaturuge et al. (2009)
Tussilago farfara	Flower bud ethanolic extract	Dose dependent increase in scavenging activity	Li et al. (2012)
Gemmae betulae	Bud ethanolic extract	Normalized phospholipid level	Mashentseva et al. (2011)
Sorbus aucuparia	Fruit aqueous extract	Dose dependent increase in radical scavenging activity	Zlobin et al. (2012)
Carica papaya	Seed ethyl acetate fraction	Increase in radical scavenging activity	Zhou et al. (2011)
Manihor esculenta	Leaves aqueous extract	Increase in radical scavenging activity	Tsumbu et al. (2011)
Arnebia benthamii	Plant ethyl acetate extract	700 µg/ml extract showed 87.99% inhibition	Ganie et al. (2014)
Bauhinia vahlii	Plant methanolic and aqueous extract	Methanolic extract showed strong antioxidant potential	Sowndhararajan and Kang (2013)
Hygrophila auriculata	Root extract	Showed significant antioxidant activity	Shanmugasundaram and Venkataraman (2006)
Phyllanthus niruri	Methanolic and aqueous extract of leaves and fruits	Inhibited reactive oxygen species	Chatterjee et al. (2006)
Pistacia lentiscus	Ethanolic extraction from ethyl acetate fraction	Showed radical scavenging activity (90%) equivalent to standard BHA (89%)	Atmani et al. (2009)
Polyalhia cerasoides	Plant ethanolic extract	Dose dependent inhibition of DPPH scavenging activity with IC_{50} 25 µg/ml	Ramkumar et al. (2009)
Teucrium polium	Plant aerial part petroleum ether, chloroform, methanol and water extract	Highest antioxidant activity was observed in methanolic extract showed IC_{50} value 20.1 µg/ml nearly similar to standard (18.3 µg/ml) BHT	Sharififar et al. (2009)
Bidens pilosa	Leaves and flower essential oil	Radical scavenging activity with IC_{50} value 21 and 36 µg/ml for leaves and flower essential oil respectively	Deba et al. (2008)
Rheum ribes	Stem and root methanolic extract	87.07 and 60.60% inhibition with 100 µg/ml for stem and root extract respectively	Ozturk et al. (2007)

10.2.1 Antioxidant Compounds from Endophytes

Polysaccharides from plants and microorganisms have been extensively reported as potent natural antioxidants (Chen et al. 2009). Liu and coworkers (2009), for the first time, reported the capacity of endophytic microorganisms to produce polysaccharides with antioxidant activity. Patil et al. (2015) isolated endophytic *Aspergillus flavus* from Indian medicinal plant, *Aegle marmelos*, which produced bioflavonoid, rutin with excellent antibacterial and antioxidant activities. Graphislactone A that showed potent radical scavenging activities was obtained from endophyte *Cephalosporium* spp. isolated from *Trachelospermum jasminoides* (Strobel and Daisy 2003). Other endophytic fungi such as *Aspergillus niger* and *Alternaria alternata,* isolated from *Tabebula argentea* have been shown to produce Lapachol with excellent antioxidant activities (Sadananda et al. 2011). An endophytic strain of *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides* from a fruit of plant *Forsythia suspensa* was found to produce plant derived metabolite, phillyrin in liquid cultures (Zhang et al. 2012). A representative group of antioxidant compounds obtained from endophytic fungi that were previously produced by their host plants is shown in Fig. 10.1.

A number of endophytic strains from *Vitis vinifera, Vitis quinquangularis*, and *Polygonum cuspidatum* belonging to the genera *Alternaria, Aspergillus, Botryosphaeria, Cephalosporium, Geotrichum, Mucor,* and *Penicillium* were shown to produce resveratrol, which is a stilbene phytoalexin with excellent antioxidant properties (Shi et al. 2012). Another phyllosphere species of *Alternaria*, together with root strains of *Fusarium solani, F. oxysporum* and *F. proliferatum* from *Cajanus cajan*, have been found to produce cajanin stilbene acid, a related

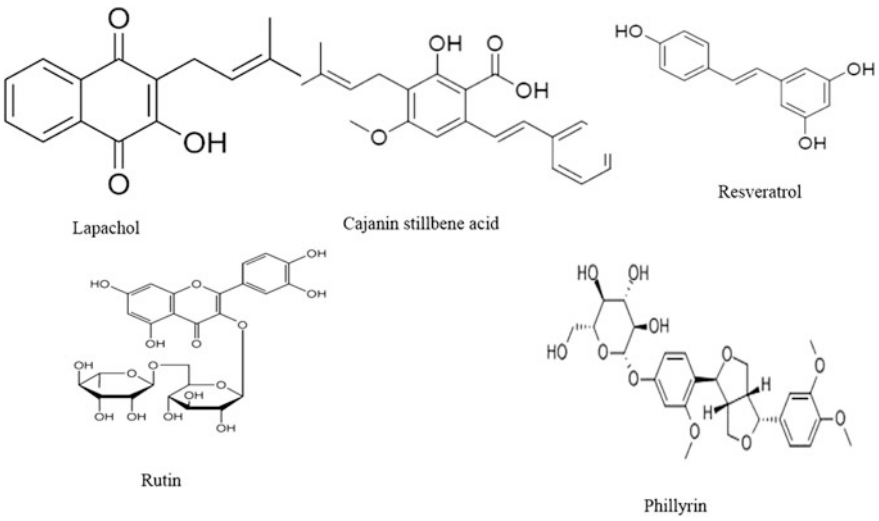


Fig. 10.1 Antioxidant compounds from endophytic fungi originally produced by their host plant

antioxidant compound originally characterized from its host plant (Zhao et al. 2012). The Tanshinones are diterpenoid quinone compounds that have been obtained from endophytic strains of the *Salvia miltiorrhiza*, particularly *Emericella foeniculicola* TR21 (Ma et al. 2011), and *Trichoderma atroviride* D16 (Ming et al. 2012).

10.3 Studies on Antihypercholesterolemic Activity of Plants

Cardiovascular diseases (CVDs) are the major cause of death in the developed as well as in the developing countries. Among CVDs, hypercholesterolemia is the most important contributing factor responsible for development of CVDs and atherosclerosis. Epidemiological studies have proved that the elevated levels of blood cholesterol increase risk of CVDs several times. Krishnakumari and Priya (2006) evaluated hypolipidemic activity of *Achyranthes aspera* against sesame oil fed lipidemic rats. Rats treated with powdered seed aqueous extract of the plant showed significant reduction in lipid profile parameters and increase in level of high-density lipoprotein to normal level. Similarly, antihypercholesterolemic effect of *Piper beetle* ethanolic extract and its purified eugenol constituent against triton WR-1339 induced hypercholesterolemia in rats was demonstrated by Venkadeswaran et al. (2014). Hypercholesterolemic rats treated with 500 mg/kg body weight *Piper beetle* extract or 5 mg/kg body weight of the purified constituent, eugenol orally for seven days showed significant improvement in parameters of lipid profile. The improvement by the plant extract was found to be at par with that of standard lipid lowering drug, lovastatin at 10 mg/kg body weight. Subash and Augustine (2012) evaluated hypolipidemic effects of methanol fraction of *Aconitum heterophyllum* in diet-induced obese rats. Treatment of obese rats with extract decreased level of total cholesterol, triglycerides, apolipoprotein B and increased the level of high-density lipoprotein and apolipoprotein A level as compared to control rats. In our laboratory, hypolipidemic effect of bark ethanolic extract of *Terminalia arjuna* against high fat induced hypercholesterolemic rats treated with 40 mg/kg body weight of plant extract showed statistically significant reduction in total cholesterol, triglycerides and low density lipoprotein, with a concomitant increase in level of high-density lipoprotein, lipoprotein lipase, and enhanced bile acid synthesis as compared to control rats (Patil et al. 2011).

A list of selected antihyperlipidemic studies of plant/plant extracts, along with methods/model employed for study and high light of the obtained results in past decade is shown in Table 10.2.

Table 10.2 Plant/plant extracts with antihypercholesterolemic activity

Name of plant	Extract/plant part	Model/method	Results	References
Alchornea cordifolia	Leaves n-butanolic fraction	Streptozotocin-induced diabetic wistar rats	Significant decrease in total cholesterol	Mohammed et al. (2012)
Aloe vera	Processed *Aloe vera* gel	Non-insulin dependent diabetes mellitus mouse (feeding mouse with a high fat diet)	Hypoglycemic and hypolipidemic activity	Kwanghee et al. (2009)
Cajanus cajan	Methanolic leaf extract	Alloxan-induced hyperlipidemia in diabetic rabbits	Significant decrease in LDL/HDL ratio	Akinloye and Solanke (2011)
Curcuma longa	Rhizomes methanol extract	Alloxan-induced hyperlipidemia in diabetic rabbits	Decrease in plasma triglyceride	Nwozo et al. (2009)
Eclipta prostrata	Leaves aqueous extract	Atherogenic diet induced hyperlipidemic rats	Significant decrease on total cholesterol and triglycerides	Dhandapani (2007)
Emila praetermissa	Leaves aqueous extract	Wistar rats	Hypolipidemic activity	Nwodo et al. (2014)
Eugenia jambolana	Composite extract of seeds	Streptozotocin-induced diabetic male albino rat	Serum lipid profile came significantly close to normal level in a dose dependent manner	Mallick et al. (2006)
Moringa oleifera	Leaves petroleum ether extract	Fat diet induced obesity in rats	Antiobesity and hypolipidemic	Bais et al. (2014)
Pithecellobium dulce	Leaves aqueous extract	Triton Wr-1339 induced hyperlipidemic rats	Significant decrease in the levels of serum cholesterol, phospholipids, triglyceride, LDL, VLDL and significant increase in the level of serum HDL	Sundarrajan et al. (2010)
Stachytarphela augustifolia	Plant methanolic extract	Streptozotocin-induced diabetic wistar rats	Significant decrease in total cholesterol, low density lipoprotein and lipid peroxides as function of treatment	Garba et al. (2013)
Tephrosia purpurea	Leaves ethanolic extract	Streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats	600 mg/kg body weight normalized the lipids and lipoproteins profile	Pavana et al. (2007)
Urtica dioica	Leaves ethanolic and aqueous extract	Alloxan-induced diabetic or hyperlipidemic rats	Rats treated with ethanolic and aqueous extract showed significantly reduction in levels of triglyceride and cholesterol	Mahjoub et al. (2012)

10.3.1 Antihypercholesterolemic Compounds from Endophytes

HMG–CoA reductase (HMGR) is the key enzyme in the cholesterol biosynthesis pathway and it is the attractive target of several antihypercholesterolemic drugs. Statins, the fungal secondary metabolites, are widely used as competitive inhibitors of HMG–CoA reductase all over the world. Lovastatin, a highly potent inhibitor of HMG–CoA reductase is commercially produced using a micro-fungus, *Aspergillus terreus* (Patil et al. 2011). Endophytic fungus, *Aspergillus niger* was isolated from *Taxus baccata* which was able to produce lovastatin when cultivated in solid-state fermentation (Raghunath et al. 2012). In another study, rosuvastatin, a potent inhibitor of HMG-CoA reductase, used for treating dyslipidemias, was produced from *Penicillium citrinum* and *P. brevicompactum* (Scott et al. 2004). Bhargavi et al. (2014) studied lovastatin production using soil and endophytic fungi, demonstrated that the soil isolate, *Aspergillus terreus* NCBI (KM017963) produced lovastatin whereas none of the endophytic fungi tested showed lovastatin production when cultured in solid-state fermentation. Endophytic fungi have been recognized as an important source for these antihypercholesterolemic compound/metabolites and structures of a few compounds obtained from them are shown in Fig. 10.2.

Another metabolite, chartarlactams A-P, phenylspirodrimanes produced by Sponge- associated endophytic fungus *Stachybotrys chartarum* exhibited potent antihyperlipidemic activity in HepG2 cells assessed by Oil Red O staining (Yong et al. 2013). On the other hand, endophytic fungus *Mycosphaerella* sp. PF13 was

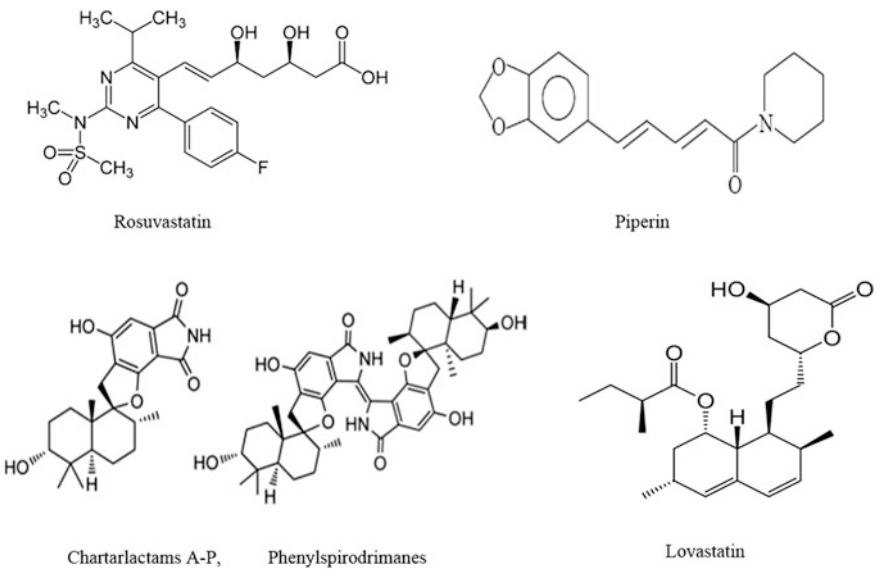


Fig. 10.2 Antihypercholesterolemic compounds produced by endophytic fungi

found to have the potential to produce piperine (Chithra et al. 2014a). Piperine has also been reported to possess a wide range of applications because of its antimycobacterial, antihyperlipidemic, antiandrogenic, immunoregulatory, and antitumor properties (Chithra et al. 2014b).

Obesity is also a contributing factor for variety of serious diseases like hypertension, hyperlipidemia, atherosclerosis, and type II diabetes (Birari and Bhutani 2007). One of the key enzymes involved in lipid metabolism is pancreatic lipase (PL) which acts on triglycerides and converts them into glycerol and free fatty acids. The free fatty acids further increase the level of low density lipoprotein (LDL) and very low density lipoprotein (VLDL) in the blood and ultimately contribute to development of CVDs. Inhibition of PL would decrease the level of LDL and VLDL and hyperlipidemia is prevented (Sreerama et al. 2012; Onakpoya et al. 2015). Therefore, PL can be recognized as attractive therapeutic target for management of hypercholesterolemia and diet-induced obesity. Endophytic fungi have been identified as promising good source of effective PL inhibitors. Recently, Gupta et al. (2015) isolated 70 endophytic fungi and screened them qualitatively using in vitro screening methods. The PL inhibitory effect of endophytic *Penicillium* spp. in their study was comparable with the standard PL inhibitor, Orlistat. Other studies have also shown the potential PL inhibitory activity of polyphenol-rich extracts in vitro (Birari and Bhutani 2007; McDougall et al. 2009). In our lab, we have isolated, screened, and identified a number of endophytic fungi which could produce metabolites with antihypercholesterolemic potential. One of our isolates, obtained from *Terminalia* arjuna and identified as *Diaporthe arengae,* showed strong in vitro as well as in vivo antihypercholesterolemic activity. Administration of the extract of *Diaporthe arengae* at 100 mg kg^{-1} body weight dose in rats showed significant decrease in the levels of serum total cholesterol (TC), triglycerides (TG), very low density lipoproteins (VLDL), and low density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol (unpublished data).

10.4 Antidiabetic Activity of Plants/Plant Extracts

Diabetes mellitus (DM) is characterized by hyperglycemia resulting from either lack of insulin, or insulin resistance at the cellular level (Haire-Joshu 1996). It has been estimated that 366 million people may be affected by diabetes worldwide by the year 2030. In India, about 40.9 million people are affected by hyperglycemia and this number may rise up to 60.9 million by the year 2025 (Maahs et al. 2010). Present diabetes management strategies primarily employ insulin and other synthetic antidiabetic agents like sulfonylureas, biguanides, glinides, etc. Despite considerable success in diabetes management by these strategies, there is a need for newer strategies to overcome the limitations of existing compounds (Ghazanfar et al. 2014). It should be noted that diabetes management with minimal side effects is a challenge before the scientific community (Saxena and Vikram 2004). There

has been an enhanced focus on exploring indigenous medicinal plants with antidiabetic potential so that a low cost, safer, and effective alternative strategy to insulin and other synthetic compounds for diabetes management can be realized. Hypoglycemic effects of several plants used to treat diabetes are already known and the underlying mechanisms of the observed affects are also being worked out (Patel et al. 2012). Recently, Mohammed et al. (2016), in a comprehensive study, evaluated antidiabetic activity of *Coccinia grandis* against streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats. Treatment of diabetic rats with *Coccinia grandis* leaf ethanolic extract (500 mg/kg) for 21 days showed significant reduction in blood glucose level, increase in body weight and serum insulin in a dose dependent manner. Diabetes induced hypercholesteremia and hypertriglyceridemia, which can lead to secondary complications, were also found to be significantly improved as a result of treatment. Marked recovery was also recorded in liver and kidney function tests of diabetic rats. The study demonstrated a strong antioxidant activity of the ethanolic leaf extract of the plant. It should be pointed out here that oxidative stress is a natural consequence of chronically elevated blood glucose level and thus, compliments diabetes (Rahimi et al. 2005). Baldea et al. (2010) evaluated antidiabetic activity of crude ethanolic extract of 17 Boreal forest medicinal plants by in vitro on Caco-2 human enterocylic cell lines and in vivo on normal rats by oral administration of 250 mg/kg body weight of extract. In in vitro experiments, of the 17 plants, 13 showed approximately 40% decreased glycaemia and another 2 plants showed reduction in intestinal glucose absorption in rats. Similarly, antidiabetic activity of *Allium cepa*, *Allium sativum*, and *Zingiber officinale* aqueous extract was evaluated against alloxan-induced diabetic rats. All three plant extracts showed decrease in blood glucose level in treated diabetic rats as compared to control rats (Eyo et al. 2011). A comprehensive list of studies of the last 5–6 years on antidiabetic activities of plant/plant extracts demonstrating the interest and scope in the field is given in Table 10.3.

10.4.1 Antidiabetic Compounds from Fungal Endophytes

Dhankar et al. (2013) demonstrated the antidiabetic and hypolipidemic activity of endophytic fungi, *Aspergillus* sp. and *Phoma* sp. isolated from *Salvadora oleoides* (Salvadoraceae). The study showed that 2,6-di-tert-butyl-p-cresol and Phenol, 2,6-bis [1,1-dimethylethyl]-4-methyl, isolated from the broth extract of endophytic fungi, significantly reduce blood glucose level in glucose loaded, fasting and alloxan-induced diabetic Wistar albino rats. Bioactivity-guided fractionation of the culture filtrate of an endophytic fungus, *Dendryphion nanum,* isolated from *Ficus religiosa* yielded a compound herbarine 1 and its analogue herbaridine A2 showing promising antidiabetic activities. Both of them were found to be naphthaquinones (Mishra et al. 2013).

Berberine from several medicinal plants is a compound known for its cardioprotective, antidiabetic, antibiotic, and antitumor roles (Sun et al. 2009). Recently, it

Table 10.3 List of plant/plant extracts with antidiabetic potential

Name of plant	Extract/plant part	Model/method	Results	References
Acalypha indica	Aerial part chloroform and ethanolic extract	In vitro alpha amylase inhibition assay	Showed IC_{50} value 173.53 µg/ml for chloroform extract and 180.80 µg/ml for ethanolic extract	Dineshkumar et al. (2010)
Annona muricata	Plant aqueous extract	Streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats	Plant extract was not effective in normal rats but showed 75% reduction in blood glucose level at 100 mg/kg after 28 days of treatment	Florence et al. (2014)
Anthocleista djalonensis	Ethanolic root extract	Alloxan-induced diabetic rats	Reduced blood glucose level	Okokon et al. (2012)
Aralia taibaiensis	Plant total saponins extract	Streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats	Reduced fasting blood glucose and glycosylated hemoglobin	Weng et al. (2014)
Azadirachta indica	Ethanolic leaf extract	Streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats	Improved pancreatic lesion in diabetic rats	Akinola et al. (2010)
Berberis aristata	Bark methanolic extract	Inhibition of DPP4 enzyme	Showed IC_{50} value 14.4 µg/ml	Chakrabarti et al. (2011)
Blighia sapida	Root aqueous extract	Normoglycaemic rats	Decreased blood glucose level	Saidu et al. (2012)
Cola acuminata	Stem methanolic extract	Alloxan-induced diabetic rats	Decreased blood glucose level	Adediwura et al. (2011)
Cucurbita pepo	Seed mixture powder	Alloxan-induced diabetic rats	Increase in activity of aspartate aminotransferases and alanine aminotransferases as a function of treatment	Makni et al. (2011)
Daniellia oliveri	Aqueous leaf extract	Alloxan-induced diabetic rats	Blood glucose level decreased in both normal and diabetic rats	Manosroi et al. (2011)
Gymnema sylvestre	Callus methanolic extract	Alloxan-induced diabetic rats	Significant increase and regeneration of pancreatic β-cells	Ahmed et al. (2010)
Hunteria umbellate	Alkaloid rich fraction	Alloxan-induced diabetic rats	Decreased post absorptive glucose concentration	Adewale et al. (2013)

(continued)

Table 10.3 (continued)

Name of plant	Extract/plant part	Model/method	Results	References
Ipomoea batatas	Plant aqueous extract	Streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats	Decreased blood glucose level in normal and STZ-induced diabetic rats	Olowu et al. (2011)
Malmea depressa	Root butanolic extract	In vitro alpha glucosidase inhibition	Showed IC_{50} value 109 μg/ml	Kumar et al. (2011)
Mangifera indica	Leaves methanolic extract	Inhibition assay of DPP4 enzyme	Showed IC_{50} value 182.7 μg/ml	Yogisha and Raveesha (2010)
Pine densiflora	Bark extracted pycnogenol	In vitro alpha glucosidase inhibition	Showed IC_{50} value 5 μg/ml	Kumar et al. (2011)
Polyalhia longifolia	Leaves ethanolic extract	In vitro alpha amylase and in vivo in diabetic rats	Showed IC_{50} value 154 μg/ml and decrease in blood glucose level	Sivashanmugam and Chatterjee (2013)
Sphenocentrum jollyanum	Root ethanolic extract	Alloxan-induced diabetic rabbits	Decreased blood glucose level both in normal and diabetic rabbits	Mbaka et al. (2014)
Stevia rebaudiana	Leaves extracted polyphenols and fibers	Streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats	Reduction in blood glucose and increase in insulin concentration as compared to diabetic control rats	Shivanna et al. (2013)

has been produced by a strain of *F. solani* isolated from roots of the medicinal liana, *Coscinium fenestratum* (Vinodhini and Agastian 2013). An endophytic fungus, *Pseudomassaria* sp. isolated from African rainforest was found to produce a metabolite [L-783] which showed significant antidiabetic activity. Aspergillusol, a compound isolated from the marine derived endophytic fungus *Aspergillus aculeatus* isolated from the leaves of *Cassia siamea Lam.* also proved to be good source of α-glucosidase inhibitors in previous studies (Abdul et al. 2013; Ingavat et al. 2009).

A number of bioactive compounds with antidiabetic potential are characteristics of their host plant that have been isolated from endophytic fungi of different medicinal plants (Fig. 10.3). Methyl eugenol production by *Alternaria* sp. isolated from Rose (Kaul et al. 2008); phillyrin-producing endophytic fungi *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides (Forsythia suspensa)* (Zhang et al. 2012); sterigmatocystin, arugosin C, and epiisoshamixanthone from *Emericella* sp. (inhabiting *Astragalus lentiginosus*) have shown potential antidiabetic activities (Xu et al. 2013). Another example includes Helvolic acid from *Xylaria* sp. *(Anoectochilus setaceus)* (Ratnaweera et al. 2014), diphenyl ether producing *Verticillium* sp. *(Rehmannia glutinosa)* (Ola et al. 2014); Dihydroanthracenone metabolites from *Diaporthe melonis (Annona squamosa)* (Peng et al. 2013), piperine production by *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides (Piper nigrum L)* (Chithra et al. 2014), a chromone alkaloid such as rohitukin produced by endophytic fungi isolated from *Dysoxylum binectariferum Hook. f* and *Amoora rohituka (Roxb)* have been reported (Kumara et al. 2014).

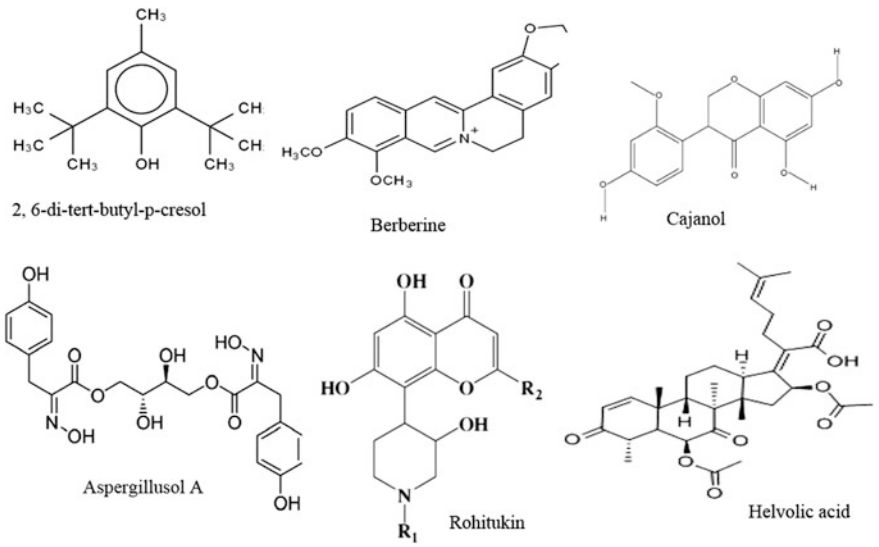


Fig. 10.3 Antidiabetic compounds of plant origin produced by endophytes from host plant

10.5 Anticancer Activity of Plants/Plant Extracts

Cancer is currently one of the leading causes of death worldwide and it is estimated that there are more than 1.6 million deaths occurred due to invasive cancer in 2013 (Siegel et al. 2013). The economic burden of cancer has necessitated the search for new, safe, affordable, and effective anticancer drugs. Purified asiatic acid fraction from *Centella asiatica* when tested in vitro on human melanoma SK-MEL-2 cells showed induction of apoptosis and decline in their viability in a time and dose dependent manner (Park et al. 2005). Similarly, induction of apoptosis in Hela cervical cancer cell line was recorded with Goniothalamin isolated from *Goniothalamus macrophyllus* (Aied et al. 2013). Ethanolic extract of *Atractylis lancea* showed inhibition of HEP-G2 liver cancer cell lines in a concentration and time dependent manner (Wei et al. 2013). Apoptosis of cancer cell in human intestinal epithelium was observed in presence of sesquiterpenes, Salograviolide-A isolated from *Centaurea ainetensis* (El-Najjar 2008). Kundusen et al. (2011) demonstrated decrease in tumor volume and increase in weight of Swiss albino mice as a function of treatment with methanolic leaf extract of *Citrus maxima*. Similarly, ethanolic extract of plant, *Derris scandens* resulted in death of human colon cancer cell line HT-29 in in vitro (Arunee et al. 2014). Both the aqueous and methanolic extract of plant *Ficus religiosa* showed cytotoxicity to HT-29 and MDA-MB-435S cancer cells in in vitro (Uddin and Grice 2011). Decrease in growth of breast cancer cell lines as a function of treatment with aqueous leaf extract of *Taraxacum officinale* (Sigstedt et al. 2008), suppression of proliferation of prostrate, breast, ovary, colon, lung, and bladder cancer cell lines by isolated flavonoids from *Silybum marianum* (Agarwal et al. 2006) and death of human T-47D cancer cell lines by chloroform extract of plant, *Physalis minima* (Ooi et al. 2010) are few other example from many such studies carried out using different plant/extracts and cancer cell lines.

10.5.1 Anticancer Compounds from Endophytes

Endophytic fungi have been reported to produce a myriad of anticancer substances (Table 10.4). The bioactive potential of the endophytic fungi was first recognized when world's first multibillion dollar anticancer drug, Paclitaxel (Taxol), was obtained from an endophytic fungus. Taxol is known to be a potent chemotherapeutic agent, used for a variety of cancers including ovarian and breast cancers (Weaver 2014). Wani et al. (1971) first isolated and chemically characterized the Taxol from the bark of yew plant (*Taxus brevifolia*). However, the amount of taxol produced by the slow growing African yew is very small and a number of plants need to be sacrifice to obtain a few milligrams of compound. The cost of the taxol obtained from the plant source was a major constrain for its clinical use (Gangadevi et al. 2009). Stierle et al. (2001) first reported an alternative source for Taxol

Table 10.4 Anticancer compounds from endophytes and respective host plant

Host plant	Endophytic fungi	Bioactive compound	References
Taxus brevifolia	*Taxomyces andreanae*	Diterpenoid	Strobel (1997)
Torreya taxifolia	*Pestalotiopsis microspora*	Torreyanic acid	Lee (1996)
Catharanthus roseus	*Mycelia sterilia*	Vincristine	Yang (1994)
Plumeria acutifolia	*Colletotrichum gloeosporioides*	Taxol	Nithya (2009)
Spondias mombin	*Phomopsis* sp.	Phomopsidin & Phomopsichalasin	Kobayashi (1995)
Rhizophora annamalayana	*Fusarium oxysporum*	Taxol	Elavarasi (2012)
Tinospora cordifolia	*Fusarium culmorum SVJM072*	Taxol	Sonaimuthu (2010)
Annova squamosa	*Penicillium* sp.	Meleargine and Chrysogine	Yunianto (2014)
Tripterygium wilfordii	*Rhinocladiella* sp.	22-oxa-(12)-cytochalasins	Wagenaar (2000)
Nothapodytes foetida	*Entrophospora infrequens*	Camptothecin	Puri (2005)
Podophyllum hexandrum	*Trametes hirsute*	Podophyllotoxin	Puri (2006)
Sequoia semperivirens	*Aspergillus parasiticus*	Sequoiatones C-F	Stierle (2001)
Nothapodytes foetida	*Phycomycetes*	Campthothecin	Puri (2005)
Adenophora axilliflora	*Chetomium* sp. *IFB-EO15*	Chaetominine	Rui (2006)

production using endophytic fungus *Taxomyces andreanae*. Another important drug for cancer is the alkaloid "Camptothecin"—a potent anticancer compound found in the plant *Camptotheca acuminata* Decaisne (Nyssaceae) (Wall et al. 1966). Camptothecin and 10-hydroxycamptothecin are widely used as precursors in the synthesis of topotecan, and irinotecan, which are clinically used as potent anticancer drugs (Uma et al. 2008). An endophytic fungus *Fusarium solani* isolated from the same plant produced Camptothecin and 10-hydroxycamptothecin when cultivated in submerged cultures (Kusari et al. 2009). Subsequently, several workers reported endophytic fungi which could produce Camptothecin and other similar compounds (Puri 2005; Rehman et al. 2008).

Guo et al. (1998) reported that *Alternaria* sp. isolated from the phloem of *Catharanthus roseus* had the ability to produce well-known alkaloid, vinblastine (Fig. 10.4). Later, another endophytic fungus *Fusarium oxysporum* from the phloem of *C. roseus is* shown to produce vincristine (Zhang et al. 2000). In another

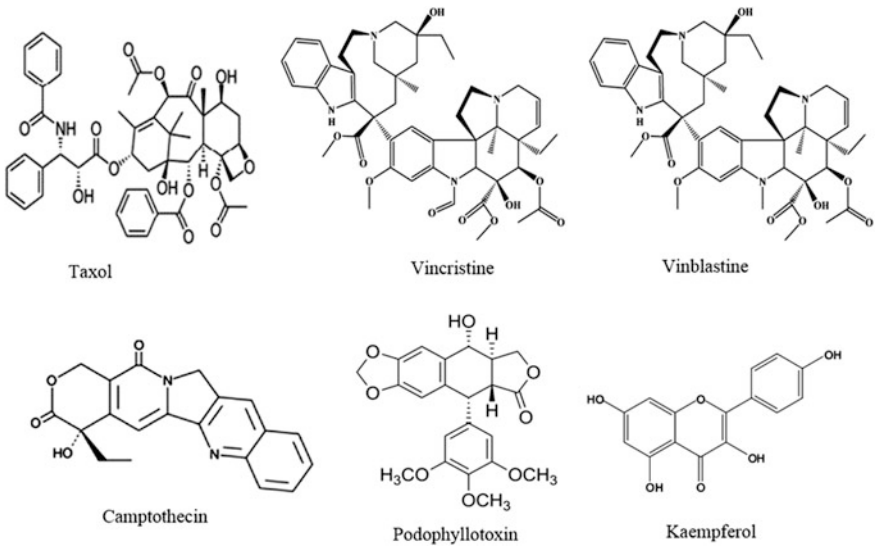


Fig. 10.4 Structure of anticancer compounds produced by endophytes

study, an unidentified vincristine producing endophytic fungus was isolated from the leaves of *C. roseus* (Yang et al. 2004). A new compound "Ergoflavin" with excellent anticancer activity was extracted from the culture filtrate of an endophytic fungus isolated from an Indian medicinal plant *Mimusops elengi* (Deshmukh et al. 2009). Similarly, Cytotoxic quinone dimer, Torreyanic acid is another important anticancer agent produced from *P. microspore* and isolated from *T. taxifolia (Florida torreya)*. Recent studies showed that *Hypocrea lixii*, a novel endophytic fungi, isolated from *Cajanus cajan*, produced anticancer agent cajanol (Zhao et al. 2013). Another endophytic fungus, *M. fragilis* exhibited production of bioactive metabolites, viz., podophyllotoxin and kaempferol (Huang et al. 2014) besides, guanacastane diterpenoids reported from the plant endophytic fungus *Cercospora* sp. (Feng et al. 2014).

A pentacyclic triterpenoid, ursolic acid, a known compound for its anticancer and cardioprotective properties (Liu 1995), was found to be produced by endophytic strain of *Annulohypoxylon stygium* (Cheng et al. 2014). A sterol ergosta-8(9), 22-diene- 3,5,6,7-tetrol (3β, 5α, 6β, 7α, 22E) (Compound 1) along with other three known sterols, namely 3β, 5α, 6β-trihydroxyergosta-7, 22-diene (2) 3β-hydroxy-5α, 8α-epidioxyergosta-6,22-diene (3) and ergosterol (4) from the unidentified endophytic fungi obtained from *Castaniopsis fissa* (Hou et al. 2004).

Endophytic fungi seem to be the store house of bioactive compounds with anticancer potential characteristics of their host plant. A new compound naphtho-ã-pyrone, 5-hydroxy-6,8-dimethoxy-2-benzyl-4H-naphtho[2,3-b]-pyran-4-one (1), together with three known compounds 5,7-dihydroxy-2-methylbenzopyran-4-one (2), 3,5-dihydroxy-2,7dimethylbenzopyran-4-one (3) and cyclo (Tyr-Tyr) (4) has

been isolated from the mangrove endophytic fungus *Phomopsis* sp. (Huang et al. 2010). Primary bioassays showed that compound 1 exhibited cytotoxicity against Hep-2 and HepG2 cells with IC_{50} values of 10 and 8 μg/ml, respectively.

10.6 Conclusion

The injudicious use of plant biodiversity for human use, increased commercial and scientific interests is continuously increasing the pressure on the population of higher plants. India, despite being one of the global biodiversity hotspot, uncontrolled use of medicinal plants is leading to many valuable medicinal species at risk of extinction. Globally, about 100,000 species of angiosperms are used for medicinal purpose. However, because of overharvesting, irrational use and loss of habitat about 15,000 species are near to extinction. Therefore, the sustainable use and conservation of medicinal plant biodiversity is the need of time.

Endophytic microorganisms, by virtue of their ability to produce metabolites of plant origin, can be of great significance to save fast diminishing plant biodiversity. Microbial endophytes have been intensively studied in last decade because of their potential to produce diverse biologically active metabolites of therapeutic importance. Their coevolution with host plant is thought to enable them to mimic host chemistry. Isolation of potential endophyte followed by their successful laboratory cultivation and scale-up are the important steps for exploring the endophytes for biotechnological purpose. Of late, thousands of endophytic microorganisms have been isolated, identified and their products such as steroids, alkaloids, peptides, terpenoids, tannins, polyketones, flavonoids, and phenolics have been characterized. However, producing the metabolites of plant origin using endophytes has several limiting factors. The laboratory cultivation conditions are completely different from that of *in planta* conditions. Moreover, the complex host–endophyte relationship controls expression of genes coding for secondary metabolite production. It is therefore concluded that, in spite of huge biotechnological potential, endophytic microorganisms are relatively less explored microbial community that can be tapped as rich source of bioactive metabolites of plant origin.

Acknowledgements The financial assistance provided by SERB, DST, New Delhi, in terms of fast track grant (File No. SR/FT/LS43/2012) to RHP, the fellowship from UGC, New Delhi under its Maulana Azad National Fellowship for Minorities (MANF) scheme (F1-17.7/2012-13/MANF-2012-13-MUS-MAH-13068/[SA-III/Website]) to SIM and financial support from UGC, New Delhi and DST, New Delhi for strengthening the research facilities in the School under the SAP-DRS (F.4-23/2015/DRS-II [(SAP II]) and FIST (SR/FST/LSI-433/2010) programs, respectively are gratefully acknowledged.

References

Abdul MI, Ramadhan MG, Soemiati A (2013) Screening of endophytic fungi from *Cassia siamea* lamk leaves as α-glucosidase inhibitor. Int Res J Pharm 4:128–131

Adediwura FJ, Bernard N, Omotola A (2011) Biochemical effects of chronic administration of *Cola acuminata* (P. Beauv.) Schott & Endl extracts in alloxan induced diabetic rats. Asian J Phar. Biol Res 1(3):355–359

Adewale AA, Anthony CP, Zaineb FA, Miller AF, Zito SW, Adeyemi OO, Agbaje EO (2013) Antihyperglycemic profile of erinidine isolated from *Hunteria umbellate* seed. Afr J Tradit Complement Altern Med 10(2):189–202

Agarwal R, Agarwal C, Ichikawa H, Singh RP, Agarwal BB (2006) Anticancer potential of silymarin: from bench to bed side. Anticancer Res 26(6B):4457–4498

Ahmed S, Stepp JR, Toleno RA, Peters CM (2010) Increased market integration, value, and ecological knowledge of tea agro forests in the Akha highlands of southwest China. Ecol Soc 15(4):27–44

Aied AM, Ali R, Ali AM, Harun H, Al-Dubai SA, Ganasegeran K, Alshagga MA, Salem SD, Abu Kasim NH (2013) Induction of caspase-9, biochemical assessment and morphological changes caused by apoptosis in cancer cells treated with goniothalamin extracted from *Goniothalamus macrophyllus*. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev 14(11):6273–6280

Akinloye OA, Solanke OO (2011) Evaluation of hypolipidemic and potential antioxidant effects of Pigeon pea (*Cajanus cajan* (l) mill sp.) leaves in alloxan-induced hyperglycemic rats. J Med Plants Res 5:2521–2524

Akinola OB, Caxton-Martins EA, Dini L (2010) Chronic treatment with ethanolic extract of the leaves of *Azadirachta indica* ameliorates lesions of pancreatic islets in streptozotocin diabetes. Int J Morphol 28(1):291–302

Arunee H, Kornkanok I, Nanteetip L, Daniel S (2014) Ethanolic extract from derris *Scandens benth* mediates radiosensitzation via two distinct modes of cell death in human colon cancer HT-29 Cells. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev 15:1871–1877

Atmani D, Chaher N, Berboucha M, Ayouni K, Lounis H, Boudaoud H, Atmani D (2009) Antioxidant capacity and phenol content of selected Algerian medicinal plants. Food Chem 112(2):303–309

Baardseth P (1989) Effect of selected antioxidants on the stability of dehydrated mashed potatoes. Food Addit Contam 6:201–207

Bacon CW, White JFJ (2000) Physiological adaptations in the evolution of endophytism in the Clavicipitaceae. In: Bacon CW, White JFJ (eds) Microbial endophytes. Marcel Dekker Inc., New York, NY, USA, pp 237–263

Bais S, Singh GS, Sharma R (2014) Antiobesity and hypolipidemic activity of *Moringa oleifera* leaves against high fat diet-induced obesity in rats. Adv in Biol 2014:1–9

Baker D, Mocek U, Garr C (2000) Natural products vs. combinatorials: a case study. In: Wrigley SK, Hayes MA, Thomas R, Chrystal EJT, Nicholson N (eds) Biodiversity: new leads for pharmaceutical and agrochemical industries. The Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge, UK, pp 66–72

Baldea LAN, Martineau LC, Benhaddou-Andaloussi A, Arnason JT, Lévy É, Haddad PS (2010) Inhibition of intestinal glucose absorption by anti-diabetic medicinal plants derived from the James Bay Cree traditional pharmacopeia. J Ethnopharmacol 132(2):473–482

Bhargavi SD, Praveen VK, Savitha J (2014) Bioinformatic comparative analysis of lovastatin gene cluster in endophytic fungi and a soil fungus, *Aspergillus terreus* MOJ. Proteom Bioinform 1:26–29

Birari R, Bhutani K (2007) Pancreatic lipase inhibitors from natural sources: unexplored potential. Drug Discov Today Ther 12:19–20

Castaneda MP, Swiatecka-Urban A, Mitsnefes MM, Feuerstein D (2003) Activation of mitochondrial apoptotic pathways in human renal allografts after ischemia reperfusion injury. Transplantation 76:50–54

Chakrabarti R, Bhavtaran S, Narendra P, Varghese N, Vanchhawng L, Mohamed Sham Shihabudeen H, Thirumurgan IVK (2011) Dipeptidyl peptidase-IV inhibitory activity of *Berberis aristata*. J Nat Prod 4:158–163

Chatterjee M, Sarkar K, Sil PC (2006) Herbal (*Phyllanthus niruri*) protein isolate protects liver from nimesulide induced oxidative stress. Pathophysiol 13(2):95–102

Chen Y, Guo H, Du Z, Liu XZ, Che Y, Ye X (2009) Ecology based screen identifies new metabolites from a Cordyceps colonizing fungus as cancer cell proliferation inhibitors and apoptosis inducers. Cell Prolif 42(6):838–847

Cheng MJ, Wu MD, Chen JJ, Cheng YC, Hsieh MT, Hsieh SY, Yuan GF, Su YS (2014) Secondary metabolites from the endophytic fungus *Annulohypoxylon stygium* BCRC 34024. Chem Nat Comp 50:237–241

Chithra S, Jasim B, Anisha C, Jyothis M, Radhakrishnan EK (2014a) LC-MS/MS Based Identification of piperine production by endophytic *Mycosphaerella sp. PF13* from *Piper nigrum*. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 173:30–35

Chithra S, Jasim B, Sachidanandan P, Jyothis M, Radhakrishnan EK (2014b) Piperine production by endophytic fungus *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides* isolated from *Piper nigrum*. Phytomedicine 21:534–540

De Bary A (1866) Morphologie und Physiologie der Pilze, *Flechten, and Myxomyceten*

Deba F, Xuan TD, Yasuda M, Tawata S (2008) Chemical composition and antioxidant, antibacterial and antifungal activities of the essential oils from *Bidens pilosa* Linn. var. Radiata. Food Control 19(4):346–352

Deshmukh SK, Mishra PD, Kulkarni-Almeida A, Verekar S, Sahoo MR, Periyasamy G, Goswami H, Khanna A, Balakrishnan A, Vishwakarma R (2009) Antiinflammatory and anticancer activity of ergoflavin isolated from an endophytic fungus. Chem Biodivers 6 (5):784–789

Dhandapani R (2007) Hypolipidemic activity of *Eclipta prostrata* (L.) L. leaf extract in atherogenic diet induced hyperlipidemic rats. Indian J Exp Biol 45(7):617

Dhankhar S, Dhankhar S, Yadav JP (2013) Investigations towards new antidiabetic drugs from fungal endophytes associated with *Salvadora oleoides*. Decne Med Chem 9:624–632

Dineshkumar B, Mitra A, Manjunatha M (2010) A comparative study of alpha amylase inhibitory activities of common antidiabetic plants at Kharagpur 1 block pharm. Int J Green 4(2):115

Elavarasi A, Rathna GS, Kalaiselvam M (2012) Taxol producing mangrove endophytic fungi *Fusarium oxysporum* from *Rhizophora Annamalayana*. Asian Pac J Trop Biomed S1081–S1085

El-Najjar N, Dakdouki S, Darwiche N, El-Sabban M, Saliba NA, Gali-Muhtasib H (2008) Anti-colon cancer effects of Salograviolide A isolated from *Centaurea ainetensis*. Oncol Rep 19(4):897–904

Eyo JE, Ozougwu JC, Echi PC (2011) Hypoglycemic effects of *Allium cepa*, *Allium sativum* and *Zingiber officinale* aqueous extracts on alloxan induced diabetic *Rattus novergicus*. Med J Islamic World Acad Sci 19(3):121–126

Feng Y, Ren F, Niu S, Wang L, Li L (2014) Guanacastane diterpenoids from the plant endophytic fungus *Cercospora sp*. J Nat Prods 77:873–881

Florence NT, Benoit MZ, Jonas K, Alexandra T, Desire DDP, Pierre K, Theophile D (2014) Antidiabetic and antioxidant effects of *Annona muricata* (Annonaceae), aqueous extract on streptozotocin induced diabetic rats. J Ethnopharmacol 151(2):784–790

Gangadevi V, Muthumary J (2009) Taxol production by *Pestalotiopsis terminaliae*, an endophytic fungus of *Terminalia arjuna* (arjun tree). Biotechnol Appl Biochem 52(1):9–15

Ganie SA, Dar TA, Hamid R, Zargar O, Abeer SU, Masood A, Zargar MA (2014) In vitro antioxidant and cytotoxic activities of *Arnebia benthamii* (Wall ex. G. Don): a critically endangered medicinal plant of Kashmir valley. Oxidative Med Cellular Longevity 2014:1–9

Garba A, Mada SB, Ibrahim G, Dauran IA, Hamza AB (2013) Studies on hypoglycemic and hypolipidemic effects of methanolic extract of *Stachytarpheta angustifolia* (mill) in streptozotocin induced diabetic rats. Asian J Bio Sci 6(3):161–167

Ghazanfar K, Ganai BA, Akbar S, Mubashir K, Dar SA, Dar MY, Tantry MA (2014) Antidiabetic activity of *Artemisia amygdalina* Decne in streptozotocin induced diabetic rats. Biomed Res Int 21:2014

Gould GW (1995) Biodeterioration of foods and an overview of preservation in the food and dairy industries. Int Biodeterior Biodegradation 36:267–277

Guo B, Li H, Zhang L (1998) Isolation of the fungus producing vinblastine. J Yunnan Univ 20:214–215

Gupta M, Saxena S, Goyal D (2015) Potential pancreatic lipase inhibitory activity of an endophytic Penicillium species. J Enzyme Inhib Med Chem 30(1):15–21

Haire-Joshu D (1996) Management of diabetes mellitus: Perspectives of care across the life span. Mosby-Year Book, St Louis, MO

Hou JL, Yong CL, Vrijmoed Jones EBG (2004) A new cytotoxic sterol produced by an endophytic fungus from *Castaniopsis fissa* at the south China sea coast Chin. Chem Lett 15(4):419–422

Huang Z, Yang R, Guo Z, She Z, Lin Y (2010) A new naphtho-γ-pyrone from mangrove endophytic fungus ZSU-H26. Chem Nat Comp 46(1):15–18

Huang JX, Zhang J, Zhang XR, Zhang K, Zhang X (2014) *Mucor fragilis* as a novel source of the key pharmaceutical agents podophyllotoxin and kaempferol. Pharm Biol 52:1237–1243

Ingavat N, Dobereiner J, Wiyakrutta S, Mahidol C, Ruchirawat S, Kittakoop P (2009) Aspergillusol A, an alpha-glucosidase inhibitor from the marine derived fungus *Aspergillus aculeatus*. J Nat Prods 72:2049–2052

Juan-Badaturuge M, Habtemariam S, Jackson C, Thomas MJ (2009) Antioxidant principles of *Tanacetum vulgare* L. aerial parts. Nat Prod Commun 4(11):1561–1564

Kaul S, Wani M, Dhar KL, Dhar MK (2008) Production and GC-MS trace analysis of methyl eugenol from endophytic isolate of *Alternaria* from rose. Ann Microbiol 58:443–445

Kobayashi H, Sunaga R, Furihata K, Morisaki N, Iwasaki S (1995) Isolation and structures of an antifungal antibiotic, fusarielin A, and related compounds produced by a *Fusarium sp*. J Antibiot (Tokyo) 48:42–52

Krishnakumari S, Priya K (2006) Hypolipidemic efficacy of *Achyranthes aspera* on lipid profile in sesame oil fed rats. Anc Sci Life 25(3–4):49

Kumar T, Chandrashekar KS (2011) *Bauhinia purpurea* Linn. A review of its ethnobotany, phytochemical and pharmacological profile. Res J Med Plant 5(4):420–431

Kumar AS, Venkatarathanamma V, Suneeta K, Kumari BS (2011) Comparative in vitro screening of α-amylase and α-glucosidase enzyme inhibitory studies in leaves of Annona species. J Pharm Res 4:4431–4434

Kumara PM, Soujanya KN, Ravikanth G, Vasudeva R, Ganeshaiah KN, Shaanker RU (2014) Rohitukine, a chromone alkaloid and a precursor of flavopiridol, is produced by endophytic fungi isolated from *Dysoxylum binectariferum* Hook.f and *Amoora rohituka* (Roxb). Wight & Arn. Phytomedicine 21:541–546

Kundusen S, Gupta M, Mazumder UK (2011) Antitumor activity of *Citrus maxima* (Burm.) Merr. leaves in ehrlich as cities carcinoma cell treated mice. Pharmacol 2011:1–5

Kusari S, Zuhlke S, Spiteller M (2009) An endophytic fungus from *Camptotheca acuminata* that produces camptothecin and analogues. J Nat Prods 72(1):2–7

Kusari S, Verma VC, Lamshoeft M, Spiteller M (2012) An endophytic fungus from *Azadirachta indica* A. Juss. that produces azadirachtin. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 28:1287–1294

Kwanghee K, Hyunyul K, Jeunghak K, Sungwon L, Hyunseok K, Sun-A I (2009) Hypoglycemic and hypolipidemic effects of processed *Aloe vera* gel in a mouse model of non insulin dependent diabetes mellitus. Phytomedicine 2:14

Lee J, Strobel GA, Lob Kovsky E, Clardy JC (1996) Torreyanic acid: A selectively cytotoxic quinine dimer from the endophytic fungus *Pestalotiopsis microspore*. J Org Chem 61:3232–3233

Li CT, Liu YP, He FC, Li Y (2012) In vitro antioxidant activities of *Tussilago farfara*, a new record species to Changbai Mountain. Chin J Nat Med 10(4):260–262

Liu J (1995) Pharmacology of oleanolic acid and ursolic acid. J Ethnopharmacol 49:57–68

Liu J, Luo J, Ye H, Sun Y, Lu Z, Zeng X (2009) Production, characterization and antioxidant activities in vitro of exopolysaccharides from endophytic bacterium *Paenibacillus polymyxa* EJS-3. Carbohydr Polym 78(2):275–281

Ma C, Jiang D, Wei X (2011) Mutation breeding of *Emericella foeniculicola TR21* for improved production of tanshinone IIA. Proc Biochem 46:2059–2063

Maahs DM, West NA, Lawrence JM, Mayer-Davis EJ (2010) Epidemiology of type 1 diabetes. Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am 39:481–497

Mahjoub S, Davari S, Moazezi Z, Qujeq D (2012) Hypolipidemic effects of ethanolic and aqueous extracts of *Urtica dioica* in rats. World Appl Sci J 17(10):1345–1348

Makni M, Fetoui H, Gargouri NK, Garoui EM, Zeghal N (2011) Antidiabetic effect of flax and pumpkin seed mixture powder: effect on hyperlipidemia and antioxidant status in alloxan diabetic rats. J Diabetes Complicat 25(5):339–345

Mallick C, Maiti R, Ghosh D (2006) Comparative study on antihyperglycemic and antihyperlipidemic effects of separate and composite extract of seed of *Eugenia jambolana* and root of *Musa paradisiaca* in streptozotocin induced diabetic male albino rat. Iranian J Pharmacol Ther 5(1):27–33

Manosroi J, Zaruwa MZ, Manosroi A (2011) Potent hypoglycemic effect of Nigerian antidiabetic medicinal plants. J Complement Integr Med 8(1):1–16

Mashentseva AA, Dehaen W, Seitembetov TS, Seitembetova AJ (2011) Comparison of the antioxidant activity of the different *Betula pendula* Roth. extracts from northern Kazakhstan. J Phytol 3(1):18–25

Mbaka GO (2014) The protective role of *Sphenocentrum jollyanum* leaf extract on beta cells morphology of alloxan treated rabbits. Asian J Med Sci 2(3):195–201

McDougall GJ, Kulkarni NN, Stewart D (2009) Berry polyphenols inhibit pancreatic lipase activity in vitro. Food Chem 115(1):193–199

Ming QL, Han T, Li W, Zhang QY, Zhang H, Zheng CJ, Huang F, Rahman K, Qin LP (2012) Tanshinone IIA and tanshinone I production by *Trichoderma atroviride* D16, an endophytic fungus in *Salvia miltiorrhiza*. Phytomedicine 19:330–333

Mishra PD, Verekar SA, Kulkarni AM, Roy SK, Jain S, Balakrishnan A, Vishwakarma R, Deshmukh S (2013) Antiinflammatory and antidiabetic naphthaquinones from an endophytic fungus *Dendryphion nanum* S. Huges. Indian J Chem 52(B):565–567

Mohammed RK, Ibrahim S, Atawodi SE, Eze ED, Suleiman JB, Malgwi IS (2012) The study of the effects of n-butanol fraction of *Alchornea cordifolia* leaf extract on lipid profile and liver enzymes in streptozotocin induced diabetic rats. Global J Med Plant Res 1(1):1–7

Mohammed SI, Chopda MZ, Patil RH, Vishwakarma KS, Maheshwari VL (2016) In vivo antidiabetic and antioxidant activities of *Coccinia grandis* leaf extract against streptozotocin induced diabetes in experimental rats. Asian Pac J Trop Dis 6(4):298–304

Nithya K, Muthumary J (2009) Growth studies of *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides* (Penz.) Sacc.–a taxol producing endophytic fungus from *Plumeria acutifolia*. Indian J Sci Technol 2:14–19

Nwodo NJ, Nnadi CO, Ibezim A, Mbah CJ (2014) Plants with Hypolipidemic effects from Nigerian flora. INTECH Open Science 241–44

Nwozo S, Adaramoye O, Ajaiyeoba E (2009) Oral administration of extract from *Curcuma longa* Lowers blood glucose and attenuates alloxan induced hyperlipidemia in diabetic rabbits. Pak J Nutr 8(5):625–628

Okokon JE, Antia BS, Udobang JA (2012) Antidiabetic activities of ethanolic extract and fraction of *Anthocleista djalonensis*. Asian Pac J Trop Biomed 2(6):461–464

Ola ARB, Debbab A, Kurtan T, Brotz-Oesterhelt H, Aly AH, Proksch P (2014) Dihydroanthracenone metabolites from the endophytic fungus *Diaporthe melonis* isolated from *Annona squamosal*. Tetrahedron Lett 55:3147–3150

Olowu AO, Adeneye AA, Adeyemi OO (2011) Hypoglycemic effect of *Ipomoea batatas* aqueous leaf and stem extract in normal and streptozotocin induced hyperglycemic rats. J Nat Pharm 2 (2):56–61

Onakpoya IJ, O'Sullivan J, Heneghan CJ (2015) The effect of cactus pear (*Opuntia ficus-indica*) on body weight and cardiovascular risk factors: a systematic review and meta analysis of randomized clinical trials. Nutrition 31(5):640–646

Ooi KL, Muhammad TST, Lim CH, Sulaiman SF (2010) Apoptotic effects of *Physalis minima* L. chloroform extract in human breast carcinoma T-47D cells mediated by c-myc-, p53-, and caspase-3-dependent pathways. Integr. Cancer Ther 9(1):73–83

Ozturk M, Aydogmus-Ozturk F, Duru ME, Topçu G (2007) Antioxidant activity of stem and root extracts of Rhubarb (*Rheum ribes*): an edible medicinal plant. Food Chem 103(2):623–630

Park BC, Bosire KO, Lee ES, Lee YS, Kim JA (2005) Asiatic acid induces apoptosis in SK-MEL-2 human melanoma cells. Cancer Lett 218(1):81–90

Patel DK, Kumar R, Laloo D, Hemalatha S (2012) Diabetes mellitus: an overview on its pharmacological aspects and reported medicinal plants having antidiabetic activity. Asian Pac J Trop Biomed 2(5):411–420

Patil RH, Krishnan P, Maheshwari VL (2011) Production of lovastatin by wild strains of *Aspergillus terreus*. Nat Prod Commun 6(2):183–186

Patil MP, Patil RH, Maheshwari VL (2015) Biological activities and identification of bioactive metabolite from endophytic *Aspergillus flavus* L7 isolated from *Aegle marmelos*. Curr Microbiol 71:39–48

Pavana P, Manoharan S, Renju GL, Sethupathy S (2007) Antihyperglycemic and antihyperlipidemic effects of *Tephrosia purpurea* leaf extract in streptozotocin induced diabetic rats. J Env Biol 28(4):833–837

Peng W, You F, Li XL, Jia M, Zheng CJ, Han T, Qin LP (2013) A new diphenyl ether from the endophytic fungus *Verticillium sp.* isolated from *Rehmannia glutinosa*. Chin J Nat Med 11:673–675

Puri SC, Verma V, Amna T, Qazi GN, Spiteller M (2005) An endophytic fungus from *Nothapodytes foetida* that produces camptothecin. J Nat Prods 68:1717–1719

Puri SC, Nazir A, Chawla R, Arora R, Riyaz-Ul-Hasan S (2006) The endophytic fungus *Trametes hirsuta* as a novel alternative source of podophyllotoxin and related aryl tetralin lignans. J Biotechnol 122:494–510

Raghunath R, Radhakrishna A, Angayarkanni J, Palaniswamy M (2012) Production and cytotoxicity studies of lovastatin from *Aspergillus niger* PN2 an endophytic fungi isolated from *Taxus baccata*. Int J Appl Biol Pharm Tech 3(3):342–352

Rahimi R, Nikfar S, Larijani B, Abdollahi M (2005) A review on the role of antioxidants in the management of diabetes and its complications. Biomed Pharmacother 59(7):365–373

Ramkumar KM, Manjula C, Sankar L, Suriyanarayanan S, Rajaguru P (2009) Potential in vitro antioxidant and protective effects of *Gymnema montanum* H. on alloxan induced oxidative damage in pancreatic β-cells, HIT-T15. Food Chem Toxicol 47(9):2246–2256

Ratnaweera PB, Williams DE, de Silva ED, Wijesundera RL, Dalisay DS, Andersen RJ (2014) Helvolic acid, an antibacterial nortriterpenoid from a fungal endophyte, sp. of orchid endemic to Sri Lanka. Mycology 5:23–28

Rehman S, Shawl AS, Kour A (2008) An endophytic Neurospora sp. from *Nothapodytes foetida* producing camptothecin. Appl Biochem Microbiol 44(2):203–209

Rui H, Jiao, Shu X, Jun YL, Hui MG, Hui D, Chen X, Hai LZ, Ren XT (2006) Chetominine, a cytotoxic alkaloid produced by endophytic *Chaetomium sp. IFB-E105*. Organic Lett 8 (25):5709–5712

Ruma K, Kumar S, Prakash HS (2013) Antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, antimicrobial and cytotoxic properties of fungal endophytes from *Garcinia* species. Int J Pharm Pharma Sci 5 (3):889–897

Sadananda TS, Nirupama R, Chaithra K, Govindappa M, Chandrappa CP, Vinay Raghavendra B (2011) Antimicrobial and antioxidant activities of endophytes from *Tabebuia argentea* and identification of anticancer agent (lapachol). J Med Plants Res 5(16):3643–3652

Saidu AN, Mann A, Onuegbu CD (2012) Phytochemical screening and hypoglycemic effect of aqueous *Blighia sapida* root bark extract on normoglycemic albino rats. Br J Pharm Res 2 (2):89–97

Sandesh P, Velu V, Singh RP (2014) Antioxidant activities of tamarind (*Tamarindus Indica*) seed coat extract using in vitro and in vivo models. J Food Sci Tech 51(9):1965–1973

Saxena A, Vikram NK (2004) Role of selected Indian plants in management of type 2 diabetes: a review. J Altern Complement Med 10(2):369–378

Schutz B (2001) Endophytic fungi: a source of novel biologically active secondary metabolites. British Mycological Society, International Symposium Proceedings: bioactive fungal metabolites–impact and exploitation. University of Wales, Swansea. 20

Scott LJ, Curran MP, Figgitt DP (2004) Rosuvastatin: a review of its use in the management of dyslipidemia. Am J Cardiovasc Drug 4:117–138

Shanmugasundaram P, Venkataraman S (2006) Hepatoprotective and antioxidant effects of *Hygrophila auriculata* (K. Schum) *Heine Acanthaceae* root extract. J Ethnopharmacol 104 (1):124–128

Sharififar F, Dehghn-Nudeh G, Mirtajaldini M (2009) Major flavonoids with antioxidant activity from *Teucrium polium* L. Food Chem 112(4):885–888

Shi J, Zeng Q, Liu Y, Pan Z (2012) *Alternaria* sp. MG1, a resveratrol producing fungus: Isolation, identification, and optimal cultivation conditions for resveratrol production. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 95:369–379

Shivanna N, Naika M, Khanum F, Kaul VK (2013) Antioxidant, antidiabetic and renal protective properties of *Stevia rebaudiana*. J Diabetes Complicat 27(2):103–113

Siegel R, Naishadham D, Jemal A (2013) Cancer statistics, 2013 CA Cancer. J Clin 63(1):11–30

Sigstedt SC, Hooten CJ, Callewaert MC, Jenkins AR, Romero AE, Pullin MJ, Steelant WF (2008) Evaluation of aqueous extracts of *Taraxacum officinale* on growth and invasion of breast and prostate cancer cells. Int J Oncol 32(5):1085–1090

Sivashanmugam AT, Chatterjee TK (2013) In vitro and in vivo antidiabetic activity of *Polyalthia longifolia* (Sonner.) Thw. Leaves. Orient Pharm Exp Med 13(4):289–300

Sonaimuthu V, Krishnamoorthy S, Johnpaul M (2010) Taxol producing endophytic fungus *Fusarium culmorum* SV JM072 from medicinal plant of *Tinospora cordifolia*. J Biotechnol 150:S571–S576

Sowndhararajan K, Kang SC (2013) Free radical scavenging activity from different extracts of leaves of *Bauhinia vahlii* Wight & Arn. Saudi J Biol Sci 20(4):319–325

Sreerama YN, Takahashi Y, Yamaki K (2012) Phenolic antioxidants in some Vigna species of legumes and their distinct inhibitory effects on -glucosidase and pancreatic lipase activities. J Food Sci 77(9):C927–C933

Stevic T, Savikin K, Zdunic G, Stanojkovic T, Juranic Z, Jankovic T, Menkovic N (2010) Antioxidant, cytotoxic, and antimicrobial activity of *Alnus incana* (L.) ssp. *Incana moench* and *A. viridis* (Chaix) DC ssp. viridis extracts. J Med Food 13(3):700–704

Stierle AA, Stierle DB, Bugni T (2001) Sequoiatones, C-F constituents of the redwood endophytes. J Nat Prods 64(10):1350–1353

Strobel G, Daisy B (2003) Bioprospecting for microbial endophytes and their natural products microbiol. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 67(4):491–502

Strobel GA, Hess WM, Li JY, Ford E, Sears J, Sidhu RS, Summerell B (1997) *Pestalotropsis guepinii*, a taxol producing endophyte of the *Wollemi pine, Wollemia nobilis*. Aust J Bot 45:1073–1082

Strobel G, Daisy B, Castillo U, Harper J (2004) Natural products from endophytic microorganisms. J Nat Prod 67:257–268

Subash AK, Augustine A (2012) Hypolipidemic effect of methanol fraction of *Aconitum heterophyllum* wall ex Royle and the mechanism of action in diet induced obese rats. J Adv Pharm Technol Res 3(4):224–228

Sun Y, Xun K, Wang Y, Chen X (2009) A systematic review of the anticancer properties of berberine, a natural product from Chinese herbs. Anticancer Drugs 20:757–769

Sundarrajan T, Raj Kumar T, Udhayakumar E, Arunachalam G (2010) Hypolipidemic activity of *Pithecellobium dulce* Bench *Triton* Wr–1339 induced hyperlipidemic rats. Int J Chem Pharm Sci 1:50–53

Tan RX, Zou WX (2001) Endophytes: a rich source of functional metabolites. Nat Prod Rep 18:448–459

Tsumbu CN, Deby-Dupont G, Tits M, Angenot L, Franck T, Serteyn D, Mouithys-Mickalad A (2011) Antioxidant and antiradical activities of *Manihot esculenta* Crantz (Euphorbiaceae) leaves and other selected tropical green vegetables investigated on lipoperoxidation and phorbol-12-myristate-13-acetate (PMA) activated monocytes. Nutrients 3(9):818–838

Uddin SJ, Grice ID, Tiralongo E (2011) Cytotoxic effects of Bangladeshi medicinal plant extracts. Evid Based Complement Alternat Med 2011:1–8

Uma SR, Ramesha BT, Ravikanth G, Rajesh PG, Vasudeva R, Ganeshaiah KN (2008) Chemical profiling of *Nothapodytes nimmoniana* for camptothecin, an important anticancer alkaloid: towards the development of a sustainable production system in bioactive molecules and medicinal plants. In: Ramawat KG, Merillon JM (eds) bioactive molecules and medicinal plants. Springer, Berlin, pp 197–213

Venkadeswaran K, Muralidharan AR, Annadurai T, Ruban VV, Sundararajan M, Anandhi R, Geraldine P (2014) Antihypercholesterolemic and antioxidative potential of an extract of the plant, *Piper beetle*, and its active constituent, eugenol, in Triton WR-1339-induced hypercholesterolemia in experimental rats. Evid Based Complement Alternat Med 2014:1–11

Vinodhini D, Agastian P (2013) Berberine production by endophytic fungus *Fusarium solani* from *Coscinium fenestratum*. Int J Pharm Biol Sci 4:1239–1245

Wagenaar MM, Corwin J, Strobel G, Clardy J (2000) Three new cytochalasins produced by an endophytic fungus in the genus Rhinocladiella. J Nat Prods 63:1692–1695

Wall ME, Wani MC, Cook CE, Palmer KH, McPhail AT, Sim GA (1966) Plant antitumor agents I The isolation and structure of camptothecin, a novel alkaloidal leukemia and tumor inhibitor from *Camptotheca acuminate*. J Am Chem Soc 88(16):3888–3890

Wani MC, Taylor HL, Wall ME, Coggon P, McPhail AT (1971) Plant antitumor agents VI The isolation and structure of taxol, a novel antileukemic and antitumor agent from *Taxus brevifolia*. J Am Chem Soc 93(9):2325–2327

Weaver BA (2014) How Taxol/paclitaxel kills cancer cells. Mol Biol Cell 25(18):2677–2681

Wei QG, Liang ZL, Zhuo YH (2013) Antiproliferative effects of *Atractylis lancea* (Thunb.) DC. via downregulation of the c-myc/hTERT/telomerase pathway in Hep-G2 Cells. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev 14:6363–6367

Weng Y, Yu L, Cui J, Zhu YR, Guo C, Wei G, Yang ZF (2014) Antihyperglycemic, hypolipidemic and antioxidant activities of total saponins extracted from *Aralia taibaiensis* in experimental type 2 diabetic rats. J Ethnopharmacol 152(3):553–560

Xu YM, Espinosa-Artiles P, Liu MX, Arnold AE, Gunatilaka AA (2013) Secoemestrin D, a cytotoxic epitetrathiodioxopiperizine, and emericellenes AE, five sesterterpenoids from *Emericella sp.* AST0036, a fungal endophyte of *Astragalus lentiginosus*. J Nat Prods 76:2330–2336

Yang X, Strobel GA, Stierle A, Hess WH, Lee J (1994) A fungal endophyte tree relationship: *Phoma sp.* in *Taxus wallachiana*. Plant Sci 102:1–9

Yang X, Zhang L, Guo B, Guo S (2004) Preliminary study of a vincristine producing endophytic fungus isolated from leaves of *Catharanthus roseus*. Chin Tradit Herbal Drugs 35:79–81

Yogisha S, Raveesha KA IV (2010) Dipeptidyl peptidase IV inhibitory activity of *Mangifera indica*. J Nat Prods 3:76–79

Yong L, Chongming W, Dong L, Peter P, Peng G, Wenhan L (2013) Chartarlactams AP, phenylspirodrimanes from the sponge associated fungus *Stachybotrys chartarum* with antihyperlipidemic activities. J Nat Prods 77(1):138–147

Yunianto P, Rusman Y, Saepudin E, Suwarso WP, Sumaryano W (2014) Alkaloid (meleaine and chrysogine) from endophytic fungi *(Penicillium sp.)* of L. Pak J Biol Sci 17:667–674

Zhang L, Guo B, Li H, Zeng S, Shao H, Gu S, Wei R (2000) Preliminary study on the isolation of endophytic fungus of *Catharanthus roseus* and its fermentation to produce products of therapeutic value Chin Tradit Herbal. Drugs 31:805–807

Zhang Q, Wei X, Wang J (2012) Phillyrin produced by *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides*, an endophytic fungus isolated from *Forsythia suspense*. Fitoterapia 83:1500–1505

Zhao J, Fu Y, Luo M, Zu Y, Wang W, Zhao C, Gu C (2012) Endophytic fungi from pigeon pea (*Cajanus cajan* (L.) Millsp.) produce antioxidant cajaninstilbene acid. J Agric Food Chem 60:4314–4319

Zhao J, Li C, Wang W, Zhao C, Luo M (2013) *Hypocrea lixii*, novel endophytic fungi producing anticancer agent cajanol, isolated from pigeon pea (*Cajanus cajan* [L.] Millsp.). J Appl Microbiol 115:102–113

Zhou K, Wang H, Mei W, Li X, Luo Y, Dai H (2011) Antioxidant activity of papaya seed extracts. Molecules 16(8):6179–6192

Zlobin AA, Martinson EA, Litvinets SG, Ovechkina IA, Durnev EA, Ovodova RG (2012) Pectin polysaccharides of rowan *Sorbus aucuparia* L Russ. J Bioorg Chem 38(7):702–706

Chapter 11
Harnessing Endophytic Microbial Volatile Organic Compound (MVOC) for Sustainable Agroecosystem

Dinesh Chandra, Pallavi and A.K. Sharma

Abstract Endophytic bacteria and fungi emit a wealth of volatiles, representing a promising group of microorganisms, as they are a largely untapped reservoir of metabolic diversity. These volatile organic compounds (VOCs) occur as mixtures of low molecular mass hydrocarbons, alcohols, heterocyclic compound, aldehydes, ketones, and other small molecules. They have characteristic aromas and are produced during primary and secondary metabolism of microbes. Their ability to diffuse makes them excellent chemical signaling molecules in nonaqueous habitats and facilitates the ability of microbes to engage in chemical conversations. The methods for the collection and detection of MVOC are steam distillation, liquid–liquid extraction, simultaneous distillation extraction, purge and trap, supercritical fluid extraction, and solid phase microextraction (SPME). Among them, SPME is the most commonly used technique as it integrates the extraction, concentration, and introduction in one step thus resulting in reducing preparation time. A growing body of evidence indicates that MVOCs are eco-friendly and can be exploited as a cost-effective and sustainable strategy in agricultural practice as agents triggering plant immunity and promoting plant growth. Also, MVOC-mediated conversion of solid cellulosic biomass to liquid biofuels may provide a renewable energy source for transportation fuels.

Keywords Endophyte · MVOC · Plant growth · Biofuel · SPME

D. Chandra (✉) · Pallavi · A.K. Sharma
Department of Biological Sciences, College of Basic Science and Humanities, G.B. Pant, University of Agriculture and Technology, U.S Nagar, Pantnagar 263145, Uttarakhand, India
e-mail: dchandra.009@gmail.com

Pallavi
e-mail: meghsabhi@gmail.com

A.K. Sharma
e-mail: anilksharma_99@yahoo.com

D.K. Maheshwari and K. Annapurna (eds.), *Endophytes: Crop Productivity and Protection*, Sustainable Development and Biodiversity 16,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-66544-3_11

11.1 Introduction

The term endophyte was first coined by De Bary in 1884 for microorganisms including bacterial, yeast, archaeal, fungal, and protistic taxa colonizing internal plant tissues (De Bary 1884). Hallmann et al. (1997) defined endophytes as, considering any microorganism as an endophyte if it can be isolated or extracted from inside surface disinfected plant tissue and it does not seemingly harm the plant. This definition has been widely accepted for cultivable species in most laboratories in the world over the last 20 years. However, due to the suspected lack of adequate elimination of nucleic acids after sterilization of plant surfaces, this definition seemed to be less suited for non-cultured species upon the interpolation of molecular detection techniques in endophyte research. Coombs and Franco (2003) defined microbial endophytes as ubiquitous colonizers of the interior tissues of host plants and can constitute a range of different relationships such as symbiotic, mutualistic, and commensalistic where they do not usually have any substantial morphological changes and disease symptoms.

11.2 Microbial Volatile Organic Compound (MVOC)

Several prokaryotic and eukaryotic microorganisms generate a plethora of complex and dynamic array of gaseous secondary metabolites, usually known as volatile organic compound (VOCs) of low molecular weight lipophilic (<300 Da) compounds, high vapor pressure (0.01 kPa or higher at 20 °C), low boiling point, belonging to different chemical classes that vaporize and diffuse easily through air and water-filled pores and thus play essential biological/ecological roles in aboveground as well as belowground habitats (Penuelas et al. 2014; Tyc et al. 2014; Wenke and Piechulla 2013). Recent studies showed that soil microbiotas can use these volatile compounds as ideal info-chemical as growth stimulants, growth inhibitors, and inhibitors of quorum-sensing, i.e., quorum quenching (Effmert et al. 2012; Kim et al. 2013). In living organism, these compound are formed as part of normal metabolism and derived from different biosynthetic pathways and act as signal molecules for inter- and intra-organismic communication between plants, antagonists, and mutualistic symbionts both below (soil) and above ground (atmosphere) (Kanchiswamy et al. 2015). At the plant–microbe community level, substantial progress has been made in studying the multifaceted role of MVOCs produced by bacteria, fungi, and phytopathogens in agroecosystems. Researcher considers MVOCs as potential semiochemicals that function as attractants and repellents to insects and other invertebrates, as biocontrol agents to control various phytopathogens, as biofertilizers for plant growth promotion, as a potential source of biofuel, and are also used to prevent postharvest plant diseases.

11.3 Diversity of Microbial Volatiles

The available literature and databases allow estimating the known structural diversity of volatiles derived from plant flowers ca. 1,700 volatiles from 991 species (Dunkel et al. 2009), 1,093 volatiles from 491 microbes, including 135 fungi and 356 bacteria (Lemfack et al. 2014). Yet considering that 2,98,000 of plant species (Mora et al. 2011), 10^7–10^9 bacterial species (Schloss and Handelsman 2004), and 1.5 million fungal species (Hawksworth 2001) might exist on earth, the number of volatiles will be added more to databases as new species are being characterized and discovered. The 1,093 volatilome from the MVOC database (Lemfack et al. 2014) grouped into 13 chemical classes (Table 11.1).

11.4 Microbial Volatile Organic Compound (MVOCs) Collection and Detection

For bioprospecting the microbial volatile compound, the first and foremost requirement is their detection in the source, identification and afterwards their collection. However, analysis of these volatile compounds poses challenges as they tend to occur in mixtures, possess different chemical properties, and are generally

Table 11.1 Per cent contribution of major and minor group of microbial volatiles (Lemfack et al. 2014)

	% contribution of volatile	Total diversity
Major group of volatile		
Terpenes	11	Major groups of volatile compound representing 64% of total diversity
Ketones	13	
Organic acid	10	
Alcohol	16	
Aromatic compounds	14	
Minor groups of volatile		
Alkanes	5	Minor groups of volatile compound constitute 36% of total diversity
Alkenes	3	
Nitrogen compound	5	
Sulfur compound	7	
Aldehydes	7	
Esters	7	
Furans	2	
Ethers	<1	

present in low concentrations. Thus, for accurate interpretation, it is crucial to obtain as many volatile components as possible from the samples, therefore, the desired sampling technique must be able to extract different polar and structural biological VOCs.

Over time, many strategies have been applied in the field of MVOC detection and concentration. Steam distillation (Vanhaelen et al. 1978; Kaminski et al. 1972), liquid–liquid extraction (Wu et al. 2005), and simultaneous distillation extraction are some of the conventional methods that were employed by the researchers. They required long extraction times, large amounts of solvents, and multiple steps. These methods also result in degradation of unstable volatiles such as alkene, ester, and some unsaturated VOCs. However, because of their simplicity, they are still extensively applied for the fragrance-and-aroma characterization. Another method for collection of microbial volatiles is purging and trapping. In studies of odor formation in moist cereal grain during granary storage, the volatiles were collected by the withdrawal of intergranular air through adsorbent cartridges (Abramson et al. 1980, 1983). Norrman (1977) developed a fast method to study volatile production by direct injection of a headspace sample into a gas chromatograph with a packed column.

However, currently the widely used method is headspace solid-phase microextraction method (HS-SPME) because it integrates the extraction, concentration, and introduction in one step thus resulting in reduced preparation time and simultaneously increasing sensitivity over other extractions (Tait et al. 2014). The HS-SPME procedure includes introduction of fused silica fiber coated with a polymeric organic material into the headspace above the sample. The volatile organic analytes are extracted and concentrated in the fiber coating and then transferred to the analytical instrument which is mostly gas chromatograph for thermal desorption and analysis. The technique has great importance in microbiological studies and food technology (Zhang and Pawliszyn 1993; Nilsson et al. 1995). The fiber chosen for extraction may have a marked effect on the detected VOC profile. Different fiber coatings are commercially available for SPME, like polydimethylsiloxane, carbowax-divinylbenzene (Jia et al. 2010), and polyacrylate (Buchholz et al. 1994) that have exclusively been applied to the analysis of phenols. Only for a few phenols comparative results are available, indicating higher sensitivity with the polyacrylate than with the polydimethylsiloxane fiber coating for these more polar compounds.

After extraction, analysis of samples is performed by coupled (GC) and mass spectrometry (MS) (Madrera et al. 2005). Other methods of volatile analysis include comprehensive two-dimensional gas chromatography (Welke et al. 2014), ion trap mass spectrometry (Noguerol et al. 2009), or time-of-flight mass spectrometry (Bordiga et al. 2014). Among innovative procedures, near-infrared (NIR) spectroscopy is becoming popular in the field of volatile studies as a rapid, accurate, simple to operate, as it requires no sample pretreatments prior to analysis (Buratti et al. 2011). Recently, Ye et al. (2016) have used this method in detecting volatiles in apple wines. Near-infrared region of the electromagnetic spectrum (700–2500 nm) provides more sophisticated structural information based on the variation behaviors of combinations of bonds (Bauer et al. 2008; Reid et al. 2006). Proton transfer reaction-mass

spectrometry (PTR-MS) is another method that can be used to measure the concentration volatile emission by ionizing organic molecules in the gas phase through their reaction with H_3O^+, forming mostly MH^+ molecules (where M is the neutral organic molecule), which can then be detected by a standard quadrupole/multiplier mass analyzer (Ezra et al. 2004).

11.5 MVOCs as Signals Mediating Intra- and Interspecies Communications

Recently, a new communication path, sense of smell has been well established in many organisms. This sense of smell or volatile-mediated communication played significant function in both above and belowground ecosystems. Living organisms use these volatile as ideal semiochemical for chemical conservations among intra- and interspecies. For example, vertebrates and invertebrates are capable to detect minute quantities of volatiles even over very long distances. The plants use volatiles to broadcast with their pollinators as well as with plants of the same species or other plants and microorganisms as well use these sweet scents for communication among microbes and plants so they can interact with each other (Heil and Walters 2009; Effmert et al. 2012).

11.5.1 MVOC in Bacterial–Plant Interactions

A number of bacteria preferentially live in the soil in close association with plant roots utilizing root exudates as their food source. These exudates are ordinarily rich in sugars, amino acid, organic acids, and other compounds, many of them promote plant growth. These bacteria are called as rhizobacteria, whereas the root environment they colonize is called the rhizosphere (Bhattacharyya and Jha 2012; Mendes et al. 2013). Some of these microbes get genetically modified to acquire traits like endophytic competence to be able to colonize the interior of the plant. For long, scientists have speculated that all rhizobacteria can be expected to be endophytic at least at one point in their entire life cycle (Sturz et al. 2000; Hardoim et al. 2008, 2012).

VOCs produced by rhizobacteria are involved in their interaction with plant pathogenic microbes and host plants and exhibit antimicrobial and plant growth regulating activities. The bacterial VOCs such as 2-heptanol, 2-pentanone, 2-pentadecanone, 2-undecanone, 2-tridecanone, 4-heptanone, and sodorifen produced by *Serratia odorifera* are able to interfere with plants. Forty-two soilborne bacterial strains were screened and evaluated for their volatile-mediated effect on 6-day-old seedlings of *Arabidopsis thaliana*. A total 36 volatile compounds of bacterial origin were selected, many of them exerting negative consequences on

plants growth while only three compound indole, 1-hexanol, and pentadecane stimulated plant growth. Cocultivation of *A. thaliana* with *S. odorifera* in divided Petri dishes, which only let volatiles to diffuse from one side of the plate to the other, resulted in dramatic growth inhibition of plants (Kai et al. 2010; Blom et al. 2011; Weise et al. 2014). Groenhagen et al. (2013) in their study compared the effect of volatiles produced by three *Burkholderia* strains isolated from clinical environment, pea rhizosphere, and maize roots. Exposure of *Arabidopsis thaliana* plants to these volatiles resulted in significant increase in biomass, as well as growth inhibition of *Rhizoctonia solani* and *Alternaria alternata*. Also, volatile profiles of these strains were found to be similar, and dimethyl disulfide was the most abundant compound and sulfur compounds, ketones, aromatic compounds were other significant components. This indicates that like their rhizospheric counterparts endophytic strains are also capable of producing the similar volatiles and this can be further explored in many other important species.

Application of dimethyl disulfide (DMDS) produced by a *Bacillus cereus* strain significantly protected tobacco and corn plants against gray mold *Botrytis cinerea* and southern corn leaf blight *Cochliobolus heterostrophus*, respectively. It also reduced the expression of *Nicotiana attenuata* sulfur assimilation genes, methionine biosynthesis, and recycling (Huang et al. 2012). Acetoin and 2,3-butanediol (2,3-BD) were frequently released from strains of *Bacillus subtilis* and *B. amyloliquefaciens* and were found to raise the total leaf surface area and induced systemic resistance (ISR) of *Arabidopsis thaliana* (Ryu et al. 2003; Rudrappa et al. 2010). The study of D'Alessandro et al. (2014) revealed that production of 2,3-BD by *E. aerogenes* rendered corn plants more resistant against the northern corn leaf blight fungus *Setosphaeria turcica*. A large number of volatile produced by lemon rhizobacteria is benzaldehyde, tridecanal, acetophenone, tetradecanal, and 6,10,14-trimethyl 2 pentadecanone have differential effects on *Arabidopsis* roots is correlated to the type and quantity of compounds produced by the bacteria (Gutierrez-Luna et al. 2010). Similarly, 3-exanone produced by *Burkholderia ambifaria* significantly enhanced *Arabidopsis* biomass, as did acetophenone and DMDS produced by lemon rhizobacteria and *Bacillus cereus*, respectively (Groenhagen et al. 2013).

11.5.2 MVOC in Bacterial–Bacterial Interactions

Very scanty information is available about the nature of volatiles in bacterial–bacterial communication, what is known till yet is briefly described here. The communication may be stimulatory and inhibitory depending upon the one species exerts an effect on other species. The stimulating effect of volatile compound produced by *Collimonas pratensis* and *Serratia plymuthica* observed on the growth of *Pseudomonas fluorescens*. The unique volatiles produced by the both bacterial strains were benzonitrile, methyl thiocyanate, S-methyl thioacetate, and DMDS. A blend of volatiles emitted by four bacteria namely, *Paenibacillus* sp., *Pedobacter*

sp., *Collimonas pratensis* and *Serratia plymuthica* did not affect *P. fluorescens* growth. Moreover, the specific volatiles produced by *C. pratensis* were methyl salicylate, methyl 2-methylbutanoate, methyl 3-methylbutanoate,2-methyl propanal, 3-methyl 2-pentanoene, 3-methyl 2-heptanone, 3-hexanone, 4-methyl 3-penten-2-one, ethenyl acetate, myrcene, and terpinene. Similarly, the specific volatiles produced by *S. plymuthica* were chlorobenzene, dimethylsulfone, ethyl butanoate, 2-pentadecanone, 2-octanone, 1H-pyrrole, and 5-dodecanone (Garbeva et al. 2014).

Many workers demonstrated the inhibitory effect of two *Pseudoalteromonas* strains on the growth of *Burkholderia cepacia* complex (Bcc) strains through the synthesis of Methyl-2,3,3,4-tetrahydroxytetrahydrofuran, indole and its derivatives, quinolones and (S)-3-hydroxytridecan-4-one volatile organic compound (Papaleo et al. 2013; Orlandini et al. 2014; Kanchiswamy et al. 2015). Similarly, Dandurishvili et al. (2011) examined that some strains of *P. fluorescens* and *S. plymuthica* inhibited the growth of *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* and *A. vitis* strains in vitro. The tomato treated with *S. plymuthica* produced DMDS that strongly suppressed *Agrobacterium* growth and might be involved in suppression of oncogenicity in plants.

11.5.3 MVOCs in Bacterial–Fungal Interactions

A number of rhizobacterial species such as *P. fluorescens*, *P. trivialis*, *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*, *S. rhizophila*, *Serratia plymuthica,* and *S. odorifera* are known to synthesize and emit complex blends of volatile organic compound that inhibit growth of many phytopathogenic as well as non-phytopathogenic fungi (Kai et al. 2010). Pyrrolnitrin (PRN) is a chlorinated phenylpyrrol antibiotic from *Burkholderia pyrrocinia*,*Pseudomonas* sp., *Enterobacter* sp., *Myxococcus* sp., and *Serratia* sp. (Garbeva et al. 2004). This compound has shown broad spectrum activity against a wide range of fungi belonging to the ascomycota, basidiomycota, and deuteromycota, including several economically important phytopathogens such as *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum*, *Botrytis cinerea*, *Rhizoctonia solani,* and *Verticillium dahliae*. The stem rot of *Euphorbia pulcherrima* is caused by *Rhizoctonia solani* and also suppressed by *B. cepacia* strain 5.5B mediated PRN (Hwang et al. 2002).

MVOCs emitted by *S. rhizophila* P69, *S. maltophilia* R3089, *S. plymuthica* 3Re4-18, *S. plymuthica* HRO-C48, *S. odorifera* 4Rx13, *P. trivialis* 3Re2-7, and *Bacillus subtilis* B2g had exerted a strong negative impact on the mycelial growth of soilborne phytopathogenic fungus *R. solani* (Kai et al. 2007). Also, the volatile O-anisaldehyde emitted by *Bacillus atrophaeus* CAB-1 exerts the highest inhibition on the mycelial growth of the fungal pathogen *Botrytis cinerea* (Zhang et al. 2013). Growth inhibition of phytopathogen is also dependent on the varying concentration of volatile produced by different microbes. The high concentration of volatile-mediated growth inhibition of *R. solani* and *Alternaria alternata* was observed with 2-undecanone, DMDS, dimethyl trisulfide, S-methyl

methanethiosulphonate, 4-octanone, and 1-phenylpropan-1-one produced by *Burkholderia ambifaria.* The mycelial growth of *Fusarium culmorum*, *F. oxysporum*, *Colletotrichm gloesporioides,* and *Sclerotum rolffsi* was significantly inhibited by fifteen *Burkholderia tropica* strains (Groenhagen et al. 2013).

11.6 Endophytic Microbial Volatiles as Promising Source of Next Generation Biofuel Production

Recently, a number of endophytic bacteria and fungi have been discovered that make hydrocarbons while utilizing cellulosic polymers found in plant-based agricultural wastes. The action of different hydrolytic enzymes converts the agricultural waste substrate into volatile compounds that are either identical to or are closely linked to those specific categories of molecules that are found in diesel such as mono-terpenoids, alkanes, cyclohexanes, cyclopentanes, and alkyl alcohols, ketones, benzenes, and polyaromatic hydrocarbons. For example, the *Phomopsis* sp. produces VOCs such as sabinene, pinene, 3-methyl-1-butanol, 1-propanol, 2-methyl and 2-propanone, and benzeneethanol that are being explored as the components for the next generation aircraft fuel (Grigoriev et al. 2011; Strobel et al. 2011). Similarly, *Ascocoryne sarcoides*, *Ascocoryne cylichium,* and *Ascocoryne solitaria* produced a broad range of volatiles including alkanes, alkenes, alcohols, ester, ketones, acids, benzene derivatives, terpenes, and esquiterpenes. Majority of these VOCs are similar to diesel because of their cyclic and branched structure (Rude and Schirmer 2009; Griffin et al. 2010; Mallette et al. 2014).

An endophyte, *Nodulisporium* sp. was isolated from *Myroxylon balsamum* produced VOCs with fuel potential. Under microaerophilic growth environments, the organism produced 1,8-cineole, propylcyclohexane, acetone, 2-pentanone, 3-hexanone, 4-methyl and 5-hepten, 2-one, 4-methyl, 3-hexanone, -methyl-1-butanol, 1,4-cyclohexadiene, 2,4-dimethyl, 1-4 pentadiene and cyclohexene, 2-hexanone, 1-methyl-, 1-methyl-4-(1-methylethenyl)-, along with some alcohols and terpenoids of interest as potential fuels. In an aerated large fermentor, *Nodulisporium* sp produced a number of products such as 3-methyl-1-butanol, 2-methyl-1-propanol, 1-pentanol, 1-hexanol, 1-heptanol, 1-octanol, benzene derivatives, alkyl alcohols, ketones, esters, a few terpenoids, 1-nonanol along with phenylethyl alcohol as ingredient of diesel (Mends et al. 2012). The 1,8-cineole, 1-methyl-1,4-cyclohexadiene, and (+)-amethylene-a-fenchocamphorone also have the potential to be used as a fuel additive, produced by *Hypoxylon* sp. (CI-4A) (Tomsheck et al. 2010). In addition to alkanes and long-chain hydrocarbon, many fungal species produce other potential biofuel targets, such as ethylene, ethane, propane, and propylene (Ladygina et al. 2006).

However, little information is available about the bacterial volatiles as fuel potential as compared to traditional bioethanol and plant oil-derived biodiesel. The identified relevant volatile compounds include various short-to-medium chain alkanes, alkenes, alcohols, and isoprenoids, which hold large potential to substitute

or supplement petroleum-derived fuels. For example, undecene, butanol, and isopentanol are consistently observed in *Pseudomonas* sp. 1-Undecene is particularly fascinating due to its superior physical properties, which may receive a direct application as a fuel (Rui et al. 2014).

11.7 Potential of MVOCs for Applications in Agriculture

The list of VOC produced by many endophytic microorganisms and their effect on interacting organisms is summarized in Table 11.2. Several rhizobacterial species enhanced and regulate the growth of plants, impart resistance against abiotic and biotic stresses through volatile-mediated compounds and exhibit their potential in biocontrol. The *B. amyloliquefaciens*-borne volatile 2,3-butanediol mediates the growth promotion and ISR against *E. carotovora* in *A. thaliana* (Ryu et al. 2004; Farag et al. 2006;). Several strains of *Bacillus* isolated from rhizosphere of lemon plants facilitate the growth and root architecture of *A. thaliana* by VOC production (Gutierrez-Luna et al. 2010). It has been also shown that *Serratia plymuthica* and *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* borne volatile had negative consequences on the growth of model plant Arabidopsis thaliana (Wenke and Piechulla 2013). Sensor kinase GacS mediated synthesis of 2,3-butanediol in *P. chlororaphis* enhanced the growth of tobacco and also imparted drought tolerance in *A. thaliana*. Among three stereoisomers of 2,3-butanediol, only 2R,3R-butanediol was effective in plant growth promotion suggesting the presence of specific receptors for this isomer in plants (Han et al. 2006; Cho et al. 2008). Moreover, VOC produced by several genera such as *Burkholderia*, *Chromobacterium*, *Pseudomonas*, *Serratia*, and *Stenotrophomonas* may have negative consequences on the plant growth and health (Bailly and Weisskopf 2012).

Endophytic *Bacillus* and *Psuedomonas* strains are capable of species-specific production of six volatile compounds such as dimethyltrisulfide, n-decanal, nonanal, benzothiazole, cyclohexanol, and 2-ethyl-1-hexanol which completely inhibit mycelial growth and sclerotial germination of *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum* (Bitas et al. 2013). A more extensive survey involving 1,018 bacterial isolates showed that VOC from 328 isolates, which belong to families Alcaligenaceae, Bacillales, Micrococcaceae, Rhizobiaceae, and Xanthomonadaceae, inhibited spore germination and mycelial growth of two nematicidal fungi. Seven VOC including acetamide, benzaldehyde, benzothiazole, 1-butanamine, 1-decene, methanamine, and phenylacetaldehyde appear to play roles in fungistasis. Benzothiazole is the only VOC that was found in both surveys, suggesting that different species produce different VOC for fungistasis, antifungal activity of many compounds are target specific, or a combination of both (Zou et al. 2007).

VOC emitted from the fruiting body of *Pleurotus ostreatus* (oyster mushroom) such as 1-octanol, 3-octanol, 3-octanone, 1-octen-3-ol, benzoic acid, and benzaldehyde inhibited the growth of several bacterial species (Beltran-Garcia et al.

Table 11.2 List of endophytic bacterial and fungal VOCs and their effects on plants, bacteria, and fungi

Bacterial and fungal strains	Host plant	Identified volatile compound	Effective on	Effect on interacting organisms	References
Bacillus atrophaeus XW2	*Populus tremula*	Volatile mixture	Fungi and plants	Volatiles produced by XW2 inhibited hyphal growth of *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides* by 60.2% and were antagonistic against the germination of *C. gloeosporioides* spores	Huang et al. (2015)
Bacillus megaterium strain *BP17*	*Piper nigrum*	Pyrazine, 2-ethyl-3-methyl-; Pyrazine, 2,5-dimethyl-; Pyrazine, ethyl-; and Pyrazine, methyl	Fungi and plants	BmBP17 released antimicrobial volatiles against several pathogens, viz., *Phytophthora capsici, Pythium myriotylum, Athelia rolfsii, Gibberella moniliformis, Colletotrichum gloeosporioides, Rhizoctonia solani, Magnaporthe oryzae, Ralstonia solanacearum*, and *Xanthomonas axonopodis* pv. *Punicae*and which can be exploited for crop protection	Munjal et al. (2016)
Bacillus sp. B55	*Nicotiana attenuate*	Dimethyl disulphide (DMDS)	Plants	Growth promotion	Meldau et al. (2013)
Burkholderia ambifaria	*Zea mays*	Dimethyl di- and trisulfide, 4-octanone, S-methyl methanethiosulphonate, 1-phenylpropan-1-one, and 2-undecanone, while dimethyl trisulfide, 1-methylthio-3-pentanone, and o-aminoacetophenone	Plants	Biomass increase in the model plant *Arabidopsis thaliana* as well as growth inhibition of two phytopathogenic fungi (*Rhizoctonia solani* and *Alternaria alternata*)	Groenhagen et al. (2013)
Enterobacter aerogenes	*Zea mays*	2,3-butanediol	Fungi and plants	The production of 2,3-BD by *E. aerogenes* rendered maize plants more resistant against the Northern corn leaf blight fungus *Setosphaeria turcica*	D'Alessandro et al. (2014)

(continued)

Table 11.2 (continued)

Bacterial and fungal strains	Host plant	Identified volatile compound	Effective on	Effect on interacting organisms	References
Pseudomonas putida BP25	*Piper nigrum*	Heneicosane, Tetratetracontan, Pyrrolo [1,2-a] pyrazine-1,4-dione, hexahydro-3 (2methylpropyl), Tetracosyl heptafluorobutyrate, 1-3-Eicosene(E)-1-Heneicosanol, Octadecyl trifluoroacetate, 1-Pentadecene, 1-Undecene, Disulfide dimethyl, Pyrazine, methyl-Pyrazine, 2,5-dimethyl Isoamyl alcohol, Pyrazine, Methyl, Dimethyl trisulfide	Fungi, plant parasitic nematode and plants	The bacterium inhibited broad range of pathogens such as *Phytophthora capsici, Pythium myriotylum, Giberella moniliformis, Rhizoctonia solani, Athelia rolfsii, Colletotrichum gloeosporioides and plant parasitic nematode, Radopholus similis* by its antimicrobial volatile substances that can be exploited in crop protection	Sheoran et al. (2015)
Pseudomonas sp. strain P2	*Olea europaea*	Dimethyl disulfide and dimethyl trisulfide	Fungi and plants	VOCs-producing P2 strain could be a promising agent in the protection of tuber crops against fungal diseases	Elkahoui et al. (2015)
Psedomonas fluorescens strain ALEB 7B	*Atractylodes lancea*	Dimethyl disulphide (DMDS), 2-Piperidinone	Fungus	Antagonizing *Athelia rolfsii*	Zhou et al. (2014)
Ascocoryne sarcoides NRRL 50072 (earlier it was known as *Gliocladium roseum*)	*Eucryphia cordifolia*	Pentyl, hexyl, heptyl, octyl, sec-octyl and decyl alcohols, undecane, 2,6-dimethyl, decane, 3,3,5-trimethyl, cyclohexene, 4-methyl, decane, 3,3,6-trimethyl, and undecane, 4,4-dimethyl	–	–	Griffin et al. (2010)
Botrytis sp. BTF21	*Musa* spp.	Butane 2-methyl, β-butyrolactone, 2-butenedinitrile	Fungi	Inhibit the growth of the pathogenic *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *cubense* race 4 (FocR4) via production of volatile	Ting et al. (2011)

(continued)

Table 11.2 (continued)

Bacterial and fungal strains	Host plant	Identified volatile compound	Effective on	Effect on interacting organisms	References
Hypoxylon sp.	*Persea indica*	1,8-cineole, 1-methyl-1,4-Cyclohexadiene, (+)-α methylene α-fenchocamphoron	Fungi and plants	*Hypoxylon* sp. displayed maximal VOC-antimicrobial activity against *Botrytis cinerea, Phytophthora cinnamomi, Cercospora beticola*, and *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum* suggesting that the VOCs may play some role in the biology of the fungus and its survival in its host plant	Tomsheck et al. (2010)
Muscodor vitigenus, M. equiseti and *M. heveae* sp. nov.	*Hevea Brasiliensis*	3-methylbutan-1-ol, 3-methylbutyl acetate and azulene and many other volatile compounds	Fungi and plants	The VOCs produced by the *Muscodor* strains have the potential for biological control of bacteria, yeast and filamentous fungi. The VOCs of *M. heveae* were active against the pathogenic fungi *Phellinus noxius and Rigidoporus microporus* that cause root disease in the rubber tree	Siri-udom et al. (2016)
Muscodor albus	*Cinnamomum zeylanicum*	Isoamyl acetate, 2-Methyl butanol, isobutyric acid	Fungi and bacteria	Collectively they acted synergistically to kill a broad range of plant- and human-pathogenic fungi and bacteria also volatile mixture were effectively used to control postharvest plant diseases	Mercier and Jimenez (2004), Strobel et al. (2011)

(continued)

Table 11.2 (continued)

Bacterial and fungal strains	Host plant	Identified volatile compound	Effective on	Effect on interacting organisms	References
Muscodor crispans	*Ananas ananassoides*	Mixture of volatile compounds	Fungi and bacteria	Effective against a wide range of plant pathogens, including the fungi *Pythium ultimum*, *Phytophthora cinnamomi*, *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum*, and *Mycosphaerella fijiensis* (the black sigatoka pathogen of bananas), and the serious bacterial pathogen of citrus, *Xanthomonas axonopodis* pv. *citri*. In addition, the VOCs of *M. crispans* killed several human pathogens, including *Yersinia pestis*, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, and *Staphylococcus aureus*	Mitchell et al. (2010)
Muscodor kashayum sp. nov.	*Aegle marmelos*	3-cyclohexen-1-ol,1-(1,5-dimethyl-4-hexenyl)-4-methyl, 1,6 dioxacyclododecane-7,12-dione, 2,6-bis(1,1-dimethylethyl)-4-(1-oxopropyl) phenol, 2,4-di-tert-butylthiophenol and 4-octadecylmorpholine	Fungi and bacteria	Growth of 75% of test fungi/yeasts and 72% of the test bacteria were completely inhibited by VOC produced by *Muscodor kashayum* sp. nov.	Meshram, et al. (2013)
Muscodor sutura	*Prestonia trifidi*	Thujopsene, chamigrene, isocaryophyllene, and butanoic acid	Fungi	Volatile compounds in the mixture possess wide spectrum antifungal activity and no observable antibacterial activity	Kudalkar et al. (2012)
Muscodor tigerii sp. nov.	*Cinnamomum camphora*	4-Octadecylmorpholine, 1-Tetradecanamine, N,N-dimethyl and 1,2-Benzenedicarboxylic acid, mono(2-ethylhexyl) ester	Fungi and bacteria	The in vitro VOC stress assay completely suppressed the growth of *Alternaria alternata* and *Cercospora beticola* while the growth of other fungal species was inhibited in a	Saxena et al. (2015)

(continued)

Table 11.2 (continued)

Bacterial and fungal strains	Host plant	Identified volatile compound	Effective on	Effect on interacting organisms	References
				range of 10–70%. The growth of *Candida albicans* in the presence of VOC was reduced by 50–65% while in bacteria 50–80% reduction in growth was observed. Thus, *M. tigerii* stands as a potential candidate to be further developed into a biocontrol agent	
Myrothecium inunduatum	*Acalypha indica*	3-octanone, 3-octanol, and 7-octen-4-ol, terpenes, organic acids, ketones, and alcohols	Fungi	VOC showed inhibitory activity against a number of plant pathogenic fungi including *Pythium ultimum* and *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum*	Banerjee et al. (2010)
Nigrograna mackinnonii E5202H	*Guazuma ulmifolia*	Terpenes and main component of the polyenes such as (3E,5E,7E)-nona-1,3,5,7-tetraene (NTE)	–	–	Shaw et al. (2015)
Phialocephala fortinii	*Pinus sylvestris*	β-caryophyllene, ethanol, acet-aldehyde, toluene	–	–	Back et al. (2010)
Phoma sp.	*Larrea tridentate*	Unique mixture of VOCs, including a series of sesquiterpenoids, some alcohols, and several reduced naphthalene derivatives	Fungi	The volatiles of *Phoma* sp. possess antifungal and fuel properties	Strobel et al. (2011)
Phomopsis sp.	*Odontoglossum* sp.	Sabinene, isoamylalcohol, 2-methyl propanol, 2-propanone	Fungi	Possess antifungal properties against a wide range of plant pathogenic fungi including: *Pythium, Phytophthora, Sclerotinia, Rhizoctonia, Fusarium, Botrytis, Verticillium,* and *Colletotrichum*	Singh et al. (2011)

(continued)

Table 11.2 (continued)

Bacterial and fungal strains	Host plant	Identified volatile compound	Effective on	Effect on interacting organisms	References
Trichoderma gamsii YIM PH30019	*Panax notoginseng*	Dimethyl disulfide, dibenzofuran, methanethiol, ketones	Fungi and plants	*T. gamsii* YIM PH30019 displayed antagonistic activities against the pathogenic fungi (*Fusarium solani, Fusarium oxysporum, Phoma herbarum, and Rhizoctonia solani*) of *Panax notoginseng* via production of VOCs	Chen et al. (2015a)
Trichoderma koningiopsis YIM PH30002	*Panax notoginseng*	Alkanes, monoterpenes and arenes, heterocycles, and aldehydes	Fungi and plants	*Trichoderma koningiopsis* YIM PH30002 exhibited significant inhibition of the growth of four host root-rot phytopathogens, *Phoma herbarum, Fusarium flocciferum, Scytalidium lignicola*, and *Epicoccum nigrum* by producing volatile organic compounds	Chen et al. (2015b)
Quambalaria cyanescens strain IMI298177	*Ipomoea carnea*	Volatile mixture	Fungi	The sesquiterpenoid (+) globulol with antimycotic property has been reported from *Q. cyanescens*	Padhi and Tayung (2013)

1997). Certain endophytes produce antimicrobial VOC which may directly contribute to defense against pathogens. *Muscodor albus*, a fungal endophyte originally isolated from cinnamon tree, emits a blend of VOC that inhibits or kills a broad range of bacteria, fungi, and oomycetes (Strobel et al. 2001). The GC-MS analysis of its VOC revealed that many of the identified compounds such as 1-butanol and 3-methyl-acetate have antimicrobial activity (Strobel 2006; Porras-Alfaro et al. 2011).

Some biocontrol fungi appear to employ VOC to control pathogenic fungi (Hynes et al. 2007). For instance, many strains of *Trichoderma* have been proven to effectively prioritize a wide range of soilborne fungal pathogens by employing mechanisms such as mycoparasitism, nutrient competition, and secretion of inhibitory compounds and hydrolytic enzymes (Lorito et al. 2010; Harman 2011). *Trichoderma viride* and *T. aureoviride* emitted VOC that inhibit the growth and protein production of *Serpula lacrymans*, a wood-rotting basidiomycete. However, *T. pseudokoningii* had no effect on any of the *Serpula* isolates tested, suggesting the species-specific nature of antifungal VOC production (Humphris et al. 2002). Also, VOC produced by *Trichoderma* spp. are useful in growth inhibition of *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *ciceris*, a soilborne fungal pathogen that causes chickpea wilt (Dubey et al. 2007). *F. oxysporum* strain MSA35, which enhanced lettuce growth via VOC also inhibits the growth of pathogenic strains of *F. oxysporum* (Minerdi et al. 2011).

11.8 Conclusion

Volatiles are only a minor proportion of the entire number of metabolites produced by existing organisms. Nevertheless, because of their unique attributes they are predestined to act as infochemicals in intra- and interspecies communications in the atmosphere as well as in soil. Among microbes, endophytic filamentous fungi are an excellent platform for exploiting biosynthetic routes to hydrocarbon biofuels or biofuel precursors. In recent years, bacterial and fungal production of volatiles has emerged as a novel process by which these endophytes modulate plant growth and induce resistance against abiotic and biotic stresses. Exposure to the volatiles produced by microbes has been shown to lead to up to fivefold increased plant biomass or to plant death.

References

Abramson D, Sinha RN, Mills JT (1980) Mycotoxin and odor formation in moist cereal grain during granary storage. Cereal Chem 57:346–351

Abramson D, Sinha RN, Mills JT (1983) Mycotoxin and odor formation in barley stored at 16 and 20% moisture in Manitoba. Cereal Chem 60:350–355

Back J, Aaltonen H, Hellen H, Kajos MK, Patokoski J, Taipale R, Pumpanen J, Heinonsalo J (2010) Variable emissions of microbial volatile organic compounds (MVOCs) from root-associated fungi isolated from Scots pine. Atmos Environ 44(30):3651–3659

Bailly A, Weisskopf L (2012) The modulating effect of bacterial volatiles on plant growth: current knowledge and future challenges. Plant Signal Behav 7(1):79–85

Banerjee D, Strobel GA, Booth E, Geary B, Sears J, Spakowicz D, Busse S (2010) An endophytic *Myrothecium inundatum* producing volatile organic compounds. Mycosphere 1(3):229–240

Bauer R, Nieuwoudt H, Bauer FF, Kossmann J, Koch KR, Esbensen KH (2008) FTIR spectroscopy for grape and wine analysis. Analytical Chem 80(5):1371–1379

Beltran-Garcia MJ, Estarron-Espinosa M, Ogura T (1997) Volatile compounds secreted by the oyster mushroom (*Pleurotus ostreatus*) and their antibacterial activities. J Agric Food Chem 45 (10):4049–4052

Bhattacharyya PN, Jha DK (2012) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR): emergence in agriculture. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 28(4):1327–1350

Bitas V, Kim HS, Bennett JW, Kang S (2013) Sniffing on microbes: diverse roles of microbial volatile organic compounds in plant health. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 26(8):835–843

Blom D, Fabbri C, Connor EC, Schiestl FP, Klauser DR, Boller T, Eberl L, Weisskopf L (2011) Production of plant growth modulating volatiles is widespread among rhizosphere bacteria and strongly depends on culture conditions. Environ Microbiol 13(11):3047–3058

Bordiga M, Piana G, Coisson JD, Travaglia F, Arlorio M (2014) Headspace solid-phase micro extraction coupled to comprehensive two-dimensional with time-of-flight mass spectrometry applied to the evaluation of Nebbiolo-based wine volatile aroma during ageing. Int J Food Sci Tech 49(3):787–796

Buchholz KD, Pawliszyn J (1994) Optimization of solid-phase microextraction conditions for determination of phenols. Anal Chem 66:160–167

Buratti S, Ballabio D, Giovanelli G, Dominguez CZ, Moles A, Benedetti S, Sinelli N (2011) Monitoring of alcoholic fermentation using near infrared and mid infrared spectroscopies combined with electronic nose and electronic tongue. Analytica chim acta 697(1):67–74

Chen JL, Liu K, Miao CP, Sun S Z, Chen YW, Xu LH, Guan HL, Zhao LX (2015a) Salt tolerance of endophytic *Trichoderma koningiopsis* YIM PH30002 and its volatile organic compounds (VOCs) allelopathic activity against phytopathogens associated with *Panax notoginseng*. Ann Microbiol 1–10

Chen JL, Sun SZ, Miao CP, Wu K, Chen YW, Xu LH, Guan HL, Zhao LX (2015b) Endophytic *Trichoderma gamsii* YIM PH30019: a promising biocontrol agent with hyperosmolar, mycoparasitism, and antagonistic activities of induced volatile organic compounds on root-rot pathogenic fungi of *Panax notoginseng*. J Ginseng Res. doi:10.1016/j.jgr.2015.09.006

Cho SM, Kang BR, Han SH, Anderson AJ, Park JY, Lee YH, Cho BH, Yang KY, Ryu CM, Kim YC (2008) 2R,3R-butanediol, a bacterial volatile produced by *Pseudomonas chlororaphis* O6, is involved in induction of systemic tolerance to drought in *Arabidopsis thaliana*. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 21(8):1067–1075

Coombs JT, Franco CMM (2003) Visualization of an endophytic *Streptomyces* species in wheat seed. Appl Environ Microbiol l69:4260–4262

D'Alessandro MARCO, Erb M, Ton J, Brandenburg A, Karlen D, Zopfi J, Turlings TC (2014) Volatiles produced by soil-borne endophytic bacteria increase plant pathogen resistance and affect tritrophic interactions. Plant Cell Environ 37(4):813–826

Dandurishvili N, Toklikishvili N, Ovadis M, Eliashvili P, Giorgobiani N, Keshelava R, Tediashvili M, Vainstein A, Khmel I, Szegedi E, Chernin L (2011) Broad-range antagonistic rhizobacteria Pseudomonas fluorescens and Serratia plymuthica suppress Agrobacterium crown gall tumours on tomato plants. J Appl Microbiol 110(1):341–352

De Bary HA (1984) Vergleichende morphologie und biologie der pilze mycetozoen und bacterien. Verlag von Wilhelm Engelmann, Leipzig

Dubey SC, Suresh M, Singh B (2007) Evaluation of *Trichoderma* species against *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *ciceris* for integrated management of chickpea wilt. Biol Control 40(1):118–127

Dunkel M, Schmidt U, Struck S, Berger L, Gruening B, Hossbach J, Jaeger IS, Effmert U, Piechulla B, Eriksson R, Knudsen J, Preissner R (2009) Super scent-a database of flavors and scents. Nucleic Acids Res 37(suppl 1):291–294

Effmert U, Kalderas J, Warnke R, Piechulla B (2012) Volatile mediated interactions between bacteria and fungi in the soil. J Chem Ecol 38(6):665–703

Elkahoui S, Djebali N, Yaich N, Azaiez S, Hammami M, Essid R, Limam F (2015) Antifungal activity of volatile compounds-producing *Pseudomonas* P2 strain against *Rhizoctonia solani*. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 31(1):175–185

Ezra D, Jasper J, Rogers T, Knighton B, Grimsrud E, Strobel G (2004) Proton transfer reaction-mass spectrometry as a technique to measure volatile emissions of *Muscodor albus*. Plant Sci 166(6):1471–1477

Farag MA, Ryu CM, Sumner LW, Pare PW (2006) GC–MS SPME profiling of rhizobacterial volatiles reveals prospective inducers of growth promotion and induced systemic resistance in plants. Phytochemistry 67(20):2262–2268

Garbeva P, Voesenek K, Van Elsas JD (2004) Quantitative detection and diversity of the pyrrolnitrin biosynthetic locus in soil under different treatments. Soil Biol Biochem 36 (9):1453–1463

Garbeva P, Hordijk C, Gerards S, de Boer W (2014) Volatile-mediated interactions between phylogenetically different soil bacteria. Front Microbiol 5:289

Griffin MA, Spakowicz DJ, Gianoulis TA, Strobel SA (2010) Volatile organic compound production by organisms in the genus *Ascocoryne* and a re-evaluation of myco-diesel production by NRRL 50072. Microbiol 156(12):3814–3829

Grigoriev IV, Cullen D, Hibbett D, Goodwin SB, Jeffries TW, Kuske C, Magnuson J, Spatafora J (2011) Fueling the future with fungal genomics. Mycology 2(3):192–209

Groenhagen U, Baumgartner R, Bailly A, Gardiner A, Eberl L, Schulz S, Weisskopf L (2013) Production of bioactive volatiles by different *Burkholderia ambifaria* strains. J Chem Ecol 39 (7):892–906

Gutierrez-Luna FM, Lopez-Bucio J, Altamirano-Hernandez J, Valencia-Cantero E, de la Cruz HR, Macias-Rodriguez L (2010) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria modulate root-system architecture in Arabidopsis thaliana through volatile organic compound emission. Symbiosis 51(1):75–83

Hallmann J, Quadt-Hallmann A, Mahaffee WF, Kloepper JW (1997) Bacterial endophytes in agricultural crops. Can J Microbiol 43:895–914

Han SH, Lee SJ, Moon JH, Park KH, Yang KY, Cho BH, Kim KY, Kim YW, Lee MC, Anderson AJ Kim YC (2006) GacS-dependent production of 2R,3R-butanediol by *Pseudomonas chlororaphis* O6 is a major determinant for eliciting systemic resistance against *Erwinia carotovora* but not against *Pseudomonas syringae* pv. tabaci in tobacco. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 19(8):924–930

Hardoim PR, van Overbeek LS, van Elsas JD (2008) Properties of bacterial endophytes and their proposed role in plant growth. Trends Microbiol 16(10):463–471

Hardoim P, Nissinen R, van Elsas JD (2012) Ecology of bacterial endophytes in sustainable agriculture. In: Maheshwari DK (ed) Bacteria in agrobiology: plant probiotics. Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg, pp 97–126

Harman GE (2011) Multifunctional fungal plant symbionts: new tools to enhance plant growth and productivity. New Phytol 189(3):647–649

Hawksworth DL (2001) The magnitude of fungal diversity: the 1.5 million species estimate revisited. Mycol Res 105(12):1422–1432

Heil M, Walters DR (2009) Ecological consequences of plant defence signalling. Adv Bot Res 51:667–716

Huang CJ, Tsay JF, Chang SY, Yang HP, Wu WS, Chen CY (2012) Dimethyl disulfide is an induced systemic resistance elicitor produced by *Bacillus cereus* C1L. Pest Manag Sci 68 (9):1306–1310

Huang H, Wu Z, Tian C, Liang Y, You C, Chen L (2015) Identification and characterization of the endophytic bacterium *Bacillus atrophaeus* XW2, antagonistic towards *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides*. Ann Microbiol 65(3):1361–1371

Humphris SN, Bruce A, Buultjens E, Wheatley RE (2002) The effects of volatile microbial secondary metabolites on protein synthesis in *Serpula lacrymans*. FEMS Microbiol 210(2):215–219

Hwang J, Chilton WS, Benson DM (2002) Pyrrolnitrin production by *Burkholderia cepacia* and biocontrol of Rhizoctonia stem rot of poinsettia. Biol Control 25(1):56–63

Hynes J, Muller CT, Jones TH, Boddy L (2007) Changes in volatile production during the course of fungal mycelial interactions between *Hypholoma fasciculare* and *Resinicium bicolor*. J Chem Ecol 33(1):43–57

Jia B, Sohnlein B, Mortelmans K, Coggiola M, Oser H (2010) Distinguishing between Methicillin resistant and sensitive *Staphylococcus aureus* using volatile headspace metabolites. IEEE Sensors J 10:71–75

Kai M, Effmert U, Berg G, Piechulla B (2007) Volatiles of bacterial antagonists inhibit mycelial growth of the plant pathogen *Rhizoctonia solani*. Arch Microbiol 187(5):351–360

Kai M, Crespo E, Cristescu SM, Harren FJ, Francke W, Piechulla B (2010) *Serratia odorifera*: analysis of volatile emission and biological impact of volatile compounds on *Arabidopsis thaliana*. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 88(4):965–976

Kaminski E, Libbey LM, Stawicki S, Wasowicz E (1972) Identification of the predominant volatile compounds produced by *Aspergillus flaws*. Appl Microbial 24:721–726

Kanchiswamy CN, Malnoy M, Maffei ME (2015) Chemical diversity of microbial volatiles and their potential for plant growth and productivity. Front Plant Sci 6

Kim KS, Lee S, Ryu CM (2013) Interspecific bacterial sensing through airborne signals modulates locomotion and drug resistance. Nature communications 4:1809

Kudalkar P, Strobel G, Riyaz-Ul-Hassan S, Geary B, Sears J (2012) *Muscodor sutura*, a novel endophytic fungus with volatile antibiotic activities. Mycoscience 53(4):319–325

Ladygina N, Dedyukhina EG, Vainshtein MB (2006) A review on microbial synthesis of hydrocarbons. Process Biochem 41(5):1001–1014

Lemfack MC, Nickel J, Dunkel M, Preissner R, Piechulla B (2014) mVOC: a database of microbial volatiles. Nucleic Acids Res 42(1):744–748

Lorito M, Woo SL, Harman GE, Monte E (2010) Translational research on *Trichoderma*: from 'omics to the field. Annu Rev Phytopathol 48:395–417

Madrera RR, Garcia NP, Hevia AG (1069) Valles BS (2005) Application of purge and trap extraction and gas chromatography for determination of minor esters in cider. J Chromatogr A 2:245–251

Mallette N, Pankratz EM, Parker AE, Strobel GA, Busse SC, Carlson RP, Peyton BM (2014) Evaluation of cellulose as a substrate for hydrocarbon fuel production by *Ascocoryne sarcoides* (NRRL 50072). J Sustain Bioenergy Syst 4:33–49

Meldau DG, Meldau S, Hoang LH, Underberg S, Wunsche H, Baldwin IT (2013) Dimethyl disulfide produced by the naturally associated bacterium *Bacillus* sp B55 promotes *Nicotiana attenuata* growth by enhancing sulfur nutrition. Plant Cell 25(7):2731–2747

Mends MT, Yu E, Strobel GA, Riyaz-Ul-Hassan S, Booth E, Geary B, Sears J, Taatjes CA, Hadi MZ (2012) An endophytic *Nodulisporium* sp. producing volatile organic compounds having bioactivity and fuel potential. J Phylogenetics Evol Biol 3:117

Mendes R, Garbeva P, Raaijmakers JM (2013) The rhizosphere microbiome: significance of plant beneficial, plant pathogenic, and human pathogenic microorganisms. FEMS Microbiol Rev 37 (5):634–663

Mercier J, Jimenez JI (2004) Control of fungal decay of apples and peaches by the biofumigant fungus *Muscodor albus*. Postharvest Biol Tec 31(1):1–8

Meshram V, Kapoor N, Saxena S (2013) *Muscodor kashayum* sp. nov.—a new volatile anti-microbial producing endophytic fungus. Mycology 4(4):196–204

Minerdi D, Bossi S, Maffei ME, Gullino ML, Garibaldi A (2011) *Fusarium oxysporum* and its bacterial consortium promote lettuce growth and expansin A5 gene expression through microbial volatile organic compound (MVOC) emission. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 76(2):342–351

Mitchell AM, Strobel GA, Moore E, Robison R, Sears J (2010) Volatile antimicrobials from *Muscodor crispans*, a novel endophytic fungus. Microbiol 156(1):270–277

Mora C, Tittensor DP, Adl S, Simpson AG, Worm B (2011) How many species are there on earth and in the ocean? PLoS Biol 9(8):e1001127

Munjal V, Nadakkakath AV, Sheoran N, Kundu A, Venugopal V, Subaharan K, Rajamma S, Eapen SJ, Kumar A (2016) Genotyping and identification of broad spectrum antimicrobial volatiles in black pepper root endophytic biocontrol agent, *Bacillus megaterium* BP17. Biol Control 92:66–76

Nilsson T, Pelusio F, Montanarella L, Tiho R, Larsen BR, Facchetti S, Madsen JO (1995) An evaluation of solid-phase microextraction for analysis of volatile organic compounds in drinking water. J High Res Chrom 18(10):617–624

Noguerol-Pato R, Gonzalez-Barreiro C, Cancho-Grande B, Simal-Gandara J (2009) Quantitative determination and characterisation of the main odourants of Mencia monovarietal red wines. Food Chem 117(3):473–484

Norrman J (1977) Direct analysis of volatile organic compounds produced by fungi. Acta Path Microbial Stand Sect B Suppl 259:25–28

Orlandini V, Maida I, Fondi M, Perrin E, Papaleo MC, Bosi E, de Pascale D, Tutino ML, Michaud L, Lo Giudice A, Fani R (2014) Genomic analysis of three sponge-associated Arthrobacter Antarctic strains, inhibiting the growth of *Burkholderia cepacia* complex bacteria by synthesizing volatile organic compounds. Microbiol Res 169(7):593–601

Padhi S, Tayung K (2013) Antimicrobial activity and molecular characterization of an endophytic fungus, *Quambalaria* sp. isolated from Ipomoea carnea. Ann Microbiol 63(2):793–800

Papaleo MC, Romoli R, Bartolucci G, Maida I, Perrin E, Fondi M, Orlandini V, Mengoni A, Emiliani G, Tutino ML, Parrilli E, de Pascale D, Michaud L, Giudice AL, Fani R (2013) Bioactive volatile organic compounds from Antarctic (sponges) bacteria. New Biotechnol 30 (6):824–838

Penuelas J, Asensio D, Tholl D, Wenke K, Rosenkranz M, Piechulla B, Schnitzler JP (2014) Biogenic volatile emissions from the soil. Plant, Cell Environ 37(8):1866–1891

Porras-Alfaro A, Bayman P (2011) Hidden fungi, emergent properties: endophytes and microbiomes. Annu Rev Phytopathol 49(1):291–315

Reid LM, O'Donnell CP, Downey G (2006) Recent technological advances for the determination of food authenticity. Trends Food SciTech 17(7):344–353

Rude MA, Schirmer A (2009) New microbial fuels: a biotech perspective. Curr Opin Microbiol 12 (3):274–281

Rudrappa T, Biedrzycki ML, Kunjeti SG, Donofrio NM, Czymmek KJ, Paul WP, Bais HP (2010) The rhizobacterial elicitor acetoin induces systemic resistance in *Arabidopsis thaliana*. Commun Integr Biol 3(2):130–138

Rui Z, Li X, Zhu X, Liu J, Domigan B, Barr I, Cate JH, Zhang W (2014) Microbial biosynthesis of medium-chain 1-alkenes by a nonheme iron oxidase. Proc Natl Acad Sci 111(51):18237–18242

Ryu CM, Farag MA, Hu CH, Reddy MS, Wei HX, Pare PW, Kloepper JW (2003) Bacterial volatiles promote growth in *Arabidopsis*. Proc Natl Acad Sci 100(8):4927–4932

Ryu CM, Farag MA, Hu CH, Reddy MS, Kloepper JW, Pare PW (2004) Bacterial volatiles induce systemic resistance in *Arabidopsis*. Plant Physiol 134(3):1017–1026

Saxena S, Meshram V, Kapoor N (2015) *Muscodor tigerii* sp. nov. volatile antibiotic producing endophytic fungus from the North eastern Himalayas. Ann Microbiol 65(1):47–57

Schloss PD, Handelsman J (2004) Status of the microbial census. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 68 (4):686–691

Shaw JJ, Spakowicz DJ, Dalal RS, Davis JH, Lehr NA, Dunican BF, Orellana EA, Narvaez-Trujillo A, Strobel SA (2015) Biosynthesis and genomic analysis of medium-chain hydrocarbon production by the endophytic fungal isolate *Nigrograna mackinnonii* E5202H. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 99(8):3715–3728

Sheoran N, Nadakkakath AV, Munjal V, Kundu A, Subaharan K, Venugopal V, Rajamma S, Eapen SJ, Kumar A (2015) Genetic analysis of plant endophytic *Pseudomonas putida* BP25 and chemo-profiling of its antimicrobial volatile organic compounds. Microbiol Res 173:66–78

Singh SK, Strobel GA, Knighton B, Geary B, Sears J, Ezra D (2011) An endophytic *Phomopsis* sp. possessing bioactivity and fuel potential with its volatile organic compounds. Microbiol Ecol 61(4):729–739

Siri-udom S, Suwannarach N, Lumyong S (2016) Existence of *Muscodor vitigenus*, *M. equiseti* and *M. heveae* sp. nov. in leaves of the rubber tree (*Hevea brasiliensis* Mull. Arg.), and their biocontrol potential. Ann Microbiol 66(1):437–448

Strobel G (2006) Harnessing endophytes for industrial microbiology. Curr Opin Microbiol 9 (3):240–244

Strobel GA, Dirkse E, Sears J, Markworth C (2001) Volatile antimicrobials from *Muscodor albus*, a novel endophytic fungus. Microbiol 147(11):2943–2950

Strobel G, Singh SK, Riyaz-Ul-Hassan S, Mitchell AM, Geary B, Sears J (2011) An endophytic/pathogenic *Phoma* sp. from creosote bush producing biologically active volatile compounds having fuel potential. FEMS Microbiol Lett 320(2):87–94

Sturz AV, Christie BR, Nowak J (2000) Bacterial endophytes: potential role in developing sustainable systems of crop production. Crit Rev Plant Sci 19(1):1–30

Tait E, Perry JD, Stanforth SP, Dean JR (2014) Identification of volatile organic compounds produced by bacteria using HS-SPME-GC-MS. J Chromatogr Sci 52:363–373

Ting AS, Mah SW, Tee CS (2011) Detection of potential volatile inhibitory compounds produced by endobacteria with biocontrol properties towards Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. cubense race 4. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 27(2):229–235

Tomsheck AR, Strobel GA, Booth E, Geary B, Spakowicz D, Knighton B, Floerchinger C, Sears J, Liarzi O, Ezra, D (2010) *Hypoxylon* sp., an endophyte of *Persea indica*, producing 1,8-cineole and other bioactive volatiles with fuel potential. Microbiol Ecol 60(4):903–914

Tyc O, van den Berg M, Gerards S, van Veen JA, Raaijmakers JM, De Boer W, Garbeva P (2014) Impact of interspecific interactions on antimicrobial activity among soil bacteria. Front Microbiol 5:567

Vanhaelen M, Vanhaelen-Fastre R, Geeraerts J (1978) Volatile constituents of *Trichothecium roseum*. Sabouraudia 16(2):141–150

Weise T, Thurmer A, Brady S, Kai M, Daniel R, Gottschalk G, Piechulla B (2014) VOC emission of various *Serratia* species and isolates and genome analysis of *Serratia plymuthica* 4Rx13. FEMS Microbiol Lett 352(1):45–53

Welke JE, Zanus M, Lazzarotto M, Zini CA (2014) Quantitative analysis of headspace volatile compounds using comprehensive two-dimensional gas chromatography and their contribution to the aroma of Chardonnay wine. Food Res Int 59:85–99

Wenke K, Piechulla B (2013) The effects of volatile metabolites from rhizobacteria on *Arabidopsis thaliana*. In: Maheshwari DK (ed) Bacteria in agrobiology: crop productivity. Springer, Berlin Heidelberg, pp 379–400

Wu J, Ee KH, Lee HK (2005) Automated dynamic liquid–liquid–liquid microextraction followed by high-performance liquid chromatography-ultraviolet detection for the determination of phenoxy acid herbicides in environmental waters. J Chromatogr A 2:121–127

Ye M, Gao Z, Li Z, Yuan Y, Yue T (2016) Rapid detection of volatile compounds in apple wines using FT-NIR spectroscopy. Food Chem 190:701–708

Zhang Z, Pawliszyn J (1993) Headspace solid-phase microextraction. Anal Chem 65(14):1843–1852

Zhang X, Li B, Wang Y, Guo Q, Lu X, Li S, Ma P (2013) Lipopeptides, a novel protein, and volatile compounds contribute to the antifungal activity of the biocontrol agent *Bacillus atrophaeus* CAB-1. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 97(21):9525–9534

Zhou JY, Zhao XY, Dai CC (2014) Antagonistic mechanisms of endophytic *Pseudomonas fluorescens* against *Athelia rolfsii*. J Appl Microbiol 117(4):1144–1158

Zou CS, Mo MH, Gu YQ, Zhou JP, Zhang KQ (2007) Possible contributions of volatile-producing bacteria to soil fungistasis. Soil Biol Biochem 39(9):2371–2379

Chapter 12
Potential of Lignin-Degrading Endophytic Fungi on Lignocellulosic Biorefineries

Úrsula Fillat, Raquel Martín-Sampedro, David Macaya-Sanz, Juan A. Martín, David Ibarra and María E. Eugenio

Abstract Renewable lignocellulosic biomass is considered as feedstocks to play a significant role in the future of biorefineries for the sustainable production of food, chemicals, materials, and biofuels. Lignin, the natural barrier that protects cellulose and hemicelluloses from microbial attack, represents an important limiting factor in these processes. Removal of lignin has a vast scope with central importance to be utilized as a source of carbohydrates in the manufacturing of cellulose-based chemicals including paper pulp and ethanol production. Enzymes produced by ligninolytic fungi acted as an alternative to develop competent and eco-friendly technologies to use biomass of lignin and cellulose. Among these microorganisms, the "white-rot" causing fungi that belong to basidiomycetes are potential contenders of efficient depolymerization and mineralization of lignin via secretion of low molecular mass oxidative enzymes. Recently, some endophytic fungi have been tested for ligninolytic enzymes and their possible biotechnological applications. This chapter highlights the recent progress that has been made in screening endophytic fungi for ligninolytic activities and their capacities for transforming lignocellulosic biomass into fermentable sugars and paper pulps in a biorefinery framework.

Ú. Fillat (✉) · R. Martín-Sampedro · D. Ibarra · M.E. Eugenio
Forestry Products Department, Cellulose and Paper Laboratories, INIA-CIFOR, 28040 Madrid, Spain
e-mail: fillat.ursula@inia.es

R. Martín-Sampedro
e-mail: martin.raquel@inia.es

D. Ibarra
e-mail: ibarra.david@inia.es

M.E. Eugenio
e-mail: mariaeugenia@inia.es

D. Macaya-Sanz · J.A. Martín
Department of Natural Systems and Resources, School of Forest Engineers, Technical University of Madrid, 28040 Madrid, Spain
e-mail: david.macaya.sanz@gmail.com

J.A. Martín
e-mail: juan.martin.garcia@upm.es

D.K. Maheshwari and K. Annapurna (eds.), *Endophytes: Crop Productivity and Protection*, Sustainable Development and Biodiversity 16,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-66544-3_12

Keywords Endophyte · Laccase · Biobleaching · Biopulping · Biorefinery Screening

12.1 Introduction

Wood is the main renewable material on Earth, and primarily composed of lignin, cellulose, and hemicellulose (Higuchi 1997). Lignin provides mechanical resistance to the plant. Lignin complex polymer with a three-dimensional structure consisting guaiacyl (G), p-hydroxyphenyl (H), syringyl (S), and phenylpropanoid as components. The unit of lignin is derived from the hydroxycinnamyl alcohols (p-coumaryl, coniferyl, and sinapyl alcohols), which gives rise to variants of C–C and ether bonds subunits (Martínez et al. 2009). Very few organisms are able to degrade lignin, due to its chemical complexity and recalcitrance (Martínez et al. 2005). Degradation of lignin becomes a central issue in biorefinery processes, such as in the production of ethanol and cellulose-based papers (Cañas and Camarero 2010). In the plant cell wall, lignin is intimately associated to carbohydrates (hemicellulose and celluloses) to prevent easy hydrolysis for bioethanol production. Thus, a step as pre-treatment (mainly physical or physico-chemical methods) is necessary for increasing fermentable sugars for hydrolysis step (Salvachúa et al. 2011; Kataaria et al. 2013; Ofori-Boateng and Lee 2013). Regarding paper pulp manufacture, the process basically consists in the separation (chemically or mechanically) of lignin from fibers. After that, residual lignin in pulps are removed by oxidative bleaching reactions, including totally chlorine-free (TCF) bleaching sequences (Fillat and Roncero 2010; Sixta 2006; Fillat and Roncero 2009b).

Biotechnological processes could provide efficient and eco-friendly biocatalysts for lignin modification or removal (Cañas and Camarero 2010). Bacteria and fungi are capable of competently depolymerizing and mineralizing lignin (Martínez et al. 2005; Kunamneni et al. 2007). Wood-decaying fungi can secrete extracellular enzymes related to lignin degradation, developing a complex system involving reductases, oxidases, peroxidases, mediators, low molecular weight compounds, etc. (Martínez et al. 2005). Laccases are the oxidoreductases most studied to be applied in biotechnological processes; these enzymes oxidize phenol and other compounds of aromatic nature (Cañas and Camarero 2010). Basidiomycota is recognized as the most relevant phylum secreting laccases. However, there are species within ascomycota, such as *Myceliophthora thermophila*, which also produce ligninolytic enzymes with high industrial interest due to thermal stabilities and activities at higher pH (Ibarra et al. 2006). In the industrial applications, the ability of ligninolytic fungi and their oxidoreductases enzymes (laccases and peroxidases) to alter or remove lignin are eco-friendly schemes for utilization of renewable lignocellulosic feedstocks. Various workers have observed that these fungi and their enzymes act for pre-treatment steps to enhance enzymatic hydrolysis of

lignocellulosic biomass (Moreno et al. 2015a; Castoldi et al. 2014; Kudanga and Le Roes-Hill 2014; Singh et al. 2014; Ghorbani et al. 2015; Moreno et al. 2013). In the same way, these biotechnological tools have been used as biological pre-treatment before pulping process improving fiber individualization or lignin removal, respectively (Bajpai et al. 2001). Moreover, laccases, mainly being used as a laccase-mediator system (LMS) to catalyze the development of efficient TCF biobleaching (Singh et al. 2015; Fillat and Roncero 2009a, 2010). Lignin degradation by fungi has been previously evaluated significant and necessary for long-term storage for the growth of desired saprophytic fungi which complicates industrial applications. Therefore, novel candidates of potential fungi become essential to find out to solve or ameliorate the hurdle of industrial implementation.

Various studies on wood-attacking fungi were based on advanced degradation stages. However, few fungal endophytes also served as potential wood-decomposers (Fukusawa et al. 2009). In nature, fungal endophytes are found living in symbiosis in asymptomatic photosynthetic tissues of all major lineages of land plants. These fungi represent an enormous fungal diversity and its geographical distribution, host range and ecological roles are yet unknown (Arnold et al. 2002; Martín et al. 2013). Some endophytic fungi remain in a dormant stage until the plant or its organs become dead and then trigger to grow to become primary colonizers (Promputtha et al. 2010a). Thus, these fungi advantageously compete on other saprophytes in early stages of decomposition (Fukusawa et al. 2009). A number of studies on fungal succession have been carried out to suggest that some of the early colonizers are fungal endophytes (Promputtha et al. 2010b), those bears complex enzymatic systems (Wang and Dai 2011; Sunitha et al. 2013), become able to degrade tissues of their host plant. On the other hand, other fungi such as vesicular and arbuscular mycorrhizal (VAM) interact with living plant roots modifying lignin biosynthesis in the plant and then altering their resistance to pest and pathogens (Bennett et al. 2014). Other studies focused on the environmental effect on the nonstatic interaction amid plant and endophyte (Faeth and Fagan 2002; Lehtonen et al. 2005). However, temporal and spatial distribution of endophytes in the bulky and ancient forest is still poorly understood.

The study of the wood-associated fungi in lignin degradation, as well as their oxidative enzymes, is necessary, as they could advance current bioconversion processes.

12.2 Lignin-Degrading Enzymes

In nature, basidiomycetes cause white-rot with a wide array of enzymes that are effective for lignin degradation (Wong 2009). Peroxidases and laccases are the major groups of ligninolytic enzymes (Fig. 12.1) (Alcalde 2015). Ligninolytic peroxidases are hemeperoxidases with high redox potential that can oxidize phenolic and nonphenolic units of lignin using hydrogen peroxide mediated hydrolysis as a co-substrate. Lignin peroxidases can directly oxidize the substrates, whereas

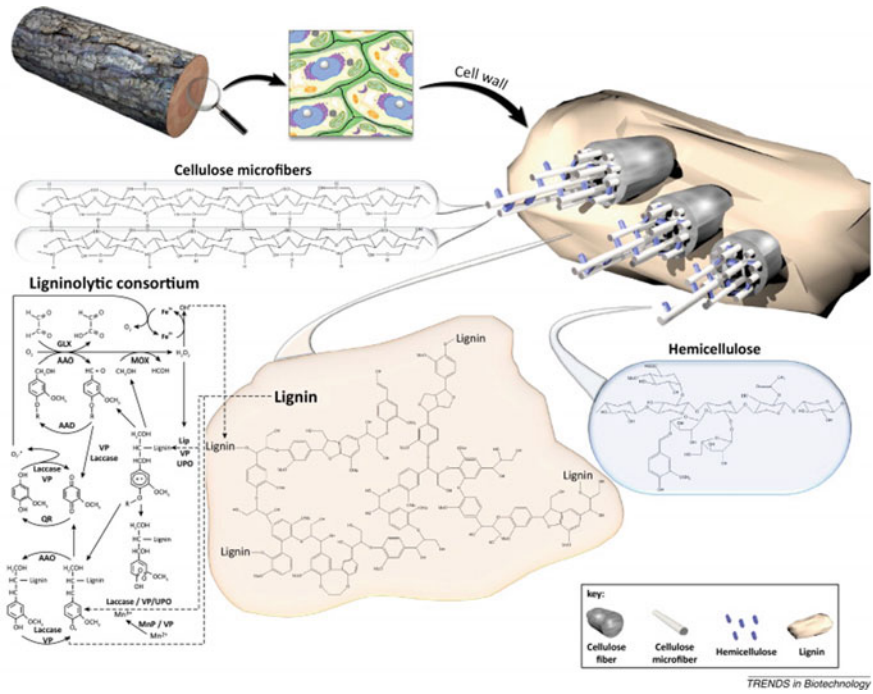


Fig. 12.1 Overview of the place of lignin in cellulosic biomass and the reactions catalyzed by lignoenzymes. Figure extracted from Alcalde (2015)

manganese peroxidases produce Mn^{3+} and act mainly on phenolic units; both were discovered in *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* (Martínez et al. 2005). *Pleurotus eryngii* produces versatile peroxidase that shows catalytic properties similar to lignin and manganese peroxidases (Ruiz Dueñas et al. 1999). On the other hand, oxidades, such as glyoxal and aryl-alcohol oxidases described in *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* and *P. eryngii*, respectively (Guillén et al. 1992), produce the hydrogen peroxide necessary for the catalytic action of the peroxidases (Kersten 1990), Finally, to avoid the repolymerization of the derived phenols produced during lignin oxidation, aryl-alcohol dehydrogenases and quinone reductases catalyze their reduction (Guillén et al. 1997).

Laccases oxidize several phenolic and nonphenolic substrates using four Cu^{+} ions on the active site. Type 1 copper acts as an electron acceptor from substituted phenols or amines and is liable for the development of blue color. While type 2 copper transfer electrons to the molecular oxygen which further reduces water molecule (Martínez et al. 2005). Laccases also generate radicals, and then nonenzymatic reactions were also produced, such as polymerization and hydrogen abstraction. Although they have been isolated from ascomycetes and deuteromycetes, lignin degradation studies have not been a focus as much on the basidiomycetes (Madhavi and Lele 2009). Most common laccase producers are

wood-rotting fungi from the genus *Trametes*, *Pleurotus, Pycnoporus, Coriolopsis,* and *Cerrena* (Morozova et al. 2007; Kunamneni et al. 2007; Madhavi and Lele 2009). Laccase activity has also been reported in bacteria including *Azospirillum lipoferum, Bacillus subtilis, Bordetella campestris, Caulobactercrescentus, Escherichia coli, Mycobacterium tuberculosum, Pseudomonas syringae, Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Yersinia pestis*, *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia, Streptomyces cyaneus,* and *Streptomyces ipomoea* (Diamantidisa et al. 2000; Chandra and Chowdharya 2015; Arias et al. 2003; Eugenio et al. 2011).

12.3 Ligninolytic Enzymes in Endophytic Fungi

Most endophytic fungi are ascomycetes, though other phyla are also represented. Literature about ligninolytic enzymes production by endophytes is limited and, in general, although few ascomycetes have shown the ability for lignin degradation largely being ignored as liable for the degradation of wood-biomass (Pointing 1999; Liers et al. 2006; Shary et al. 2007).

Most studies carried out to screen ligninolytic enzymes from fungi were culture-procurement based beside, culture-dependent (Levin et al. 2004; Järvinen et al. 2012). However, recently some microorganisms have been isolated from the decayed wood of forests in Zimbabwe (Tekere et al. 2001), Tunisia (Dhouib et al. 2005) and Spain (Barrasa et al. 2009; Fillat et al. 2016) have been reported. Solid media facilitate a fast selection of diverse fungi for enzymatic activity (Sunitha et al. 2013; Niku-Paavola et al. 1988). Different substrates as ABTS (2,2′-azinobis-(3-ethylbenzothiazoline-6-sulfonic acid)), naphthol and Poly R-478 have been assayed for the search of lignin-degrading enzymes in endophytes isolated from living plants (Table 12.1). A solid screening suggests that fungal endophytes possess enzymatic machinery, which could produce decay of wood under certain conditions (Oses et al. 2006). Ligninolytic activities in basidiomycetous fungi associated with woody trees, isolated from the Chilean tree species *Drymiswinteri* and *Prumnopitysandina,* were found using Poly R-478 (Oses et al. 2006). Only two endophytes, *Xylaria* sp. from Xylariaceae and *Curvularia brachyspora* from Pleosporaceae, were positive in naphthol from twelve different species isolated from four medicinal plants (*Adhatodav asica* Nees, *Costus igneus* N.E.Br. *Coleus aromaticus* Benth and *Lawsonia inermis* Linn) (Amirita et al. 2012b). Fifty fungal strains, isolated from medicinal plants (*Alpiniacalcarata, Bixaorellana, Calophyllum inophyllum,* and *Catharanthusroseus*) were selected for extracellular enzymes and thirty percent of the fungi screened showed naphthol oxidation from different families (Table 12.1) (Sunitha et al. 2013). Endophytic fungi community of *Acer truncatum* trees was investigated and seventeen from twenty isolates oxidized the substrate naphthol, as indicated in Table 12.1 (Sun et al. 2011).

A new screening study with an enormous amount of strains isolated from eucalyptus trees in Spain has recently been published (Fillat et al. 2016) (Fig. 12.2). In this study, strains of endophytic fungi isolated from *E. globulus* trees in different

Table 12.1 Endophytic fungi with potential for producing ligninolytic enzymes assayed in solid plates

Substrate	Accession family	Accession species	References
ABTS	Lophiostomataceae	*Lophiostoma corticola*	Fillat et al. (2016)
ABTS	Dothioraceae	*Hormonema* sp.	Fillat et al. (2016)
ABTS	Dothioraceae	*Pringsheimia smilacis*	Fillat et al. (2016)
ABTS	Montagnulaceae	*Paraconiothyrium variabile*	Fillat et al. (2016)
Naphtol	Montagnulaceae	*Paraconiothyrium brasiliense*	Sun et al. (2011)
ABTS	Botryosphaeriaceae	*Neofusicoccum luteum*	Fillat et al. (2016)
ABTS	Botryosphaeriaceae	*Neofusicoccum australe*	Fillat et al. (2016)
ABTS	Botryosphaeriaceae	*Dothiorella sarmentorum*	Fillat et al. (2016)
ABTS	Botryosphaeriaceae	Botryosphaeria sp.	Cruz et al. (2012)
Naphtol	Botryosphaeriaceae	*Fusicoccum* sp.	Sunitha et al. (2013)
ABTS	Pleosporaceae	*Ulocladium* sp.	Fillat et al. (2016)
Naphtol	Pleosporaceae	*Curvalaria brachyspora*	Amirita et al. (2012a)
Naphtol	Pleosporaceae	*Curvularia* sp.	Patel et al. (2013)
Naphtol	Pleosporaceae	*Drechslera biseptata*	Sun et al. (2011)
Naphtol	Pleosporaceae	*Alternaria alternata*	Sun et al. (2011)
Naphtol	Pleosporaceae	*Alternaria arborescens*	Sun et al. (2011)
ABTS	Amphisphaeriaceae	*Leiosphaerella praeclara*	Fillat et al. (2016)
Poly R-478	Xylariaceae	*Xylaria* sp.	Urairuj et al. (2003)
Naphtol	Xylariaceae	*Xylaria* sp.	Amirita et al. (2012a)
Naphtol	Diaporthaceae	*Phomopsis longicolla*	Sunitha et al. (2013)
Naphtol	Trichosphaeriaceae	*Nigrospora* sp.	Patel et al. (2013)
Naphtol	Nectriaceae	*Fusarium* sp.	Patel et al. (2013)
Naphtol	Chaetomiaceae	*Chaetomium* sp.	Sunitha et al. (2013)
Naphtol	Trichocomaceae	*Aspergillus niger*	Sunitha et al. (2013)
Naphtol	Trichocomaceae	*Penicillium* sp.	Sunitha et al. (2013)
Naphtol	Pestalotiopsidaceae	*Pestalotiopsis* sp.	Sunitha et al. (2013)
Naphtol	Cordycipitaceae	*Isaria* sp.	Sunitha et al. (2013)
Naphtol	Amphisphaeriaceae	*Pestalotiopsis disseminata*	Sunitha et al. (2013)
Naphtol	Leptosphaeriaceae	*Leptosphaeria*sp.	Sun et al. (2011)
Naphtol	Leptosphaeriaceae	*Coniothyrium olivaceum*	Sun et al. (2011)
Naphtol	Diaporthaceae	*Diaporthe* sp.	Sun et al. (2011)
Naphtol	Glomerellaceae	*Glomerella miyabeana*	Sun et al. (2011)
Naphtol	Gnomoniaceae	*Gnomoniella* sp.	Sun et al. (2011)
Naphtol	Melanconidaceae	*Melanconis* sp.	Sun et al. (2011)
Naphtol	Montagnulaceae	*Microsphaeropsis arundinis*	Sun et al. (2011)
Naphtol	Incertae sedis	*Ascochytopsis vignae*	Sun et al. (2011)
Naphtol	Incertae sedis	*Coelomycetes* sp.	Sun et al. (2011)

(continued)

Table 12.1 (continued)

Substrate	Accession family	Accession species	References
ABTS	Incertae sedis	*Phaeomoniella effusa*	Fillat et al. (2016)
ABTS	Incertae sedis	*Phaeomoniella niveniae*	Fillat et al. (2016)
Naphtol	Incertae sedis	*Discosia* sp.	Sunitha et al. (2013)
Naphtol	Incertae sedis	*Phoma* sp.	Sunitha et al. (2013), Sun et al. (2011)
Naphtol	Incertae sedis	*Phoma glomerata*	Sun et al. (2011)
Naphtol	Incertae sedis	*Sirococcus clavigignenti juglandacearum*	Sun et al. (2011)
Poly R-478	Meruliaceae[a]	*Bjerkandera* sp.[a]	Oses et al. (2006)

[a]All are Ascomycete fungi except the Basidiomycete *Bjerkandera* sp.

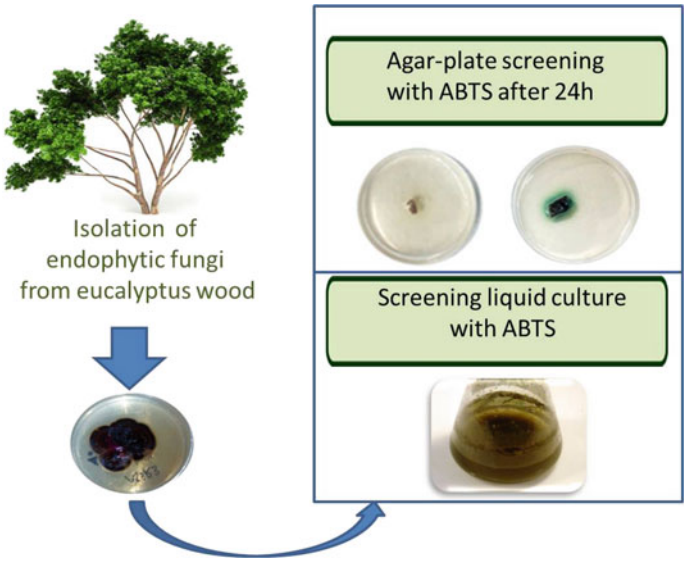


Fig. 12.2 Scheme of the experimental procedure for screening of ligninolytic enzymes from eucalyptus wood endophytes. Figure extracted from Fillat et al. (2016)

regions of Spain were screened on agar medium containing ABTS. Among more than one hundred strains of endophytic fungi tested, twenty-one fungal strains oxidized ABTS at some extent. High ABTS oxidation was observed in eight strains after 48 h with a higher ratio of green halo and diameter of the colony (DH/DC) and other five strains were observed to produced medium oxidation (DH/DC ratio 1.5–1.2). However, *Pycnoporus sanguineus* and *Trametes* sp. I-62 strains (DH/DC

ratio) used as a model of white-rot fungi known to be a good producer of laccases (Martín-Sampedro et al. 2013; Martín-Sampedro et al. 2013; Eugenio et al. 2013). Endophytic strains showing positive oxidation were identified a member of ascomycetes such as *Neofusicoccum, Ulocladium, Lophiostoma, Pringsheimia, Hormonema, Dothiorella, Pyrenochaeta,* and *Coniothyrium*) and Sordariomycetes (genus *Leiosphaerella*). Four strains classified as genera *Phaeomoniella* and *Tumularia* and were of *Incertae sedis* classes. It should be noted that the majority of endophytic strains found a member of Dothideomycetes and to the orders of Pleosporales, Dothideales, and Eurotiomycetes. This predominance of Dothideomycetes in this screening can be due to different facts (i) more common in the endophytic community; (ii) their isolation is easier than that of others endophytes or (iii) produce more oxidoreductases.

Endophytic strains of Xylariaceae shown ligninolytic activity on agar medium using Poly R-478 as indicator (Urairuj et al. 2003; Cruz et al. 2012); and a positive result has been found with naphthol in *Curvularia* sp., *Nigrospora* sp. and *Fusarium* sp. from Pleosporaceae and Nectriaceae families, respectively (Patel et al. 2013).

Various workers have observed laccase activity in liquid medium for some endophytic fungi (Anderson et al. 2005; Fillat et al. 2016; Shary et al. 2007) (Table 12.2). These include members of the class Sordariomycetes, and family Xylariaceae (Urairuj et al. 2003), *Fusarium proliferatum* of the family Nectriaceae (Anderson et al. 2005; Muthezhilan et al. 2014), *Podospora anserina* of the family Lasiosphaeriaceae (Durand et al. 2013), *Chaetomium globosum* of the family Chaetomiaceae (Benhassine et al. 2016; El-Zayat 2008), *Colletotrichum gloesporioides* of Glomerellaceae (Xie and Dai 2015; Zhou et al. 2014) and *Phomosis liquidambari* of Diaporthaceae (Xie and Dai 2015; Zhou et al. 2014). Similarly, laccase activity has been demonstrated for members of class Dothideomycetes, *Monotospora* sp. of the family Hysteriaceae (Wang et al. 2006), few genera such as *Neofusicoccum australe, N. luteum* and *Botryosphaeria* sp. of Botryosphaeriaceae (Barbosa et al. 1996; Srivastava et al. 2013; Cruz et al. 2012; Sunitha et al. 2013; Fillat et al. 2016), *Ulocladium* sp. of Pleosporaceae (Atalla et al. 2010) and *Hormonema* sp. and *Pringsheimia smilacis* of Dothioraceae (Fillat et al. 2016; Zifcáková et al. 2011). Laccase activity has been measured in endophytic basidiomycetes *Peniophora* sp. of Peniophoraceae family (Zifcáková et al. 2011). To the best of our knowledge, four laccases from endophytes have been purified and characterized from *Trichoderma harzianum* (Sadhasivama et al. 2008), *Podospora anserine* (Durand et al. 2013), *Cladosporium cladosporioides* (Halaburgi et al. 2011), and *Paraconiothyrium variabile* (Forootanfar et al. 2011).

On the other hand, ligninolytic activities have been detected in endophytes cultures: manganese peroxidase and independent manganese peroxidase in several species of the family *Xylariaceae* (Urairuj et al. 2003) and aryl-alcohol oxidadase in *F. proliferatum* (Anderson et al. 2005). The peroxidase activity has been measured in the endophytic basidiomycete strain *Bjerkandera* sp. (Oses et al. 2006).

Table 12.2 Endophytic fungi with potential for producing ligninolytic enzymes in a liquid medium. Substrates used in measurements and enzymatic activity detected

Class	Accession family	Accession species	Substrate (ligninolytic activity)	References
Sordariomycetes	Diaporthaceae	*Phomopsis liquidambari*	ABTS (Laccase)	Xie and Dai (2015), Zhou et al. (2014)
Sordariomycetes	Xylariaceae	*Xylaria* sp.	DMP (Laccase, MnP, MIP (independent manganese))	Urairuj et al. (2003)
Sordariomycetes	Nectriaceae	*Fusarium* sp.	Guaiacol (Laccase)	Muthezhilan et al. (2014)
Sordariomycetes	Nectriaceae	*Fusarium proliferatum*	ABTS, DMP, VA, azure B (Laccase, AAO)	Anderson et al. (2005)
Sordariomycetes	Chaetomiaceae	*Chaetomium* sp.	ABTS (Laccase)	Benhassine et al. 2016)
Sordariomycetes	Chaetomiaceae	*Chaetomium globosum*	ABTS (Laccase)	El-Zayat (2008)
Sordariomycetes	Lasiosphaeriaceae	*Podospora anserine*	ABTS (Laccase)	Durand et al. (2013)
Sordariomycetes	Glomerellaceae	*Colletotrichum gloeosporioides*	Guaiacol (Laccase)	Sidhu et al. (2016)
Sordariomycetes	Hypocreaceae	*Trichoderma harzianum*	ABTS, guaicaol (Laccase)	Sadhasivama et al. (2008), Gao et al. (2013)
Dothideomycetes	Botryosphaeriaceae	*Botryosphaeria* sp.	ABTS (Laccase)	Barbosa et al. (1996)
Dothideomycetes	Botryosphaeriaceae	*Neofusicoccum australe*	ABTS (Laccase)	Fillat et al. (2016)
Dothideomycetes	Botryosphaeriaceae	*Neofusicoccum luteum*	ABTS (Laccase)	Fillat et al. (2016)
Dothideomycetes	Botryosphaeriaceae	*Botryosphaeria rhodina (Lasiodiplodiatheobromae)*	ABTS (Laccase)	Srivastava et al. (2013)
Dothideomycetes	Botryosphaeriaceae	*Botryosphaeria obtusa*	ABTS (Laccase)	Srivastava et al. (2013)
Dothideomycetes	Botryosphaeriaceae	*Botryosphaeria dothidea*	ABTS (Laccase)	Srivastava et al. (2013)
Dothideomycetes	Botryosphaeriaceae	*Botryosphaeriaribis (Neofusicoccumribis)*	ABTS (Laccase)	Srivastava et al. (2013)
Dothideomycetes	Hysteriaceae	*Monotospora* sp.	ABTS (Laccase)	Wang et al. (2006)
Dothideomycetes	Dothioraceae	*Hormonema* sp.	ABTS (Laccase)	Fillat et al. (2016)

(continued)

Table 12.2 (continued)

Class	Accession family	Accession species	Substrate (ligninolytic activity)	References
Dothideomycetes	Dothioraceae	*Hormonema dematioides*	ABTS (Laccase)	Zifcáková et al. (2011)
Dothideomycetes	Dothioraceae	*Pringsheimia smilacis*	ABTS (Laccase)	Fillat et al. (2016)
Dothideomycetes	Pleosporaceae	*Ulocladium chartarium*	Guaiacol, veratrylaldehide, ABTS (Laccase)	Atalla et al. (2010)
	Davidiellaceae	*Cladosporium cladosporioides*	ABTS (Laccase)	Halaburgi et al. (2011)
Dothideomycetes	Montagnulaceae	*Paraconiothyrium variabile*	ABTS, guaiacol, DMP (Laccase)	Forootanfar et al. (2011)
Agaricomycetes[a]	Peniophoraceae[a]	*Peniophora* sp.[a]	ABTS (Laccase)	Zifcáková et al. (2011)
Agaricomycetes[a]	Meruliaceae[a]	*Bjerkandera* sp.[a]	ABTS (Peroxidase)	Oses et al. (2006)

[a]All strains are Ascomycete fungi except Basidiomycetous *Peniophora* sp. and *Bjerkandera* sp.

12.4 Role of Biotechnology in Lignocellulosic Biorefineries

Biorefineries are facilities that provide fiber products, biofuels, and other chemical materials including plastics, sugar polymers, oils, and biomass derived proteins (Cañas and Camarero 2010). Biorefineries combine and integrate various technologies, among which major are biotechnical methodologies which have the potential to reduce carbon emissions through different ways; substituting petroleum as a fuel and as a starting material, increasing process efficiency, closing loops, and diminishing wastes (Erickson et al. 2012). In nature, lignin oxidation performed by wood-rotting fungi is an important issue for carbon cycling, and its implementation in the industry can improve the accessibility of chemicals or enzymes to cellulose. Application of ligninolytic fungi and its enzymes has been extensively studied in the pulp and paper industry and the production of biofuels (Camarero et al. 2014).

Cellulose and hemicelluloses can be hydrolyzed by acid treatments or enzymatic hydrolysis after pre-treatment, conversion into bioethanol by a microbial fermentation. In contrast, lignin is not constituted of fermentable sugars and due to their structural properties has an unruly structure challenging to discompose. The introduction of a pre-treatment step is indispensable to improve digestion ability of lignocellulose and sugars production (Parawira and Tekere 2011; Salvachúa et al. 2011; Kataaria et al. 2013; Ofori-Boateng and Lee 2013). Several physico-chemical and chemical pre-treatment processes exist for ammonia fiber explosion to improve lignocellulose saccharification thereby (Kumar et al. 2009). However, these technologies include high high-capital investment with energy demand and also produce certain sugars that influence the subsequent fermentation (Moreno et al. 2015b). In order to overcome this disadvantages produced by the physico-chemical pre-treatment, different eco-friendly approaches using biotechnology have been studied to degrade lignocellulose (biodelignification) and to decrease the quantity of inhibitors (biodetoxification) (Parawira and Tekere 2011; Moreno et al. 2015b). These biotreatments exhibit higher product yield and few side reactions (Moreno et al. 2015b). Moreover, biotechnology processes use mild reaction conditions that reduced reactor requirements to resist pressure and corrosion and also energy costs (Moreno et al. 2015b). White-rot fungi and their oxidative enzymes avoid the formation of inhibitors and are an alternative or an additional pre-treatment step to physico-chemical methods for bioethanol production (Moreno et al. 2015a; Castoldi et al. 2014; Castoldi et al. 2014; Kudanga and Le Roes-Hill 2014; Singh et al. 2014; Ghorbani et al. 2015; Moreno et al. 2013; Ruíz-Dueñas and Martínez 2009).

On the other hand, the pulping process consists of the separation of pulp fibers from wood for papermaking. One of the less harmful and more promising alternatives to improve conventional pulping processes is the use of microorganisms (such as white-rot fungi) and their enzymes for biotreatment wood chips to reduce lignin content (Fonseca et al. 2014). This process was industrialized to reduce the electrical energy required for pulping wood chips and to economize active alkali charge or cooking time for chemical pulping (Mendonça et al. 2002; Villalba et al. 2006). As mentioned above endophytic fungi have been widely studied as

biotechnological pre-treatments. Recently, the role of five ascomycete endophytic strains *Neofusicoccum luteum, Ulocladium* sp., *Pringsheimia smilacis, Hormonema* sp. and *Neofusicoccum australe* in lignin degradation has been studied extensively. Application of the endophytic fungal strain *Hormonema* sp. CECT 13092 for the mentioned applications has been patented (Martín et al. 2014).

12.4.1 *Effect of Fungal Pre-treatments on Enzymatic Hydrolysis*

Wood chips were inoculated with individual preinoculum of each fungal strain. After the biotreatments and before enzymatic saccharification, a mild alkali treatment was performed on solid samples, in order to improve the hydrolysis yields (Salvachúa et al. 2011). An autohydrolysis (AH) pre-treatment was carried out prior or after the fungal (and alkali) pre-treatment (Fig. 12.3) (Martín-Sampedro et al. 2015b). The AH pre-treatment augmented glucose yield from 4 to 11% more than xylose in comparison to that of untreated control (Fig. 12.4). Pre-treated material presents a major accessibility due to the decrease of hemicelluloses and the increased porosity achieved in the biotreatment (Alvira et al. 2010). Earlier enhanced sugar yields using more severe pre-treatment conditions were observed and Martin-Sampedro et al. (2014) and Romaní et al. (2010) have been reported glucose yields of 23–51% after AH pre-treatment with 3.1–3.8 severity factor. When fungal pre-treatment was carried out before or after AH pre-treatment saccharification improved in all samples. It should be pointed out that a synergistic effect of both pre-treatments could be observed and it was more noticeable when *Ulocladium* sp. or *Hormonema* sp. were used: 8.5 and 8.0 times increases in total sugar yields for both fungi (31–34% glucose and 24–29% xylose yields) regarding no pre-treated control sample (4% glucose and 3% xylose yields) (Fig. 12.4). When the white-rot fungus *Trametes* sp. I-62 used as a reference was inoculated after AH pre-treatment, total sugar yields were 2–3 times higher than that of the yields increased by autohydrolyzed *E. globulus* wood without fungal treatment.

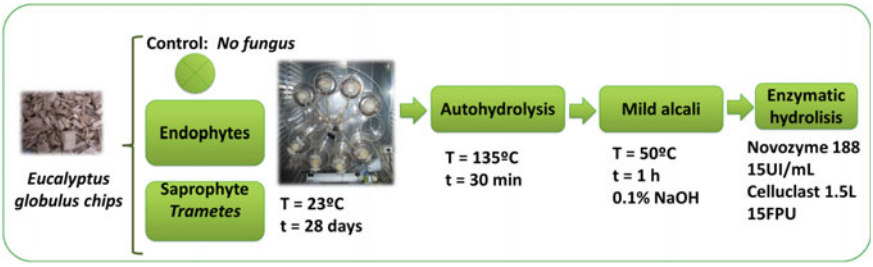


Fig. 12.3 Scheme of the experimental procedure of biological pre-treatments to enhance enzymatic saccharification. Figure extracted from Martín-Sampedro et al. (2015b)

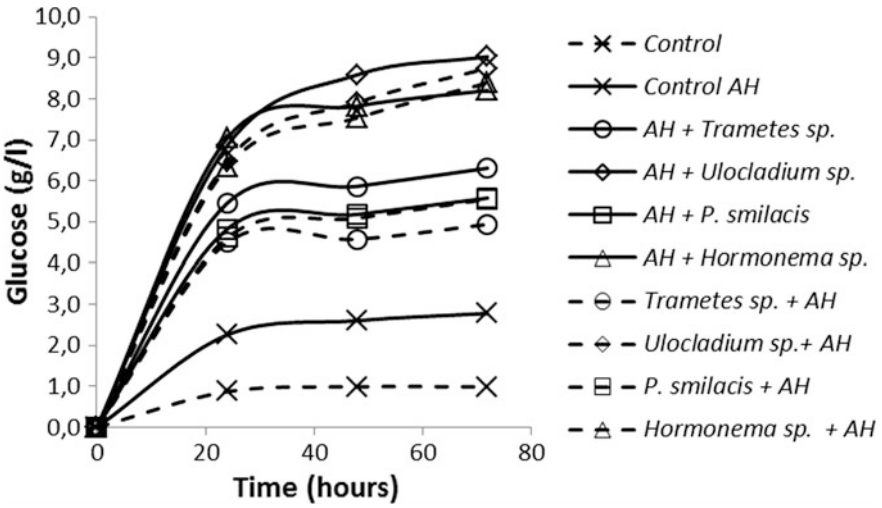


Fig. 12.4 Glucose concentrations during the enzymatic hydrolysis of the samples after fungal treatments and those subjected to autohydrolysis (AH) before or after fungal pre-treatments. Figure extracted from Martín-Sampedro et al. (2015b)

Interestingly, when AH pre-treatment was performed after fungal treatment, the increase in saccharification produced by this reference fungus was lower than that observed for the control sample. The endophytic fungi caused a higher boost of hydrolysis than the white-rot fungi, probing their high potential for enhancing saccharification of *E. globulus* wood. Other studies combined fungal pre-treatments with white-rot or brown-rot fungi with chemical and physical methods so as to improve saccharification yields (López-Abelairas et al. 2013; Wang et al. 2013; Gui et al. 2013) and/or to decrease biotreatment times (Fu et al. 2013; Yu et al. 2009). However, increases in saccharification were lower than that of observed with endophytic strains. López-Abelairas et al. (2013) observed a glucose yield 3.9 and 4.6 times higher in wheat straw pre-treated with a thermal treatment and a fungal treatment with *Pleorotus eryngii* or *Irpex lacteus*. Gui et al. (2013) obtained glucose yields 1.7 times higher using *Pycnoporus chrysosporium* combined with 2.5% sulphuric acid treatment than in acid-treated *Glycyrrhiza uralensis* under the similar conditions. Wang et al. (2013) reported that fungal pre-treatment of poplar wood with *Trametes orientalis* or *Fomitopsis palustris* before a $FeCl_3$ treatment increased sugar yields 1.4 and 1.6 times more than $FeCl_3$ treatment without fungi. Yang et al. (2013) reported a similar value to that found in the endophytic fungi mentioned before when poplar was treated with *Trametes velutina* D10149 and alkaline fractionation.

12.4.2 *Effect of Fungal Pre-treatments on Kraft Pulping*

Fungal pre-treated chips with endophytes and saprophytic fungi were subjected to kraft pulping (Fig. 12.5). Lower Kappa number and higher brightness values were obtained for all the samples treated with fungi compared to control pulp (without fungal treatment). However, no significant differences in polymerization degree were found. Moreover, higher delignification was observed with endophytic strains during kraft pulping compared to *Trametes* sp. I-62, except *P. smilacis*. The highest increment in delignification (27% compared to control) was found when *Hormonema* sp. was applied compared with 9% obtained by *Trametes* sp. I-62. Moreover, *Hormonema* sp. and *N. australe* provided higher brightness (46.0 and 44.3% ISO, respectively) than *Trametes* sp. I-62 (41.6% ISO). Other white-rot fungi have improved delignification during kraft pulping in previous works, but the results were worse than that observed for this endophytic fungus in most of the cases: when chips from hardwood (eucalyptus and poplar) were pre-treated with *Ceriporiopsis subvermispora* an increase of 14% was obtained (Yadav et al. 2010); increases around 18% were produced from pine pre-treated with *Pycnoporus sanguineus*, *Pycnoporus* sp. and *Stereumhirsutum* (Wolfaardt et al. 2004). Higher increases were measured when soda pulping was performed in rice straw pre-treated with *P. chrysosporium* and *Pleorotus ostreatus*: 26 and 35%, respectively (El-Din et al. 2013).

Among all the strains studied, *Hormonema* sp. showed the minor NaOH consumption during pulping, 12% less than control and similar Na_2S consumption. *N. australe* pre-treated samples consumed also around 8% less NaOH than control and *Trametes* sp. I-62 samples. However, Na_2S consumption increased from 54 to 82%, and kappa number and brightness were worse than those found for pulps pre-treated with *Hormonema* sp. These reductions in the alkali dose necessary to produce a target kappa number in chemical pulps have been associated with the modifications in wood chips caused by fungi (Mardones et al. 2006).

Mechanical properties of handsheets of the obtained pulps were improved when a fungal pre-treatment was performed before pulping. Endophytic fungi, except

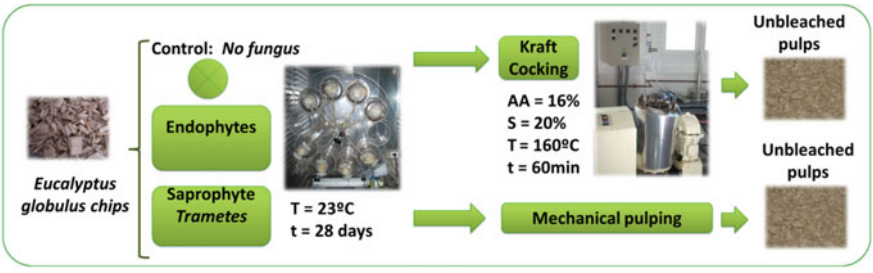


Fig. 12.5 Scheme of the experimental procedure of biological pre-treatments to enhance Kraft and mechanical pulping

P. smilacis, produced increases in tensile, tear and/or burst indices. *Hormonema* sp. again showed the best results and was the only fungus which enhances the three properties compared to control:indices. *N. australe* presented good outcomes in relation to delignification yield, also increased tensile and burst indices. Other authors have found similar results: 8% increase in tensile and 12% in burst indices and an 8% decrease in tear index after pre-treated black pine with *C. subvermispora*, (Gulsoy and Eroglu 2011). Mechanical properties as tensile and burst indices are associated with bond ability amid fibers, whereas tear index is correlated with the degradation of fibers. Those pre-treated pulps that present less lignin content can present a greater bonding amid cellulose-to-cellulose that could improve the strength in the handsheets (Ismail et al. 2005).

12.4.3 *Effect of Fungal Pre-treatments on Mechanical Pulping*

Fungal pre-treated chips with the endophytes and the saprophytic fungi were subjected to mechanical pulping (Fig. 12.5) (Martín-Sampedro et al. 2015a). After mechanical pulping of pre-treated chips, the pulps presented higher refining degree compare to an untreated pulp (48° SR), especially the one pre-treated with *Hormonema* sp. (69° SR). Gulsoy and Eroglu (2011) reported easier fibrillation in pine pulp pre-treated with *C. subvermispora* than control pulp; this enhancement was related to a higher production by fungus. As well, time reductions in refining to obtain a given fibrillation degree was observed in *Eucalyptus tereticornis* pulp pre-treated with *C. subvermispora* (Bajpai et al. 2001) and hornbeam with *P. chrysosporium* (Kasmani et al. 2012). The easier beating of fungal pre-treated pulps to obtain target wetness imply less energy consumption (Gulsoy and Eroglu 2011).

A reduction in kappa number of 8 points and 1.4% in Klason lignin was found when chips were pre-treated with *Hormonema* sp. This endophyte can modify lignin and also, remove it from the wood. Other authors have also observed kappa number reductions in pulps pre-treated with fungi and subjected to chemo-mechanical pulping (Singh et al. 2013).

Enhanced mechanical properties were found in all fungal pre-treated pulps, except for *Ulocladium* sp. According to Ferraz et al. (2008), fungal pre-treatment produces a double effect, a deep short period depolymerization of lignin and also an increase of the water saturation point due to the oxalate esterification on the polysaccharides chains mediated by the fungus. Both changes could influence the fiber bonding, and then, the physical properties of the wood and the pulp obtained after mechanical pulping. Handsheets obtained from pulp pre-treated with *Hormonema* sp. provided the highest tensile and burst indices increases of 28% in tensile, 16% in tear, and 44% in burst indices, compared with an untreated sample. whereas when using the reference fungus *Trametes* sp. I-62 increments of 23, 17, and 12% were obtained, for the same properties. Ramos et al. (2001) and Singh

et al. (2013) found less increases in tensile, tear, and brust indices during pre-treatment of oil palm trunk with *T. versicolor* and *C. subvermispora*. On the other hand, Kasmani et al. (2012) reported significant reductions in tensile and burst indices when hornbeam was pre-treated with *P. chrysosporium*. Therefore, endophytic fungi, mainly *Hormonema* sp., show a high potential in biomechanical pulping when these results were compared to other white-rot fungi. Thus, it is expected that endophytes pre-treated chips would need less energy for fibrillation target and/or similar mechanical properties than untreated pulp.

12.5 Conclusions

Endophytic fungi have been screened for the search of oxidative enzymes that could be used as an alternative to existing industrial processes of transformation of lignocellulosic biomass. Ligninolytic activity has been reported for several endophytic strains in the solid and liquid medium. Among several, endophytes isolated from eucalyptus trees have been recently applied for biotechnological applications in biorefineries. Fungal treatments with endophytes are able to enhance saccharification of *E. globulus*, as well as kraft and mechanical pulping. Moreover, some of them provided greater enhancement than various white-rot fungi. Therefore, endophytic fungi show a high potential to be applied in the lignocellulosic industry.

Acknowledgements The authors wish to thank the Spanish Ministry of Economy and Competitiveness (MINECO) for funding this study via Projects CTQ 2011-28503-C02-01, CTQ2011-28503-C02-02, CTQ2013-47158-R, Programmes PTA 2011-4857-I and PTA 2014-09248-I.

References

Alcalde M (2015) Engineering the ligninolytic enzyme consortium. Trends Biotechnol 33: 155–162

Alvira P, Tomás-Pejó E, Ballesteros M, Negro M (2010) Pretreatment technologies for an efficient bioethanol production process based on enzymatic hydrolysis: a review. Bioresour Technol 101:4851–4861

Amirita A, Sindhu P, Swetha J, Vasanthi NS, Kannan KP (2012a) Biodegradation of a model allelo chemical cinnamic acid by a novel endophytic fungus *Phomopsis liquidambari*. World J Sci Technol 2:13–19

Amirita A, Sindhu P, Swetha J, Vasanthi NS, Kannan KP (2012b) Enumeration of endophytic fungi from medicinal plants and screening of extracellular enzymes. World J Sci Technol 2: 13–19

Anderson AJ, Kwon SI, Carnicero A, Falcón MA (2005) Two isolates of *Fusarium proliferatum* from different habitats and global locations have similar abilities to degrade lignin. FEMS Microbiol Lett 249:149–155

Arias E, Arenas M, Rodríguez J, Soliveri J, Ball AS, Hernández M (2003) Kraft pulp biobleaching and mediated oxidation of a nonphenolic substrate by laccase from *Streptomyces cyaneus* CECT 3335. Appl Environ Microbiol 69:1953–1958

Arnold AE, Maynard Z, Gilbert GS, Coley OD, Kursar TA (2002) Are tropical fungal endophytes hyperdiverse? Ecol Lett 3:267–274

Atalla MM, Zeinab HK, Eman RH, Amani AY, Abeer A (2010) Screening of some marine-derived fungal isolates for lignin degrading enzymes (LDEs) production. Agric Biol J N Am 1: 591–599

Bajpai P, Akthar M, Jauhari M (2001) Biokraft pulping of eucalyptus with selected ligin-degrading fungi. J Pulp Pap Sci 27:235–239

Barbosa AM, Dekker RFH, Hardy GES (1996) Veratryl alcohol as an inducer of laccase by an ascomycete, *Botryosphaeria* sp, when screened on the polymeric dye Poly R-478. Lett Appl Microbiol 23:93–96

Barrasa JM, Martínez AT, Martínez MJ (2009) Isolation and selection of novel basidiomycetes for decolorization of recalcitrant dyes. Folia Microbiol 54:59–66

Benhassine S, Kacem CN, Destain J (2016) Production of laccase without inducer by Chaetomium species isolated from Chettaba forest situated in the East of Algeria. Afr J Biotech 15:207–213

Bennett AE, Grussu D, Kam J, Caul S, Halpin C (2014) Plant lignin content altered by soil microbial community. New Phytologist. DOI:10.1111/nph.13171:9

Camarero S, Martínez MJ, Martínez AT (2014) Understanding lignin biodegradation for the improved utilization of plant biomass in modern biorefineries. Biofuels, Bioprod Biorefin 8:615–625

Cañas A, Camarero S (2010) Laccases and their natural mediators: Biotechnological tools for sustainable eco-friendly processes. Biotechnol Adv 28:694–705

Castoldi R, Bracht A, Rodriguez de Morais G, Baesso ML, Carvalho R, Peralta RA, Peralta RF, Teixeira ML, Giatti M, Peralta RM (2014) Biological pretreatment of *Eucalyptus grandis* sawdust with white-rot fungi: study of degradation patterns and saccharification kinetics. Chem Eng J 258:240–246

Chandra R, Chowdharya P (2015) Properties of bacterial laccases and their application in bioremediation of industrial wastes. Environ Sci: Process Impacts 17:326–342

Cruz R, Rivera-Ríos JM, Téllez-Jurado A, Maqueda Gálvez AP, Mercado-Flores Y, Arana-Cuenca A (2012) Screening for thermotolerant ligninolytic fungi with laccase, lipase, and protease activity isolated in Mexico. J Environ Manage 95(Supplement):S256–S259

Dhouib A, Hamza M, Zouari H, Mechichi T, Hmidi R, Labat M, Martinez MJ, Sayadi S (2005) Screening for ligninolytic enzyme production by diverse fungi from Tunisia. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 21:1415–1423

Diamantidisa G, Effosseb A, Potierb P, Ballyb R (2000) Purification and characterization of the first bacterial laccase in the rhizospheric bacterium *Azospirillum lipoferum*. Soil Biol Biochem 32:919–927

Durand F, Gounel S, Mano N (2013) Purification and characterization of a new laccase from the filamentous fungus *Podospora anserina*. Protein Expr Purif 88:61–66

El-Din SMB, Kheiralla ZH, Malek SMA, Aziz DHA (2013) Selection of fungal isolates for biopulping of rice straw. Biores 8(4):4969–4980

El-Zayat SA (2008) Preliminary studies on laccase production by *Chaetomium globosum* an endophytic fungus in *Glinus amides*. American-Eurasian J Agricul Environ Sci 3:86–90

Erickson B, Nelson JE, Winters P (2012) Perspective on opportunities in industrial biotechnology in renewable chemicals. Biotechnol J 7:176–185

Eugenio ME, Hernández M, Moya R, Martín-Sampedro R, Villar JC, Arias ME (2011) Evaluation of a new laccase produced by *Streptomyces ipomoea* on biobleaching and ageing of kraft pulps. BioResources 6:3231

Eugenio ME, Carbajo JM, Martín JA, González AE, Villar JC (2013) Laccase production by *Pycnoporus sanguineus* under different culture conditions. J Basic Microbiol 49:433–440

Faeth SH, Fagan WF (2002) Fungal endophytes: common host plant symbionts but uncommon mutualists. Integr Comp Biol 42:360–368

Ferraz A, Guerra A, Mendonça R, Massarin F, Vicentin MP, Aguiar A, Pavan PC (2008) Technological advances and mechanistic basis for fungal biopulping. Enzyme Microb Technol 43:178–185

Fillat U, Roncero MB (2009a) Biobleaching of high quality pulps with laccase mediator system: influence of treatment time and oxygen supply. Biochem Eng J 44:193–198

Fillat U, Roncero MB (2009b) Effect of process parameters in laccase-mediator system delignification of flax pulp Part I Pulp properties. Chem Eng J 152:322–329

Fillat U, Roncero MB (2010) Optimization of laccase-mediator system in producing biobleached flax pulp. Biores Technol 101:181–187

Fillat U, Martín-Sampedro R, Macaya-Sanz D, Martín JA, Ibarra D, Martínez MJ, Eugenio ME (2016) Screening of eucalyptus wood endophytes for laccase activity. Process Biochem 51:589–598

Fonseca MI, Fariña JI, Castrillo ML, Rodríguez MD, Nuñez CE, Villalba LL, Zapata PD (2014) Biopulping of wood chips with *Phlebia brevispora* BAFC 633 reduces lignin content and improves pulp quality. Int Biodeterior Biodegradation 90:29–35

Forootanfar H, Faramarzi MA, Shahverdi AR, Yazdi MT (2011) Purification and biochemical characterization of extracellular laccase from the ascomycete *Paraconiothyrium variabile*. Bioresour Technol 102:1808–1814

Fu K, Fu S, Zhan H, Zhou P, Liu M, Liu H (2013) A newly isolated wood-rot fungus for laccase production in submerged cultures. BioResources 8:1385–1397

Fukusawa Y, Osono T, Takeda H (2009) Effects of attack of saprobic fungi on twig litter decomposition by endophytic fungi. Ecol Res 24:1067–1073

Gao H, Chu X, Zhou F, Zhao K, Mu Z, Liu Q (2013) Media optimization for laccase production by *Trichoderma harzianum* ZF-2 using response surface methodology. J Microbiol Biotechnol 23:1757–1764

Ghorbani F, Karimi M, Biri D, Kariminia HR, Jeihanipour A (2015) Enhancement of fungal delignification of rice straw by *Trichoderma viride* sp. to improve its saccharification. Biochem Eng J 101:77–84

Gui X, Wang G, Hu M, Yan Y (2013) Combined fungal and mild acid pretreatment of *Glycyrrhiza uralensis* residue for enhancing enzymatic hydrolysis and oil production. BioResources 8:5485–5499

Guillén F, Martínez AT, Martínez MJ (1992) Substrate specificity and properties of the aryl-alcohol oxidase from the ligninolytic fungus *Pleurotus eryngii*. Eur J Biochem 209:603–611

Guillén F, Martínez MJ, Muñoz C, Martínez ÁT (1997) Quinone redox cycling in the ligninolytic fungus *Pleurotus eryngii* leading to extracellular production of superoxide anion radical. Arch Biochem Biophys 339:190–199

Gulsoy H, Eroglu H (2011) Biokraft pulping of European black pine with *Ceriporiopsis subvermispora*. Int Biodet Biodeg 65:644–648

Halaburgi VM, Sharma S, Sinha M, Singh TP, Karegoudar TB (2011) Purification and characterization of a thermostable laccase from the ascomycetes *Cladosporium cladosporioides* and its applications. Process Biochem 46:1146–1152

Higuchi T (1997) Biochemistry and molecular biology of wood. Springer Verlag, London

Ibarra D, Romero J, Martínez MJ, Martínez AT, Camarero S (2006) Exploring the enzymatic parameters for optimal delignification of eucalypt pulp by laccase-mediator. Enzyme Microb Technol 39:1319–1327

Ismail F, Mulholland DA, Marsh JJ (2005) An analysis of the water soluble components of Sappi Saiccor's effluent streams. Water Sa 31:569–574

Järvinen J, Taskila S, Isomäki R, Järvinen O (2012) Screening of white-rot fungi manganese peroxidases: a comparison between the specific activities of the enzyme from different native producers. AMB Express 2:1–9

Kasmani JE, Talaeipour M, Hemmasi AH, Mahdavi S, Samariha A (2012) Biochemimechanical pulping of hornbeam chips with *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. BioResources 7:1016–1028

Kataaria R, Ruhal R, Babu R, Ghosh S (2013) Saccharification of alkali treated biomass of Kans grass contributes higher sugar in contrast to acid treated biomass. Chem Eng J 230:36–47
Kersten PJ (1990) Glyoxal oxidase of Phanerochaete chrysosporiums: its characterization and activation by lignin peroxidase. Proc Nat l Acad Sci 87:2936–2840 (USA)
Kudanga T, Le Roes-Hill M (2014) Laccase applications in biofuels production: current status and future prospects. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 15–6525
Kumar P, Barret DM, Delwiche MJ, Stroeve P (2009) Methods for pretreatment of lignocellulosic biomass for efficient hydrolysis and biofuel production. Ind Eng Chem Res 48:3713–3729
Kunamneni A, Ballesteros A, Plou FJ, Alcalde M (2007) Fungal laccase—a versatile enzyme for biotechnological applications. In: Méndez-Vilas A (ed) Communicating current research and educational topics and trends in applied microbiology. Badajoz, Spain, pp 233–245
Lehtonen P, Helander M, Saikkonen K (2005) Are endophyte-mediated effects on herbivores conditional on soil nutrients? Oecologia 142:38–45
Levin L, Papinutti L, Forchiassin F (2004) Evaluation of Argentinean white rot fungi for their ability to produce lignin-modifying enzymes and decolorize industrial dye. Biores Technol 94:169–176
Liers C, Ullrich R, Steffen K, Hatakka A, Hofrichter M (2006) Mineralization of 14C-labelled synthetic lignin and extracellular enzyme activities of the wood-colonizing ascomycetes *Xylaria hypoxylon* and *Xylaria polymorpha*. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 69:573–579
López-Abelairas M, Pallín MÁ, Salvachúa D, Lú-Chau T, Martínez M, Lema J (2013) Optimisation of the biological pretreatment of wheat straw with white-rot fungi for ethanol production. Bioprocess Biosystems Eng 36:1251–1260
Madhavi V, Lele SS (2009) Laccase: properties and applications. BioResources 4:1694–1747
Mardones L, Gomide JL, Freer J, Ferraz A, Rodríguez J (2006) Kraft pulping of Eucalyptus nitens wood chips biotreated by *Ceriporiopsis subvermispora*. Technol Biotechnol 81:608–613
Martín JA, Witzell J, Blumenstein K, Rozpedowska E, Helander M, Sieber TN, Gil L (2013) Resistance to dutch elm disease reduces presence of xylem endophytic fungi in elms (*Ulmus* spp.). PLoS ONE 8:e56987. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0056987
Martín JA, Macaya D, Eugenio ME, Martín-Sampedro R, Fillat U, Ibarra D (2014) Cepa de hongo *Hormonema* sp. CECT 13092 y procedimiento de aplicación para la deslignificación de biomasa lignocelulósica. ES2455491[P201430065]. 2014. Spain. Ref Type: Patent
Martín-Sampedro R, Miranda J, Villar JC, Eugenio ME (2013) Laccase from *Trametes* sp. I-62: production, characterization, and application as a new laccase for eucalyptus globulus kraft pulp biobleaching. Ind Eng Chem Res 52:15533–15540
Martin-Sampedro R, Revilla E, Villar JC, Eugenio ME (2014) Enhancement of enzymatic saccharification of *Eucalyptus globulus*: steam explosion versus steam treatment. Boresour Technol 167:186–191
Martín-Sampedro R, Fillat U, Ibarra D, Eugenio ME (2015a) Towards the improvement of Eucalyptus globulus chemical and mechanical pulping using endophytic fungi. Int Biodeterior Biodegradation 105:120–126
Martín-Sampedro R, Fillat U, Ibarra D, Eugenio ME (2015b) Use of new endophytic fungi as pretreatment to enhance enzymatic saccharification of *Eucalyptus globulus*. Bioresour Technol 196:383–390
Martínez ÁT, Speranza M, Ruiz-Dueñas FJ, Ferreira P, Camarero S, Guillén F, Martínez MJ, Gutiérrez A, Del Río JC (2005) Biodegradation of lignocellulosics: microbiological, chemical and enzymatic aspects of fungal attack to lignin. Int Microbiol 8:195–204
Martínez ÁT, Ruiz-Dueñas FJ, Martínez MJ, del Río JC, Gutiérrez A (2009) Enzymatic delignification of plant cell wall: from nature to mill. Curr Opin Biotechnol 20:348–357
Mendonça R, Guerra A, Ferraz A (2002) Delignification of *Pinus taeda* wood chips treated with *Ceriporiopsis subvermispora* for preparing high-yield kraft pulps. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 77:411–418
Moreno AD, Ibarra D, Ballesteros A, Fernández JL, Ballesteros M (2013) Ethanol from laccase-detoxified lignocellulose by the thermotolerant yeast *Kluyveromyces marxianus*—

effects of steam pretreatment conditions, process configurations and substrate loadings. Biochem Eng J 79:94–103

Moreno AD, Ibarra D, Alvira P, Ballesteros M (2015a) Exploring laccase and mediators behavior during saccharification and fermentation of steam-exploded wheat straw for bioethanol production. J Chem Technol Biotechnol

Moreno AD, Ibarra D, Alvira P, Tomás-Pejó E (2015b) A review of biological delignification and detoxification methods for lignocellulosic bioethanol production. Crit Rev Biotechnol 35: 342–354

Morozova O, Shumakovich G, Gorbacheva M, Shleev S, Yaropolov A (2007) Blue laccases. Biochemistry (Moscow) 72:1136–1150

Muthezhilan R, Vinoth S, Gopi K, Hussain J (2014) Dye degrading potential of immobilized laccase from endophytic fungi of coastal sand dune plants. Int J ChemTech Res 6:4154–4160

Niku-Paavola M-L, Karhunen E, Salola P, Raunio V (1988) Ligninolytic enzymes of the white-rot fungus *Phlebia radiata*. Biochem J 254:877–884

Ofori-Boateng C, Lee KT (2013) Comparative thermodynamic sustainability assessment of lignocellulosic pretreatment methods for bioethanol production via exergy analysis. Chem Eng J 228:162–171

Oses R, Valenzuela S, Freer J, Baeza J, Rodríguez J (2006) Evaluation of fungal endophytes for lignocellulolytic enzyme production and wood biodegradation. Int Biodeterior Biodegradation 57:129–135

Parawira W, Tekere M (2011) Biotechnological strategies to overcome inhibitors in lignocellulose hydrolysates for ethanol production: review. Crit Rev Biotechnol 31:20–31

Patel C, Yadav S, Rahi S, Dave A (2013) Studies on biodiversity of fungal endophytes of indigenous monocotaceous and dicotaceous plants and evaluation of their enzymatic potentialities. Int J Scientific Res Publ 3:2250–3153

Pointing S (1999) Qualitative methods for the determination of lignocellulolytic enzyme production by tropical fungi. Fungal Divers 2:17–33

Promputtha I, Hyde K, McKenzie EHC, Pederby JF, Lumyong S (2010a) Can leaf degrading enzymes provide evidence that endophytic fungi becoming saprobes? Fungal Divers 41:89–99

Promputtha I, Hyde K, McKenzie EHC, Pederby JF, Lumyong S (2010b) Can leaf degrading enzymes provide evidence that endophytic fungi becoming saprobes? Fungal Divers 41:89–99

Ramos J, Gonzalez M, Ramírez F, Young R, Zúñiga V (2001) Biomechanical and biochemical pulping of sugarcane bagasse with *Ceriporiopsis subvermispora* fungal and xylanase pretreatments. J Agric Food Chem 49:1180–1186

Romaní A, Garrote G, Alonso JL, Parajó JC (2010) Bioethanol production from hydrothermally pretreated *Eucalyptus globulus* wood. Biores Technol 101:8706–8712

Ruiz Dueñas FJ, Martínez MJ, Martínez ÁT (1999) Molecular characterization of a novel peroxidase isolated from the ligninolytic fungus *Pleurotus eryngii*. Mol Microbiol 31:223–235

Ruíz-Dueñas FJ, Martínez ÁT (2009) Microbial degradation of lignin: How a bulky recalcitrant polymer is efficiently recycled in nature and how we can take advantage of this. Microb Biotechnol 2:164–177

Sadhasivama S, Savitha S, Swaminathan K, Feng-Huei L (2008) Production, purification and characterization of mid-redox potential laccase from a newly isolated *Trichoderma harzianum* WL1. Process Biochem 43:742

Salvachúa D, Prieto A, López-Abelairas M, Lu-Chau T, Martínez AT, Martínez MJ (2011) Fungal pretreatment: an alternative in second-generation ethanol from wheat straw. Biores Tech 102:7500–7506

Shary S, Ralph SA, Hammel KE (2007) New insights into the ligninolytic capability of a wood decay ascomycete. Appl Environ Microbiol 73:6691–6694

Sidhu AK, Agrawal SB, Sable VS, Patil SN, Gaikwad VB (2016) Isolation of *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides* gr., a novel endophytic laccase producing fungus from the leaves of a medicinal plant, *Piper betle*. Int J Scientific Eng Res 5:1087–1096

Singh O, Sulaiman R, Hashim LC, Peng RP (2013) Evaluating biopulping as an alternative application on oil palm trunk using the white-rot fungus *Trametes versicolor*. Int Biodet Biodeg 82:96–103

Singh G, Harms H, Schlosser D (2014) Screening of ecologically diverse fungi for their potential to pretreat lignocellulosic bioenergy feedstock. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 98:3355–3370

Singh G, Kaur K, Sharma P (2015) Critical factors affecting laccase-mediated biobleaching of pulp in paper industry. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 99:155–164

Sixta H (2006) Handbook of pulp. Wiley-VCH, Weinheim, Germany

Srivastava P, Andersen PC, Marois JJ, Wright DL, Srivastava M, Harmon PF (2013) Effect of phenolic compounds on growth and ligninolytic enzyme production in Botryosphaeria isolates. Crop Protection 43:146–156

Sun X, Guo LD, Hyde K (2011) Community composition of endophytic fungi in *Acer truncatum* and their role in decomposition. Fungal Divers 47:85–95

Sunitha VH, Nirmala D, Srinivas C (2013) Extracellular enzymatic activity of endophytic fungal strains isolated from medicinal plants. World J Agricul Sci 9:01–09

Tekere M, Mswaka AY, Zvauya R, Read JS (2001) Growth, dye degradation and ligninolytic activity studies on Zimbabwean white rot fungi. Enzyme Microb Technol 28:420–426

Urairuj C, Khanongnuch C, Lumyong S (2003) Ligninolytic enzymes from tropical endophytic *Xylariaceae*. Fungal Divers 13:209–219

Villalba LL, Scott GM, Schoeder LR (2006) Modification of loblolly pine chips with *Ceriporiopsis subvermispora*. Part 1: effect of fungal treatment. J Wood Chem Technol 26:339–348

Wang Y, Dai C-C (2011) Endophytes: a potential resource for biosynthesis, biotransformation, and biodegradation. Ann Microbiol 61:25

Wang JW, Wu JH, Huang WY, Tan RX (2006) Laccase production by *Monotospora sp*., an endophytic fungus in *Cynodon dactylon*. Biores Technol 97:786–789

Wang W, Yuan TQ, Cui BK (2013) Fungal treatment followed by FeCl3 treatment to enhance enzymatic hydrolysis of poplar wood for high sugar yields. Biotechnol Lett 35:2061–2067

Wolfaardt F, Taljaard J, Jacobs A, Male J, Rabie C (2004) Assessment of wood-inhabiting basidiomycetes for biokraft pulping of softwood chips. Bioresour Technol 95:25–30

Wong WS (2009) Structure and action mechanism of ligninolytic enzymes. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 157:174–209

Xie X-G, Dai C-C (2015) Biodegradation of a model allelochemical cinnamic acid by a novel endophytic fungus *Phomopsis liquidambari*. Int Biodeterior Biodegradation 104:498–507

Yadav RD, Chaundry S, Dhiman SS (2010) Biopulping and its potential to reduce effluent loads from bleaching of hardwood kraft pulp. BioResources 5:159–171

Yang H, Wang K, Wang W, Sun R-C (2013) Improved bioconversion of poplar by synergistic treatments with white-rot fungus *Trametes velutina* D10149 pretreatment and alkaline fractionation. Bioresour Technol 130:578–583

Yu J, Zhang J, He J, Liu Z, Yu Z (2009) Combinations of mild physical or chemical pretreatment with biological pretreatment for enzymatic hydrolysis of rice hull. Bioresour Technol 100: 903–908

Zhou J, Yang T, Mei Y-Z, Kang L, Dai C-C (2014) Laccase production by *Phomopsis liquidambari* B3 cultured with food waste and wheat straw as the main nitrogen and carbon sources. J Air Waste Manag Assoc 64:1154–1163

Zifcáková L, Dobiásová P, Kolarova Z, Koukol O (2011) Enzyme activities of fungi associated with *Picea abies* needles. Fungal Ecology 4:427–436

Chapter 13
Conclusion

K.G. Ramawat

Abstract Endophytes form a very complex physical and physiological association with the host plant influencing many biological activities. This complex association results in several novel and beneficial activities for these hidden organisms as evident by chapters presented in the two-volume set on endophytes. All the work on endophytes can be categorized as i) isolation and identification, ii) role in agriculture, iii) production of industrially important products, and iv) production of useful secondary metabolites. The concluding remark envisioned the future beneficial role of endophytes with the use of new technology in industry and agriculture.

Keywords Endophytes · Molecular tools · Future of endophytes

Endophytes, as their name suggests, are organisms living within the plants without any noticeable symptom. These form a very complex physical and physiological association influencing the host and other microorganisms present in plant on the one side and all the host's pests on the other side. This complex association results in several novel and beneficial activities for these hidden organisms as evident by data presented in these two volumes on endophytes. Information about endophytic actinobacteria for sustainable agricultural application, their role in phosphate solubilisation, beneficial effects of bacterial endophytes on forest tree species, plant growth promotion by endophytic bacteria in non-native crop hosts, harnessing endophytic microbial volatile organic compound for sustainable agroecosystem, endophytic fungi as source of biologically active secondary metabolites, potential of lignin-degrading endophytic fungi on lignocellulosic biorefineries, endophytic fungi and bioremediation, extra-cellular enzymes, and plant disease control is presented in the chapters.

All the work on endophytes can be categorized as (i) isolation and identification, (ii) role in agriculture, (iii) production of industrially important products, and (iv) production of useful secondary metabolites. Production of useful metabolites

K.G. Ramawat (✉)
Flat 221, Tower 2, Landmark Treasure Town, Badgaon, Udaipur 313011, India
e-mail: kg_ramawat@yahoo.com

D.K. Maheshwari and K. Annapurna (eds.), *Endophytes: Crop Productivity and Protection*, Sustainable Development and Biodiversity 16,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-66544-3_13

and applications in sustainable agriculture are important areas of research on endophytes producing a plethora of secondary metabolites and growth promoting substances of diverse chemical nature from wide variety of species of plants and endophytes. Endophytes have been reported from various crop plants, grasses, tree species, and several other plants. It is envisioned that plants of extreme habitat such as cold and hot conditions, carnivores of marshy lands, and all sorts of parasites should be explored to find out more diverse endophytes and hitherto lesser known properties and metabolites. This might increase the inventory of useful metabolites. Involvement of endophytes has also been evaluated in fields as diverse as phytoremediation and biofuels production. Very limited options are available for treating polluted water from agriculture and landfills. This area needs more attention to use endophytes for developing this technology (Redfern Lauren and Gunsch Claudia 2016).

Endophyte and host relationship is complex and not clearly understood. This creates a further complex situation when a pathogen is present in the same host plant. Cell-to-cell communication between different entities is not clearly understood and this area will provide more understanding about the complex relationship, which may provide clue for novel traits for plant breeding.

Reduction in dependence on chemical pesticides and fertilizers for sustainable agriculture is an important area to meet the food security. Endophytes are beneficial to crops directly by producing growth promoting compounds or indirectly by inhibiting the growth of pathogens (Passari et al. 2016). Therefore, it is necessary to characterize the endophytes and their products for crop improvement and sustainable environment. Their effective use will reduce the dependence on chemical fertilizers and pesticides (Le Cocq et al. 2016).

Symbiotic nitrogen fixing endophytes is important class of endophytes studied in great detail in leguminous plants and trees. Efforts to transfer *nif* gene to non-leguminous plants were not successful. In this case also, characterisation of endophytes using genomics and tools of molecular biology would result useful information. Characterization of endophytic bacterial and fungal endophytes will also help in finding non-native hosts. Internal transcribed spacer (ITS) barcoding along with classical taxonomic characterization are important areas of research on endophytes (Tanney et al. 2016). Characterization of endophytes using genomic tools can help in finding more bacterial biocontrol agents and understanding the mechanism of action (Eljounaidi et al. 2016).

All microorganisms, pathogenic, non-pathogenic and endophytes, produce various types to enzymes to dissolve host cell wall and other barriers to establish themselves. These enzymes are useful in many scientific and industrial processes and thus are explored for their optimum production system (Goyal et al. 2017). Mycorrhyzal fungi occur as ecto- or endo-mycorrhyza in plant roots and recognized as phosphate solubilising fungi. In light of recent works these fungi need to work out for many more plant beneficial traits. This will benefit plant as well as ecosystem.

Production of secondary metabolites of interest to pharmaceutical industry is very attractive field of research using biotechnological methods of plant cell

cultures grown in bioreactors. This scale up technology of growing cells at large scale up to 75,000 l has been established and methods of isolation and identification as well as downstream processing of secondary metabolites has been developed for many products. Thus technology is available for industrial-scale production of secondary metabolites of interest and finding a compound of interest from endophytes can leads to its industrial production quickly (Goyal et al. 2015, 2017). In many cases, precursors from plants are converted to final product by endophyte. The complex relationship between endophyte and its host thus is evaluated carefully to establish the biosynthetic process of secondary metabolites. The research work on endophytes applications and use of new technology along with development of industrial level production system is summarized in Fig. 13.1.

Modern tools and techniques of molecular biology including metagenomes, proteomes and transcriptomes will help in defining characteristics of endophytes and finding novel products for development of industrial products. Generally plant breeding is carried out to develop resistant plants with focus on its pathogen. Once endophytes and their relationship are established, plant breeder can take in account the endophyte of the host for breeding for pathogen resistance. This will enable better crop plants from health and productivity point of view.

It is evident from the literature surveys presented in the chapters that future of endophytes research is bright as demand for pharmaceutical products and agricultural produce is increasing day by day with ever-increasing population. Use of

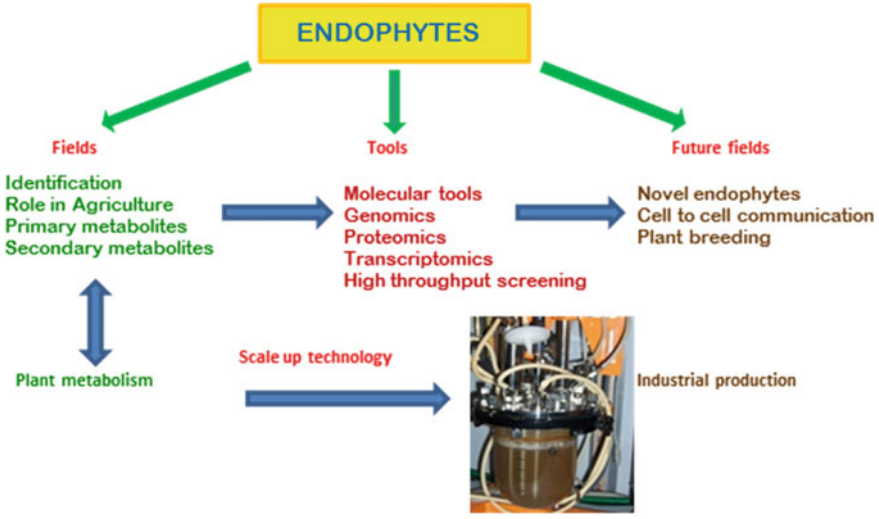


Fig. 13.1 Schematic presentation of summary of research on endophytes applications and use of new technology along for the development of industrial level production system. Scale up technology for the production of useful metabolites from plant cells is already standardized and can effectively used for the production of metabolites from endophytes

multiple technologies will produce quick results to select target compounds for human welfare. The book will be useful for agriculturists, biotechnologists and those working in the fields of pharmacy, food and feed industry, and plant breeding.

References

Eljounaidi K, Lee SK, Bae H (2016) Bacterial endophytes as potential biocontrol agents of vascular wilt diseases—review and future prospects. Biol Control 103:62–68

Goyal S, Sharma V, Ramawat KG (2015) A review of Biotechnological approaches to conservation and sustainable utilization of medicinal lianas in India, In: Parthasarathy N (ed), Biodiversity of Lianas, Sustainable Development and Biodiversity 5, Springer International Publishing Switzerland,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-14592-1_11

Goyal S, Ramawat KG, Mérillon JM (2017) Different shades of fungal metabolites: an overview. In: Mérillon JM, Ramawat KG (eds) Fungal metabolites. Springer International Publishing Switzerland, doi:10.1007/978-3-319-19456-1_34-1

Le Cocq K, Gurr SJ, Hirsch PR, Mauchline TH (2016) Exploitation of endophytes for sustainable agricultural intensification. Molecular Plant Pathology. doi:10.1111/mpp.12483

Passari AK, Mishra VK, Leo VV, Gupta VK, Singh BP (2016) Phytohormone production endowed with antagonistic potential and plant growth promoting abilities of culturable endophytic bacteria isolated from *Clerodendrum colebrookianum* Walp. Microbiol Res 193:57–73

Redfern Lauren K, Gunsch Claudia K (2016) Endophytic phytoaugmentation: treating wastewater and runoff through augmented phytoremediation. Indus Biotechnol 12(2):83–90. doi:10.1089/ind.2015.0016

Tanney JB, Douglas B, Seifert KA (2016) Sexual and asexual states of some endophytic *Phialocephala* species of *Picea*. Mycologia 108(2):255–280

Index

D.K. Maheshwari and K. Annapurna (eds.), *Endophytes: Crop Productivity and Protection*, Sustainable Development and Biodiversity 16,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-66544-3